



A  
TRANSLATION  
OF THE  
**SÈIR MUTAQHERIN ;**  
OR  
VIEW OF MODERN TIMES.

BEING AN  
HISTORY OF INDIA.

From the Year 1118 to the Year 1194, (*this Year answers to the  
Christian Year 1781-82*) of the Hedjrah ,

CONTAINING, IN GENERAL,

*THE REIGNS of the SEVEN LAST EMPERORS of  
HINDOSTAN,*

AND IN PARTICULAR AN ACCOUNT OF THE ENGLISH  
WARS IN BENGAL,

WITH A CIRCUMSTANTIAL DETAIL OF THE RISE AND FALL OF  
THE FAMILIES OF

SERADJ-ED-DOWLAH & SHUDJAH-ED-DOWLAH,

THE LAST SOVEREIGNS OF BENGAL AND OUD ,

*To which the Author has added*

A CRITICAL EXAMINATION OF THE ENGLISH GOVERN-  
MENT AND POLICY IN THOSE COUNTRIES,

DOWN TO THE YEAR 1783

*The whole written in Persian*

By SEID-GHOLAM-HOSSEIN-KHAN,

*An Indian Nobleman of high rank, who wrote both as an  
Actor and Spectator*

VOL. III.

CALCUTTA & MADRAS

**R. CAMBRAY & CO.,**

PUBLISHERS & BOOKSELLERS,

10, HASTINGS STREET & 15, COLLEGE SQUARE  
MADRAS — 337, THAMBU CHETTY STREET, GEORGE TOWN

Published By '  
D C. KERR, AND N C KERR.  
Trading in the Name of  
R. CAMBRAY & CO  
CALCUTTA & MADRAS

*All Rights Reserved by the Publishers*

Printed By  
D C. KERR  
at the  
VALMIKI PRESS  
3, Haldar Lane  
Bowbazar Calcutta.

# CONTENTS

## TO THE THIRD VOLUME.

---

*Arrival of Lord Clive in India—Peace—The English deeply connected with the Court of Delhi, now residing at Shahabad—Death of Mir-djaaffer, who is successively succeeded by his three sons—Strange portrait of Mubarec-ed-dowlah, the survivor of them, and some account of his person, mother, family, and genius—Odious character of his Deputy, Mahmed-reza-ghan—The English take direct possession of the three Provinces in their own name, and only assign a pension to the surviving Prince of Mir-djaaffer-ghan's family—Severe strictures on the English Government—Twelve causes assigned to the ruinous condition of these Countries.*

---





# THE SÈIR MUTAQHERIN;

OR  
REVIEW OF MODERN TIMES:

BEING AN  
HISTORY OF INDIA,

FROM THE YEAR 1118, TO THE YEAR 1194, OF THE HEDYRAH

VOL. III.

## SECTION XII.

---

### CONTENTS

*Sabut-djung, now Lord Clive, is coming to Bengal with an absolute authority—Nedjm-ed-dowlah, alias Mir-pahloiy, succeeds to his father, Mir-djaaffer-ghan—Nand-comar, his Prime Minister, is dismissed by Lord Clive, who introduces Mahmed-reza-ghan in his stead, and acts everywhere as a despot—He attacks Johnstone's and Middleton's conduct, and is vigorously repulsed—Billers, Chief of Azim-abad, frightened by Lord Clive, kills himself—Doctor Fullerton dismissed the service—Some account of Mirza-casem-ghan—Lord Clive goes to Ilah-abad, where he obliges the Emperor to invest the English Company with the Divani or Divanship of the three Provinces—Insolence of Colonel Usmut (Richard Smith)—Lord Clive returns—Changes and promotions throughout Bengal—Lenity and generosity of the English towards the Land-holders of Bengal—The young Nawab dies suddenly and unaccountably—He is succeeded by his brother, Séif-ed-dowlah, alias Mir-canáya, who also dies suddenly—Death of the author's father, the Vezir Hedáiet-aaly-ghan—Shytab-ráy, Viceroy of Azim-abad—Discovers strange mismanagements in Durdj-naráin's administration—Lord Clive makes a second journey to Azim-abad, and secures Radja Belvent-sing's situation by a treaty—He returns to England, fully bent on impeaching Governor Vansittart—M Veris (Verelst) succeeds to the government of Bengal—New regulations*

with respect to finances, police, and justice—Famine and mortality all over Bengal—Mubarecc-ed dōwlah, third son to Mir djaaser nominal Nanem of Bengal—Intrigues at his Court—Oblique hints against Mahmed reza-qhan—A strange way of distributing justice—Severe insinuations against Mahmed reza-qhan—Strange character of Roh eddin hossein qhan, Governor of PSramiah—The Council resolve to investigate the finances to the bottom—Bengal divided in six Districts—Charges exhibited in England against Vansittart by Lord Clive—Vigorously repelled by Vansittart—Who is sent back with honour to Bengal—Mester kushtim bahadyr arrives in Calcutta where he spends ninety days and ninety nights in perusing records—Mahmed reza qhan arrested—Shytab rāy arrested—The Nanem of Bengal's allowance reduced from twenty four to sixteen lacs a year—Shytab rāy honourably acquitted and sent back to resume his office—Dies of a broken heart—Brilliant character of his—Horrible famine at Azim abad and generosity of Shytab rāy's in that trying occasion—Curious anecdotes about Shytab rāy—Dies a Musulman in his heart—Mahmed reza-qhan released from his confinement—Arrival of General Clavering and Colonel Monson and M Francis

شیر-الدین گ  
now Lord  
Clive is com-  
ing to Bengal  
with absolute  
authority

Nedjm-ed  
dōwlah alias  
Mir pahlory  
succeeds to  
his father  
Mir djaaser-  
qhan.

THIS diary of Mir djaaser qhan's government and life had been already closed by the hand of destiny when intelligence arrived in Bengal that the renowned Lord Clive that man so much tried in war was coming from the country of England with an absolute authority over the provinces of Bengal and Azim abad. As such an intelligence had nothing pleasing for Governor Vansittart, and he did not think his presence convenient in Calcutta at such a time he set out for England some time before that nobleman could arrive, and left the remaining gentlemen of the Council to regulate and settle as Sovereigns such business as concerned the Government. And these determined that Nedjm-ed-dōwlah heretofore known under the name of Mir pahlory (1) eldest son to Mir djaaser-qhan by Munny begum should succeed

(1) This nick name was given him by his mother who at all the stages of her pregnancy found herself longing after *Pakories* certain balls of pulse fried in sesame-oil and sold about the streets. His title of Nedjm-ed-dōwlah may signify the Star of the Empire

to his father in the power of loosing and binding every business of Government and sovereignty with the advice of the gentlemen of the Council. When this matter came to be settled at Calcutta, Mr Middleton, Chief of Moorshoodabad, and Mr Djonson (Johnstone), Chief at Bardevan, went to the palace, and ordered Nedjm-ed-doulah to take his seat on the mesned of sovereignty, a favour for which this Prince shewed his gratitude by respectfully presenting them with such a sum of money as had been agreed upon. And for some time he acted as absolute Governor, having Nand-comar for his Divan, a Minister who became the centre of all the private and public business of his master's in Bengal. Mu-mahmed-cazem-qhan, brother to Mir-djaaffer-qhan, was appointed Governor of the province of Azimabad on the part of his nephew, and Radja Durj-narain, brother to Ram-narain, was named his Divan or Prime Minister. Shytab-ray seemed to have been forgotten in this arrangement. He enjoyed already the office of Divan of the Bahar, on the part of the Emperor, and he had such connections with all the English, and specially with General Carnac, the Commander-in-Chief, that Shudja-ed-doulah thought proper to take advice from the times, and to make him a present of a District about Azim-gur and Djohonpoor, called Mahoo, which produced more than one lac of rupees a year, and this he gave him as a free-hold or Djaghir. Some little time passed in this manner, when Nand-comar, with whom Henry Vansittart had been much dissatisfied, was sent for to Calcutta by the gentlemen of the Council, but not dismissed from his office, where his dependants continued to exercise full authority in his name. This Governor had set down in writing this man's misdemeanours and bad qualities, and he had got those sheets bound in the form of a book which he left in the hands of his brother, George Vansittart Hooshiar-djung, with orders to produce it in Council, and to read it completely, whenever Lord Clive should come, and take his seat. The Council struck with the contents of that memoir, forbade Nand-comar from stirring out of the city of Calcutta, but did not choose to dismiss him from his office, because that Minister some time after the revolution that had overset Seradj-ed-doulah to set Mir-djaaffer-qhan in his stead, had served Lord Clive as his Moonshy or Secretary, and also as his Divan or Minister, at a time when that

Nand-comar  
Prime Minister  
to the  
young Prince  
is dismissed  
his office by  
Lord Clive.

Lord was yet only Colonel Clive and likewise because this Divan had from thence conceived mighty hopes that his power and influence would receive a great accession on that nobleman's arrival in Bengal. Matters remained on that footing until Lord Clive arrived himself when George Vansittart producing in full Council the book written by his brother, read it to that nobleman word by word and although the new Viceroy had intentions to oblige Nand-comar yet such was the impression made upon him by the light thrown on that Minister's misdemeanours and character that he altered his opinion of him at once and dismissed him from his office with injunctions not to stir out of the city and precincts of Calcutta.

Mahmed-  
reza-ghan is  
introduced at  
the young  
Prince's  
Court

Nand-comar's downfall made room for Mahmed reza-ghan son to the Physician Haddy-ghan-akuly of Shiraz<sup>(2)</sup> a man who upon Mir djaaser-ghan's second accession to the mesoed had been made Deputy Governor of the province of Dacca. This man came at once upon the stage of the world, in order to become by the mere force of his destiny the favourite object of boundless favours and endless graces from Lord Clive. He was recommended to the Deputyship of Nedjm-ed-dölah's by that nobleman who heaped honours and favours upon him and gave him an absolute authority over his master in whatever concerned the Government, an office which made him the centre of all business public and private. At the same time he procured for him the titles of Mahmed reza-ghan the Valiant ever Victorious in War<sup>(3)</sup> and little by little he obtained for him the further titles of the Eminent of the State<sup>(4)</sup> the Foremost of the Kingdom, and Lord of Lords. To these was added the privilege of riding in a Naleky<sup>(5)</sup> which in Hindostan is a distinction reserved to

---

(2) Shiraz a city in Persia, the fourth in rank in that Empire, and the capital of Persia, the Persia of the Greeks.

(3) Mahmed-reza-ghan, *Bahadur Afzasher-djurg*.

(4) *Muslimes-ed-dölah, Afzasher-el-mulk, Khan-ghanan*.

(5) The Naleki is the shell of a Palanquin, without tent or covering. It is properly speaking the sedan of the Palanquin; for this last is to all intents and purposes a kind of bed hanging at the fore and after part from a bamboo that rises archwise over it, and supports the tent or canopy. But the Naleky has neither the arching nor the tent and instead of hanging from one bamboo, it is set upon two straight ones, as an European chair with two bamboos that rest upon the shoulders of eight men.

Sovereigns. It must be observed that, when the intelligence arrived in England of the revolution effected in favour of Mir-cassem-qhan, and of the troubles that had been the consequences of it, the people of that country conceived such fears for the Company's safety, and fancied their affairs to be so teeming with mighty difficulties, that they thought no one equal to the task of re-establishing the Company's affairs, and quieting the country, but Lord Clive himself. And as such a commission was in their opinion an object of mighty importance and difficulty, they thought it incumbent upon themselves to make some amends to that Commander, by promoting him at once from the station of simple Colonel, to the dignity and title of Lord, which in England and London answers to the dignity of Omrah, in Hindostan. He was furnished at the same time with such ample powers, and such an extensive authority, that no Governor to this very day has ever been invested with so unbounded an influence, unless it be the valiant Navvab Mr Hushitin, who is the prop of the State, and the daring in war and in battles, and who by surpassing even Lord Clive himself in dignity and importance, can have no equal or companion either in Hindostan or in Europe, and really deserves all that elevation. Lord Clive in taking the steps he had taken, or indeed in any business whatever, was not bound to deliberate with a Council. Looking upon no man to be his equal, he made no account of anyone, whether Hindian or English; and to give a specimen of his power, he first of all informed Djonson and Middleton, that they had done properly in placing Nedjm-ed-doulah in his father's station, but that they had acted very improperly and very unjustly, in taking money from him. He added, that such a sum must be accounted for by charging it to the Company's credit. To this requisition, the two gentlemen answered, first of all, by sending in their resignation, and then by declaring openly, "That so long as they were in the Company's service, they were bound to obey his commands, but now that they had resigned it, they had no further orders to receive from him, and that, if he had anything to say to them, he must say it in the Royal Court of Justice. That as to his injunctions for refunding the money they had received, they would be ready to submit to such a measure, and to refund the two small sums they had received from Nedjm-ed-doulah, whenever

Lord Clive  
everywhere as  
an absolute  
Monarch

Attacks  
Johnson's and  
Middleton's  
conduct

' himself should think it proper to pay into the same treasury "the enormous sums he had received from Nedjm ed dōulah's father at the time he had placed him on Seradj ed dōulah's "Mesned Lord Clive on hearing so resolute and so undisguised an answer and on finding that they had resigned the service did not dare to enter into any discussion with them and he remained silent. Djonson himself went home but Middleton who had been long in Hindia addicted himself to a mercantile life and after some time he found means to be re-admitted in the service, where he became Chief of Moorsbond abad, when his last moment arriving he died at Painty a spot near Shāh-abad midway betwixt Azim-abad and Moorsbood-abad He was entombed on that very hill of Painty where his monument is seen from afar In his nation he bears a celebrity for goodness of heart and much benevolence But supposing that he was a man of much goodness nevertheless there was no comparing him in genius and many other good qualities to Doctor William Fullerton nor in bravery and military abilities, as well as firmness in friendship and steadiness of temper to Colonel Godard nor in wisdom of conduct or attention to the rights of friendship and love, or in knowledge and keenness in the intricacies of business and government to George Vahsittart nor in goodness and in civility and many other qualifications to Mr Aayoun Law and Mr Thomas Law who was younger brother to Mr Ayoun Law, and equal to his elder brother in merit (6). Nor was Baaloo Sahab inferior to them But Tamsan Sahab was incomparable in many valuable qualifications and so were Mr Anderson and Mr Ellintt two young men who had no equal in the very perfection of wisdom civility and kindness and in the whole assemblage of whatever could conciliate respect or love to a character It is even reported of Mr Anderson's younger brother that he is equal to his elder brother and in some sciences, such as the Mathematics his superior Few men equal to these have been seen in that nation for although some other English characters are spoken of with encomiums, yet as I never had any business or connections with them I have not sufficient knowledge to write of them

---

(6) All these names having been at first heard wrong, and then misspelt and at last ill written and that too without vowels there is no making anything of them.

It was about this time that Mr Billers succeeded in right of seniority to the Chief-ship of Azim-abad. He was a man of little understanding, and on that account, much inclined to submit to the guidance of Mr. Middleton and Mr Djonson. On his being appointed, he went from the garden of Bauky-poor, the then residence of every English ruler, and having traversed the city in great pomp and state, he proceeded to the castle where he ordered Mir-cazem-qhan to take his seat on the mesned of government, as Viceroy of the province of Bahar. This installation produced him a sum of money, but as at the same time he listened implicitly to the dictates and instigations of some Gentoos, as senseless as himself, he became himself guilty of some improper actions, which rendered him distracted when he came to hear of Lord Clive's arrival, and of his great power and severity. He was seized with consternation on his past conduct, and killed himself with his own sword. He was buried in that very garden of Bauky-poor where he has remained ever since, a standing stock for the reflections of his own countrymen.

Billers,  
Chief of Azim-  
abad, kills  
himself

But it was General Carnac who enjoyed now the full sunshine of favour. He had these many years enjoyed the friendship and confidence of Lord Clive's, and he became now the principal manager of his politics and government, as well as the centre of all business, public and private. He had been heretofore a warm friend of Doctor Fullerton's, but having become his sworn enemy, he had put some matters into Lord Clive's mind, that made him dismiss the Doctor from the service. This gentleman after taking an affectionate leave of his friends, by whom he was exceedingly regretted, set out for his country, from which he promised to come back again, on his being able to obtain certain conditions and stipulations for himself. It appears that his intention did not tally with the decrees of Providence, for he has not yet appeared, although there is intelligence of his being alive and in health. Wherever he may be, God, Almighty, preserve him in peace of mind.

Doctor  
Fullerton dis-  
missed from  
the service

Lord Clive's first care, after his arrival in Calcutta, was to take cognizance of some pressing business, and to settle some important regulations. After those arrangements, he resolved to repair to Ilah-abad, in order to carry certain points which he had settled in his mind, and the Vezir himself, on that nobleman's



invitation and that of General Carnac's, quitted Fáiz-abad, his capital, and took the road to Ilab-abad, being much encouraged thereto by the insinuations of Shytab-ráy's who was the harbinger of peace between the different parties. There appeared at this time a certain person called Mirza-cazem-qhan a Persian born who by marrying in the family of Hassen reza qhan grand son to Hadji-ahmed had acquired many friends and in time had been promoted to the government of the District of Sarseram and Cháin poor through the interest of Aaly híbrahim qhan. As Lord Clive had once known him when in Decan he now remembered his acquaintance made him an object of boundless favors and high preferment presented him with one lac of rupees contant and admitted him so far amongst his favourites that to all appearance it is to his interest and management that Mahmed reza-qhan owes his elevation to the summit of power. The latter wanted to return the obligation and as he could not bear to see Shytab-ráy's extensive influence and his participation in every secret of State he recommended the new favourite as an able negotiator his intention being to supplant Shytab-ráy in the future negotiation with the King and the Vezir. This matter had even been settled with Lord Clive without the General's knowledge and it was with this view that the Mirza had accompanied that Lord in his journey to Hindostan. But that nobleman who on his arrival at Azim-abad, had maturely examined Mir-cazem-qhan the actual Governor and Durdj naráin his deputy as well as Shytab-ráy and had weighed their several degrees of merit and capacity to the scales of discernment and penetration soon came to take his resolution in favour of the latter whom he desired to accompany him in his journey his intention being to make use of him as an agent and a go between in the ensuing negotiation. As to the actual Governor Mir-cazem-qhan he found him to be a man simple and plain but unfit for so weighty an office as the government of Azim-abad. He even seemed to listen to the proposals of Durdj naráin's who actuated by avarice and covetousness wanted to be the sole disposer of all the affairs of Government to the exclusion of his benefactor. This Gentoo unmindful of all the obligations he owed both to the above nobleman and to his elder brother Mir-djaaser-qhan thought only of advancing his own affairs under pretence of

Some account of  
Mirza-cazem  
qhan.

promoting his master's interest, and he went so far as to lay claim to the administration of the province in his own and sole name. Lord Clive who did not think the hurry of a voyage a fit time for dismissals and appointments, left the matter undecided, and taking Shytab-râv with him, he journeyed to Allahabad, where he had the honor to pay his respects to the Emperor. After which he visited the Vezir, and having exchanged with him some sumptuous entertainments and several curious and magnificent presents, he explained the project he had in his mind, and asked that the Company should be invested with the Divan-ship of the three Provinces of Bengal, Bahar and Ooressa, of which office he requested the proper Patents from the Vezir and the Emperor. As both the Emperor and the Vezir were already in their minds subdued by the superior courage and prowess of the English, as well as overawed by the strength of mind and penetration of Lord Clive's (two articles in which they were greatly over-matched), they were obliged to grant the request, although reluctantly. Having therefore ordered the Seneds or Patents to be drawn up in the manner that had been desired, they delivered them in the hands of Lord Clive's. By these Patents twenty-four lacs a year were settled as the Imperial tribute, or quit-rent over the three provinces, for the future, and the Company's acknowledgment and bond for the same, which are the owner's voucher, were drawn up under their seal, and entered in the Imperial registers. Thus a business of such a magnitude, as left neither pretence nor subterfuge, and which at any other time would have required the sending wise Ambassadors and able negotiators, as well as a deal of parley and conference with the Company and the King of England, and much negotiation and contention with the Ministers, was done and finished in less time than would have been taken up for the sale of a jack-ass, or of a beast of burden, or of a head of cattle. The Lord having accomplished his purpose, returned to the seat of his command, which is called Calcutta, and left for his Agent at the Emperor's Court, Colonel Usmutt (Smith), who after the Lord's departure for England, received the title of General, and became entrusted with the command of the English army. His office was only that of an Agent near the Emperor's person, but in fact he was his master and Lord to all intents and purposes,

Lord Clive goes to Allahabad and obliges the Emperor to invest the English Company with the office of Divan of Bengal Bahar, and Ooressa.

and he was himself so sensible of his power, that he took his abode within the castle, and in the Imperial Palace whilst the Emperor was obliged to remain without where to conceal his shame, he amused himself in finishing with brick and stone some buildings which he had heretofore commenced. But even there he was not free from insult. For the Colonel one day being displeased at the noise which the Imperial kettle-drums and other warlike instruments made in the place appointed for them over the gate of the castle (7) sent them order to cease and forbade their playing any more with which order those poor men thought proper to comply and henceforward they remained without performing their duty and without bread. Verse—

Have patience everyone shall have his turn for five days.

As to Mirza cazem's views of supplanting Shytab-ráy in the business of speaker or Agent of Lord Clive's they totally miscarried. Shytab-ráy's good manners and flowing language together with his penetration, and keenness of genius had gained so much on the Lord's heart, and he had impressed his mind with so deep a sense of gratitude for the services he had rendered the Company and the English Commanders to whom he bore a sincere attachment, that Mirza cazem missed the office which he aimed at and returned with his protector without obtaining his ends. However, he became instrumental in putting an end to Aaly hakim qhan's exile. For although this nobleman enjoyed much consideration with the Vezir and his Minister nevertheless he lived uneasy on account of his being deprived of his friends and country, and he became now desirous of returning to Beogl chiefly through the persuasion of the said Mirza. This gentleman who remembered how instrumental that refugee nobleman had once been in screening him from the blaze of Mir-cassem's resentment and how much he was indebted to a patronage that had sheltered him so effectually from the scorching rays of that burning sun, so as to bear him harmless and in the very palm of his hand now thought it incumbent upon him to make a return for those important benefits. He therefore presented him to Lord Clive

Insolence  
of Colonel  
Ussett.

(7) This was a much graver affront than a European could apprehend; for this music, which consisted of a variety of instruments, and played three or four times a day and once at night, is a mark of Sovereignty and always of command.

and the General, and obtained permission for his return to Moorshoodabad, to which city the Qhan was strongly inclined, on account of his long residence in it, and the number of friends and acquaintances he had there. He sent out then with Mirza-cazem, and was received amongst the favourites and friends of Mahmed-reza-qhan's. But although he was treated with much honour and regard, he was not held in that high consideration which he deserved.

Lord Clive being returned to Azimabad, dismissed Mir-cazem-qhan from the government of that province, and appointed in his stead Radjah Durdj-narain, as sole Governor, with full power for loosing and binding everything all over the country. Nevertheless, he assigned to Mir-cazem-qhan a yearly pension of one lac, and this nobleman went and took up his residence at Radj-mahal-ecber-nagar, where he had been born and bred, and where the easiness of his temper made him keep clear of all strife and contention, contenting himself with passing his days in quiet and affluence, by which he acquired the name of a good-natured man. But Durdj-narain, as if in retribution for the ingratitude and underhand dealing with which he had used the poor man, his master and benefactor, was in a few days put to a deal of shame, and dismissed from his office with disgrace. Insomuch that this man who had been endeavouring to raise himself to the sole government of the province at the expense of his master, lost both his character and life, as we shall shortly mention in its proper place. Lord Clive after a few days' stay at Azimabad, repaired to Calcutta, where he settled to his own mind every part of the administration. He associated Mr Sykes to himself in the business of regulating matters of revenue, for which purpose he appointed him Chief of Moorshoodabad, whilst the late Djessaret-qhan was appointed to the government of the province of Dacca-djehan-ghir-nagar. But the country of Bardevan was taken out of the hands of the Hindians, and entrusted to the care of two or three trusty and approved Englishmen. Roh-eddin-hossain-qhan, son to Séif-qhan, and grandson to Umdet-el-mulk-emir-qhan, Governor of Cab8l, was continued in his Government of P8raniah. He had chanced in a swift Morpanky(8) to overtake Lord Clive about Shahabad and Páinty,

Changes and promotions throughout Bengal

---

(8) The Mor-panky, as its name implies, is a swift elegant boat, the poop whereof is fashioned and painted like a Peacock, whose tail, colored and gilt,

whilst the latter was going up in the helghth of the rains and he had rendered so satisfactory an account of his conduct that he had been confirmed in his post, with orders to send the prodnet of his government which did not amount to more than six or seven lacs a year to the Cachery or Exchequer of Moorshoodabad as it had been customary formerly. But such was this man's ignorance of business, and his natural sloth, and such was his prepossession in favour of that ungrateful faithless favourite of his called Asker aaly qhan who was son of his father's Pir zada or director and whom he had entrusted with the management of all his concerns small or great, public or private that in two or three years time, he lost his office and appuintment as it shall be mentioned hereafter. As to the Djaglurs Altum gahs Free holds and private possessions of several people, which had always been held free both by Aaly verdy qhan and by his successors who never made any objections to their privileges they were respected by the English who following that example of lenity left them unmolested nor was any injury or chileane offered to a single man amongst the possessors. This proved to be one of the tokens of Divine goodness and one mark of English munificence for had it not been for that lenity all was over with the ancient nobility and gentry of this land nor could anyone of them pretend to live a single day in it even under the bare canopy of heaven. The English did even more. For the revolutions and alterations which resulted from the changes of the Emperors, and which the wonted faithlessness of men in office had rendered almost certain and unavoidable were now put an end to by these strangers who established it as a standing rule that whoever was actual possessor of a spot of land should remain in possession of it for ever and that after him it should devolve to his posterity. Thanks be to God Almighty that matters have remained on that footing and that it is become customary and established that those who satisfied with little have let themselves down the

Lealty and  
generosity of  
the English  
towards the  
Land-holders  
of Bengal.

---

extends from head to stern. It is rowed with paddles managed by twenty thly or forty men that have their faces turned to the place they intend to fetch. Such a vessel, of a hundred feet in length was put on board an *East Indiaman*, by Governor Vauvillart, but divided in three parts, which were put together in London and presented to King George I. *Look at N° 43 Section 8*

scanty stream of resignation and contentment, should be suffered to glide safely in it with their children and families, and may God grant out of His goodness that we may meet with no worse times than these !

It must be mentioned that Lord Clive, after a short stay at Moorshood-abad, had landed in the garden of Saaduc-bagh on his way to Ilah-abad, where he had been complimented by Nedjm-ed-dowlah and Mahmed-reza-qhan, who had accompanied him so far. On Lord Clive's departure, these noble persons were returning to their palaces, when on a sudden, Nedjm-ed-dowlah was assaulted by some sharp pains in his bowels, which finding no vent at all, became so excruciating, that the young Nawab on his alighting at his palace, departed this life. It was on the twenty-fourth of Zilcaad, in the year of the Hedjra one thousand one hundred and seventy-nine. He was succeeded in the government of the country by Séif-ed-dowlah (9), his second brother, a young man of gentle manners, and who shewed himself inclined to do good and to oblige, but he too in a few days hastily quitted his life and government, leaving a good name behind. His power did not extend far, but so far as it went, he never suffered it to fail, whenever there was an act of benevolence and commiseration to be performed.

Strange and sudden death of the young Nawab of Bengal, who is succeeded by Séif-ed-döulah *alias* Mir-pahlory, his brother, who soon follows him to the grave

A D 1766

---

(9) I was passing by the young Prince's gate at that very time. I was stopped by a crowd, when lo! there came out at one and the same time, that he was taken ill, and that he was dead. Immense crowds thronged the whole length of the street, where it would have been difficult to descry one single person that was not actually beating its breast, or bathed in tears. The desolation and screams of the women in particular, are not to be described, and the curses universally poured against the supposed author of that unaccountable death, will never be forgotten. People pointed to Mahmed reza qhan, whose sway and overbearing temper, neither this Prince, nor his elder brother, could brook. It is remarkable that people talked freely, of the first sudden and amazing death, but on this second death, people became silent and sullen. I was then at Aga-aaly's house, who was my neighbour, and an eminent merchant, attached to Mahmed-reza-qhan, and there were present then Hadji-mahmed-beg, Fodjdar of Moorshood-abad, Hadji-mahmed-lang, Agareza, and some other Moghuls, all attached to that Minister. *The general report, said the translator, charges Mahmed-reza-qhan strongly. What is your opinion of it? Ha! Sir,* said one of the company, *the physicians are all of his Cabal—all Moghuls* but here he was interrupted by these words *People do not talk of such matters at Moorshood-abad*, said very gravely, Aga aaly, and this admonition was followed by a long pause.

Shytah-ráy had attended Lord Clive to Ilah abad by order but on that nobleman's departure from thence he of his own accord, took his leave for a certain time, under promise of returning soon as he had some particular business of his own. As to my forgiven father, he was so dissatisfied with the complexion of the times, and the contempt in which the Majesty of the Empire was held that he had chosen to live retired and satisfied, upon that small Djaghír or estate which he possessed in this province from ancient times and from whence he used now and then to repair to Azim abad for the purpose of paying one or two visits to whoever happened to be seated on the mesned of Government. For he thought it expedient to be upon some terms with the men in office, lest he should be molested by those men who lived by wickedness and it was on that account that he had come to Azim abad to wait on Lord Clive. But that Viceroy, who always travelled so haste having already quitted that city, my forgiven father went no farther, but sent Seyd-aaly-qhan, my brother who was a great friend of Rabia begum's (mother in law to Mahmed reza qhan) His intention was that he should accompany Shytah-ráy, to which last he wrote a letter, intimating the design he had in view in sending his son for he requested his assistance in such matters as depended on the Nizam et that is on the interference of the Navvab and of the English. He informed him at the same time that he had sent his son for the purpose of procuring some Seneds or Patents under the Navvab's seal. The style of the letter was of so conciliating a nature that Shytah-ráy who possessed much sense and good nature and knew how to rate everyone's worth and station answered it with particular marks of civility and good will, promising his services and assistance with the best grace imaginable. My forgiven father on this promise sent the harcara or head spy Moorly dur who was one of the Columns of the Government of Azim-abad a man of keenness and abilities, who had orders to attend Shytah-ráy and Séyd-aaly qhan himself was ordered to attend them both for which purpose he went with them as far as Moorshood-abad.

On Shytah-ráy's arrival at Calcutta, Lord Clive by the General's advice proposed to attach him to his person by employing him in whatever was relative to matters of finance and government.

Shytab-ráy, who was sensible how much exposed he was to the shafts of envy and obloquy, and who wished to shew his resignation and want of pretension, brought many reasons forward for excusing his backwardness, but he was not heard, and the Viceroy insisted so earnestly, that Shytab-ráy was obliged to acknowledge his being ill of a distemper, which was looked upon to be a confirmed lues. On this intelligence, he was made over to Lord Clive's body Physician and Doctor, who was ordered and bound to attend Shytab-ráy. The Doctor applied himself to his task so earnestly, that his patient's distemper which had risen to its heighth, and raged with so much violence as to prevent all bodily motion, especially that of the joints in the legs and arms, was totally expelled and put an end to, by only rubbing the parts with a remedy composed of quick-silver and hog's fat. It disappeared so intirely as not to leave a trace behind. Shytab-ráy made the Doctor a present of ten thousand rupees, but as soon as he was in full health, he was promoted to the titles of Maha-radja and Bahadyr (10), to the high rank of Commander of five thousand horse, and to an allowance of twenty-five thousand rupees per month for the expenses of his Government, besides five thousand more for his own person. Over and above that, he was complimented with an enlargement of his Djaghír, and likewise with a more extensive share of influence in the management of Government matters, in which he was associated to Durdj-naráin and to Mr Middleton, which last was Chief of the factory of Azim-abad. Moreover he was entrusted with the use of Séif-ed-dowlah's Seal, who was reputed Nazem of all the three Provinces, after which he was ordered to return to his office.

Shytab ráy  
cured of the  
lues, and pro-  
moted to di-  
gnities and  
emoluments

As to my forgiven father's business, it was performed to his own wishes by the exertions of Séyd-aaly-qhan, my glorious brother, and by the patronage of Rabiah-begum, his patroness,

---

(10) These two words in the Shanscrit, or sacred language of Hindia, signify great King, or great Prince. But since the Mahometants have taken possession of that region, they are become only an honorific title given to Hindoos of high distinction, just as the word *Qhan* which in the Tartar, or Turkish language signified a King, is now become an honorific title only, all over India, as well as in Persia, and the beginning only of the titles of honour, that of Bahadyr, which signifies valiant, is the next. See the note 25, Section 1



even some time before Shytab ráy had returned to the city of Moorshood-abad

During all this time I was by Doctor Fullerton's recommendation in attendant on Mr Sage one of the ablest and most considerable Englishman of that time who conducted all the business of Banares. Moreover I enjoyed in that city the honour of paying a respectful attendance to the most perfect and glorious Shéh mahmed-aaly hézin (whom God may place amongst the highest of his elect) My forgiven father was residing with his whole family relations dependants and retinue at Hosséin abad a town which he had founded and built on his Djaghirl lands when at once and without any apparent cause his holy person resented a slight indisposition which soon became a continuous fever. It is reported that it struck into his brain like a fit of apoplexy. His senses however, and understanding were little impaired. Nevertheless the twelfth day after his first indisposition it being a Sunday the third of the second Djemady in the year one thousand one hundred and seventy nine of the Prophet's retreat (on whom may be peace and blessing for ever!) he was pleased to depart to the merciful mansions of the Omnipotent King and was inhumed in the town which he had founded. May God's mercy be over him and may he be admitted into the mansions of the pious and virtuous! This doleful intelligence was brought to me at Banares by an express dispatched by my glorious mother (whose shadow may long continue to stretch over me!) I received likewise repeated and pressing letters from my kind brother Naly-aaly-qhan fahr-ed dōwlah and from some other relations and kinsmen who all requested my presence instantly. This intelligence having overset my schemes I discontinued my attendance on Mr Sage and proceeded to Hosséin-abad. The venerable† just whom I have just been mentioning and upon whom I had hitherto waited so respectfully and so constantly was dissuading me from that journey. "A little time more," would he say, "and I will quit this fragile world. I wish that at the moment you may not be asunder from me. These words melted my heart. But the importunities of my mother and of those that survived my forgiven father together with the feebleness of my own destiny did not allow my obeying commands so worthy of obedience or of

Death of  
the author's  
father the  
Vezir Hedá  
let aaly-qhan

reaping the advantages of my attendance on that venerable man. Had I been able to stay, my attendance on him would have proved the greatest happiness of my life, but there is no helping the failures of one's destiny! Verses

"To those born to ill luck, of what use can be a complete guide? (11)

"See! an Elia is bringing an Alexander thirsty from the fountain of life!

At last I arrived at Hosséin-abad, and on hearing of my forgiven father's demise, I proceeded to Moorshood-abad, where by good luck Shytáb-ráy and Séyd-aaly-qhan had chanced to make a stay, and had got the confirmation of my Djaghír's Patent, which was drawn up in the name of the lowest of men (12), who was the oldest of the forgiven's children, and they brought it to him on their return to Azim-abad.

We left Shytáb-ráy on his way to take possession of his new office of Azim-abad. On his arrival in that city, he thought it incumbent on his wisdom and uprightness to make it a rule, that the conferences for business of Government and finances, should be held, neither in his own house nor in that of Durdj-naráin's, but wholly in the Imperial Castle, which place had been time out of mind allotted for the assemblies of all such men as were in office, for all such as rented any land from Government, and for all such as had business with them. It was likewise established that the English Chief should repair thither at the appointed time, and be seated in a chair of State, and that over against him, on a long mesned spread on the ground for the occasion, Durdj-naráin should be seated on one side, and Shytáb-ráy, on the other, with each a cushion of State on their back (13). That on every Patent drawn up, Durdj-naráin should sign his *baéz* (14) at the bottom

Regulations  
established at  
Azim-abad by  
Shytáb-ráy,  
now Viceroy  
of Azim-abad

---

(11) Alexander (and there are several of them), on being conducted to the fountain of life by the Prophet Eliah himself, met with so many cross accidents, that he was obliged to return without having quenched his thirst.

(12) The words, *the poor man*, at the third person, always signify, *me*, but none but persons of the highest distinction have a right to call themselves, in their letters or in their conversation, *the least of men*.

(13) A cushion of State is called a Gáo-Takkiá, an ox cushion, or a large cushion. It is cylindrical, three or four feet in length, and twenty inches in diameter.

(14) Letters are never signed in India, (but the Gentoos sign). The writer only, if he be a man of importance, writes the word *Baéz*, or even *ez*, in large characters. Now as the seal whereon the writer's name is engraven, is put on the outside of the letter only, together with the place, name, and date, and all that is only set down on the cover, one may judge from thence what degree of authenticity

And discoveries made thereby in Durdj-narān in a management

of it and that Shytāb rāy should just by it or below Nedjm ed dōwlah's seal, write in his own hand and with a flourish the words *it has been seen*. So much regularity could not please Durdj narān a man who prided on his having held the Government in his own single person as well as on his relationship to Ram narān and who used to apply his own private seal to matters of business and as he had no other overseer but his ownself and he was known to have acted all along faithlessly in imitation of his deceased brother and of all the other lessees his predecessors he felt himself much hurt by the new regulations but however submitted to them. Hence his concurrence ceasing to be cordial, it increased the breach and dissensions between him and his colleague to such a degree, that the officers of Government split in two parties one of which sided with Radja Shytāb-rāy whilst the other continued as usual with Durdj narān. Matters turned out much worse when the public accounts became objects of attention. Shytāb rāy being in duty bound to inspect the papers of the Divanship or the management of finances, soon found that the estimates of the revenue had been very faithlessly made and that in every transaction thousands and ten thousands had been withheld as perquisites of office and as Nezers to Durdj narān. On which liberties he adverted with much severity as highly improper. He therefore provided another set of lessees and renters of the revenue who undertook to preserve the article of perquisites and Nezers anas over and above the full finance due to Government. On which offer he sent a message to Durdj narān in these terms. Either oblige the actual incumbents to account fully for the late failures, or dismiss them and set up the new proposers in their stead. As in either case the incapacity and faithlessness of that man's would have come to light of themselves to his great danger and shame and there appeared likewise in the receipts of Government and in the public expenses, much collusion and infidelity. Shytāb rāy selected some trusty friends of Durdj narān's by whose channel he sent him notice that the public money must be replaced by all means, but that he wished it might be done in such a manner as should not tear the veil which hung over it. Meanwhile

such vouchers would be allowed to it a European Court of Justice. *Look at the Vol. 183 Section 35*

Moorly-dui, the harcaia, who had joined Shytab-ráy's party, being from longhand thoroughly acquainted with every minute circumstance relating to former transactions, was daily ripping open the lining from Durdj-naráin's secrets, and exposing to view the inside of his cloth. But that infatuated man, trusting to so much merit as accrued to him from his brother Ram-naráin's having been thrown into the Ganga for his thoughtless attachment to Mr Amyatt and General Carnac, listened to no sober advice, and was full of excuses and pretences. So far from attending to Shytab-ráy's advice and reprimands, he would not hear even the surmises of his best friends, nor could he be made to understand, that the English, on that single merit of his brother's murder, would not carry their complaisance so far, as to let him enjoy as a Djaghir the whole revenue of the province, so that he should cut and carve for himself. The matter little by little taking vent, came to the knowledge of the Lord, of General Carnac's, and of the principal Englishmen, all of whom by several friendly messages had endeavoured to withdraw the cotton of sloth and neglect from out of Durdj-naráin's ears, and all of whom had advised him to listen to Shytab-ráy's proposals, to submit to his regulations, and to replace the balances he had incurred. To all these he used at every time to answer by a short letter of excuses. And matters remained on the usual footing, until Lord Clive, for what reason God knows, conceived in himself the design of returning home, but thought it expedient previously to renew his treaty and conventions with Shudjah-ed-dowlah, with whom he wished to finish some business, especially that which concerned Radja Balvant-sing, a Prince ill-affected in general, but who now was impressed with a singular dread of Shudjah-ed-dowlah's power and discontent. On the other hand, Shudjah-ed-dowlah himself wanted to meet the English Viceroy on many accounts. All the parties then wishing for a parley, they agreed to meet at a place called Chaprah, and thither they directed their respective journeys, Lord Clive from Calcutta, the Vezir from Fáiz-abad, Munnir-ed-dowlah from Ilah-abad, on the part of the Emperor, and the Radjah Balvant-sing from Banares.

Lord Clive  
makes a  
second  
journey to  
Ilah-abad

On Lord Clive's arrival near Azim-abad, Radjah Shytab-ráy went out to meet him with such a state and such a retinue as he

could afford. But Durdj naráin, who never thought but of his dignity and grandeur came out of the city also, without once minding the balances he was adjudged to pay or thinking how he might appease the Lord and his people. Instead of that he went to meet him with a deal of magnificence and pomp and with a vast number of retainers. As soon as the two retinues were descried at a distance such a sight could not fail to surprise both Lord Clive and the English rulers, as they had repeatedly wrote to Durdj naráin that unless he paid the balances due by him he must not think of coming in the Viceroy's presence. That nobleman hearing now that he was actually coming sent a messenger to forbid his advancing one step farther and the messenger having delivered the message just as he had received it stopped him short and made him return back. But as the injunction had been pronounced aloud, and in the presence of so many friends and foes as well as of all those multitudes that had come out to meet or to see the Viceroy it did no fail to cover that senseless and ill fated man with confusion and shame. Shytab ráy on the contrary was admitted to the *honor of the Lord's presence* and received with much regard and favour. Whereas Durdj naráin having drank from the hands of arrogance and inattention several glasses of wholesome but bitter beverage stopped short and returned back and now grown wiser from this rebuke he in a short time provided for the payment of the outstanding balances, and soon obtained leave to make his bow after which he mixed in the Viceroy's cortege and passed the Conga together with Shytab ráy.

This little affair being over, the travellers went on and in the month of Moharrem of the year 1180 of the Hedjra a meeting took place at the appointed spot between Lord Clive the General the Vezir the Agent Munnir-ed dōwlah and the Radja Balvant Sing and the usual compliments and discourses having been exchanged it was settled that Radja Balvant hence forward would pay a yearly revenue of twenty lacs to Shudjah ed dōwlah his Lord, who would forgive him the errors of his past conduct and leave him for the future in peace and tranquillity but with a most solemn promise never to use any fraud or artifice whatever against him. Moreover it was stipulated that a breach of this article should be deemed a breach of the

And secures  
Radja Bal  
vant-sing's  
situation by a  
treaty

“articles between Shudjah-ed-dowlah and the English ” As soon as these articles and conventions between the Vezir, the Emperor, and the English were signed, together with those between the Emperor and the Vezir, as well as those between the Vezir and the Radja, they were written fair, and at length witnessed by the principal English, and registered in the usual forms After which those noble personages exchanged entertainments, and curious, and costly presents amongst themselves , and the Vezir having been entertained with a mock battle amongst the European soldiers, who managed their guns and musquets with an amazing quickness and celerity, made them a present of some thousand rupees, and returned to his capital The Radja Balvant, after making such a present as was worthy of him, was dismissed , and he repaired to Ram-nagur, his nest, which is on the shore of the Ganga, over against Banares , and Munnir-ed-dowlah himself after having accomplished his purpose, returned to his master

As soon as these matters were over, Shytab-ráy mentioned in general terms the incapacity, sloth, and faithlessness of former managers , and he added “That the recovery of the balances “ due by Durdj-naráin, and by his officers and dependants, was “ far from being an easy task , nor could such a sum be ever “ obtained without constraint and chastisement , and that as “ himself, Shytab ráy, was an improper man for such a business “ on account of the high regard he bore to the ancient acquaint- “ ance and friendship that had subsisted between him and the “ late Ram-naráin , and such sentiments would never permit him “ to act against his surviving brother with the firmness and “ severity requisite for recovering such large sums, it was “ therefore proper that after His Lordship’s arrival at Moorshood- “ abad, Mahmed-reza-qhan, who was the centre and corner- “ stone of all transactions, should vouchsafe to come over to “ Azim-abad for a few days to perform that service on His Lord- “ ship’s instructions , after which he might return to his palace ” This request of Shytab-ráy’s having met with the Lord’s approbation, was followed by many favours and kindnesses, and that nobleman returned to Moorshood-abad, firmly resolved in his heart to entrust him with the whole Government, and to dismiss Durdj-naráin, with whose incapacity and endless infidelities he was tired

Lord Clive  
sends Mah-  
med reza-  
qhan to Azim  
abad to re-  
cover the  
sums due to  
Government.

On his arrival at Moorshood abad he dispatched Mahmed reza qhan to perform the business he had so much at heart and this Minister arrived in a little time at Azim abad with all the terrors of power and punishment marching before him. At first he reprimanded and put under arrest the officers of Durj nardin and then he prevailed upon some of them to disclose the infidelities that had been committed. On their discoveries he confined some lessees such as Sahomul and Mohammed naky qhan and Mahmed-ashruff qhan the Cashmirian and he arrested some others who at last acknowledged their guilt. Sahomul was put to the cudgel and thereby underwent a total disgrace. He was then sent to prison there to remain until he had paid the balances due by him. The like fate hung over the two others who were rescued in time by Radja Shytab rai's interposition although not but after they had bound themselves solemnly to pay their balances before the expiration of their leases. But at this same time Durj nardin having by his infidelities and by his evident incapacity openly approved himself unable to perform a small service incumbent on his office of Governor Lieutenant was disgraced and dismissed and it was determined that his revenues and Djaghirs should be sequestered until the full of the balances due by him were liquidated but that meanwhile a small pension should be reserved for his support.

That envious man bore a grudge to my illustrious and excellent uncle the valorous Seyd-abdol naky qhan the Moosevian surnamed the impetuous in battles as if he had proved a thorn in his side and an object of envy to him and that too for no other reason than the high regard constantly shewn him by Mir djafer qhan and by his brother Mir-cazem qhan. Durj nardin in the height of his power and authority which after all lasted but a while after Mir-cazem-qhan's dismissal had out of mere jealousy and envy dismissed that illustrious man from the lease of the District of Shah-abad and although this Gentoo himself as well as his father and his elder brother had owed their elevation to the favour and their very sustenance and livelihood to the crumbs that fell from Mir djafer qhan's table and from those of that Prince's family yet he no sooner saw himself in power than he abandoned that venerable man to the rapacity

of his officers, who under pretence of examining his accounts, put him to a variety of trouble and anxiety, and this severe usage lasted until the Gentoo himself being dismissed from his borrowed authority, Mahmed-reza-qhan and Radjah Shytah-ráy took the whole different under their own inspection, and finding it destitute of any foundation, gave the venerable man a full acquittal. He then received an invitation from Rabia-begum, a Princess who knew the whole extent of his merit, and he went to Moorshood-abad with Mahmed-reza-qhan. For this Minister having performed with Shytah-ráy's advice the business for which he had come over, returned to Bengal, and Shytah-ráy remaining alone, was invested by the Council of Calcutta with the authority of disposing and finishing every business and transaction relative to the province of Azim-abad. As he was anxious for the honour of his character, he applied himself closely to the functions of his new office in conjunction with Mr Rumbold, who on Mr Middleton's unjust dismissal from the Chiefship of that city, and the government of the province, had been appointed to command in his stead. It was at the time when Mr Sykes was appointed to act in conjunction with Mahmed-reza-qhan at Moorshood-abad. Lord Clive satisfied with the state of affairs in these kingdoms, and with those arrangements he had made, departed to his own country.

This nobleman in his short sojourn in Bengal had always proved desirous of finding in Governor Vansittart's conduct such blemishes and misdemeanours, as might come out of themselves before the Council in England, in consequence of certain lights which he had taken care to provide, and to hold out for that purpose. For ingratitude and oblivion of benefits have at all times been, and still are, so far characteristic in the men of the world, and especially within this short period, and time serving and selfish behaviour, now deemed prudence and knowledge of the world, are come so much in fashion, and are risen to such a height, that no trust and no faith can be reposed in another man's friendship or attachment. Luckily, however, and this is to be admired, these very persons, who have chosen such practices, and have abandoned every claim to credit and honour, find themselves much disappointed in their reckoning, for these after having been much made of for a time by their employers, until the intended purpose is secured, come at last to be despised and



hated by them for their folly and wickedness so as to become in their company a standing stock for scorn and derision. In consequence of such sentiments, those very persons upon whose information Lord Clive had reckoned so much and who in fact had served him most sedulously in his views proved to be those very men that had been over and over loaded with favours and benefits by Shems-ed dōwlah (Vansittart), and yet they joined Nand comar his inveterate enemy and having drawn up a long list of his misdemeanours, they gave it to Lord Clive under their hands and seals. A transaction of such a magnitude having made an infinite noise, could not fail to come to my ears but it was without any certitude of particulars, as little is to be got from that nation, which never mixes with others and is suspicious and cautious to a high degree being always so much upon its guard that strangers cannot come at any of their secrets; nay it is quite impossible.

After this little digression which the ingratitude and wickedness of the times had thrown in our way we shall return to our narrative. The Viceroy and the General after having appointed Mr Veris (Verolst) Governor of Calcutta, and General Usmt (Smith) Commander in Chief of all the forces, departed to their country. It was about the time when Mahmed-reza qhan received from the Emperor, who resided still at Ilah-abad and was of late become fond of the company and conversation of the English the titles of Lord of Lords the Foremost of the State and the Conspicuous of the Empire (15) with the privilege of being carried in a Naleky. Through the same recommendation Shytah rāy obtained for himself the titles of the Prefect of the State, and of the Valiant and Victorious in War to which were added the honours and insignia of the Mahi. He was now cutting a capital figure at Azim abad, where he passed his days with honour ease, pleasure and profit.

This Minister on the new Governor's installation made a voyage to Calcutta whither I thought proper to accompany him his good manners and civilities having made a conquest of my heart. Mr Veris in several visits received Shytah rāy handsomely, and dismissed him with regard and honour. The

---

(15) Qhan-I qhanau, Mubaryz-el-muk Mualén-ed-dōwla  
Mumtaz-el-muk, Bahadyr Mansor-djung

administration was settled in this manner, that Shytah-ráy and Mahmed-reza-qhan, and Djessaret-qhan, Bahadyr, should order all matters relative to Government and Revenue in the best manner they should devise for the Company's benefit, but that twice a week everything they should have settled, should be imparted at full length to the respective Englishmen, their associates, who should sign in those two days whatever should have been latterly transacted, and that every receipt and expenditure of each District, after having been so signed by the Englishmen of those parts, should be transmitted by each Nâib or Deputy to the Company's Registers of Calcutta at the end of each year. The affairs of distributive justice were left to the Daroga or Superintendent of that department, with power to hear and determine in small matters, equitably and to the best of his judgment, but affairs of importance were to be decided in the Nâib's presenee, and in that of the Englishman, his colleague, for two days in each week, which days should be different from the usual justice days. In consequence of such an arrangement, business went on, and the English commenced acquiring a knowledge of the usages and customs of the country. For it was a standing rule with them, that whatever remarkable they heard<sup>d</sup> from any man versed in business, or even from any other individual, was immediately set in writing in a kind of book composed of a few blank leaves, which most of them carry about, and which they put together afterwards, and bind like a book for their future use. Matters went on in that manner, until Mr Rumbold having in the year one thousand one hundred and eighty-three quitted Bengal to repair to his country, was succeeded by Mr Alexander, as was Mr Sykes at Moorshoodabad by Mr Beecher.

It was under the latter's administration that a famine made its appearance all over the country. It made its approaches with all its terrors, added to a severe mortality, and to a small-pox, that spared no age and no sex. Séif-ed-doulah himself fell sick of that distemper, and succumbed under its violence, as did his kinsman, Ashref-aaly qhan. Foteh-olla-qhan, brother-in-law to Mahmed-reza-qhan, underwent the same fate, which also swept away his consort. This lady was sister to the consorts of Mahmed-reza-qhan and of Hadji-ismail-qhan, (all three being

A.D 1769-70

daughters of Rabia begum who was herself daughter of Hadji ahmed's) The famine and small pox having made their appearance at one and the same time in Mubharrem, that is, at the commencement of the year one thousand one hundred and eighty four, they both rose to such a height, and raged so violently for full three months together, that vast multitudes were swept away, nor can their number be known but to Him that knows everything that is hidden or invisible. Whole villages and whole towns were swept away by these two scourges and they suddenly disappeared from the face of earth. It was in such calamitous times, that is in the month of Zilhidy of the year 1185 that Mubarec ed dōulah third son of Mir-djafer-qhan's was designed Nazem of Bengal and on Mahmed reza qhan's recommendation Aaly hibrahim-qhan was appointed Divan or Superintendent of the new Prince's household which constitutes the whole of what is called the Nizamet or Government of Bengal, and had then a revenue of twenty four lacs from the Company's treasury. The new Minister who was a man of an approved character did not fail to exhibit many talents joined to a thorough inclination to do good and to oblige. Some further changes likewise took place in the new Prince's house and family. For Mahmed reza-qhan, who is a man of strange proceedings and still stranger inclinations after having been for a course of years in close connection and in complete intimacy with Menny begum mother to Séif-ed-dōulah wanted now to pull down that Princess whose lofty spirit and extensive influence had given him much umbrage and that too after having entered with her into certain stipulations and treaties solemnly sworn to. All this change of hands took place for the sake of similar intimacies and similar connections and treaties which had arisen of late between him and Bābboo-begum. Mubarec-ed-dōulah's mother another Princess whom he wanted to raise upon her ruins. This new favourite having shewn at his instigation a mind to quarrel with Menny begum the two Princesses became so inimical to each other that they avoided each other's sight. But Menny begum whose extent of understanding nothing can be compared to but the immense stock which she is known to be possessed of in jewels and money thought proper to take no notice of such an alteration and although deeply wounded

by such underhand dealings, she thought it beneath her dignity to descend to an explanation, and she passed the whole over with a disdainful silence. Nevertheless, Babboo-begum's authority and sway were but of short duration.

It was observed at this period that the English of some rank spent their time merrily and in pleasures, and lived upon terms of much friendship and intimacy with the noblemen and other persons of distinction, natives of this country. They were endeavouring to engage them in conversation, especially upon the politics of the country, and so soon as an Englishman could pick up anything relative to the laws or business of this land, he would immediately set it down in writing, and lay it up in store for the use of another Englishman, nor had they any other view in taking notice of a Moghul or a native, or in courting an acquaintance with him. No wonder then, if some persons, who in these times of half knowledge, had come by mere chance to the helm of affairs and Government, should prove fearful, lest others by imparting more knowledge and affording more lights, might bring them under the imputation of neglect or infidelity, and thereby lessen their importance in the estimation of the English.

No wonder, if they made haste to initiate them in those whatever little arts of oppression and rapine, which they had themselves employed through thick and thin, and through wet and dry, or which had been devised by vile men, and set up as standing rules and established customs. It was upon such customs that they gave lessons to the English, doubtless to the end that not a jot of former tyranny might be abated, or lost by disuse. An affair of Moorlydur's decision came one day to be debated in an assembly, where I remember to have been present. Two men disputed against each other. When sentence came to be pronounced, the one that had proved faithless and guilty, was fined into a sum of money, by way of fine and amend, but the other man, who had the right on his side, was likewise made to pay some money, by way of thanksgiving. Mr Rumbold, who did not want sense, and was then like his other countrymen, who in those beginnings of their dominion were more careful and more inclined to conciliate the hearts of the natives than they are at present, Mr Rumbold, I say, could not help expressing his surprise at the decision, and said "That to take a fine from the man who

was in the wrong and had behaved in a surely impertinent manner is a proper way of punishing him it is punishing his 'infidelity in kind But what I cannot understand' added he 'is that a fine should be levied also on him who had the right on his side and was guiltless This seems to be very strange 'What can be the meaning of that?' This was answered by Moorly dur and the other vile flatterers, who having observed the advantage arising from the thanksgiving added "That this business had been transacted according to the rules and 'customs of the land That there was no innovation of theirs 'in it nor had they set up any new invention of their own' The gentleman expressed his astonishment and detestation but remained silent for the moody arising from the practices of that vile multitude of time servers has always a sweet savour *Can it be expected then that a nation that has been brought to such a head by worldly minded men, and shews no other view or intent than that of adding to its acquisitions will for any length of time abstain from such practices with such temptations and such examples under its eyes?* Even to this day when the veil has been withdrawn from the whole matter and intirely set aside there never comes out of the hands of the English any such transaction or matter as may reflect an ill renown on their own countrymen directly It is the Indians that are made use of for such purposes and it is only in consequence of the behaviour of their dependants in the management of revenue matters and in the distribution of justice and in consequence of the incapacity and baseeness of the Hindians themselves that some corruption and some oppression has crept ever amongst the English in office I am inclined to believe that if ever these foreigners come to conceive an inclination to alleviate the sufferings of the people of this land and to attend to their supplications probably the oppressed would find some release from the tyranny and hardships under which they now labour For it is observed that not one of those that shewed so much zeal for the Company's benefit but in fact had sought only their own welfare ever thought proper to bestow a moment in informing the English of the reasons of some minute institutions of the necessity of munificence and good will towards the natives of the foundation of ancient customs and for what purpose

such and such an institution was set up, or what benefit might be derived from it. Matters have come to such a pass, that the Books and Memorandums composed by the English upon such interested reports as those of which we have given an example, have come to be trusted as so many vouchers, whereas they are only some faint idea of the exterior and bark, but not of the pith or real reason, of those institutions. Meanwhile as these strangers are men of penetration and extreme keenness of mind, and they have been sent by God Almighty to chastise this guilty, criminal race of Hindostances, over some of whose deluded Sovereigns they have been made to prevail by breaking this race of proud Pharaohs and improvident short-sighted Princes by the strong hand of those new-comers, so they are come at last to undervalue the Hindostances, and to make no account of the natives from the highest to the lowest, and they carry their contempt so far, as to employ none but their own selves in every department and in every article of business, esteeming themselves better than all others put together. It is true that they have commenced disputes and altercations with the rulers of their own appointing, and with their officers and dependants, but it is no less true that in the moment of inquiring about the infidelities, transactions and concussions of the latter, they have stopped short, to pass over the whole, with dissimulation and connivance. Nevertheless, this very inquiry is become one of the tokens of the Supreme Disposer's dispensations. For these men brought to the helm of affairs, and to the summit of power, be the mere partiality of the English, had in the little time which their borrowed authority had lasted, assumed so much pride and state, they were puffed with so much arrogance, and betrayed so much contempt for the rules of benevolence, and meekness and decence, that their behaviour is past belief. Neither the forgiven Mehabet-djung (16), nor the illustrious Shudjah-ed-dowlah, although both born in the height of power and exercising it in the fullness of authority, ever came up to one-tenth of the haughtiness of these envious men, nor did they ever use their dependants with so much superciliousness and arrogance, as did

---

(16) Aaly-verdy-qhan, the last real King of Bengal. He is hardly known by any other name than that title, which signifies the *dignity of war*, and possibly, the *terror of war*.

Severe hints  
against Mah-  
med raza  
qhan.

these new men It is observable of these envious men that whenever they come to spy anyone enjoying some regard and consideration amongst the English they get up immediately and never give themselves any rest until they have depreciated and discredited his merit having made it a point to break the spirits and to lower the characters of everyone of those who can pretend to derive any native lustre from their noble descent, or from their rational and virtuous lives and it is a fact that everyone of those new men singling out for ruin and disgrace some man of an ancient pedigree allowed himself no rest until he had carried his point, and had hunted his game down In consequence of which envious persecution it is come to pass that at last all Hindostanees whatever have gradually lost the consideration and regard they enjoyed hitherto and have fallen promiscuously in disgrace and contempt but in such a manner however as that the very perpetrators of these machinations have met themselves with a reward adequate to their own wicked intentions and have fallen in a greater contempt and disgrace, than those very men they had been pursuing with so much eagerness Nor has anything befallen them but what they richly deserved, and was of their own seeking nor are they indebted for their own disgrace to any hint to their own hand and heart (17) Such are Thy dispensations O Almighty God!

But let us leave these disagreeable matters We shall speak of them more at large hereafter so as to elucidate the above sentence for we must now return to the course of our narrative We may remember how Mir rohi eddin hosséin qhan had by a sudden stroke of his destiny jumped into the Government of P8raniah and had kept possession of it This sudden Governor proved to be a man thoughtless and indolent opinionated excessively prodigal and unprovident ever immersed in a sea of pleasures and sensualities and never emerging from the gulf of a variety of strange practices, but to plunge headlong into all the excesses of drunkenness and forgetfulness of himself He had given the title of Qhan to a young man called Asker aaly, who was grandson of Shah Mstepha-c8ly, one of his father's Directors and he had become so very fond of him as to invest him with full powers over his public and private concerns This

fondness for him growing every day stronger and stronger, this young man, who was excessively intriguing and ill-natured, and withal so impatient and passionate, as to forget himself every moment, no sooner found out that his master was devoted to his will, than he did whatever he pleased. He made it a system to undermine all those that kept at a distance from him, whilst he promoted and carried forward his own creatures. He spent sums of money in the company of dancers of both sexes, singers, fortune-tellers, farcers, and a variety of such sorts of people, but as he took care also not to meddle with some relations of his master's, who were always of his table and company, he kept him in good humour, as well as fully satisfied with his own conduct, and all this at the very time he was continually oppressing both the farmer and the soldiery. No wonder if the revenues of the province fell into so much languor, that the officers of Government at Moorshood-abad lodged a variety of complaints against his master on account of the scantiness of his remittances. He was written to several times by some of his friends, who gave him warning of his danger, and even some of his intimates, fearless of his Nâib's power, ventured upon giving good advice to their slothful lord, but did no good, and they soon were exposed to the revengeful Nâib's resentment. At last one Hosséin-cooly, who had been a favourite eunuch to Séif-qhan, uncle to Roh-eddin-hosséin, prevailed upon him, after a deal of words and intreaties, to dismiss his favourite, after which he was himself made Nâib in his stead, and it must be acknowledged that in the little time his administration lasted, he brought public matters into some order, and regulated also his master's household. But Roh-eddin-hosséin, who remained ignorant of everything, and minded nothing, but that young man, for whom he had, I know not what for, all the sentiments of the most impassionate lover, in a little time sent for him again, and reinstated him in his former office. He devoted himself again to his will, dispossessed the poor Hosséin-cooly, and again left everything in that wretched youth's power and disposal. No wonder then if Mahmed-reza-qhan, who like all the other men in authority of those days, could not bear to see an illustrious name enjoy some regard or any consideration amongst the English, took care to represent to the Council the arrears and balances

Strange  
character  
the Gover  
of P8ran  
who is dis  
missed



due by the Revenue of P8ranah, and got Roh-eddin hosséin qhan dismissed from his office. On his dismissal it was bestowed on Ráy sóuchut ráy, who took a lease of that revenue. The Council at the same time settled a pension of five thousand rupees per month that is sixty thousand a year on Roh eddin hosséin qhan. Things went on in that manner for one year when Sóuchut ráy himself was recalled and cast in prison and Rezy eddin mahmed qhan appointed Governor of the province.

Scarcity of  
coin felt in  
Bengal

On this occasion it was observed that money had commenced to become scarce in Bengal whether this scarcity be owing to the oppressions and exactions committed by the rulers or to the stinginess of the public expense or lastly to the vast exportation of coin which is carried every year to the country of England it being common to see every year five or six Englishmen or even more who repair to their homes with large fortunes. Lacs piled upon lacs have therefore been drained from this country nor is the cheapness of grain to impose on the imagination. It arises from nothing else, but the scarcity of coin and the paucity of men and cattle. Nor are these deficiencies anything else but the natural consequences of the non-existence of that numerous Hindian cavalry which heretofore used to fill up the plains of Bengal and Bahar, and which (reckoning those in the Government service as well as those in the Zemindary pay together with the expectants and their servants) could not amount to less than seventy or eighty thousand effective men whereas now a horseman is as scarce in Bengal as a Phoenix in the world. The decrease of products in each District added to the innumerable multitudes swept away by famine and mortality still go on augmenting the depopulation of the country so that an immense quantity of land remains untilled and fallow whilst those that are tilled cannot find a vent for their productions. And this is so far true that were it not for the purchases of Saltpetre, Opium raw Silk and white Piece goods which the English make yearly throughout Bengal and Bahar probably a Rupee or an Eshroffi would have become in most hands as scarce as the Philosopher's Stone and it would come to pass that most of the people newly born would be at a loss to determine what it was which people called heretofore a Rupee and what could be meant formerly by

the word Eshiefi (18) Matters continued in that languishing state until the end of the year 1184, at which time Mr Veris having thought proper to go home, was succeeded by Mr Cartier, the next in rank and seniority Under this new administration the decrease of the rents struck the administration with amazement and fear They were confounded at the great diminution of the revenue, and at the endless minutiae in which it was involved These men anxious to investigate the matter to the bottom, and to obtain a thorough insight in the rules and usages according to which the revenue was collected, came to the resolution of sending throughout the country one of their own nation, who should inquire what business the subject had with the Ruler, and in what relation stand the farmers to the Radjahs and Zemindars of the country(19), and what these are to give to the rulers of the land, and which and what perquisites and duties they draw, and under what name do they receive tributes The choice fell on Hooshar-djung-bahadyr, Mr George Vansittart, who was also my particular friend, and who in fact proved a man of keen genius, much wisdom, and one of those who to a very valuable character of their own, joined a great acquaintance with the minute parts of business This worthy man set out on the above business, first by going to Dinadj poor, and there having acquired as much knowledge as his time could afford, he was welcomed with the applause of his friends and countrymen, as well as with the approbation of the Council But as his inquest had brought to light many infidelities and disorders in which the finances of Bengal were involved, and the Council had conceived some general suspicions even against Shytab-ráy's administration, which they thought equally tainted, it was resolved that the whole country should be divided into six departments, and that over and above the respective Councillois associated hitherto to Mahmed-reza-qhan, to Shytab-ráy, and to Djessaret-qhan, there should be appointed in each of the six districts, three or four gentlemen more, not Councillois, but yet of a rank next to it, by whose concurrence business should be

A D 1769

Resolution of the Board to investigate all Revenue matters to the bottom

---

(18) A gold rupee is worth sixteen silver ones of Calcutta, but those struck elsewhere are inferior in value

(19) Radjahs and Zemindars imply nearly the same meaning, namely, that of great land-holders

Bengal and  
Bahar divided  
into six Govern-  
ments

carried on Amongst these Mr Vansittart and Mr Palk together with the Chief of Azim abad were appointed a Council for that province and the whole country was divided into six collections to wit, Calcutta Bardwan Radj sbahly with Moorshood-ahad Djehan ghir nagar dacc Dinadj poor and Azim-abad.

As soon as the appointment of Mr Vansittart to Azim-abad as a member of that Council became public those that were inimical to Shytab rdy conceived mighty hopes from such a change although his able conduct and his obliging management were such that few were the men and but few throughout that whole province that could find fault with his administration. Nevertheless as it is impossible that everyone of his dependants should have been like his master or that a single man's behaviour however equitable and just should be of one tenor with all the world those that were envious of his greatness got everything ready to light up a mighty flame in so much that he was intimidated. And although the hem of his robe was pretty free from the dirt of infidelity and the few blemishes in it if any at all could not enter in comparison with his many services yet such was his diffidence at the inconveniences that were likely to arise from a difference of nation and language as well as from his unacquaintance with the man's character and genius that he became somewhat doubtful of what might become of him. At last Vansittart himself arrived when Shytab-ry went out to meet him as far as Fotwa where having taken him upon his own elephant they returned to the city together to the no small regret of those envious of him who sought only to raise disturbances and had hastened to wait on Mr Vansittart with no other view but that of setting up a shop of chicane and malice. They were struck dumb on seeing Shytab-ry's artful behaviour. Indeed he was a man of great sense and great honour and not onlyaverse himself from all acts of oppression and infidelity, but vigorously active in restraining his dependants from anything villainous. As a great statesman and a great accountant, he had ready every kind of paper that could be called for. Firm and steady in his behaviour and answers, he never boggled or tergiversed at all the numberless questions put to him by Mr Vansittart and never shewed any hesitation in affording whatever information was desired or

whatever lights were expected. He continued to answer with so much firmness and propriety, that he never afforded him any opening by which any imputation might be fastened upon his character. No wonder if Mr Vansittart surprised at his candour, and convinced of his fidelity, wisdom, and knowledge, should have set open for him the gates of friendship and union, nor did the Radja prove wanting to himself on such an overture. After having thoroughly cleared the path of justification, he came forth himself from the door of love and attachment, and by a respectful behaviour, and a variety of curious presents, he gained so much upon the man's mind, that the latter was thoroughly satisfied with him. After Vansittart's arrival, Mr Alexander, who had been recalled, was succeeded by Mr Djakul, who being likewise recalled after a short time, Mr Barwell came in his stead. As this gentleman had a strong interest at home, and was impressed with a high opinion of his own wisdom and penetration, he did not live upon good terms with Mr Vansittart, and to shew his own power and sufficiency, he expressed a wish that Shytah-ráy should entirely close with his measures, and give up his connections with the latter. To this Shytah-ráy answered, "That without solid grounds and strong reasons, he "could not estrange himself from his friends, and admitting," said he, "that I should do it upon your commands, what dependence can you lodge in me yourself after such a proceeding?" This answer was full of sense, but Mr Barwell, who was of a haughty and violent temper, and likewise indisposed against him, could not understand his meaning, and he not only became discontented, but remained in that mind of his until some time after the arrival of the valiant Mester Hushtin, the prop of the State, and the impetuous in war (20). This man, who in strength of genius, extent of knowledge, beauty of style, and propriety of manners, has no equal in these times, and who by his winning deportment, and the affability of his temper, has gained so much upon the inclinations of all the world, that there is no individual but finds himself beholden to him for some favour or some benefit, no sooner landed at Calcutta, by order from home, than he invited Mr Barwell to a seat in the Committee of Calcutta, an assembly of five persons that manage and controul the affairs of

---

(20) Umad-el-mulk, Mester Hushtin-bahadyr, Djeladet-djung

all Hindostan. In order to that purport having been dispatched to that gentleman he repaired to Calcutta, and left Mr Vansittart sole Chief of Azim abad as well as President of the Council which composed the government of that place and consisted of four men more *to wit* Mr Astuvun (Stevenson) Mr Dooroz (Mr Droze) Mr Avonn Law and Maharadja Shytab rây

Charges exhibited in England, by Lord Clive's management, against Governor Vansittart.

We have left Governor Vansittart on his way to England. After his arrival in that country his administration had become the object of a severe inquiry. Lord Clive had taken care to make it a general topic in the Council of that kingdom. But Vansittart (who was a man of such an extent of genius and so much firmness of mind that his countrymen themselves acknowledge how difficult it would be to find such another man throughout all England) took care to give such rational answers to each charge as overthrew the accusations prepared against him, and set in an advantageous light the valuable services he had rendered to the State. Amongst all the articles of chicane exhibited against him a principal one was this that they imputed to him the death of the English prisoners slaughtered by Mir cassem's order. But he soon confuted the imputation by producing a paper written at Calcutta at the time of Mr Amyatt's death where the Councillors openly disclosed their minds and importuned their Governor for a declaration of war against that Prince. He proved his having represented that as there were so many

The Governor's rational and vigorous defence.

English prisoners in that Prince's power it would be proper to make some accommodation with him at present until the prisoners should be released after which it might be time to go to war but the Councillors blinded by their passion and by the fury of their resentment unanimously clamoured for war and gave it under their hands that *whether the prisoners were to be slaughtered to a man or not they would go to war immediately*. Vansittart on this declaration had consented to an immediate war but he kept the paper carefully by him and now he presented it open to the Council of England and asked whether they conceived now that the slaughter was imputable to him or to the Members of the Council adding that if they had the least doubt about the matter it would soon be cleared up by inspecting the paper. This paper in reality turned

the tide in his favour, and the members of the English Council, on seeing the contents, applauded his penetration, and conceived as much esteem for his keenness of mind, as contempt for the precipitancy of his accusers. But there was another misdemeanour which those accusers wanted to fasten upon him, and it was this. That he had forborne trading in salt on the Company's account, although he knew that such an article of trade would produce immense benefits, when exported duty-free to distant places, instead of which, he had left in entirely to the Indians. "To this new charge Shems-ed-dowlah answered, "by acknowledging the immense benefits that might have accrued from trading in salt for the Company's account; but he "added, that he had been overawed, by a variety of considerations arising on that subject, and had been deterred from "the attempt, on reflecting on the various branches of trade "already enjoyed by the Company throughout the whole country. "That should it be admitted, that the inhabitants of Bengal "consisted of five kinds of men, *to wit*, servants to Government, handicraftmen, merchants, labourers, and necessitous "people, that is, old and poor men, it would be found that the "servants of Government alone amounted to several hundred "thousands, who had no other way of subsisting than by dealing "in salt, from which article, by-the-bye, they were wholly debarred in the Company's own dominions. That to those myriads "must be added another multitude that have subsisted entirely "by trade, at a time when the Company was enjoying but a "part of the trade of Bengal, whereas now it enjoys the whole, "and another multitude of the better sort again, which being "accustomed to subsist by serving in the cavalry, had found "now that such a species of service was entirely disregarded, "and had betaken themselves to merchandising. It is then for "those multitudes," added he, "that I have left alone that branch "of trade which might afford them a livelihood, multitudes that "amount to as much again as all the people in England and in "the Company's service put together, my views having always "been, that there might remain some veil over our system, and "that every man in Bengal should not become our personal "enemy. In one word, I was fearful, lest the whole nation, "already oppressed by our traders, and by the Company's

Sensible remark on the relation subsisting between the Governors and the governed.

encroachments, might be driven to despair, on finding that our 'knife has cut deep and to the very bone. What if times are not all of one tenor? What if a change of events should take place? Would you choose then to have everyone of those 'people turn out upon you as your sworn enemies?' This speech of Vansittart's was greatly applauded by the wise men of those parts, and they expressed their contempt of his accusers in strong terms. In fact these sentences were very pithy and those admonitions proved full of penetration and of good sense. *And what if his adversaries had been told that ruling and government need the assent and satisfaction of the governed and that it was far from finding its account in the injury and ruin of the subject?*

"If thou hast comprehended this, let me kiss thy wisdom

"But if thou art insensible, what a pity and what a pity!

Mr Vansittart having come off victorious from those accusations, became henceforward so conspicuous that those who had the power of binding and loosing in that country conceived that there was no man fitter for the purpose of introducing order and regularity in that distracted country than himself. After his departure they sent some further orders for his perusal. Misfortune would have it so that the ship which carried him was swallowed up by the sea, in such a manner that no intelligence and no vestige could ever be discovered of her in any part of the world. When this piece of news reached England the wise men of that country after a thorough examination of the case resolved that in such a conjuncture they had one person equal to Mr Vansittart and none fit to make amends for his loss but Mr Hushin who was the very man fit to be sent and to be seated in his stead. The said Master was then Bará saháb or Governor of Arcat in Decan (21). They therefore made haste to send him an order to depart for Calcutta where he was to take charge of the affairs of that country to peruse the Company's dispatches and likewise to attend to the instructions destined for Mr Vansittart, which he was to put in

Governor Vansittart sent back with honour to Bengal but perishes at sea.

---

(21) As Mahmed-ally-ghan is only a nominal Sovereign of the province of Arcat in Decan, the people of Hindostan make no account of him, but always reckon that the Governor of Madrást or as they call it Mendaradj or Chinnapatan, is fact Viceroy of Arcat

execution in the manner which he might think convenient. At the same time they dispatched another packet to Calcutta, with injunctions to leave closed and sealed the instructions destined for Mr Vansittart, until Mr Hushtin himself should open and peruse them. These two orders having reached their two destinations, Mr Hushtin went from Mendradj to Calcutta, where the packet, that is, the letter of the European Council, containing the instructions and orders, had been kept under seal; and during the three months which Mr Cartier remained in Calcutta, he contented himself with acting only as his second in the Government, but he availed himself of those three months to spend days and nights in perusing the papers relative to past transactions, and also in meditating upon the orders and instructions brought by the said packet. At the end of that time, which probably was the term fixed for Mr Cartier's administration, he took his post in the Governor's chair, and in a few days after, he dispatched orders for putting Mahmed-reza-qhan and Shytaby under arrest, and for bringing them to Calcutta. The two orders were addressed to Mr Gram, (John Graham), Chief of Moorshoodabad, with so much secrecy that Mr Vansittart, Chief of Azimabad, knew nothing of them. But it is reported that Mr Gram, who was a great friend of Mahmed-reza-qhan's, had said, that since his endeavours had failed in saving and sheltering that Minister, it was proper that Shytaby, who was in a similar office, and upon ill terms with Mahmed-reza-qhan, (but for whose deposition and arrest there was no order from Europe) should partake of the other's disgrace. Djon-gram, in consequence of such a management, wrote such letters to the Governor, that he obtained an order for recalling Shytaby also, and for putting him in confinement, as well as Mahmed-reza-qhan. God preserve the innocent from such artifices, and such partialities!

Mr Hushtin arrives as Governor at Calcutta, and spends ninety days and nights in perusing records

He sends an order for arresting Mahmed-reza-qhan and Shytaby

Mr Djon-gram was at supper in the house of one of his nation, when the Governor's orders directed to him, were suddenly brought in. He quitted the company sooner than usual, and repaired to his house, from whence he wrote a note to a Captain of troops, and straight this piece of intelligence was carried, I know not how, in the very words to Mahmed-reza-qhan. But he was so full of the authority which he enjoyed, that he paid no regard to



the intelligence but recommenced another nap with the utmost neglect and security. There remained no more than one hour of night when the Captain with a battallon of Talingas arrived close to Nyshat bagh accompanied by Mr Anderson and he stopped at the gate. Mr Anderson with some servants went into the Navvab's apartment and after intimating the Governor's order upon which he condoled with him, he added that there was no intention to do him any harm or to make him uneasy at all on any account but that such an order had come and must be obeyed. As Mahmed reza-qhan had neither the heart or the power to make the least resistance he inclined the head in token of submission and consented to whatever was required of him. The Captain of troops after dismissing Mahmed reza-qhan's Talingas placed his own in every place and every spot as a guard with injunctions to offer no rudeness and no opposition to any of that Minister's servants or to any of his visitors but only to send their Commander immediate notice should any of these offer any resistance. They had orders also to behave respectfully to that Minister but to hinder anything from being carried out of the palace and even to take care that himself should not walk in the precincts of the garden unaccompanied. After such a regulation a Lieutenant (which is an officer next in rank to a Captain) was dispatched with a detachment to that Minister's Palace in town which Palace goes by the name of *Nosh-e-qbt* (22) and contains the apartments of his ladies. Such Talingas of the Minister's as he had found on duty were left as they were but he stationed an equal number of his own men at every door and every gate without offering however any injury to anyone or even putting any question to a single man. This revolution affected differently the principal persons of Moorshoodabad and it was expected that Menny begum who had her mind so obscured by the dust of boldness and discontent as to wish for Mahmed reza-qhan's disgrace would now avail herself of so fair an opportunity to complete his ruin. But that Princess on the contrary had generosity enough to forbear

---

22) *Nosh-e-qbt* signifies new built. It is Palace raised and fitted in the Hindostani manner. But *Nyshat-bagh*, or the garden of intoxicating pleasures is a elegant seat at five miles from thence built, furnished, and fitted in the English manner.

her pursuit, and benevolence enough to seek that Minister's release, by every means and every endeavour in her power, and she performed some manœuvres to that effect, which would have done much honor to an able man, versed in business. It is with that same steadiness, and uniformity of conduct, that she remained attached to Governor Hushtin in the sequel, when he came to be attacked by General Clavering, although it was a time of doubt and speculation. But she remained steady, without ever betraying the least weakness, or committing anything wrong. After Mahmed-reza-qhan's disgrace, she was appointed tutrix to Mubarec-ed-dowlah, and invested with the inspection and absolute direction of whatever concerned the Nizamet of Government of Bengal, (words, which now signify no more than the household of that young Prince). To execute the detail of that office, she appointed for her Nâib, or deputy, an eunuch, who was now her servant, but who had once been a slave to the forgiven Navvab Issac-qhan. Unfortunately Itbar-aaly-qhan (for such was the eunuch's name) was a man of a slow comprehension, and a distorted disposition, narrow-minded, and of an unequal temper, who gave a deal of trouble and uneasiness to an infinity of people (23), and this proved the only blemish in that Princess's conduct. For although she is not of a virtuous family, nor of a noble birth, yet she is a woman of infinite merit, and her good sense, as well as her steadiness of temper, are never so remarkable, as when she has any scheme to carry forward. For whatever she has once undertaken, she never fails to perform, as she always finds some expedient to bring it to perfection. And had she brought herself to the practice of sitting behind a curtain, and of hearing herself from thence the representations of suitors, in order to determine them afterwards with her deputy, there is no doubt but the Government of Moorshoodabad, and the direction of the affairs of the Nizamet, (at least such as it is at the present day),

---

(23) Numbers of people, who know Itbar-aaly-qhan personally, (and the Translator is one of them), differ greatly from our Author in this portrait.

They say, that he is a man of much sense, and very extensive charity. But he has been a man in office for a number of years, and in an office which chiefly consisted in rejecting some people's requests, and in admitting others, and such a state of things cannot fail of producing much odium, and still greater envy and jealousy.

would have never been taken out of her hands. Instead of that, she gave herself up to the eunuch entirely, a man opinionated, destitute of sense, and incapable of the art of ruling. By that man's counsels she reduced both Mubarec ed-döwlah, and his mother Babboo begum to so low a condition (although she herself had been bred a slave girl in the house of Babboo begum's father) that both the mother and son came at last to be bereft of all power and to lose all credit and consideration. But it must be confessed that Mubarec ed döwlah deserved no better usage as we shall shortly mention after relating some other events of more importance.

A. D. 1771

We have left Mahmed reza-qhao under arrest and with an English guard upon him. He was in suspense between fear and supplication when there came a second order from the Governor to bring him down to Calcutta and thither he was sent under the same guard which had been already charged with him. It was in the year of the Hedjrah 1186. A vast concourse of people whether from a principle of time serving or from regard to the known adage *the night is pregnant what shall it bring forth to morrow?* attended him as far as Palassy from whence they returned but numbers who wanted to be before hand with their rivals went as far as Calcutta from whence on finding his affairs desperate they returned after a short stay. Insomuch that none remained with him but a certain number of persons attached to him personally. Here it must be observed that Calcutta is an immense city, not unlike the ocean no one cares for another in the English territory, and as Mahmed reza qhan was now within the Company's precincts he experienced daily a gradual diminution of that regard and those honors which had been hitherto constantly paid him. The attention to his concerns diminished every day his answers and demands were postponed and set by and other business taken in hand. Meanwhile Djon gram who was a warm friend to him, and a stranger to Shytab ráy, finding difficulties in supporting the former contrived to involve the latter in Mahmed reza qhan's misfortunes (although probably there was no such order from Europe) and he managed so dexterously as to have such an order sent to Azim rhab. But such was the obliging behaviour of the Radjahs and such his art of conciliating the minds of

everyone, and of giving satisfaction to all, that Mr George Vansittart, to whom the order was addressed, contented himself with advising him to repair to Calcutta before such a day, and he carried his regard so far, that without informing him of the purport of his orders, he only advised him, as a friend, to take such a journey, nor did he disclose the matter to him until about the end of the month of Sefer, in the year 1186 So that there elapsed a whole month betwixt his arrest and that of Mahmed-reza-qhan's The Radja, on the appointed day, got into his Badjara, and proceeded on his journey to Calcutta Mr. Vansittart having appointed a company of Talingas to do him honor, gave secret orders to the Soobadar, that is, to the Commander of it, to let him proceed as far as the confines of the Government of Azim-abad, after which he was himself to embark on the same Badjara, by way of attendance, but without departing from the usual custom of paying his bow in the morning, or of shewing every mark of respect and regard, until he had carried him to Calcutta Shytab-ráy having been in this manner conducted to that city, landed at the house which he had always used But the detail of the answers and questions relative to these two prisoners, is not public, nor is it come to light how that affair ended Whenever it comes out, properly attested, mention shall be made of it in the continuation of these sheets, if it pleases God

Shytab-ráy  
arrested and  
sent to  
Calcutta

After about two months more the Members of the Council of Moorshood-abad, and of Azim-abad, received an order of the Council of Calcutta, by which Radja Shytab-ráy and Mahmed-reza-qhan were declared dismissed from their respective offices of inspection over the Imperial Qhalissah, (that is, over the estimate and collection of the Imperial revenue), with injunction to those two provincial Councils, to take that business into their own hands The next day, in the morning, Mr Vansittart having assembled in the Imperial castle the principal men of the city, and the heads of offices, repaired himself thither, with his Council, and having retired with them into a room apart, he translated the supreme orders in Persian, and gave them to the Moonshy or Secretary, Seradj-eddin-mohamed-qhan, with orders to read them in a loud voice to the whole assembly, to which he was to explain them distinctly, article by article The

The Council  
of Azim-abad  
appointed to  
take charge of  
the finances of  
that province

purport was 'That Maharadja Shytab ráy had been dismissed from the office of Divan of the Imperial Revenue and that the Council of Azim abad had been appointed to rule in his stead to whose orders of course the officers of that office were to pay obedience but that the said Maharadja having been confirmed in his office of the management of the Nizamet, they were therefore to acknowledge his authority in that branch' From that period the Members of the Council have continued in the management of the Qhalissah or office of finances singly and in full authority without the assistance of any Hindostani Nâib, or deputy and although it is certain that, long before this period and so early as Mir daafer-qhan's demise the English had ever borne a sovereign sway in every thing and had enjoyed full power everywhere yet upon the whole the management of the finances was in the hands of Mahmed reza qhan and of Shytab-ráy nor was it but some years after that is, on the arrival of Governor Hushtin in the year 1186 of the Hedjrâb that the English gentlemen have accustomed themselves to govern without the assistance of an Hindostanee Nâib or of any other creditable man from the natives excepting however some clerks and some other dependants of Mahmed reza-qhan's and of Shytab-ráy's, which were kept as registers and detail men but still under the absolute controul and the sole direction of the gentlemen of the Council It is true that the English retain at Calcutta a Gentoo who is son of D818b ram, and grandson to Radja Djanki ram one of Aaly verdy qhan's Ministers but it is only for show and although he bears the name of Divan of the Imperial Qhalissah he is in fact no more than a clerk to Mr Doocreel (Ducarel), and to every Englishman that shall be appointed real Divan or Superintendent of that office Who knows what shall happen next? We have seen stranger things than that

A D 1771

For on the beginning of the year 1193 Qhyaliram went to Calcutta where he took a lease of the revenues of Azim-abad partly on his own account, and the rest on account of Radja Caalyan sing son to Shytab-ráy but he was hardly returned, when there arose feuds and heart-burnings between them both In a little time Qhyaliram and after him Sadooram were sent into confinement and disgraced so as to lose all credit by

which revolution Caalyan-sing was left in the vortex of necessity and embarrassment, endeavouring in vain to collect the balances due from the districts of those two Gentoos, and from his own

" The world is undone by the men of world,                    "

" The pretence is Siavush and Afrasiab (24) "

When Mahmed-reza-qhan and Shytaby-ray arrived, under a guard of English soldiers, at Calcutta, the Governor was preparing to take a journey to Moorshoodabad, in order to acquire a knowledge of the affairs of Bengal, and to put them under proper management. But first of all, in compliance with the instructions arrived from his country, he suppressed the Council of twelve that had hitherto presided over the affairs of all Bengal, and in their stead he established a Committee of five, of which himself was the head. Mr Barwell, who arrived at the end of the year, was the fourth of that Council, but at the end of a twelve month, he went home. The names of the three others I do not know. The ten or twelve former Councillors were ordered to oversee the Company's mercantile affairs, but under the controul of the Committee. Committee signifies an assembly that has full authority to bind and loose all matters, high or low, relative to this country, whether for making conquests, for waging war against obstinate Princes at the head of armies, or for making peace with those who are abandoned by fortune, and submit to their fate. All these matters, and many more of that importance, are all determined in that assembly, in such a manner as they think convenient. The Governor, after having taken these arrangements, set out in the month of the first Rabi, of the year 1186, and came by himself, or only with some Members of the Committee, to Moorshoodabad, where he spent about two months and-a-half in putting in order the affairs of the country, and in dismissing or confirming some officers and other persons who had been concerned in raising or depressing Mahmed-reza-qhan's power, after which he returned to Calcutta. He reduced the Nazem's, or Nominal Navvab's allowance, from twenty-four lacs a year to sixteen, and out of regard to Mubarec-ed-dowlah's tender age, he left the disposal of that sum to Menny-begum's discretion. It was destined to defray the

Governor  
Hushtin re-  
duces the  
Navvab's  
allowance  
from twenty-  
four lacs a  
year to  
sixteen

---

(24) Two ancient Kings of Persia, the first of whom in particular occasioned very bloody wars

household expenses of the young Navvabs, as well as some articles of luxury and parade customary with the Princes of these countries, likewise to pay a number of pensions to Mir djaafar qhan's relations and to the women with whom he has cohabited as well as to some of the descendants of Aaly verdy qhan, lastly, to afford some resource to a number of deserving persons to whom much attention had always been paid by former Nazems. In the like manner a small sum was allowed for the subsistence of some families allied to that of the young Prince. A like sum was made up for the decayed families of Azim abad different from the salary allowed to the Nazem of that place who is now Shytaby's son. But as this sum is not confounded in that allowed to the Nazem it is regularly paid to the proper persons without any charges whereas that of Moorshood-abad being not kept distinct from the Nazem's allowance, it falls within the disposal of his officers, and of his Nâib, all men who being changed or dismissed every second or third year (whilst they are actually in office are perpetually busy in undermining each other dependants and friends), unavoidably become covetous, and think of nothing but of the various arts of filling their own purses without minding the pensioners who are always left in the lurch. For these poor people, who are numerous, and the remaining stock of the ancient nobility, being kept out of their pensions some for sixteen and some for twenty five months together lose very often the whole of their arrears. It being customary to make them sign a receipt in full, under solemn promises of their being henceforward paid regularly, and afterwards to inform them that upon inquiry it is found that the treasury is unable to discharge the balances due but most assuredly would be put for the future upon a better footing and the officers and clerks having thereby got a release fall anew in the practices of their predecessors. So that those ill fated men, and especially the Moorshood abad pensioners, who in these hard times have not a single resource under the canopy of the Hindostany heaven are reduced to such miseries as God relieve mankind from nor do their circumstances or the sufferings of the wretched, affect in the least either the Nazem or his Nâib, or the Begums or any of the men in power or any of the officers of justice, and yet were even that sum which

is fixed, to be distributed properly, and according to the rules of common sense and commiseration, numbers of people would thereby get a sufficient subsistence, and pass their lives in some comfort. But such is their hard fate, that their rulers and administrators, regardless of the tears of mankind, and unmindful of the fear of God, remain entirely insensible, being themselves incapable of any sense of honour, and fearless of any danger from the publicity of the facts, whilst, in matters which cannot conduce to, either their happiness in this world, or their safety in the other, they spend thousands and thousands, nay lacs and lacs, and never abate from their vanities and misdemeanours, as we shall mention shortly, if it pleases God, when we shall by-and-bye say something of their lives, although only as one would mention an unity out of a thousand, or shew a sample out of a heap. But this is enough at present upon so disagreeable a subject, let us revert to politics.

The Governor, after having finished the business which he had in mind, returned to Calcutta, and on a Tuesday, the sixth or sixteenth of the month of the second Djemady, in the year 1186, he arrived in that city, where he ordered the Committee to commence the trial of Mahmed-reza-qhan, and of Shytab-ráy, in such a manner, as each of them should be carried to make his answers and questions separately, and upon alternate days. They commenced with Shytab-ráy, but as this man had with him some decisive papers, and the hem of his garment was free from any dirt, as there did not subsist against him any such grave accusations, nor any such high discontents, as might spoil his affairs, (which, by-the-bye, was exactly the case of Mahmed-reza-qhan's) his trial was soon closed. His conduct proved quite free from the blemishes and false steps of which he had been suspected and accused, insomuch that after a year's conferences and discussions, he was honorably acquitted. The Governor, and all the Members of the Committee, after many excuses and much apology, shewed him every kindness imaginable, and they sent him back to his office with a letter conceived in these terms: "They confessed, that the suspicions "on Shytab-ráy's fidelity, which for certain reasons had found "their way into the minds of the Committee of Calcutta and "of the supreme rulers in Europe, had proved, after a very long,

Trial of  
Shytab ráy,  
who was  
honourably  
acquitted



and a very exact examination destitute of any foundation  
 'and that nothing had appeared from that excellent man but  
 'proofs of fidelity, fair attachment, and zeal That it followed  
 therefore that the hard treatment he had experienced, had  
 been unmerited and far from what his valuable services had  
 deserved To this they added a dress of honour suitable to  
 his rank and merits with an elephant and a number of jewels  
 and he was dismissed to his former station of associate in the  
 Council of Azimabad But the man had already broke his  
 heart accustomed these many years to the kindnesses and cares-  
 ses of the English Rulers he could not brook the ill return he  
 had received for the many valuable services he had rendered  
 the State He fell into a despondent state of mind and took a  
 dislike against all the world, as well as against his own life  
 The truth is that his predestined time being likewise at hand  
 a slight looseness which chanced to come upon him on his arrival  
 at Azimabad turned into a violent flux and made him covet  
 victuals and things he was not accustomed to. The steadiness  
 of his mind and his usual temper forsook him and he hence  
 forward made no distinction between what was hurtful, and  
 what was beneficial to him It is true that the learned Fâiz-aaly  
 (whom may this salute of mine reach at some lucky hour) a  
 famous physician who in these days has not his equal at Azim-  
 abad had attended him some time and there appeared evident  
 signs of his good management having been beneficial but there  
 were about the sick man's person some sycophants and illiberal  
 men, who made it a point to represent me (who was one of  
 Mr Vansittart's friends) as inimical to his welfare and at last  
 found means to remove from his person the physician above  
 who then lived with me after having represented his just re-  
 primands and his unfeigned zeal together with his attachment  
 to me as so many proofs of hatred and enmity insomuch that  
 when the sick man was forced by necessity to recall him again  
 and he heard him strongly recommend his abstaining from the  
 many compound medicines which ignorant persons of all sorts  
 used to prepare in secret for him this ill fated man already  
 prisoner to death, abstained altogether from all physic and  
 left the whole to the course of nature. Nevertheless in con-  
 sequence of the solicitations of the Gentlemen of the Council

And sent  
 back to his  
 former post ;  
 but dies of a  
 broken heart.

who so far from being inimical to him, were sincerely desirous of his recovery, he applied to a doctor, which in English signifies a physician, but this doctor having conjectured that it was proper to evacuate and remove out of his body the impure mixture which had taken consistence in it, he gave him a purging dose, by which the sick man's stomach, already reduced to extreme debility, became weaker and weaker, and at last lost all power of digestion

Raja Shytab-ráy, originally a Cahtri (25) by tribe, was a Kahut-suka-sun by race, and born at Shah-djehan-abad. He was bred in the family of Semsam-ed-dowlah, son to another Semsam-ed-dowlah, better known under the name of Qhando8ran, Lord of Lords to Mahmed-shah, and he commenced by getting into the service of one Aga-soléiman, a Georgian, who was slave and steward to Semsam-ed-dowlah, as well as everything in his house. He had at first but a small salary, but by his abilities in business, and by his meritorious services, he soon became the centre of all business in Aga-soléiman's house, and of course the absolute ruler of Semsam-ed-dowlah's affairs. On that nobleman's repairing to the mansions of God's mercy, and on that capital's becoming a continual scene of revolutions, he concluded that there was no safety for him in those parts, and he obtained the Imperial Divanship of Azim-abad, with the management of the Djaghirs of his master's son, being the districts of Poluch and Malda in Bengal. Thus provided, he came into these eastern countries, and, as it has been already mentioned, soon raised himself to the summit of power. He was a man of great sense, a Minister knowing in business, and a clerk of a quick dispatch, keen, and full of penetration in everything he took in hand, and he had so many other valuable qualities besides, that I always thought him the most deserving, and the ablest man amongst the most eminent men of Hindostan. Although originally a clerk and a penman, he proved that he did not want either courage or prowess upon an emergency, and although he had seen himself courted by Vezirs and by Emperors, nevertheless he had so little pride about him, that he behaved to men

Brilliant  
character of  
Shytab-ráy

---

(25) The Cahtries are one of the four grand tribes or races, into which the Hindoos are divided, it is the second. The *Suka suns* are a sub division, and there is an infinity of subdivisions.

of virtue or of distinction with a modesty and an humility that disarmed envy itself. He comprehended at once and at the very first outset, the intent of everyone's supplication and he used to grant it with a deal of condescension, if he had it in his power and the subject deserved it or else he would offer a handsome excuse, in a condoling language, so that no petitioner ever went away from his presence dissatisfied or discontented. Perpetually in the hurry of business and in conference with a variety of people from day break till noon day and from the evening to three o'clock in the morning he seemed neither fatigued with the number nor impatient with the singularity and extravagance of the demands endlessly crowding upon him but would attend to everyone with a regard always proportioned to the petitioner's rank never chiding or reprimanding anyone or making use of a harsh or dishonest expression nor did ever a word of abuse or rudeness come out of his mouth. Keen and knowing in everything and well apprised of the prices of all kinds of wares he never disputed with merchants but would give them a handsome price at once; nor would he admit stinginess or economy whenever he wanted to make a present. Fond of living high and with elegance, he used to procure from distant cheap places such provisions as he wanted for his own use endeavouring to reconcile that taste of his with the dimensions of his purse. Magnificent and generous in his household, he strove as much as his finances could afford to live up to the grandeur and hospitality of a middling Omrah of Hindostan. For on the very arrival of some person of distinction in town he would send him according to his rank and station, a number of tables covered with a variety of sweetmeats delicacies and dressed victuals, of which he had always quantities made with the utmost nicety and attention. In the entertainments and feasts which he used often to give he always imitated the splendour and the customs of the Moghuls (26) and when at table he used to invite his

---

(26) Although the Moghul that is the Hindostany way of living is so very inferior to an European table both for the variety and costliness of the victuals, and for the expensiveness of liquors and other articles, yet such as it is, it is incomparably superior to the Ill doo or Gento way of living; the very Radjahs and Kings of that persuasion living with such an parsimony as would fright out of their holes, all the hermits of Europe.



mind even in this manner his method was then to send for the person and after having excused himself in a rational manner he ended his apology by making him a handsome present over and above a sufficient sum to carry him back, and he always finished his compliment by dismissing him with politeness and regret. Sheh sherif-eddin mohammed a descendant of the Protomartyr Sheh saïd mohammed, (whose station may God exalt to a higher one!) was an aged learned pious man and one of the principal citizens of (27) Nedjef eshreff (the nobility and holiness of which spot may God augment!) who urged by necessity and by the distress into which he had fallen through some accident had conceived a design of repairing to India on hearing of the opulence of the country and of the rich presents made and the high regard paid by the Grandees of that land to the officers and servants of the sublime places and to those that had lived in or had visited the holy cities (and indeed such was the custom in India when the Empire was yet in its lustre). In these hopes he arrived in Hoogly in his eightieth year and for a full year made a shift to live in that city and in Moorshoodabad but although both the Nazem of Bengal as well as his Nâib or lieutenant (28), were men of much wealth and power both Mussulmen and both served by dependants rich and opulent, yet no one took sufficient notice of his circumstances so that the venerable old man resolved to try his fortune elsewhere and he set out for Ahd and Lucnow the capitals of Shudjah-ed dôwlah's dominions as well as for Iiababad, then the capital and residence of the Emperor Shah-aalem. On his way thither he arrived at Azimabad where having had myself the honor to pay him a visit, I procured the same advantage to Radja Shytaby. This Minister on his first hearing of that venerable man's arrival and circumstances got into his palkey and altho a Gentoo he left at the door his retinue and insignia, and went in only with one

---

(27) Nedjef-eshreff signifies the holy spot above the waters. In fact, it is a spot always free from the inundations of the Forat or Euphrates, whereon Aaly the cousin and son-in-law of Mahomet, is entombed. Hence the city of Cblah itself bears no other name than that of Nedjef-eshreff. This spot as well as Kerbella, near Bagdad, where Hossain son to Aaly is entombed, is always designated by the words, *the sublime places* for it is only Mecca, the glorious and Medina, the illuminated, that are designed by the words, *holy cities*.

(28) Nubarec-ed-dôwlah, and his deputy Mahmed reza-ghan

or two servants, and no other company than Mir-cavam-eddin-qhan. He made his bow with the utmost modesty and respect, and whatever instances were made by the holy man for his taking his seat upon a mesned, which he had provided for the purpose, he constantly declined sitting upon it, but took his place in a corner of the carpet, whereon the old man was sitting, and after having spent a full hour in his company, and obtained his acceptance of an entertainment, withdrew with a respectful posture. In the evening, which was the time appointed, he ordered to be spread for him a superb mesned, used by himself only on festival days, and then took his seat upon a small white carpet, forbidding all his people to intrude upon him during the whole visit. The holy man having set out with me after the evening prayers, was met by the Radja, in the very middle of the yard, where having paid him a profound bow, he took him by the hand, and conducted him to the mesned spread for him, and there entertained him in such an humble, pious manner, that the Sheh, highly satisfied, could not help expressing himself in these words: "I wish, sir, that God had given also to the Mussulmen of this land, a part of those good qualities which He has bestowed upon you." As he spoke Arabic, the Radja did not understand him, and I served as interpreter. The Radja returned thanks for the compliment, and observed how little he deserved it, and on his departure, he presented him with two tables covered with fine stuffs, such as paired shawls (29), kimqhabs (30), choice clothes and other rich gifts. Out of respect to him, he thought it improper to bring any money in his presence, but after his departure, and when the Sheh was arrived with me in his company, to the house of the forgiven Zehir-hosséin-qhan, he sent after him, by the hands of a trusty servant, a bag of a thousand rupees, which the bearer put secretly in my hand, and which I presented in a respectful manner to the holy, hoary man.

Once there came at Azim-abad a person well-known to Shytab-ráy, but also a friend and a favourite of the Prime

---

(29) Shawls (a delicate, costly stuff, now well known in England) are sold as well as presented in couples

(30) Kimqhabs are silk stuffs, sprinkled over with gold and silver flowers. The best come from G8djrat, for there is a manufacture of them at Banares, which although worked and inspected by G8djraties, nevertheless affords stuffs inferior in quality, as well as in liveliness and colour.

Minister Nakur mul Divan of the Imperial Qhalissah of Hindostan who resided to Shah djehan abad, a man accustomed to go upon a par with Vezirs and Omrahs This person came from Shah-djehan-abad for the purpose of performing the ceremony of the Gáyah (31) a rite which the Gootoos perform for their departed parents and which is for them a divine institution so obligatory that without it they do not believe that the departed soul can be saved On his asking at his departure a letter of recommendation for Radja Shytah ráy Nakor mol answered

Maharadja Shytah-ráy is one of your acquaintances as well as myself nor is he void of civility and good manners and as we Gentles have the performance of the above rite in high veneration and hold it highly meritorious doubtless he will not fail to oblige you As for the letter you request of me it may perhaps be of disservice to you What if my self love does not bear to write to him in a style suitable to the station and rank he now enjoys there? And what if his self love would not bear a style answerable to the station and rank he once held here? He now rubs his forehead against the third heaven and the perusal of my letter would spoil your business It must be observed, that Radja Shytah ráy is imitation of the most attentive and most sensible Grandees of Hindostan used to spend great sums of money in getting intelligence about every Sovereign and every Governor of that region allowing those to the secret of affairs monthly and yearly pensions and keeping for that purpose in every Court an agent who committed to writing without addition or retrenchment every transaction and every speech worthy of record regularly transmitting the same to other agents stationed for receiving such intelligence No wonder then if Shytah ráy being so well served this speech of Nakur muls had been faithfully conveyed to him in the very words that had been used On the first interview therefore with the person in question he contented himself with saying to him Sir that a person like you should come from so far and that His Excellency the Prime Minister should have not wrote me two lines on your behalf looks very strange and is of had

---

(31) Gáyah is a town at three or four days south of Azim-abad or Patna. It is a place of great resort for the Hindoos who go thither in pilgrimage from all part of India

"omen for you." The person answered, that as himself had the honour to be of Shytab-ráy's acquaintance, there was no need of a letter; for as the Prime Minister is a sensible man, he has understood that the Maharadja (my Lord), that is Shytab-ráy, was already informed of the intention. Not so, sir, replied Shytab-ráy, not so. Then, rejoined the man, your Lordship is well informed of the whole matter, and if that be the case, there is no necessity for your putting any questions about it. Shytab-ráy's friends, such as Radja Qhy-aaly-ram, and Mir-cavam-eddin-hosséin-qhan, who were present, understood not a word in the above enigma, but thought it improper to put any questions in the new guest's presence, however, after he was departed, they asked what was the meaning of all that mysterious dialogue? Shytab-ráy recited the intelligence he had received, and the very words of the speech, and then expressed himself in this manner *I hope to be up with him, if it pleases God*, words which had a reference to what he knew himself, but which no one could comprehend, still less could anyone guess what he meant by that expression of his, nor what he could do to one who would not meddle with him. When the person in question came to be upon his departure, Shytab-ráy made him a suitable present, and put in his hands a letter for Nakur-mul, couched in a very respectful and very humble style, although he had no manner of expectations from that quarter, and stood in no need of any service from that Minister. It was to this purport "The letter you have honored me with has been an object of pride and consolation for me. It is hoped, from the good nature of your Excellency's character, that you shall vouchsafe to gladden by a small token of your good will, the hearts of those your petitioners, that are doomed to live at such a distance from you." And to this letter he added a curious present, to the amount of ten or twelve thousand rupees, or even more, consisting of Atur of Aagur (32),

---

(32) The Agalla-wood, called Aagur in India, and 8d by the Turks, Persians, and Arabs, yields, especially at the knotty parts, a rosin, from which they extract an essence highly scented, and so dear as to sell even in Bengal for twenty-five times its weight in silver. Some even prefer that essence to that of roses, and in Hindostan, whither it is imported from Bengal, it sells full as dear, that is, twice or thrice its weight in gold. This tree, which is now found only in the Peninsula beyond the Ganges, and in those parts of Bengal that border on it, is exceedingly scarce, and is hardly found, but when the rains and floods have torne it from its place,



or Agalla wood delicate cotton linen manufactured ooly in Bengal and such as is hardly to be procured elsewhere bedsteads, of Ivory watches and clocks made to Europe lustres and sconces of a glass that emulated rock-crystal looking glasses of great dimensions and a variety of curiosities from Europe and China all which he entrusted to the above person But the latter sent them beforehand to Shah djeihan-abad as he had come to perform his pilgrimage at Gayab Nakur mul on hearing of the words uttered by Shytah rāy and of the manner equally noble and delicate in which he had acted was lost in amazement

and said This gentleman has acted with so much sense and nobility that he has given me a lesson from afar and has totally covered me with shame and confusion

1770.

But it was in the famine of 1183 that this singular man had a full opportunity of exhibiting his character In the most advantageous light This famine desolated the whole country of Bahar as well as the whole kingdom of Bengal Shytah rāy melted by the sufferings of the people provided in a handsome manner for the necessities of the poor of the decrepit the old and the distressed and here is the method which he contrived for that purpose In that dreadful year when famine and mortality going hand in hand stalked everywhere, mowing down mankind by thousands Shytah rāy who heard that the grain was a little cheaper and in greater plenty at Banares set apart a sum of thirty thousand rupees and directed that the boats and rowers belonging to his household should bring regularly to Azim-abad three times a month the grain provided with that sum at Banares This grain being landed at Azim-abad was sold at the Banares price whilst the boats were dispatched for another trip by which management there were always boats landing and boats loading In this manner during the whole time which the famine lasted his numerous boats divided in three squadrons, were constantly employed in bringing corn which his people sold at the original price without loading it with the charges losses and transport and it was purchased by the

---

and left it sticking on the muddy shores. Those that have been in the case of making use of Shabem or Seesoo-wood for common fuel, and have attended to the sameness of smell will be very much inclined to suspect that the Angur-tree must be nothing else but some Seesoo-tree grown very old

necessitous, who flocked to his granaries from all parts But as there were still vast numbers that could not afford to purchase grain so dear (33), he ordered them to be divided into four classes, which were lodged in three or four gardens, or seats, surrounded by walls, where they were watched, as prisoners, by guards, but daily attended as patients by a number of clerks, who kept an account of them, and were assisted by a number of servants, who at stated times used to come loaded with victuals ready dressed for the Mussulmen, and with a variety of grain and pulse and a sufficiency of earthen vessels, and of fire-wood, for the Gentoos, at the same time, several ass-loads of small money, besides a quantity of opium, bang, tobacco, and a variety of other such articles, were distributed severally to each person, according to the kind he was accustomed to use, and this happened every day, and without fail On the report of such generosity, the English and Dutch took the hint, and on his example, lodged the poor in several enclosures, where they were regularly fed, tended, and lodged In this manner an immense multitude came to be rescued from the jaws of imminent death But in Moorshood-abad, such a proceeding never came into any one's head, and it is reported, that although Mahmed-reza-qhan had been appointed Inspector of that branch of Police, grain was often not to be had at any rate, for such men as

---

(33) Rice sells in general at Azim-abad at the rate of 120 pounds avoirdupois for a rupee, that is, for twenty-two pence English, wheat at 150, barley at 200, and Djevar, or African millet as well as some other grains, at 300 Hence, when grain sells at thirty or forty pounds, as it did in 1769-70, it becomes so dear that the generality of people cannot afford to pay for it The carelessness and inattention of the Indians, (to say nothing of their ingratitude, that bane of the nation) are such, that although in that famine thousands of recessitous people were daily fed at Calcutta, by several charitable English, who had clubbed together for that purpose, although in the year 1784, a daily distribution of wheat was ordered at Azim-abad by Governor Hastings, at his private expense, although the same year Mr John Wombwell, and some other English of Lucknow, had rescued from the jaws of imminent death, to my certain knowledge, more than two thousand people, whom they used to feed every day for six months together, nevertheless, not one man amongst the natives, at either Calcutta, Patna, or Lucknow, ever mentioned it in conversation, although I put the question to several hundred of the better sort, and have been endlessly inquiring from amongst the poor So that to this day these three events are as unknown amongst the natives of Bengal, and as little minded or talked of, as the five or six scores of English smothered at Calcutta in 1756, or the three or four hundred massacred at Patna in 1764

Mir soléiman qhan, and some others like him, who had been appointed overseers of the poor proved so potent on their own interest, that so far from being able to procure plenty of grain, they were the foremost to use violent methods to engross it(34) Whoever any loaded boat chanced to come escorted to the market by the Government people, the grain was dragged away with force by some one of the favourites of Mahmed reza qhan and carried to their own houses. Numbers of them were guilty of such practices especially Radja Amret sing who gave himself all the airs of a sweetheart of his master's and made nothing of wresting a boat load of grain out of the hands of a number of famished wretches who had thrown themselves upon it(35) Nor

(34) It is not improper to mention here Naamet-ollah-qhan, amongst the servants of Mahmed-reza-qhan who engrossed the sale of rice. This man, who was a menial servant of Shle-djafer-qhan, and is now steward to Mahmed-reza-qhan is reputed worth eighteen lacs; but he was an acquaintance of the Author.

(35) There is no nation in the world so defective in common sense as the Indians, whenever they have a distribution to make to the poor. Look at that man who has to-day proclaimed a distribution of grain and cloth for Tuesday next. This man, by his senseless distribution, will cause twenty murders, and rather more than less for I remember of a Gentoo who about ten years ago, was the innocent but thoughtless, cause of seventy men being trampled to death although I informed him of a method I had myself practised to prevent disorders, and offered to preside at the distribution. A couple of hundred stout fakirs with knotty bamboos in their hands, take possession of the house yard, and murder or maim or trample to death those famished children those impotent old women those decrepit old men those blind and lame, that cannot stand upon their legs. In the famine of 1784 or 85, the Navvab of Lucknow distributed five thousand rupees a day that is, killed about fifty impotent people every morning regularly for three months together and in his own words put an end to the famine—and by diminishing the number of mouths. A man of sense, who was very nearly smothered by the crowd, and who would have never extricated himself had he not been vigorously supported by the show of a brace of empty pistols and by the exertions of a dozen of vigorous servants, presented a petition the next morning to that Prince on what he had been seeing these six days and proposed to lessen the price of grain by full fifty per cent. In five days, on condition only that he was proposed to the distribution not of money but of grain and dressed victuals; and on condition, that three preparatory steps were taken immediately to wit—

Sending forthwith fourteen hundred elephants, with five thousand of their attendants into the woods of Mahmedi five days journey north of Lucknow  
 "Seventy elephants only to be kept near the Prince's person.

Dismissing immediately towards Bareilly, with each three months pay before hand, the fifteen hundred men that attended three hundred thousand pigeons  
 "Appointing a number of cooks to roast or boil every day five thousand of those

did anyone trouble himself about these practices, or about securing the grain, or getting it sold at a reasonable price, or about executing strict justice against those engrossers, and matters rose at last to such a height, that this neglect came in the end to cut a considerable figure amongst the articles of accusation urged against Mahmed-reza-qhan, by the Committee. But let us drop those matters, doubtless they are better known to the Almighty Scrutiniser of hearts, for our part is now to continue our account of Shytab-ráy's way of life.

He used every year to purchase large quantities of fresh fruits of Iran(36) from the merchants, and to send them in presents to the principal English, and to the Grandees of Bengal. Besides that, he had it in custom, two or three times a year, to compliment with such delicacies, all the persons of Azim-abad, that seemed of distinction, whether by their rank, or by their merit or virtue, and as he found that still some people were forgotten, and had no share in the distribution, he betook himself to this expedient. Over and above the sum of money yearly spent for his own use, he set apart another sum, which he used to lend to the fruit-merchants, who were to employ it in fruit, to be sold publicly in their shops. So that any one might become a purchaser, and whatever remained unsold, he took it off their hands in part of payment, by which management neither the merchant became a sufferer, nor did the public

---

"pigeons, to be distributed to so many famished wretches, disposed properly by "classes"

On these conditions, the petitioner, without having recourse to any breaking of shops, and magazines, or to any compulsion, offered to forfeit his head, if grain, which was to be had nowhere, was not within five days sold in many shops, and in a month, at full eight or ten seers, instead of three or four seers, (that is, eight pounds avoirdupois) which small quantity nothing could fetch now but gold, secrecy, and interest. The petition was laughed at, as being that of a man that had no common sense. And no wonder if it was. For meanwhile His Highness with his five thousand rupees a day, had brought plenty in three months' time, and this was, by killing, or which is the same, by suffering to be trampled to death ten or twelve thousand wretches, and at the end of those three months, the rain fell plentifully, and grain sold at six and seven seers in the markets.

That man had promised, and that too upon his head, that the first day of the distribution of victuals, there would be no more than fifteen murders, the second, six, the third, four, the fifth, one, the sixth, none, and so on to the end of the famine.

Shytah-ráy introduces the culture of musk melons, and of grapes, at Patna.

want for fruit. Not satisfied with that he by dint of money engaged some fruit gardeners amongst those that either cultivated fruit trees or dealt in fruit, to quit their abodes at Shah djeihan abad and at Lahor and to settle at Azim abad where he lent them capitals sufficient to put it in their power to cultivate such fruit trees as the climate would bear and such as could afford an object of trade. As a further encouragement, he used yearly to make them presents of seeds, which he procured from Lucknow, from Agrab and from Cabul(37) especially of musk melons, serdas(38) and other fruits and so soon as they had produced a crop he purchased that product and distributed it in presents. At last grapes of a good size and complete maturity as figs and several other fruits came to be in fashion at Azim-abad and to be sold from one seer and a half to two and three seers(39) to a rupee inasmuch that those rarities are now to be had not only in gardens of distinction but even in the shops of the city.

Shytah-ráy a Mussulman in his heart and moreover a fanatical Shyah.

After having spoke so much of Shytah ráy's generosity and industry it is proper we should say something of his religious principles. He was fond of the notions and practices of a Mussulman of sense(40) for he went into deep and respectful

(37) Cabul is a fortress and a province of India, the last towards Persia; it is renowned even in that Empire, for the superior flavour of its fruits. Pears, apples, quinces, and admirable pomegranates come from thence to the interior parts of India, but especially grapes of two inches in length, and exceedingly luscious. All that comes overland, over a tract of four or five hundred leagues to Azim-abad but then it amounts to such a price that a single grape sells at Lucknow for a penny English pears apples, and pomegranates for half a crown the couple from Lucknow they are sent to Calcutta, in presents, by the post.

(38) Serdas are a longish sort of musk melons that have the rind, yellow and the pulp green on the contrary of the ordinary musk-melons, which have the rind green or yellow and the pulp of a saffron or golden hue. Some of both species are admirable. But people must go to Persia, and to Constantinople to eat those fruits in the greatest perfection. As to grapes, properly speaking besides their being excessively scarce in Bengal as well as in Bahar they very seldom come to maturity in either of those countries; because in the months of May June, and July when the grain has acquired its full growth and wants only the benefit of much sunshine to mellow its juices, there fall such floods of rain, and the weather is so constantly cloudy that no amelioration can be expected. In Lucknow where rains fall only in July the grapes grow to maturity.

(39) The seer weigh also thirty-two ounces avoirdupois.

(40) A Mussulman of sense in our author's opinion, is a Shyah, that is, a man who gives to Aaly the titles of Sole Rightful Successor and of King of  
• Braves—The two Princes of Martyrs are, that same Aaly called the *Murtaza* or

mourning for the Prince of Martyrs, (on whom be peace for ever ! ) and the twenty-first of the holy month, which is the day of the martyrdom of the Prince of Martyrs and successors, Aaly the M8rteza (whose eulogiums may for ever be upon the increase ! ) he used to order quantities of rice boiled in milk, and other sweetmeats and victuals, to be prepared with the utmost nicety and cleanliness, and these he distributed throughout the city after having offered a prayer over them. In turning himself from side to side, he had in general the invocation of *Ya Aaly*, (O Aaly) (41) in his mouth, nor was he at any time heard to pronounce the name of any of the Gentoo Saints. His usual oath was *Wallah*, and *Billah* (42). Once every year he used to spread the table of the King of Braves (on whom be peace ! ) and that too with the utmost cleanliness and elegance, and after the prayer of the Fateha, pronounced according to custom over it, the whole was distributed away. One day some one said, that before the distribution should have taken place, it would have been proper to wait for the appearance of *the sign* on some of the salt-cellars, or on some of the dishes upon the tables. " This, said he, is an essential condition, and does " the Maharadja neglect the same ? " Shytab-ráy answered, " ed, that such an appearance, being a deviation from the " natural order of things, is what cannot be asked from, nor " granted by, the King of Holiness (43) ; nor does it become a

agreeable, because he was the only man living whose name was mentioned in the Coran, besides Mohammed, who is called *Mustepha*, or the select. The second Protomartyr is Hosséin, the second son of Aaly, who is buried at Kerbela, near Bagdad. Nor is it to be wondered at, that Gentoos or Hindoos should slide into the practices and customs of Mussulmen, especially if they be showy or affecting, as are the theatrical rites of the Muharrem. Man, when not persecuted, naturally becomes imitative and apish, and hence we see every day, in India, Mussulmen insensibly sliding into the practices of Hindoo customs, rites, and festivals, as well as Gentoos turning Mussulmen, and especially Shyabs, by shoals.

(41) No Shyah, in making any effort to raise a weight, or otherwise, will ever say *Ya Qhoda* ! O God ! The invocation is always *Ya Aaly* !

(42) O God ! By God ! This is the usual oath of a Mussulman, but in judiciary matters it is amplified in this manner *Vallahil Aasim* ! O *Billahil-kerim* ! By the Most High God and by the most Bountiful God ! The usual invocation of Gentoos is, *Ya Bagwan* ! *Ya Permesser* ! two attributes of God, in the Shanscrit language, which is the Latin of India.

(43) The King of Holiness is Aaly

'poor Pagan like me added he to request a miracle for such a matter. As I have in His Majesty such a faith as I ought why should I wait for such an exhibition (44)? On the other hand nobody has a right to lay his commands on His Majesty in such matters and supposing that for want of precaution and requisite cleanliness or for some lack of sufficient respect the sign should not make its appearance then a door would be set open for pouring abuse and reproach upon poor me who am but a Gentoo and would become exposed to the taunts of those who know not *the interior of my thoughts* and who in that case would not fall to say Look at that presumptuous Pagan! He to expect a sign of approbation from the King of Braves! as if he had had the honour to be one of the Believers (45)!

Once he was going to receive General Asmeet (Smith) at Bar and it happened that his tents were pitched behind a temple of Idols (46) in a spot of ground used by all comers. In the morning, as he intended to go forward his paleky was set ready at the door of his tent close to which his servants and retinue having formed a long line that extended afar waited for the moment of making their bow. At that moment I walked in and a little after came out again in his company when the Brahmans who served that temple of Idols availing themselves of the opportunity advanced in a body (47) at the moment of his getting into his paleky and made their demand observing that this spot was consecrated to *Makadê* and as to day was full moon and a lucky day they hoped he would pay some regard

(44) Look for these miraculous signs at the Note 17: Volume I Section III

(45) The Shyabs know no Believers amongst Mussulmen, but their own selves; d he ce they call themselves Bloomminin.

(46) This is one of those atrocious lies, begotten by ignorance and fanaticism against Gentoos or Hindoos, and like so many others propagated against Mahometism. If there be a people that have the sublimest notions of the Deity it must be the Gentoos. But these are not only permitted, but enjoined to turn themselves in their prayers towards the sun, towards the fire, towards the elements and also towards simulachers, as so many emblems of the Divinity which serve the purpose of fixing the mind, and of keeping the Imagination from wandering. Thus a sick of grain or even a bushel of meal, is a very good emblem of the Deity; and a man to keep himself recollected may fix his eyes thereon during his prayer.

(47) The Brahmans on the contrary of all Indians never salute any one with inclination of the body or head, but God. All others are saluted only with the

"also to their circumstances" - Shytab-ráy answered, that they ought to make their request to whoever had come in pilgrimage to this place, or to offer his prayer at this altar. *As for me,* added he, *I have no business with either your persons or temple.* This said, he got in his paleky, and pursued his journey, without giving them anything at all, although he was far from wanting sentiments of generosity. For it was often observed, that when Gentoo mendicants applied to him, he would not give them even a farthing, whereas when any Mussulman asked him alms, in the name of His Majesty, the Commander of the Faithful, or of his children, or of his descendants, straight he would give them one rupee. It was reported by people of worth and credit, who were always near his person, that in his many journeys to Calcutta and to Bengal, where the sight is everywhere assaulted by idol temples, some of his friends, who were zealous in their worship, proposed to him to visit those places, but he constantly excused himself, although he would give them one hundred and two hundred rupees at a time to visit them themselves, desiring them to do it also in his behalf, and to fulfil the usual rites in his name. On his finishing a magnificent palace for his residence, his Gentoo friends proposed that he should consecrate it, by giving the Brahmans a repast in it. He answered, that they would sully, and spoil his house, and fill it with dirt, and that if it were necessary to feed them, they were welcome to take his money, and to entertain them upon the strand, on the shores of the Ganga.

At the time of that famine, which did so much havoc, and which was distinguished by so great a scarcity of rain, some of his Gentoo friends, such as Moorly-dur and Ráy-kituldas, and Surd sing, whom he consented to humour, prevailed upon him,

---

lips the body remaining erect, and the palms of the hand being turned upwards towards Heaven, as if to pray for him, or to give him their blessings, this also being the posture taken in praying to God. Mahade8, or the great Saint, is, according to some Gentoos, the first man, but as these people never know but the bark of their religion, and on the other hand, the sacerdotal tribe, who know better would rather suffer death than reveal their tenets, we had as well believe other Gentoos, who report, that Mahade8 is a name given to the destructive power of God, and possibly is it on that account that he is represented with a chaplet of twenty or thirty human heads hanging from his neck, he has also a large vertical eye in the middle of his forehead, and the Ganges is seen to issue from his hair, made up in a bundle on the top of his head.



to go with them to a Brahman, who was highly respected by the Gentops, on account of his learning and the holiness of his life. The Brahman who thought himself much honoured by the Radja's visit, used often to repair to him with a view to increase his faith in his person and also to conciliate his good will. One day he was heard to say to Shytab-ráy, "My Lord, we have made choice of a name for you according to your horoscope

accept it and use it in telling your beads over. *I have answered Shytab-ráy made my choice already and it is one from the one thousand and one names of God (48) and that is enough for me.* Pray what is it added the Brahman? The Radja would not disclose it. the Brahman became urgent and he was answered that it was God's holy name *it is Rahim* (merciful). On this the Brahman guessing at his meaning and desirous to soothe his mood replied. My Lord, *Ram* (49), as well as *Rahim* are equally the name of the same Eternal One. *I ask your pardon* replied the Radja *there is a difference betwixt them* and on the Brahman's enquiring the Radja answered that the word *Ram* always reminded him of *Dusrut* his father whereas the name of *Allah* implied neither filiation nor paternity. From such, and the like expressions collected above as well as from the whole tenor of his deportment it appears, that his belief was not consonant to the tenets of the Gentooes and that in his heart he was a Mussulman. but this is known only to Him who views intuitively the minds of men and sees the inmost secrets of their hearts (50).

He was not so cautious in other parts of his behaviour. Fond of obliging and gratifying his friends and acquaintances

(48) The names of the attributes of God are to the number of a thousand and one but the Mussulman Rozaries being only of a hundred and one grains, people content themselves with repeating only a hundred and one upon their beads; for instance O Almighty! O Immense! O Supreme! O Assister! O Cherisher! &c.

(49) Ram is not only the name of a Legislator of India (and observe that he is always represented blue or black, with an Egyptian flute in his hand, and an Egyptian cap on his head) but it is also the name of one of the ten Incarnations of the Deity upon earth.

(50) It is notorious that Shytab-ray although a Gentoo, and of one of the highest tribes, was in his heart a Mussulman, and moreover a fanatical Shysh; and as notorious, that his two sons, although circumcised and bred in Mahometism, have a strong bias towards Gentilism, and indeed live like superstitious Gentooes. But Gentilism admits of no proselytes.

he was so careful of his character, that he compassed his end, without committing any infidelities in the management of the public money, from which he abstained religiously, but as his salary, and personal income, fell so very short of his expenses, and he was often in the necessity of bestowing sums of money on some Englishmen, recommended by the rulers of that nation, and likewise of supplying the difference betwixt his income and his expenses, he made use of two methods, equally improper, and iniquitous, to fill the chasm. The first was, that in matters of *Atlac*, (which word signifies the sending one or two constables for compelling payment of sums due to the treasury), he used to send them by whole dozens at a time, and as the debtors are always obliged to find these people in diet-money, he used to enter but a small part of it in the books of public receipt, and to keep the remainder, as a supply for his liberalities. His second method was no less iniquitous. He used to bring under contribution, the possessors of Djaghirs, Altungas, and other freeholds, by telling them, that such an Englishman wanted to see their charters and vouchers, and when he had once got them in his possession, (and this was always in that Englishman's name) he used to put those vouchers in the hands of one of his own dependants, or heads of office, who, without any possible reason or justice, would exact from each incumbent or possessor, a sum of money proportionable to his income. After this he got together all those contributions, which amounted to a large sum, and bestowed them on the Englishman that had been recommended to him. In this manner, he seemed wholly occupied by the thoughts of keeping the individuals of that nation in good humour, but without ever minding the Divine resentment, in an affair of so much consequence. Doubtless, it is on such sorts of men, that historians have made such severe remarks, and it is such men as these which Sheh-saady, of Shyrax, had in view, in his *G8listan*(51), when he says, "That whenever anyone forgets himself so far as to postpone the Creator's service, to that of the creature's, it happens soon

Iniquitous methods used by Shytaby, to support his expenses

(51) The *Golistan* is a book of Persian poetry, translated into Latin, by Angelus Politianus. It is made up of a number of sentences, stories, apologues, and apophthegms, all enforcing, in beautiful verses every moral duty. Even children know it by heart.

or late that God Almighty sets that very creature on him, so 'as to cut off the root of his well being. An observation which has been but too visibly verified in Shytab-ráy's case, who to oblige those that had hoodwinked their hearts, and shut up their ears and eyes against God's eternal justice made no scruple of vexing and oppressing His creatures. It is from those very persons whom he wanted to keep in good humour that his ruin took its origin at last, and as it was under pretence of *Atlas* that is of letting loose a number of exactors, that he ransacked, tormented and ruined such a number of innocent deserving men, so it was by falling himself in the miseries of such an *Atlas* or looseness that he lost the garment of his existence and was forced to set out for the other world where no one but the Searcher of all Secrets, can know what may now be his fate although nothing is more certain than what we read in the Holy Writ where we find *that His forgiveness is always greater than our demerits*.

Radja Shytab-ráy was hardly arrived at Azimabad when Governor Hushin resolved to go to Banares to meet Shudjah ed-dówhah. The fifteenth of the second Reby he was arrived at Moorshoodabad and at the end of that month or at the beginning of the first Djemady, in the year 1187 of the Hedjah he was arrived at Azimabad where he proposed to Shytab-ráy to accompany him in his journey. But this Minister who was now on the wing for the regions of eternity excused himself upon the ill state of health under which he really laboured and did not accept the proposal. The Governor after a stay of two days pursued his journey to Banares, where he met Shudjah ed-dówhah who was come thither also to see him, and where he finished the business for which he had come so far and it was there likewise that the new Zemindár Radja Cheyt sing son to Radja Bulvant sing which latter departed this life a little time before had his first interview with Shudjah ed-dówhah by the Governor's mediation who having firmly established him in his Zemindary of Banares took his leave and returned to Azimabad a little time after Radja Shytab-ráy had departed this world. It was about the middle of the second Djemady in the same year.

Although this man's principles, as well as those of his sons were much more consonant to the Mussulman religion than to

the Gentoo tenets, yet for fear of disoblighing his relations and kindred, and also out of regard to some other considerations, his body was burnt to ashes, in compliance with the Gentoo custom. The Governor, to shew that he entertained no disinclination to the deceased, and to prove that he retained no suspicion against his fidelity, took care, of his own motion, to bestow the father's office on his son, Radja Calyan-sing, although the latter did not shew that capacity and fitness which might have been expected from a man of his age and education. He confirmed likewise to him his father's salary and his Djaghirs, and he also increased the pension allowed to his mother, relict of Radja Shytab-ráy. But at the same time he suppressed the twenty-five thousand rupees a month, hitherto allowed for the charges of the Nizamet, and which were in his father's disposal. Instead of that, he fixed such a sum of money as he thought proper, and directed, that it should be managed henceforward, wholly by the Council. And having further made some additions and some retrenchments in the several pensions paid by Government, (which last he appointed to be disbursed by the Council and by the Qhalisah office) he set out in all haste for Calcutta, it being his custom to dispatch much business in the least time possible.

Mahmed-reza-qhan meanwhile, under all the terrors of arrest and confinement, was in continual alarms, and in great distress of mind. He was friendless, and without an adviser, deserted likewise by most of his men of business, to whose treason indeed he had afforded some pretence by his former carelessness, and his neglect of their welfare. The Divan or Minister of his heart, Amret-sing, was a young man of unequal temper, proud of his wealth, averse to men of honour or penetration, hating cordially whoever pretended to anything like fidelity and scrupulousness, and withal destitute himself of that capacity requisite in those matters properly of his resort, such as examining papers, and auditing accounts. On the other hand, everyone, tired this longwhile with Mahmed-reza-qhan's haughtiness, as well as exasperated at the violence of his temper, and at his abusive language, went his own way, glad to have got so easy a riddance. Nay Amret-sing himself, that darling of his heart, under a feint of disclosing some secret which he

Mahmed-reza qhan forsaken by everyone, in his confinement at Calcutta, but supported by Aaly-hibrahim-qhan

knew obtained a full clearance and acquittal from his doating master (52) and he retired to enjoy his own ease in a house which he took in Calcutta. Not one at that time thought of Aaly hibrabim qhan who however unacquainted with the records and papers relative to past transactions however uninformed in matters concerning the revenue and collections however unapprised of the accusations brought against Mahmed reza qhan however almost a stranger to him resolved to come to his assistance and without having ever benefited anything by Mahmed reza qhan's full power and influence he paid so much regard to his misfortune and to the very name of friend that he tucked up the hem of exertion and zeal into the zone of activity and vigour and having in a little time acquired a full knowledge of all the papers, records and transactions relative to his friend's affair he undertook to answer all the accusations stated against him and to act as his advocate in the whole circle of questions and answers Resolved to make of his own breast a buckler against all the shafts of those times he took

(52) Mahmed reza-qhan was confined in an elegant villa at Chitpoor which although a suburb of Calcutta, and full of seats and gardens, is four miles from the Old Fort, the centre of that city whereas Amret sing took a house in town But as our author is hinting in more than one place at the nature of the intimacy that subsisted between Amret sing and his master and this hinting has reference to the morals and customs of those times nothing will give so thorough an insight into the strange genius that reigned in those days, as a peep into a scene that happened two years before that period, in the Palace. And here it must be observed that Aaly hibrabim-qhan, who by-the-bye was suspected of some heterodoxy in love matters, was by tribe a *Shak* the family of which in the Hindostany language, is *Shakoni* as the feminine of *Alah-ud-dja* (the honorific title of Amret sing) is *Al-ka-rani*. One day Aaly hibrabim-qhan coming into the hall with a large bundle of papers, which he wanted to get signed, found fault with Mahmed reza-qhan's closet-door which remained fast shut up the Divan or Prime Minister Amret sing who was a youth delicately beautiful, being within, with another bundle of paper. At last the young Divan came out and took his seat close to the Qhan but without taking the least notice of him. The latter who by this time was fully doused with impudence and peevishness turned towards the Divan with an officious air and a soothing tone of voice, and *come said he come Mah am! come my Lady your Ladyship seems to be flushed and much out of breath Pray my Lady do take this pillow, and repose yourself Shall I send for an ewer and some water to wash your Ladyship's face?* Mistress Shebanny answered the other *You had better keep your ewer and water to yourself; nor do forget you may have occasion for both before it is midnight* To render this a sweeter more caustic this was said in a sawning feminine tone of voice

upon himself to stand out in his name, and to refute and repel all the accusations set up by the Committee, or proposed by the Governor, which last, however, has not his equal in the fairness and equity of his questions, and in the uprightness of his management. He answered everyone of the accusations set up by Nand-comar, who was a shrewd, powerful man, deeply versed in business, informed of every secret, and a sworn enemy to Mahmed-reza-qhan. He set at nought the whole of that man's influence, and stood alone against all his machinations, artifices, and revengeful temper. It is reported to this day, that his answers, as if by enchantment and by some hidden charm, had the power of soothing his enemies, and of pleasing the by-standers, who astonished at his solutions and reasonings, were lost in amazement, and had no other faculty left, but that of applauding, admiring, and assenting. It was that able man who both by his pen and tongue secured Mahmed-reza-qhan from the hands of his accusers, and put it in his power to receive a full clearance from the Council. This event happened the 25th of the first Raby, in the year 1187, and in the next month, he obtained a dismissal of the guards that had been set upon him, as well as of those that were upon his palaces at Moorshoodabad. Nevertheless the latter, even after that release, thought proper to tarry a longwhile at Calcutta, on the hopes, that like Shytab-ráy, he would be restored to his station, and again appointed associate to the Council in the provincial department of Moorshoodabad, nay of the whole kingdom, an office which in fact would have invested him with the chief direction of affairs, and rendered him the main hinge of all transactions in revenue matters. Full of these notions it is not surprising he should be prone to lend a willing ear to the sycophants of Calcutta, and to the dependants of some Englishmen, who daily fed him with crude reports, and idle expressions, with which they ever kept him in spirits, and from whence he always fancied, he foresaw a completion of his wishes. As for instance, "such a Lord (53) to-day" said so, at his breakfast,—and such another said so, yesterday, "at his dinner,—and such an one has received such an intelligence

---

(53) The English, from the highest to the lowest, are not designed in Bengal by any other word than that of *Sahab*, which signifies both Lord, Master, and Gentleman

'from home,—and such a Gentleman has heard such a Member say'—It is upon such and the like intelligences, that Mahmed reza-qhan was conceiving mighty hopes from the influence of his friends. It is such bablers he took to be his well wishers, and it was upon their advice he bestowed beforehand large sums of money to several persons for their future assistance in his designs. Not contented with that he promised vast sums more on his being restored to his former station and rank and it was in this manner he accumulated on his shoulders an immense load of debts and charges by borrowing on all hands at Calcutta. I was then arrived in that city myself where under the impulse of a pious desire I was making preparations for my visiting happily the forbidden House of God (54) and the Tomb of the Prince of Men (on which be peace!) and it was in such circumstances I happened to make a small request which was refused although so small a service would not have cost Mahmed reza-qhan a single farthing nor would it have caused the least detriment to his affairs or to those of any other. It was no more than this—To order the Overseer of his Djaghly lands to take charge also of mine and to discharge from the product the amount of the debt I had incurred by borrowing from a banker, with injunctions not to leave during my absence in the tenants

---

(54) The forbidden House of God is that square house or room built of large blue stones, in the open air and in the middle of the inner area or yard of the great temple of Mecca, by which it is surrounded everywhere at about thirty yards distance. It may be thirty feet high, upon a length and breadth of about twenty or twenty-five. This square house or *Casba* is the place to which the Mahometans resort to make their pilgrimages that is, to change their lives, and to become better. It is called *Haram* or forbidden because all men are forbidden to approach it, and even to look at it, unless they have undergone certain conditions and purifications the first of which is, to put on the Efram or winding sheet, to be dead for three days, and then to resuscitate in order to recommence a new life.—But even to enter the outer temple, all these conditions are rigorously required.—It is for that same reason that Seraglios are called *Harams*, and *Haram* areas all over the Mahometan world. Hence that word is often translated here by that of *Sanctuary* a place which none can presume to enter without certain conditions. Hence also the small house of *Atsch* (the Messenger's favourite consort), which contains Mahomet's tomb and is itself surrounded by the great temple of *Medina the illuminated* is also called *Haram* and when joined in speech with the temple of *Mecca the glorious* which last is ten days south of Medina, they are both called by the Arabians *Dual*, famous all over the Mahometan world *Haremfi* *sharifin*, the two noble and holy places, (or things), forbidden

hand, the overplus of my rents, or my growing revenues, but to collect the whole regularly, and to keep it in store against my return. He was also requested to interpose between my banker and me, so far as to afford me time to sell my furniture, and to liquidate his debt before my departure, with the product of the sale. All that would have cost him but one word, and that one word was refused. I was then necessitated to tarry fifteen or twenty days more at Calcutta, in which interval I had frequent opportunities of being in Mahmed-reza-qhan's company, indeed almost every day, and I always heard him mention Aaly-hibrahim-qhan's name with the highest encomiums, and the warmest expressions of gratitude. He used often to say in my hearing, "That were he to spend his whole life in serving that  
 "beneficent man, he would still fall short of the return he  
 "deserved for the animated zeal he had shewn in his disgrace,  
 "and the infinite services he had rendered him, but that with  
 "God's blessing he would do so and so"—Nor did he address him, or mention his name, without the respectful word *Kybla* (55), and my *Kybla*, and he often added in my presence and that of many others, these very words —*Those that had gained lacs in my service, and owe me the very bread upon which they now live, have abandoned, and deserted me in the day of need, and have left me alone, nor has anyone been of any use to me in the day of trial, nor am I under the least obligation to a single one of them, save to Aaly-hibrahim-qhan, my Kybla, that benefactor of mine, who has bought and acquired every one of me. No father, and no brother, would have served me with so much zeal, nor done what this man has done.* These were his words, nor did he speak in that strain once or twice, but in every company, and at every turn, he would be rehearsing that worthy friend's praises, and extolling his services. All this while he was in expectation, that some better prospects would open to his view, when there arrived three men at Calcutta, who had authority to act both on the part of the King, and on the part of the Company, as Directors of all the transactions of the Committee, and as enquirers into the Governor's conduct and that

---

(55) The *Kybla* is that part of the horizon towards which one prays by law. Hence Mecca is the *Kybla* of Mahometans, and Jerusalem, of Jews, as it has been of the Christians for several hundred years together.



of Mr Barwell's These were General Clavering, Colonel Monson and Mr Francis They were to examine what those two men had done, although those two men had been at the same time confirmed in their stations This happened about the middle of Shaaban in the year 1189

---

## SECTION XIII.

### CONTENTS

*The three new comers seem to have brought great prejudices against Hushtin and Barwell—A duel between the latter and the General—Governor Hushtin's temperate conduct—Nand-comar, his principal accuser, is himself accused—He is condemned and executed—His immense property—Mahmed-reza-ghan, by the General's influence, is appointed Fodjdai-general all over Bengal, that is, Supreme Criminal Magistrate—Edifying death of Rubiah-begum, the last descendant of Aaly-iredj-ghan's family—A violent earthquake in Bengal—Divisions in the Court of Moorshood-abad—Some strictures on Selyd-mahmed-ghan, favourite of Mahmed-reza-ghan's—Disputes at Calcutta—The general attempts to seize the Government—But retires abashed and confounded—He dies of a broken heart—Mahmed reza-ghan is disgraced—An old decrepit man appointed in his stead—The author passes to the affairs of Decan—Manners by which the English have found their way in most parts of India—Dark and severe hints against Mahmed-reza-ghan—Some account of Yengbi Dsuna, Alias America, and of the new Englishers—The French join the Americans—Project of Governor Hushtin's—Colonel Godard appointed, much against his will, to serve under Colonel Lesley—M Elliot, a man of merit, appointed Ambassador at the Court of Nágpoor—Dies in the way—Death of Sadr-el-hac-ghan, Supreme Criminal Judge of Bengal, and some account of him—Aaly-hibrahim-ghan declines that office—His reasons for that refusal—Djan Bristow obtains for the English the sovereignty of the Province of Banarass—A coalition between the Governor and M Francis—Mahmed-reza-ghan in office again for the third time—Death of Mirza-iredj-ghan, and also of Ahtram-ed-döwlah—Flagitious conduct of the servants of the English at Azim-abad—The Members of the Council of Azim-abad, accused of enormous infidelities, are all dismissed—Hyaliram appointed to the management of the finances of Azim-abad—His character, with an affecting little story, that does him a deal of honor—Lesley suffers a loss for having*

engaged his army in a tract that had no water—He dies suddenly and is succeeded by Colonel Godard—The latter cuts his way through all Hindostan, and is going to effect a junction with the army from Bombay but the latter is defeated—He retires to Surat—The Council of Bengal refuses to ratify the treaty made by the vanquished army—The English acquire in G8djr4t a potent ally—The Radja of Gohnd becomes their ally also—The Marhattas join together to make an end of the English—Some account of H4ider ndic—He fights the English with advantage after a variety of success—Sets up a cavalry of Persians and other foreigners which he disciplines after a new method—Provides a numerous artillery well served and a numerous infantry well disciplined after the European manner—Gives the law to the Marhattas with whom he projects to attack the English—He invades the Carnatic and bears down everything to the very gate of Mendradj (Madras)—He beats the English—And pushes them to the very gates of Mendradj—Colonel Godard takes Bess (bassau)—Governor Hushtin exerts himself in supporting Mendradj which is going to fall—Opinion of the English on the interference of the Diety in the affairs of this world—The English of Mendradj beaten again—General Monro beaten again—Distracted state of the Council of Bengal—The important fortress of G8dhar taken by the English—Ch4yt sing Zemindar of Banaras being expelled retires to Scindiah's camp—Governor Hushtin sends by land another army to succour Mendradj—Haughty answer of the Court of Catec—The author quits his subject to give an account of Mubarec-ed-d6wlah—His thoughtless character—Some account of Babb8 begum his mother—And of Menni begum his step mother—And of Mahmed resa qhan's private life and family—Some account of the English East India Company and of their servants civil and military—The author commences a critical examination of the English system of Government

As the three new-comers were linked and knit together, they formed a compact body, which being invested with both the King's and the Company's authority carried a mighty weight, especially when they set up an inquiry into the conduct and principles of the Governor Hushtin a man against whom they seemed to have formed a confederacy General Clivering was

a man of distinction in that country, and a King's servant, Colonel Monson expected to have the command-in-chief of all the troops, whenever the General should succeed to the chair of Governor, and Mr Francis aimed at the next rank after the General's. As these three men acted in concert, they bore a mighty sway, made an immense noise, and caused a great disturbance. It was observed, that in receiving visits, they constantly refused the nuzurs presented them in compliance with a custom peculiar to India, and that they returned untouched, even presents of fruits. Their method in their inquiries was to attach to their interests, people whom they found in opposition to the Governor, or who had some discontent against his person. Amongst these Nand-comar cut a conspicuous figure. He had been thus longwhile out of office, and lived neglected and forgotten, so early as the times of Governor Vansittart and Lord Clive, nor had Governor Hushtin taken greater notice of him. This man went to General Clavering, and to the others of his party, by whom he was received with honor and regard, and it was by his management, that numbers of covetous, ambitious men, fond of trouble and dissensions, joined the three Members, on the prospect of being put in office, and they commenced informers in the enquiry set up about the Governor's administration and secrets. Such a conduct having produced a rent and disunion amongst the five Members that composed that Council, the mutual aversion was carried so far, that the partisans of either side became as animated as their principals, and soon extended their principles and animosity throughout the whole kingdom. The fury of both parties rose to such a pitch, that a duel ensued between the General and Mr Barwell, who fought together with pistols, as is the custom of that nation. One of the two parties consisted of Mr Barwell, which last continued to have but one mind and one heart with the Governor, whilst, on the other hand, the General was closely linked with the two others. But as these last always agreed in opinion, and stood as three to two, the General's party prevailed almost every day, and almost every public business came to be transacted by his dictate. It was in consequence of this prevalence of the General's that an Englishman, named Goran (Goring), was made Chief of Moorshood-abad, as was Mr Sage of Azim-abad,

A duel between the General and Mr Barwell

A D 1775 76

and Mr Fouck of Banares as well as Mr Bristow of Aood and Lucknow These were promoted on the General's recommendation and it was by the same dictate that Mubarec-ed dōwlah who with his mother Bahboo begum had fared so hard under Menny begum's rod was now emancipated on Mr Goran's advice who acted totally under the General's rod That Prince was left at liberty to dispose of the affairs of the Nizamet that is of his own household. It was in the year 1189 Thus these two persons got out of Menny begum's grasp and out of the reach of her eunuch Aitbar aaly qhan But what did they gain by the eunuch's being turned out of his office? Menny begum continued to sway everything For as she had a great deal of money, a great deal of authority and a great deal of genius and Muharec-ed dōwlah who was used to her sway expected one day to become heir to her vast wealth she would sometimes frighten him into compliance by threatening to squander her riches amongst the poor or to leave them to strangers and Frenghees (Europeans) In fact Muharec-ed dōwlah's turn of mind and his particular temper are such that neither his resentment is an object of fear nor his good will an object worth seeking nor does he himself seem to have a turn for the affairs of this world, so as that people should become anxious about his opinion Everyone therefore in his household does as he likes nor is he inclined to meddle with anyone's doings Let him have his personal pension(56) and he cares not for the rest For these reasons Menny begum's sway is not likely to be at an end yet, and the affairs of the Nizamet, (and this word signifies now no more than his private household) are in a state of perpetual fluctuation It was in this same year 1189 that Mir malimed hossein fazyi (57) a man of great subtilty of mind and great extent of knowledge took a journey to the country of England in company with Mr Elliott an Englishman of much goodness of heart much nprightness and great liberality of principles His intention was to acquire knowledge to see the world and to inquire into those discoveries which the learned of those parts

A learned  
Hindustanee  
travels to  
Europe

(56) The pension paid him by the English treasury is of sixteen lacs, or a hundred and seventy thousand pounds sterling About eight thousand rupees per month out of that sum may be reckoned his personal pension or privy purse

(57) The word signifies the learned

had made in the science of astronomy, in the choice of simple medicines, and the art of compound ones, in the qualities of plants, and the functions of heavenly bodies. In these studies he spent his time in his sojourn, which was a short one, but in which he found means to acquire a variety of knowledge in some arts, especially in that of translating books relative to those sciences, in dissecting bodies, and in such like acquisitions. On his being returned to Moorshood-abad, in the year 1192, he gave the principal men of that city notice of the acquisitions he had brought with him, but found no favour with a set of Grandees who did not value the opportunity. Nor did anyone of them think of setting apart a small sum for this business, which would have published their generosity to the world, insured to his character a lasting life with posterity, and handed down their names to the recording page of history. Instead of that, all that store of knowledge has remained shut up from the world for ever. But there is no assistance, and no success but from God Almighty (58). It must be acknowledged, however, that men's minds were then engrossed by the dissensions in the Council, and by the fate of Governor Hushitū. This man, who has been endowed by nature with a keen penetrating genius, and a superior intelligence, and whose wisdom, in matters of State and in politics, has not been equalled in this age by anyone, did not think it consistent with his dignity to dispute upon small matters, and having thought it decent to adopt a system of difference, he resolved, first of all, to clear himself of the accusations brought against him, and of the infidelities and misdemeanours he was suspected of; and then to expose to publicity the General's ignorance, together with the grossness of his behaviour and the precipitancy and violence of his temper. He intended afterwards to bring to condign punishment those short-sighted accusers, that had raised such a disturbance in the country, and especially Nand-comar, that man of a wicked disposition, and an infamous character, who had made himself their leader and director. He expected that after having provided for all these matters, and quelled the commotion excited by the General's party, the General himself would become an easy object. With this view he spent a deal of time in confuting the accusations brought against him by that

---

(58) A passage of the Coran

officer on the instigation of Nand-comar and his followers and he thoroughly justified his own conduct by exposing the falsehoods of his adversaries. But whilst he was exposing to publicity Nand-comar's infamies and giving proofs of most of them or indeed of all it came out that this man used to forge bills of exchange under the hands and seals of eminent men and that after having imitated their seals exactly he kept them at home ready at all times for manufacturing as occasion required bills of exchange and bonds in any one's name and hand to be hereafter produced at his pleasure by which iniquitous practice he used to keep every one in awe of his displeasure. Amongst these pieces of his manufactory he had forged an obligation bond in favour of Bolakidas, a banker at all times of much credit but who had acquired a great name in Mir-cassem-ghan's time. He had presented it to the Company's cash-keeper, and had received the full amount, which he had kept to himself. To enquire into so heinous an offence, and to discern the punishment due by law it became necessary to have a Grand jury. A Grand jury signifies an assembly of twelve creditable Englishmen chosen by lot, which the culprit may recuse one after another, so far as to get them changed two different times if he should object to them all but at the third time he ceases to exercise the right of recusing any of them and they remain twelve in number. Their duty is to examine what is to be his punishment (59) but till they have found out this punishment they cannot be spoken to by anyone, lest they might be influenced to swerve from the dictates of justice and equity. This Grand jury was made up over and over and twice changed (the Court of Justice at that time being full of people) until it was proved and determined that Nand-comar was guilty and deserved death, and that his kind of punishment ought to be hanging. He was a man of a wicked disposition and a haughty temper envious to a high degree, and upon bad terms with the greatest part of mankind, although he had conferred favours on two or three men, and was firm in his attachments. The moment he perceived that anyone had ceased to pay him his court for a few days, either out of sickness, or because he wanted nothing from him that instant

---

(59) All this translation is very obscure; but so is the text; and I have made it a point in this part especially to adhere strictly to it.

he became his enemy, nor did he give himself any rest until he had run him down, and demolished him totally. At last he met with what he deserved, and his supplice took place. It is observable that as the General had given him strong assurances that none should ever hurt him, and that were he even to be carried to the foot of the gallows, he never would have anything to fear, provided he exerted himself strenuously in bringing to light the Governor's misdemeanours, that man predestinated to death, never ceased both out of firmness of temper, and out of hatred to the Governor, to accumulate accusations against him, without ever minding how exposed he was himself, to an attack. That man, advised and instigated by the General, and become bolder and bolder, had of late set up a number of new accusations against the Governor, and in the violence of his wickedness and malice he had never minded that he was left alone, and had remained exposed to an attack. The Governor having refuted all his imputations, brought proofs of Nand-comar's great misdemeanours and crimes, and this affair made so much noise, that questions and answers of these two men were written down in the English language and character, and the whole being bound up together in the form of a book, was sent to England, from which such vast number of copies were drawn out, that this subject is become famous, and an object of much curiosity in that nation. Nevertheless the General's protection having proved of no avail against a crime that had been fully ascertained, Nand comar underwent his sentence in the manner statued, and on the seventeenth of Djemady, of the year one thousand one hundred and eighty-nine, he was drawn up and hanged by the neck. His money and effects were registered, and then delivered to his son, Radja Goordass. They say that the whole amounted to fifty-two lacs in money, and full as much more in effects and other property in his possession. Amongst other strange things found in his house, there came out a small casket containing the forged seals of a number of persons of distinction. In consequence of this discovery, his malicious arts were dragged to open light, and they met with what they well deserved.

Nand-comar  
executed

His immens  
property

This trial which occupied the attention of the public, did not divert it intirely from the manœuvres of Mahmed-reza-qhan



Mahmed  
reza-qhan  
joins the  
General's  
party

Sober and  
righteous and  
vice of Aaly  
hibrabim  
qhan to him.

This man who has a great deal of hastiness as well as inconstance in his composition, no sooner observed the prevalence of General Clavering's party than he conceived a desire of joining him. Such a step was vigorously opposed by Aaly hibrabim qhan in whose temper, prudence and foresight seem to predominate. This nobleman used often to say "Let us go on as we have hitherto been going. The Governor has certainly saved your life and honor. Without forgetting such benefits and becoming ungrateful of such favours let us wait and see what will become of the two parties. If the Governor holds out he shall think himself obliged by your firmness of temper and the steadiness of your friendship and attachment to him and he shall find means enough to promote your welfare in a manner adequate to your rank and should the General become absolute he will not for that bear you any grudge for you have not done him any wrong nor have you misbelieved to him nor have you done anything to render him your enemy. It is even probable that pleased with the steadiness of your temper he shall use you in a manner suitable to your rank and station. This discourse was unquestionably full of sense but it was more than could be digested by the proud mind of Mahmed reza-qhan who is naturally opinionated in his temper and who swelled with the remembrance of that degree of power and authority which accidents of chance had once thrown into his hands looks upon the predictions of provident men as so many reflections upon his own prudence. Mahmed reza qhan not choosing to pay a regard to the Qhan's advice opened a correspondence with the General and with his adherents, and shewed a desire of attaching himself to his party. Such a step could not but displease the Governor who however said nothing and let him go his ways. Meanwhile the General recommended him to the office of Deputy of Mubarak ed dowlah in the Nizamet that is in the disposal of that Prince's household and also to the general Fodjdary which in these days means the preservation of the country from highway men and house breakers and the power of pronouncing final judgment upon the crimes of house breaking thieving murder and fornication. He added to this a large salary, and prevailed upon the Council to invest him in those offices by a splendid dress of honor to which were added

several others for his children and dependants After so much success, Mahmed-reza-qhan set out, on the 15th of Ramazan, 1189, and in a few days he arrived at Moorshood-abad, the second of Shevval, where he applied himself closely to the business of his office And as it appears that the inhabitants of that great city, accustomed to him long ago, shewed themselves submissive to his authority, he on his side pleased with a return of good fortune, took care to display broad open the standard of authority and command On the tenth of Zilhijj of that same year, he married his eldest daughter to Mahmed-zeky-qhan, son to his elder brother, Mahmed-hosséin-qhan, and his eldest son, Behram-djung, to the eldest daughter of Hadji Ismáil, the two spouses being both children of Rabia-begum's two daughters But the satisfaction of the two families was damped by the death of Rabia-begum herself, who was daughter to Hadji Ahmed, and consort to Ata-ollah-qhan She departed this life the 23rd of Djemady, in the year 1189, and by her death she deprived Mahmed-reza-qhan of the only remaining stock by which he held to the family of Aaly-verdy-qhan, the majestic in war This Princess, although famous for her vices and debauches, had likewise many good qualities Long ago she had repented of her past life, and in her last sickness, she had renewed her repentance, had taken witness of it, and in her last moments, she had not ceased, in the presence of a number of persons, to pronounce the fine words (60), which implied her firm belief in the unity of God, and in the ministry of the seal of Prophets, both tenets qualified by a real confession of his successors She departed her life in full repentance of her past conduct, and in the full invocation of the Divine forgiveness *O Lord ! should you punish her for her misdeeds, you*

Edifying death of Rabia-begum, the last remaining descendant of Aaly-verdy-qhan's family

---

(60) The fine words are these *There is no God but God, and Mohammed is His Messenger* These words which constitute the Mussulman profession of faith, are revealed in the Coran To these the Shyahs have added, some hundred years after, *And Aaly is the holy of God and the heir of the Messenger of God*, and it is this profession of faith, which by engrossing the affections of those men, has introduced that blasphemous saying, so common in Persia, and that has found its way even into India *Eghér aaly Qhodá n'ist, es Qhodá hem djoda n'ist* If Aaly be not God he is not very different from God neither Nay, there is a particular sect amongst the Shyahs that openly attribute Divinity to Aaly, and these are called *Nasseries*, and moreover take a pride in that appellation

*have that right she is your bond woman, and your culprit  
And should you forgive her you would not be inconsistent for  
You are the Most Merciful of the merciful (61)*

A violent  
earthquake

It was in the same year that we were frightened in Bengal by an earthquake. It was so violent that nothing equal to it can be remembered these forty or fifty years past. It happened on the 27th of Shevval in the same year that Mahmed reza qhan conferred the Divanship of the Nizamet to Aaly hibrâhim-qhan who had laid him under such a load of essential services and obligations. At the same time he sent Lieutenants of his Fodjdary office all over Bengal for instance Nezer bakî beg of Balgh was appointed to the Lieutenancy of Azimabad a man who comported himself with so much moderation and benignity as to render his person equally agreeable to the English gentlemen and to the nobles and people of those parts. He even acquired such a good character that no complaint was ever preferred against him. So careful was he that no injury and no harm should be offered to the people entrusted to his care. It was remarked on this occasion that Mahmed reza qhan having this year offered some rudeness to many of Mubarec ed dôwlah's favourites and disoblged that Prince greatly the latter so far from affording them assistance and protection did not even forbid such an encroachment upon his own independence. The Deputy dismissed likewise Qhadum aaly qhan a nobleman in many respects resembling his father Qhadum husséin-qhan and who after the eunuch Aithar aaly qhan's dismissal had for some while acted as absolute Director of Mubarec ed dôwlah's household. Mahmed reza-qhan who had taken umbrage at his influence had cavalierly dismissed him from his office without his master's having even attempted to utter a single word in his behalf although there were promises enough and conventions and much attachment between the master and the Minister. Mahmed reza-qhan was likewise guilty of some other stresses of authority which drew upon him a general blame. It must be observed that the times were now become so corrupt that every man in Mubarec ed dôwlah's household was addicted to infidelity and malversation and had it in custom to reckon as fair booty every rupee which he could

embezzle out of his charge. So much liberty could not please Aaly-hibrahim-qhan's reserve and strictness, who being a stranger to the family, would neither plunder himself, nor suffer any others to plunder. This gave a general offence, and people turned Mahmed-reza-qhan's mind so effectually, that those infinite obligations which he had so often acknowledged, slipped out of his memory, and at last a breach took place between them. And as originally there was but little resemblance or similarity between their respective tempers, the instigations of envy were sown in a favourable soil, and soon grew up to a great head, so as soon to effect a lasting breach.

"The candle where the wick smokes yet will easily catch fire again."

It was at first a sort of vague insinuations against that honoured Qhan, which being often mentioned amongst his dependants, soon took an air of complaint, and at last degenerated into formal reproaches. Mahmed-reza-qhan was often heard to use these, and the like expressions: "Gentlemen, I have no genius for making verses, nor do I roll my turbant, or wear my clothes as the Hindostanies, that I may pretend to enter into any comparison with them with regard to genius and taste." All these expressions glanced at Aaly-hibrahim-qhan's way of living. Indeed it must be acknowledged that this noble person has received the gift of making his turbant, and of wearing his clothes, with a taste and an elegance (62) peculiar to himself, and in that he has been endowed by nature with a felicity of genius, and an amenity of manners that render him the admiration of the high as well as the low. One of his many talents is the faculty of uttering often extempore verses, and as Mahmed-reza-qhan acknowledges himself destitute of those talents, it

---

(62) Had the author seen his friend at Banares with bracelets at his wrists, his feet, toes, and nails, dyed in red, and his hands stained in saffron; his eye-lashes and brows, and his hair and whiskers, painted black, a very tight pay-djama or long drawers, as tight as any worn by women, with intent to express every part of their bodies, his hair cut in bobbi, like a petit maitre, in a word, affecting all the little artifices which are objected to even a youth of twenty, and which surely must look glaringly odd in a man of seventy, had our author seen all that scenery, he would have not taken so many pains to tell us that Mahmed reza-qhan, in order to turn one of his dependants out of office, had betaken himself to the expedient of engaging him, first of all, into an intrigue with a rich sister-in-law of his, and thereby dishonouring the contriver's family, as a step unavoidably necessary before he could with safety proceed on the intended dismissal.

follows of course that the equality of temper and the elegance of action and speech, so conspicuous in the Qhan were taken up as a matter of indirect reproach upon himself. He broke forth at last and dismissed him from his office. It happened at that time that Banny begum the daughter of Rabia begum and a woman of a vicious life and shameful inclinations having in imitation of the great folks of Hindostan formed into a band some of her slave girls joined to a number of other loose women which she had taken in her pry she got them instructed in the arts of dancing and singing and often amused herself with their performances. This woman who was of a shrewd and intriguing turn of mind, undertook to seduce Aaly hibrahim-qhan so that she laid a snare to bring him into disrepute. Under pretence of making him some return for the obligations under which he had laid Mahmed reza qhan her brother in law she adopted him for her brother and as she was not restrained by those scruples which always have their weight with women accustomed to live veiled and immured and she had never made any difficulty of shewing herself to most people unveiled (63) she commenced giving entertainments to Aaly hibrahim-qhan and appearing always in his presence and that too unveiled. As there were always in these entertainments some particular favourites of Mahmed reza-qhan's, as fully envious of that noble man's reputation as their master himself everything was straight reported to him and matters went no farther for a time.

---

(63) These veils which have of late been in length and four in breadth are always of the thinnest muslin, or of some gauze-like stuff elegantly edged with a thin lace and lined at the edge with a piece of coloured taffety four fingers broad. Some of them made of silk do not weigh above two ounces. These veils are placed upon the head by the middle of their length so as that the taffety and gold edging should fall on the forehead and to prevent the flaps from hanging to the ground they are carelessly thrown over the shoulder by which management the whole body as far as below the middle is covered with that thin ornament as well as part of the face and were the Ladies I Europe to know what a bewitching effect that covering is apt to have upon an elegant shape (and this kind of beauty with a gentle face is quite common in India they would never be without it.—However it appears whether veiled or not before a man is of more importance than Europe would be apt to believe. According to the Hindostani notions such a condescension implies or concedes every other complaisance. Hence the Indian expression *Over R-terke* she stands to him, does not fly from him; that is, she is upon the most intimate terms with him.

when the Princess observing that one of her girls had made an impression on the Qhan's heart, offered her to him, adding that she was a girl of her's, and that she made him a present of her person. The other guests, as well as the favourites of that artful woman, who were all of the complot against the Qhan, having observed scruples in him, made it a point to encourage his timidity. "What harm is in that?" said they. "Is not the girl her property? Her mistress transfers it to you. What can be then the cause of so much precaution and so many denials?" It must be observed that in those days Moorshood-abad wore very much the appearance of one of Loth's towns (64), and it is still pretty much the same to-day, few people caring to look at their honour, or at that of others. Nay, the wealthy and powerful having set apart sums of money for these sorts of amours, used to shew the way, and to entrap and seduce the unwary, the poor, and the feeble, and as the proverb says *So is the King, so becomes his people*, these amours got into fashion. Doubtless some poor and virtuous people must have preserved vestiges of modesty, and must have resisted the general corruption of manners, but most of the Grandees and rich men, on whom you could cast your eyes, were enslaved by this vice.

"Every hem on which I could thrust my hand, proved soiled with dirt

'Do you see that lofty mountain yonder? Behind it is a desert plain."

Although the Qhan was a man of great sense, and naturally averse to such kinds of intrigues, yet he lent a willing ear to the devil's suggestions, that enemy of mankind, and on the

---

(64) This very severe observation of our author's against the city of Moorshood-abad, is the more extraordinary, as there is a man of sense and observation who, after having lived seventeen years consecutively in that city, avers, that although the crime of non-conformism is neither punished by the Magistrate in that country, nor pointed out with that detestation with which it is hooted in Europe, and although apparent *Rari Nantes in gurgite vasto*, nevertheless the *Rari Nantes* are known and pointed out, which proves that the crime is not so common as some have been apt to think who have thoughtlessly compared that city to Naples. Indeed excepted amongst foreigners, such as Persians and Tartars, it is hardly heard of amongst Indians in general, and especially amongst Gentoos. But such an apology could not be made for the city of Shah-djehan abad were the author was born nor for those of Azim-abad, Lucknow, and Patna, where he had spent so much of his time. The former of those cities is notoriously known to have contained Seraglios in the style of that which accompanied Trajan in his expedition in Persia, and the other two cities are known to contain houses of prostitution of such a nature as would make an Englishman shudder.

follows of course that the equality of temper and the elegance of action and speech so conspicuous in the Qhan were taken up as a matter of indirect reproach upon himself. He broke forth at last and dismissed him from his office. It happened at that time that Banny begum the daughter of Rahia begum and a woman of a vicious life and shameful inclinations having in imitation of the great folks of Hindostan formed into a band some of her slave girls joined to a number of other loose women which she had taken in her pay she got them instructed in the arts of dancing and singing and often amused herself with their performances. This woman who was of a shrewd and intriguing turn of mind undertook to seduce Aaly hibrabim-qhan so that she laid a snare to bring him into disrepute. Under pretence of making him some return for the obligations under which he had laid Mahmed reza qhan her brother in law she adopted him for her brother and as she was not restrained by those scruples which always have their weight with women accustomed to live veiled and immured and she had never made any difficulty of shewing herself to most people unveiled (63) she commenced giving entertainments to Aaly hibrabim qhan and appearing always in his presence and that too unveiled. As there were always in these entertainments some particular favourites of Mahmed reza-qhan's, as fully envious of that noble man's reputation as their master himself everything was straight reported to him and matters went no further for a time.

---

63) These veils which have eight feet in length and four in breadth are always of the thinnest malmal or of some gauze-like stuff elegantly edged with thin lace and lined at the edge with a piece of coloured taffety four fingers broad. Some of them made of silk do not weigh above two ounces. These veils are placed upon the head by the middle of their length so as that the taffety and gold edging should fall on the forehead and to prevent the flaps from hanging to the ground they are carelessly thrown over the shoulder by which management the whole body as far as below the middle is covered with that thin ornament, as well as part of the face and were the Ladies of Europe to know what a bewitching effect that covering is apt to have upon an elegant shape (and this kind of beauty with a gentle face, is quite common in India they would never be without it.— However the *appearance* whether veiled or not before a man is of more importance than he opens would be apt to believe. According to the Hindostany notions such a coquettishness implies or concedes every other complaisance. Hence the Indian expression *Qaree Rote-ke* she stands to him, does not fly from him that is she is upon the most familiar terms with him.

when the Princess observing that one of her girls had made an impression on the Qhan's heart, offered her to him, adding that she was a girl of her's, and that she made him a present of her person. The other guests, as well as the favourites of that artful woman, who were all of the complot against the Qhan, having observed scruples in him, made it a point to encourage his timidity. "What harm is in that?" said they. "Is not the girl her property? Her mistress transfers it to you. What can be then the cause of so much precaution and so many denials?" It must be observed that in those days Moorshood-abad wore very much the appearance of one of Loth's towns (64), and it is still pretty much the same to-day, few people caring to look at their honour, or at that of others. Nay, the wealthy and powerful having set apart sums of money for these sorts of amours, used to shew the way, and to entrap and seduce the unwary, the poor, and the feeble, and as the proverb says *So is the King, so becomes his people*, these amours got into fashion. Doubtless some poor and virtuous people must have preserved vestiges of modesty, and must have resisted the general corruption of manners, but most of the Grandees and rich men, on whom you could cast your eyes, were enslaved by this vice.

"Every hem on which I could thrust my hand, proved soiled with dirt

"Do you see that lofty mountain yonder? Behind it is a desert plain"

Although the Qhan was a man of great sense, and naturally averse to such kinds of intrigues, yet he lent a willing ear to the devil's suggestions, that enemy of mankind, and on the

---

(64) This very severe observation of our author's against the city of Moorshood-abad, is the more extraordinary, as there is a man of sense and observation who, after having lived seventeen years consecutively in that city, avers, that although the crime of non conformism is neither punished by the Magistrate in that country, nor pointed out with that detestation with which it is hooted in Europe, and although apparent *Rari Nantes in gurgite vasto*, nevertheless the *Rari Nantes* are known and pointed out, which proves that the crime is not so common as some have been apt to think who have thoughtlessly compared that city to Naples. Indeed excepted amongst foreigners, such as Persians and Tartars, it is hardly heard of amongst Indians in general, and especially amongst Gentoos. But such an apology could not be made for the city of Shah-djehan-abad were the author was born nor for those of Azim-abad, Lucknow, and Patna, where he had spent so much of his time. The former of those cities is notoriously known to have contained Seraglios in the style of that which accompanied Trajan in his expedition in Persia, and the other two cities are known to contain houses of prostitution of such a nature as would make an Englishman shudder.



intreaties of the Princess he sent (at least so it is reported) two or three times for the girl on her mistress's repeated intreaties or at least, they imputed that foible to him. This was soon known and soon was laid bold of as a sufficient cause for a breach. The Navvab parted with him and in public Derbar, or in full Court, he drew up narratives of that proceeding as having dishonoured his house and family and rent the veil that covered their chastity although in reality such a publication tended only to dishonour it still further but he had his motives in that. For he was fearful lest the English should find fault with him for parting on so easy terms with a man to whom he confessedly owed the highest obligations. This at least is what occurs to feeble minds like mine for otherwise such a conduct is incomprehensible. Be it as it will the Navvab having introduced the subject more than once at his levee and always with a deal of acrimony he at last (this was the 19th Sufur in the year 1191) dismissed Aaly hibrahim-qhan from his office and the same day he carried his eldest son Behram-djung to the palace and got him installed in that office by Mubarec-ed dōwlah who honoured him with a rich dress of honour called Qhylaat Aaly hibrahim-qhan on this intelligence which he received with a deal of ease and tranquillity retired to a corner of his house and from that time intirely abstained from going to Court or making visits. But notwithstanding that retreat such was the opinion entertained of his probity and disinterestedness that although his revenue was but small and his usual temper seemed altered by his disgrace yet he lived in the utmost honor and estimation and the public opinion on his account ran so strong that his house became a rendezvous for the high and low.

It was in those times of Mahmed reza-qhan's prevalence that his favourite Séyd mahmed-qhan a Persian by birth but a man shrewd and wary to a high degree who had got such an ascendant over his master as to govern him intirely married one of the relicts of Rezy-eddin mahmed-qhan and got by that means possession of his estate. The matter came to pass in a pretty strange manner. It appears that Rezy-eddin mahmed-qhan intending many years ago to perform a pilgrimage to the glorious Mecca had given him a paper by which he appointed him his executor in his absence and that although the testator

Some strictures on Séyd mahmed-qhan a favourite of Mahmed-reza qhan's.

had long ago altered his resolution, and many years had elapsed since that transaction, he had departed this life without minding the paper. He left a great estate in money and jewels, with a very noble palace, and a fine bath. After his decease Séyd-mahmed-qhan, armed with that paper, which had been all this while forgotten in his hands, took possession of the deceased's estate, brought his wives and son under his controul, and some time after, he managed so dexterously, and interposed the mediation of so many proper persons, that he espoused one of the deceased's consorts, but a different one from the lady that had a son (altho' still the person most beloved of the deceased's three consorts, and likewise the person which proved the richest in money and precious effects). He bound her by the formality of a marriage, and took possession of both her charms and wealth. But this marriage became so very odious to the public, and it excited such a detestation in all ranks against the word *executor*, that Sadr-el-hac-qhan, the first Magistrate of the Province, being then upon his death-bed, and his physician, Ased-ollah-qhan, who had an unlimited influence over his patient's mind, having introduced a certain pretended Arabian, one Séyd-mahmed (who by-the-bye is indeed a strange fellow likewise) for a very proper man to be made his executor, this word was no sooner pronounced, that the dying man's consort, who actually was at hand behind a veil, fell a-crying, and she exclaimed as loud as she could, that she was an old woman, that needed neither an "executor nor a husband," and that she would suffer none at all. The sick man overcome by her intreaties and tears, retracted his word, although accustomed to obey implicitly his physician's nod, and he died without appointing any executor at all, nor is there anything so strange in that. What is really very strange, is that the physician, ruffled by this refusal of appointing that man of an ambiguous character for an executor, quitted the house exceeding discontented, and never returned since.

Whilst this singular affair was a subject of general animadversion, Mahmed-reza-qhan thought proper to marry Mahmed-aaly-qhan, his brother's relict, a nobleman who had been successively Governor of Isfahan, H8gly, and Pooraniah, at which last place he had departed this life. This lady had two sons from her late husband, who had left her a great fortune in money

and jewels nor would she hear of a second marriage. But by a proper mediation and the use of proper means, she was after a deal of trouble and intreaties, prevailed upon to yield her consent. It is said that at the period when Mabmed reza qhan was a Nāib or Deputy governor of all Bengal he had already conceived an attachment to this lady (which of course must have been of old standing for he had already had a glimpse of her charms some years before when in the height of his power). His house was necessarily resorted to by both the women his relations and those of many other persons of distinction at which time he had often opportunities of taking a peep at them and as often conceived the desire of enjoying their company for which purpose he used to employ a variety of means to overcome the reluctance of some fair ones that rejected his proposals. Although there was then a great deal of talk about these matters (which somehow never failed to become public) and a great deal of slander about the answers of some of those women which were always given at length and in the very words (65) yet it would be improper to mention them here and it would be a pity to spend any time in relating such subjects. It was in those times that Mahmed aaly-qhan's consort, frequenting her brother in law's seraglio on account of her near relation to the family he found means to see her once and conceived for her person an inclination which he could not satisfy but some years after when the lady becoming a widow was prevailed upon to consent to a marriage and was married in all the forms prescribed by law (66)

---

(65) This lady which is a tall, fair woman of a noble elegant figure is extremely respected for her modest chaste widowhood, and for her present very modest conduct.

(66) One of those refractory ladies which by the bye was of a high pedigree being a grand-daughter of the Navvab Ser-afraz qhan, and to which one he had bestowed that pale gold hue so much esteemed in India (where it is much more valued than the fair or white colour) was actually going to a Rendezvous but as chairs used for women are so far close and veiled, that the person sitting, never sees whither she is carried, nor how nor by whom her chairmen who had been bribed, carried her plump into the middle of Mahmed reza-qhan's apartment. This nobleman who had more than once asked alms of that fine lady and had as often been refused, now made his appearance, intreated her charity and made use as before of many intreaties and supplications, to which he added two trays covered with fine stuffs and some jewels. To all that the fair one did not pay the least attention nor even did she vouchsafe so much as to cast a look at it. Instead of that, she constantly kept her eyes aloof where she was coldly busy in counting over the beams and joistery

and let the credit of this story stand upon the faith of the reporters and memorialists

By this time the dispute between the Governor and the General having risen to the utmost height, each of them used to write his complaints to the King of England, and to the Company, and each of them received yearly answers. The third year after the General's arrival, by which time Colonel Monson was already dead, there came a letter from home, mentioning the Governor's intended departure, and that in that case, he must place the General in his stead. The General was likewise wrote to by his friends, that as the Governor was coming home, he, the General, had been appointed to the Government of Bengal. On this surmise the General, without waiting for the opening of the dispatches to the Governor, concluded that he had been in fact appointed to that high office, and coming into the Council-room, he took his seat where the Governor used to sit, as President of the assembly. The latter reprimanded him for such a precipitation and want of sense, but the General, naturally violent, becoming still more violent on what was just passing, uttered a number of inconsiderate words, and a quantity of unworthy expressions. On which the Governor, according to the custom of his nation, submitted the whole of the dispute, with its questions and answers, to the decision of the Supreme Royal Court of Justice, and those Magistrates on mature examination adjudged the cause to the Governor, moreover, they reprimanded the General for his hastiness in such terms, as affected the credit of his assertion. In this manner the Governor kept his station and rank, but the General, unable to digest the shame he had undergone, retired extremely ruffled to his house, and a sense of his disgrace pressing incessantly upon his lofty mind, he became so deeply affected, as to fall sick. He was an old man, and his sorrow and resentment preyed so much

The General attempts to take possession of the Government

But returns confounded and abashed

---

of the roof, nor did she condescend so much as once to cast a look upon her disconsolate petitioner, instead of that she went on rallying him mercilessly and with the most disdainful look upon that insatiableness of his, which made him covet every fine woman he came to hear of, whilst at the same time his stock in bank proved so ill furnished with cash, that his desk was full of bills unanswered, and of draughts unhonoured. The brow beaten lord, finding that nothing was to be got from that haughty fair one, but merciless satire, was obliged to dismiss her, and she went away without so much as saluting

upon his constitution that he soon appeared to be quite dispirited and sunk. It happened that in those very letters from home that had caused so much ill blood the Governor had received a license to marry a Lady to which he was greatly attached (67) and having on that account given a great entertainment he first of all others, invited the General to honour it with his presence. The latter excused himself on his sickness and on the weakness of his body, but the Governor himself having repaired to his house and by dint of entreaties prevailed upon him to come with him to the assembly the General made such a long stay there that on his return home, he found himself much worse. Unhappily the physician whom out of precaution he had brought from home and who was particularly attached to him having mistaken his case so as to order a clyster against the General's intreaties and inclination the remedy as soon as it was received brought on a Syncope and the General surrendered his soul to his Maker.

The General  
dies of a  
broken heart.

From this time Mr Francis suffered a diminution in his influence whilst there accrued to the Governor an accession of power and although Mr Wheeler who had succeeded Colonel Monson sided with Mr Francis and became his friend, yet the latter's party benefited nothing by it being overborne by the Governor's high station and overawed by his superior genius and superior knowledge. The fact is that the Governor's influence had already taken the upper hand and soon after Colonel Monson's death, the General's party had lost much of its energy in so much that those English rulers and others who had been appointed by his interest against the Governor's mind now lost their usual support but after the demise of the General himself

---

(67) The story reported of this Lady is singular enough. Born at Afchangel in the very north of that very northern country Russia, she married a German officer who was reformed and who finding that matters went ill with him repaired to England to seek a livelihood and from thence to London where he lived by pen-dilling miniatures for which he had some small talent. But the Governor having put it in his power to purchase an estate in Saxony he divorced his wife who had been espoused by the former and indeed she must have been a woman of uncommon merit to have made so lasting an impression on so sublime a genius as Hastings. At the same time it must be acknowledged that she did him some little harm, by unseasonably pressing in for his first landing in England although there are now Ladies in England that must have imported from India a great deal more of that glittering kind of property than herself.

their fate could not long remain in suspense. Mr Bristow was recalled from Lucknow, Mr Sage from Azimabad, Mr Fouk from Banares, as well as Mr Goran from Moorshoodabad, and others were appointed in their stead, that is, Mr Middleton and Mr Law, and Mr Gram, but Mr Baber was sent to Moorshoodabad, to be the hinge and centre of all business there. As to Radja Goordass, son of the deceased Nand-comar, the Governor both to condole with him, and likewise to oblige the General, promoted him to the Divanship of Mubarec ed-dowlah's house, and after that, still out of regard to the General, he appointed him to the Divanship of the Khalissah of Bengal, although he was little capable of such an office. But he did not enjoy it long, and on the General's demise, or even after Colonel Monson's demise, he lost that appointment, and remained shut up in his house for a long time, when by Menny-begum's interest, he was appointed a second time to the superintendence of Mubarec-ed-dowlah's house, and he arrived at the city about the middle of the second Djemady, of the year 1192. As to Mahmed-reza-qhan, he lost by the General's demise, much of his strength. His influence grew daily feebler, and at last it was reduced to nothing. They add that the Governor struck with some particulars of his conduct, did not trust him altogether, so that he was dismissed from the office of General Fodjdar and principal Magistrate of Bengal, and he lost also his appointment of Deputy to Mubarec-ed-dowlah. Sadr-el-hac-qhan was appointed to succeed him in those two offices, although the Governor himself must have been sensible, that so much business was by all means above the old man's capacity and strength. Nevertheless, as he had become one of the Governor's acquaintances, so early as the latter's first appearance in Bengal, and at his second coming he had proved himself an assiduous worshipper at the altar of his power, without ever relaxing in the revolutions that had followed, and as great men with much tenderness of heart, are apt to prefer a personal attachment to any public qualification, the Governor devised those two offices for him as a reward for his attachment, although they seemed to be so much above his desert. The man was at once raised to the summit of honour and power. Radja Goordass, who had preceded him by some time, brought an order for Mahmed-reza-qhan's dismissal, and a letter to

Mahmed-  
reza-qhan dis-  
graced and  
dismissed

Sadr el hac  
qhan an old  
decrepit man  
appointed  
Fodjdary  
General

Mubarec ed dowlah requesting that until Sadr el hac qhan's arrival he should continue all the officer of the Fodjdary as they stood with Mahmed reza-qhan but under his own order. Such a revolution could not but please Menny begum who had been all the while putting up fervent prayer for such a return of happy days as these. She assumed a new life but became desirous of keeping from the old man the office of Mubarec-ed dowlah's Deputy and she even carried her views so far as to endeavour to wrest also the Fodjdary and the Divanship from his hands if possible. Full of this scheme she dispatched her household Divan to Calcutta to lay her requests before the Governor especially about wresting the Deputyship from the old man's hands. The Governor to humour her promised wonders and some days were spent in conference with the two parties but at last the matter ended just as the Governor had determined at first with some slight alterations however to oblige Mubarec ed dowlah and Menny begum. At last on the second of Djemady Sadr el hac qhan arrived at Moor hood abad. As he was a man of much simplicity of manners and had become decrepit with old age it happened that in transacting business and even in going to or coming from Court and in presenting himself before Mubarec-ed dowlah he was unadvertently guilty of some actions that discovered the debility of his body and not only detracted much from his weight but also rendered his person ridiculous. He had appointed (for a sum of money they say) one Aga mahmed aaly a Persian born to the Fodjdary of Azim abad the magistrature of which city he gave at the same time to Aga abdol raheem. But as this Mahmed aaly who was a man of narrow principles came soon to behave very ill he soon lost his command which lasted but little and he acquired the aversion of all the inhabitants of that city which he filled with discontents and heart burning. But it is time for us now to take our leave of these transactions of interior police all over Bengal to order to turn our eyes upon those events to which that country has cut so great a figure in the Indian world and especially in those southern parts of it known under the name of Decao.

The Marhatta Empire which has still its two seats or Capitals in those southern regions had been for a length of

time governed by Baladjirao, who on the demise of Saho-radja (68) had assumed the administration, and become Sovereign of the Marhatta dominions where he cut so great a figure, that we shall be obliged to make full mention of him in the sections relative to Decan, as much at least, as his affairs are come to our knowledge. On his demise his son succeeded him of course. But the deceased had also a brother, and it was Ragonat-rao, who thinking his pretensions much superior to those of the young Prince, his nephew undertook to support them. This produced some civil dissensions which ended by putting the uncle under some confinement, and he was thought well secured, when he found means to gain his guards and by treason and artifice, to kill his nephew, after which he took possession of the administration and sat in his stead. But as a great difference of sentiments prevailed amongst the Grandees of that Empire whilst several of them took party with Ragonat-rao, the greatest number, however, sided with the relict of Baladjirao's son, who was left pregnant. Her party raised the Princess to the supreme command, displayed the standard of contention, and having vanquished Ragonat-rao in battle, they confined him again. Nevertheless, after some time, they concluded a treaty of friendship and union between the Princess and the uncle, but the latter dissatisfied with the terms imposed upon him, found an opportunity of escaping again, and he fled to the English of the factory of Bombay, where he entered into an agreement with them, and was received under their protection. Nor is this a novel event. It is in consequence of such and the like divisions that most of the strongholds, nay, almost the whole of Hindostan, have come into the possession of the English. For instance, two Princes contend for the same country, and one of them applies to the English, and informs them of the way and method of becoming masters of it. By his insinuations and by their assistance, he draws to himself

The author takes his leave of the interior parts of Bengal, in order to speak of the Decan, and especially of the Marhatta Empire

Manner by which the English have found their way into most parts of India

---

(68) The words, Saho radja, after having been a proper name of one of the first Marhatta founders, are now become an appellative title of the Emperor of that nation, a Prince of the Radjpoot or military race, who always resides at Satara, whilst the acting and real Emperor, who is of the Brahman or sacerdotal tribe, and resides at Poona, two days N-N-East of Satara, is called his *Nana*, or maternal uncle, and as often the *Pishva* or the agent (or precursor)



some of the leading men of the country who being his friends are already fast attached to his person and meanwhile the English having concluded to their own mind some treaty and agreement with him they for some time abide by those terms until they have acquired a good insight into the government and customs of the country as well as a thorough acquaintance with the several parties in it and then they discipline an army and getting themselves supported by one party they soon overcome the other and little by little introduce themselves into the country and make a conquest of it And although their introducer should prove too shrewd for them and should give them the slip still they never dispute with him but being a set of men always wise and always in temper they patiently wait until by his death some unworthy son comes to succeed him at which time under his name and without opening any dispute with him or creating any ill renown to themselves they complete the conquest, and have the art to finish their business in such a sly manner that no reproach can be made to them By which means the downfall of the people of those parts especially of the great and powerful ones is soon obtained by the hands of one another and all this is brought about so artfully that the idlers set up by them unaware of the above management do of their own accord and motion work at the ruin of their equals and meanwhile the English who seem quite passive as if suffering themselves to be lead are in fact giving motion to the machine and turning those sots into so many objects of endless contempt and raillery both in Hindostan and in Europe Meanwhile those fools fancying themselves shrewd in business plume themselves and strut about until the seeds of mischief planted by them coming to shoot up the day of retribution and vengeance comes with them and they pay and smart in their turn for having squandered away the little money they had scraped together in working themselves into those honours and those stations they so little deserved They seem to be the centre of a mighty bustle but in fact do nothing more than ruin still more a country already ruined fall at last under the lash of out standing balances and after paying into the treasury of the English as an equivalent all the money they have before hoarded they are now obliged to sit down with the odious character

Dark and  
severe hints  
against Mah-  
med-reza-  
qhan.

of having been the carriers and porters of exaction and tyranny. So that those glorious rulers after ruining all the world, and burning their own feathers, now become sensible of their losses, turn repentants, but it is only at a time when repentance cannot mend their circumstances, and when they have become already so infamous and so odious, that this distich becomes quite applicable to their case

"Have you seen what has done that jackass of a little man? (69)

"He has borne all the odium of the exaction, and another has run

"away with all the profit"

To return to our narrative, the Governor of Bombay gave notice of all these troubles to Governor Hushtin, and it was at a time when the disputes between the French and English, disputes which were of old standing, were revived again on account of the assistance which the former had given to the men of America. These men, who are of the same race with the English, had these two or three hundred years past settled in America, which is a New-found-land called Yengbi-DSnia (70), much resembling England and where those men lived, bred children, spent their lives, and died. Only they were under the jurisdiction of the King of England, and yielded obedience to his orders. These men, since some time (which cannot be more than four or five years ago) had revolted from their King, on account of his demanding more of them than was customary. They had fought his troops, and having killed the people that had exercised in the King's name the power of binding and loosing, that is, the members of the Council of that land, they had set up of themselves a government like a Council. Not content with all that, they had more than once given battle to the King's troops, had come off victorious, and had occasioned to the King and Company

---

(69) These verses were made about the year 1720 when Lshreff, the last of the Afghan Princes, obliged to quit Isfahan, on the approach of Nadyr-cooly qhan *alias* Tahmasp-cooly-qhan, plundered and sacked the city as well as the royal treasury, loaded his booty upon some hundred mules, and in his flight to Shceraz, was beaten and obliged to run farther, after having lost his treasure. He was slain at last in endeavouring to make his escape through the country of the Ballooohes, where these ferocious people put an end to his life.

(70) These words, which in Turkish signify *new world*, have passed together with the news of the discovery, from Turkey to Persia, and then to India, just as the *Lues* called by the Turks *Frenc Zahmety* or the European tormens now known in Persia by that name, and in Hindostan by a translate of those words

losses to the amount of corors. The French, at all times sworn enemies to the English resolved to ingratiate themselves with the Americans and to turn their revolt to some account for themselves and with that view they furnished them with cannon muskets, powder and ball and all the necessaries for warfare. The King of England, incensed at such an assistance given at a time when the term of peace between two nations was not yet expired declared war against the King of the French also.

It was at a time when the English nation secure on every side in Hindostan felt some inquietude on the side of the Marhattas and from Háider náik. This Háider náik had ten or twelve years ago waged war with the English in such a manner as to come off victorious and to make some advantage of it. The Marhattas were full as dangerous as they have a way of fighting of their own and will ten times a day attack and as many times again retreat or take to flight and they are accustomed to reduce to great straits for want of water and necessaries such troops as are less handy than themselves at this work of plundering and running away. The English on those accounts reckoned a war with them to be a difficult piece of work and they knew very well that Háider náik was in correspondence with the French. On those two considerations Governor Hushlin who is by excellence the man of genius of his nation and who displays everywhere a consummate skill and wisdom thought it expedient to close with Ragonat ráo's proposals an ally that put in his hands the great advantage of fighting the Marhattas in their own country so great was his foresight. His project was to send an army into Decan on pretence of assisting Ragonat ráo whom the English were to bring over to their camp and by his means to engage the Marhatta nation to a peace and an alliance with them which alliance would have put it in his power to grant Ragonat ráo the completion of his fondest wishes. After having brought the Marhatta rulers to submit and agree he intended to draw both Ragonat ráo and his adversaries into such an alliance as should bind them to a pact of never joining the French and such a treaty he intended to strengthen by a paper signed and sealed by both Ragonat ráo and the Marhatta rulers who were to secure it under their most solemn oaths. All that was intended to be

Governor  
Hushlin's  
project.

done by art and persuasion But in case the matter did not succeed to his wishes, then he hoped that so soon as he should have effected a junction with Ragonat-ráo, he might force the Marhatta rulers to a compliance with his views For he knew that this Prince being himself a man of importance, and the son of a man of importance in that nation, there was no doubt but some great men would join him of themselves, and that some others would easily be brought to do the same, whether by persuasion or by force, and as the English led by a destiny, (that designed to make use of that nation for punishing a wicked, thoughtless race of men, unmindful of their God) had so successfully fought battles, made such amazing conquests, and with a deal of ease pushed their victories as far as almost within sight of Shah-djehan-abad, the Capital of Hindostan, so the Governor thought that the war in Decan would prove full as easy, and that after beating and dispersing the Marhatta armies, it would prove an easy task to reduce Háider-náic to straits After which operation he might without any anxiety from the French, or other European Powers, and without much hindrance from the Princes of India, bring in a certain number of years, and with proper management, all Hindostan into submission, and then sit down in ease and content to enjoy his prosperity All this scheme was founded upon much foresight and much knowledge of India, for the enmity of the French is of old standing, and that nation by joining the Americans had acquired so mighty an accession of hatred and power, that were they now to listen so far to their jealousy against the prosperity of the English in these countries, as to land in India with some thousand Europeans to the assistance of Háider-náic and the Marhattas, they would raise such commotions, as would be very difficult to quell, and there is no doubt but in such a case not a man from the Marhattas, and not a man of consequence from Hindostan, would side with the English Whereas now Ragonat-ráo himself, the pretender to the Marhatta Empire, was ready to join them of his own accord, and it was probable that those schemes of the Governor's would take place of themselves, and would be followed by further victories and by the subjection of all Hindostan, without much expense or trouble In fact, the Governor's piercing genius having beheld as present all those contingencies,

which were yet in the womb of time had resolved to sow dissensions and to encourage and nurse them by sending successively numerous troops towards Decan. It was reported that this scheme of the Governor's not having met with Mr. Francis's and Mr. Wheeler's approbation two Members of the Committee, they contended that they ought to remain satisfied with so much dominion as they had already acquired without stretching their feet out of their frontiers and it may be that such likewise were the orders from the Council of Europe and such the safest party. But the Governor disapproving of such timid opinions took upon himself singly all the risks of this business and set out in earnest with this war.

A D 1779-80.

It was at this time that is about the end of the year 1792, of the Hedjrah that Colonel Godard who had always shewn me a deal of friendship and attachment, having set out from Lucknow for Calcutta to put an end to some questions and answers of his own I availed myself of that opportunity and of the Colonel's countenance to repair from Arimabad to Calcutta in order to push an affair that concerned me greatly, and great were the hopes I had conceived when the poor Colonel by a sudden stroke of chance was obliged to give up his own schemes for returning towards Lucknow and to prepare himself for an expedition in Decan. For he was appointed to a command in the army which was to march from Lucknow and Ilahabad a disappointment that affected already his affairs as well as his spirits. This departure of the Colonel's having left me alone and without support I lost all hopes of succeeding in my own business especially as the English immersed in disputes amongst themselves and in preparatives of war did not pay any attention to the affairs of Hindostanes. To mention such matters in these historical sheets would be improper. What for to go on singing dirges upon my destiny and uttering complaints against the world? Whatever is predestinated to happen in a certain time and in certain circumstances will certainly come to pass.

"Let us will or not will what is i our destiny shall come to pass a sorely

The cause of Colonel Godard's discontent was the appointment of Colonel Lesky to the command of the above army, in consequence of his superior rank in the service to whom of course he would be obliged to obey. Now Colonel Godard

was upon very bad terms with him, nor had Lesley the least capacity or fitness for such a command. But according to the rules of seniority, customary amongst the military of that nation, Colonel Godard had been obliged either to resign entirely the service, or to submit to him. As I had long conceived an attachment for that officer, I used to tell him, that the expedition in which he was embarked, was an object of the utmost importance. But he was so proud of the easy conquests and the repeated victories of his nation, that he thought the whole an easy matter, and he would often answer that two regiments of their Talingas were enough to beat all the Hindostanies put together. Such high-flown notions of his, rendering it improper and useless in me to insist upon my admonition, I chose to be silent.

Colonel Godard appointed to serve under Colonel Lesley much against his will

As for Colonel Lesley, that officer, in consequence of his appointment by the Council, set out from Ilahabad to repair to Calpy, from whence he was to begin his march through the Bundulcund, and the dependencies of Barar, quite to Aorengabad, and so on to Decan. His orders were to take Ragonatráo with him, and to effect a junction with the army from Bombay at the appointed place, after which he was to proceed jointly with him in the business of bringing the Marhatta rulers to a submission in the manner projected by the Council of Calcutta. The Governor had taken care to facilitate the success of this expedition, by dispatching to Great-Náigpoor(71), Mr Elliot, a man who in sincerity of speech, and propriety of conduct, has few equals amongst his own countrymen, as well as amongst the Hindostanies. His orders were to renew the treaties, and to pay slowly the balances of money due by the Revenue of Bengal to Moodda-dji and to the posterity of Rago-dji-bhossia, and he was to return after having put that court in good humour. Náigpoor is the capital of the country held by Rago-bhossia, as Mucasdár(72) of the province of Barar. This Rago is the same who after a twelve years' bloody war with

Mr Elliot, a man of singular merit, appointed Ambassador at the Court of Poonah.

(71) A city, the capital of the Marhattas of Barar. It is called the great, to distinguish it from another Náigpoor called the lesser, which is the capital of a Zemindary or Principality in the western parts of Bengal, from which it depends.

By the treaties alluded to by the author, Bengal was indebted to the Court of Náigpoor into a yearly pension of twelve lacs.

(72) Collector of the revenue in behalf of the Marhatta Government, the word is also meant for *Feudatory*.

Aaly verdy-qhan whom he had fought with a variety of successes had at last made an accommodation with him by which the English his successors have abided inviolably avoiding all disputes on that subject with the Marhatta's posterity, trusting nevertheless so far to their own power and prevalence as never to pay regularly the pension stipulated by that Viceroy. They act in that business in a languid ambiguous manner giving little at a time, and withholding much. Not but that messages and letters were going on constantly from Náigpoor to Calcutta, demanding the outstanding balances but yet it was in a soft moderate style. In short the intent of Mr Elliot's embassy was to renew the treaty and to manage so as that Rago's sons and dependants should not offer any opposition to the English army then marching towards the Decan nor mean while avail themselves of the opportunity to make an irruption into Bengal and Bahar. Now it must be observed that as Rago's posterity on one hand were nephews to the Sahoo Radja and pretenders to his dignity and station and on the other Baladjí ráo after the said Radja's demise had availed himself of the power and authority of his office of Generalissimo of the forces, to take possession of the dominions and treasures of the deceased, and had set aside the right of Rago's posterity to the throne the Court of Náigpoor therefore did not live upon good terms with the Court of Poona and neither Moodda djí nor his Ministers, made any difficulty to renew the pact and agreement with the English. So that the Colonel's army marched on without opposition and the provinces of Bengal and Bahar meanwhile remained free from their ravages. Unluckily as Mr Elliot was cutting his way thro a mountainous tract in the height of the rains, he was suddenly overtaken by his last hour and having laid his foot in the valley of death he departed for eternity. His embassy was taken up and its intent fulfilled by the younger Mr Anderson, who returned to Calcutta by the way of Azim abad and Bahar.

As for me who had conceived such mighty hopes on my coming to that city to Colonel Godard's company, with whose assistance I was to carry a point in the Council, and who besides had an old acquaintance with the Governor I could obtain only two or three Interviews with him in one of which, he asked

me whether at any time I had been in Decan? I answered that I had never been there, but that I had some little knowledge of the affairs of those parts, and I continued the discourse in these words "Colonel Godard, who wanted to carry this poor man with him, as a friend and companion, proposed two conditions to me. The first, that the office of Monshy should be under the sole direction of this most inconsiderable of men, without whose inspection and correction no letter should be dispatched. The second, that the poor man should also undertake the voyage and embassy into Decan. The second condition I declined, on account of old age, and the fear of remaining a longwhile parted from my children and family, but especially of being deprived of the happiness of keeping prostrated at the feet of a mother, who had an affection for me. In short, as my destiny had not set apart any grain or water or air for me in Decan, the voyage did not take place." As to the affair for which I had come with Colonel Godard, that gentleman on setting out for camp recommended it to Mr Elliot, and this best and most obliging of men, obtained in fifteen days a letter from the Governor to the Council of Azim-abad, which he backed by another, very strong of his own, and also by another to Mr Anderson, who was then a Member of that Council and an intimate friend of his. My business was in a fair way, when Mr Anderson was recalled to preside at the Board of Revenue in Calcutta, and Mr Golding set out for Europe. So that my affair which was already in a fair way, remained spoiled, and is at a stand, until my destiny shall produce some favourable event. But it is time for us now to leave my private affairs, and even the English army with what adventures it shall chance to have in Decan, it being my attention to postpone that narrative to a view of the state of affairs in Calcutta and in Bengal.

We have sometime ago left Rabiiah-begum, departing for the other world with all the tokens of the sincerest repentance. Her daughter, Banni-begum, followed her a few years after, and departed this life in the year 1193, when Mahmed-reza-qhan was already out of office. Her distemper was a loss of blood (73),

---

(73) That loss of blood had been brought by an abortion forced some years before



for which somebody having given her an astringent remedy to repress the superabundance of blood it stopped likewise all the customary evacuations of every kind until it struck into her heart and brain. Mahmed reza qhao sent her a remedy intended to strengthen both. It availed nothing and she departed for her long pilgrimage. Her wealth which was great was taken possession of by that Minister in appearance to guard it against accidents and it was reported that it had been received by her heir. But no one has ever been able to say that he had seen that heir or heard of the division of that money and of those jewels which she was known to be possessed of. Doubtless that piece of knowledge is reserved for the Glorious One Who knows all things.

It was about this time likewise that Sadr el hac qhan the new Supreme Magistrate a man well stricken in years, always sickly and who most of his time was out of order departed toward the regions of eternity after having answered his Creator's call with the words *I am ready O Lord* (74)<sup>1</sup>. It was the 19th of Zilhij of the year 1194 after having lived for one year four months and about twenty five or twenty six days with the name of Fodjdar General. It is not improper to give some account of him. He was born in Gudjrat and upon some emergency came to Shah djeihan-abad with his father where the old man died and the son not finding any prospect of advancement in that capital repaired to Bengal and to Moorshood abad where he was introduced into Aaly verdj qhan's service. This Prince gave him a pension and after the demise of Cazy muzzaffer aaly-qhan

---

(74) Arabic words, which every man is obliged to pronounce with a loud voice or which are pronounced by him by the by-standers. This is the same Princess who frightened beyond her wits by one of the Molavies or Judges of the Fodjdary or Criminal Court of those times who made her believe that fornication was still more punishable by the English than by the Mahometans, ransomed herself with a sum of fifty thousand rupees squeezed from her under the name of the English Chief, (it was Mr Samuel Middleton). The money was paid down; but two days after some one having sent her word that she had better apply to the Englishman himself she went to him, was perfectly well received and obtained full redress. The money that is the greatest part of it, was recovered out of the hands of Molavi Hossain by the Englishman's Banyan Santyram, who kept it to himself. This Santyram is the same who made a fortune of fifty-nine lacs under his kied, but too supine master in 1773, and 1774, and 1775 and in 1776 suffered him to be carried to a jail for a sum of forty thousand rupees.

he appointed him Daroga, or Auditor of the Court of justice. In the sequel, that is, at the time of the Marhatta irruption, he was sent Ambassador to their rulers in Decan, where he acquired the esteem and good will of both sides, and was honoured with presents by both. Being now a man of some character, as well as of some money, he came to have a regiment of his own and to be reputed a man of distinction. And this was his rank under Aaly-verdy-qhan's reign, and under that of his successors and relations, until Mahmed-reza-qhan came into power, and then he was appointed to the Government of Baghalpoor, where he remained but little, being turned out of his office. On Governor Hushtin's arrival in Bengal, he attached himself to him, and remained so steadfast in his attachment, that he was rewarded for it by being appointed to the office of Fodjdar-General, as well as by being decorated with a title of honour. But he enjoyed little so lucrative an office, and having said farewell to this fragile world, he took his journey towards the regions of eternity. This death occasioned a change in the affairs of Moorshoodabad.

As the Governor-General disapproved of Mahmed-reza-qhan's conduct, and Menny-begum was not pleased with that Minister's disposing of the Nizamet, and spending the young Prince's money as freely as he pleased, and on the other hand, Mubarec-ed-doulah himself was sometimes on this side, and sometimes on the other, there arose differences about the appointment and distribution of those offices, which Sadr-el-hac-qhan had left vacant. The Governor, who is the first man in the world for appreciating any one's merit and capacity, wanted to sound Aaly-hibrahim-qhan, who is really capable of putting in order affairs of the utmost importance, as well as of unravelling their utmost intricacies and subtilties. The Governor esteemed the Qhan a fit man for such an high office, and with that view he wrote to Mr Baber, Chief of Moorshoodabad, and an intimate friend of the Governor's, including a letter to Aaly-hibrahim qhan, in which he requested to know whether he would accept of those offices. The Qhan, apprised of the dissensions then existing in the Committee, and sensible how unlike he was in his own temper to the great men then in office, and how difficult it would prove to keep in good humour such a set of discontented masters, felt

likewise a certain disinclination against the office of Fodjdary, as it stood then, and which in fact consisted of little else than a discharge of a Cutval's office, that is, in fining and killing, and hanging and maiming, and in imprisoning and confining people. He concluded it highly improbable that such an office could be at all times exercised without sometimes injuring and wronging mankind and without rendering one's self responsible in a high degree both in this world and the other and he excused himself from accepting such a charge. He was likewise sensible that it would be difficult in such an office nay, out of his power entirely to keep fair and to live upon good terms with a number of English gentlemen who governed absolutely in every department. He therefore excused himself in a handsome manner that did not disoblige either Mr Baber or the Governor and he disengaged himself from the proposal. He knew that, in consequence of the necessity of keeping fair with some persons who did not agree amongst themselves, the exercise of his office would have very little solidity for that in every business and in every transaction he must of all necessity manage so, as to oblige five persons that have absolute power in the Committee and ten or twenty more that are attached to them and expect equal regard. And how long would a man be able to keep fair with them all and to pay some small regard to his duty and character at the same time? In reality these dissensions that have now spread in every branch of the administration and the spirit of party that has now taken possession of the principal English so as to become a second nature are of such a species as will always afford a sensible man many valuable reasons for declining any office at all under them nor can a man dependent on them but jealous of his own conscience and character pretend to keep himself harmless from the consequences of that spirit of party and dissension which runs so high amongst his masters even waiving all regard for his honour and character such a man cannot avoid running a great risk. What if when striving to oblige one of those choleric men his enemy at some unlucky day finds it in his power to make me feel his resentment and out of a spirit of revenge is soon up with me by insinuating upon me a variety of troubles and distresses? One of the main causes of the ruin of this country, and one of the main hinges

Aaly-hibra-  
him-qhan, to  
the surprise of  
all, refuses to  
succeed Sadr  
el-bac-qhan in  
all the offices  
he had left va-  
cant

upon which turn the distresses and miseries of its inhabitants, is this very spirit of dissension, that has become customary and current amongst the English, who are now the masters and rulers of those kingdoms a spirit that runs away with their faculties to the utter neglect of many duties. There are some other reasons likewise, which shall be explained in a short time at the close of this book, when mention shall be made of the conduct of the English rulers, and of their principal men in these regions.

Let us now return to the intrigues set up by Menny-begum. It is very probable that this haughty Princess, who does not love to see Mahmed-reza qhan in power, and could not bear his meddling with the affairs of the Nizamet, did write to the Governor to insinuate, that if he intended to keep that department in his own power, he must prevail on Aaly-hibrahim-qhan to accept the above office, as the only method for keeping it under his own controul. The Governor, for these reasons, engaged both Menny-begum and Mubarec-ed-döwlah to renew their solicitations to that nobleman, and to say to him "If you be apt to mistrust our sincerity, we shall give you an obligatory paper under our hands, by which we shall bind ourselves to do nothing without your consent and permission, nay, that we shall not meddle with anything at all, if you will have it so. Or, if you feel any inquietude about the expenditure of the money which may come to take place upon some particular emergencies, for which Mahmed-reza-qhan, in consequence of the power which he enjoys, might bring you into trouble, and you should find yourself at a loss how either to account for it or to refund the same, then we take that case upon ourselves, and will give you a writing under our hands, by which we shall acknowledge, that whenever such a case shall happen, we shall account for it ourselves, and shall bear you harmless." But all these solicitations availed nothing, nor would the Qhan lend an ear to them.

These divisions in the Council, which had deterred Aly-hibrahim-qhan, had not produced less considerable effects elsewhere, and especially at Lucknow. Two or three years after Shudjah-ed-dowlah's demise, that is, in the height of General Clavering's influence, Mr Djan Brishtoo, a very sensible young

John Bristow  
transfers the  
province of  
Benares to the  
English

man, had been appointed to the residency at Lucknow a modest word which implies no less than the absolute disposal of every thing in the provinces of Aood and Ilah abad That young man availed himself so well of his own talents, as well of Assuf ed dōwlah's ignorance, and of Moqhtar-ed dōwlah his Minister's supineness, that he transferred to the immediate dominion of the Company the country of Benares which was part of the lease of the son of Radja Balvent sing's But the General being now dead this service of his availed but little and he was turned out of his office Bristow who had made money and likewise done very well the Company a business, set out for his country with intention to come back after having established his interest in England But as long before his departure the General and the others had wrote home to recommend him as a man of merit that had rendered eminent services, there came after his departure, an order from Europe to continue him in his office with many commendations and encomiums upon his conduct Whilst that order was coming Bristow himself arrived in England and he availed himself so well of the services he had rendered and of the General's recommendation as well as of the joint efforts of that officer's friends that he obtained a new order for himself and another for reinstating Mshmed reza-ghan in the Fodjdary which two orders he brought himself to Calcutta It was at a time when some appearance of a reconciliation was taking place betwixt the two parties The defeat of two English armies in Decan had induced Mr Doocreel (Mr Duncarell) heretofore Governor of Poorannah and who now was at the head of the Qhalissa or Finance office to become mediator between the Governor and Mr Francis to whom he was a common friend He made them understand that this was not a time for them to dispute and to wrangle between themselves and that they had better postpone their differences for such times as would follow afterwards on a cessation of trouble And as on the other hand Mr Barwell who had hitherto had but one heart and one mind with the Governor to whom he had shewed a constant attachment was now resolved either out of some discontent against him, or for some purposes of his own, to repair to England of course some union and friendship between the Governor and Mr Francis had become the more necessary and it took place

accordingly, after some stipulations in favour of the latter, amongst which, the appointing of Mahmed-reza-qhan to the Fodjdary was a principal one. The Governor, who wished to oblige him, agreed to it, and on the twentieth of Sefer, of the year 1194, that Minister retook possession of that office, so that the water that had quitted his shore, commenced flowing again. They report on that occasion a very strange anecdote. A man well-acquainted with Séyd-mahmed-qhan himself (who is the same person to whom the Minister is so much attached, as to admit him to everyone of his secrets, and to undertake nothing without his advice and approbation) averred, as holding it from his own mouth, that Mahmed-reza-qhan had vowed and promised to the Divine Author of all gifts, and had written with his own hand upon a Coran of one of his friend's, "That if he ever recovered his offices and dignities, he would, as an offering to God, distribute twelve thousand rupees to the poor." What is strange, is that to this day, which is the end of the year 1195, and a full twelve month after the completion of his wish, the promise has not been fulfilled yet. Séyd-mahmed-qhan likewise had a positive order to execute, as delivered in these words: "And if you observe any tergiversation or neglect in me, after I shall have obtained the full of my wishes, then be sure to seize me by the throat, and to hold it fast squeezed, until I have paid down the money which you may then distribute yourself." Accordingly at the appointed time, the Qhan made serious instances, but to no purpose. The Minister brought forth a variety of apologies, such as "that Mubarec-ed-dowlah had already distributed so much money in alms, in his intention, the necessity of putting in repair his palaces of Now-Saht and Nyshat-baqh, the urgency of some expenditures, and such other matters, all which he thought sufficient excuses." What looks singular is, that in order to tranquillise the Qhan's conscience, he added "That he (Séyd-mahmed-qhan) had got out of his promise, but that himself was still entangled in it, and that he hoped to see the day when the Divine Providence would put it in his power to disburse and distribute that money." Wonderful God! may I admire that variety of traces, everywhere discernible, of your Divine dispensations, by which you have spread amongst a single species of your creatures so much difference of tempers, and

A D 1780 81

Mahmed-reza-qhan in office again, for the third time

such a diversity of dispositions that one individual shall spend so much of his consequence and time in covetously hunting after a dignity which another individual a thousand times inferior to him in wealth shall have spurned at and rejected although offered to him with solicitations and intreaties by the reigning powers and by the Lords of the land! Aaly hibrabim qhan struck the feet of contentment and resignation into the head and breast of that office(75) and remained unmoved by all its temptations and all their prayers. But you are an O worthy man by a particular gift of the Author of all love!

Death of  
Mirza-iredj-  
qhan, and of  
Ahtiram-ed-  
döwlah

About forty two days before this event Mahmed iredj qhan son to Acbar cooly qhan and father in law to Seradj-ed döwlah and illustrious nobleman of whom we have spoke in the history of Aaly verdj qhao departed towards the regions of Divine mercy. It was the ninth of Muharrem about the beginning of the year ninety fourth of the Hedjra and the fourteenth of second Rebv of the same year Ahtiram ed döwlah mir-caxem qhan brother to Mir djaffer-qhan and uncle to Mubarec-ed döwlah set out likewise for the mansions of the Divine Forgiver. He fell sick at Radj mahal where he lived and finding himself ill he was repairing to Moorshood abad to get himself treated but the Angel of death intercepted him on his way and conducted him towards the road that leads to eternity. He was entombed in the monument of his family with his father and brothers. He bore the character of a good natured man but not without a mixture of indolence and supineness in his composition as if to verify that sentence of the Coran, *That most of the inhabitants of the Paradise are simple of heart*. May God's forgiveness and mercy rest upon him for ever! The changes happened at Moorshood-abad and Lucknow were followed by some further alterations at Azim abad.

About the middle of the year ninety third of the Hedjra Mr Aynon law Chief at that city was for some particular reasons dismissed from his dignity and office and he thought proper to repair to Mendradj from whence he went to England. He was succeeded by Mr Macsool (Maxwell), second to him in rank, who in conjunction with the other councillors conducted the business of that Province. Mr Neec one of them was a man

Disturbances  
and intrigues  
at Azim-abad

of a violent passionate temper, although full of sense, as well as vigorous and stiff in his attachments. But his Divan, Ram-lochun, a Bengaly of a strange savageness of temper, was narrow-minded, and of a very uncommon cast of mind, yet such as he was, he had gained a thorough ascendant over his master's mind. This gentleman was much displeased with Radja Hyaliram and some others, who being supported by, and connected with, Mr Law, thought proper to keep at some distance from Mr Neec, and his savage of a Divan. But as on the other hand, the latter drew a mighty credit and much countenance from his connections with Mr Barwell, a leading Member of the Committee, to whom the Governor paid great deference, he had on those two accounts risen to so much power and influence in the Council of Azim-abad, that he did as he pleased. Radja Hyaliram, after Mr. Law's departure, found it necessary to join Mr Neec, and under a promise of presenting him with a large sum of money, should he obtain the lease of some of the public revenues, he made his peace with him, and became the disposer of all matters and transactions in the districts of Cháyn-poor, Sarseram, and Seress-cotumbah, to which places he repaired to hasten the collection with all his might. But as the money did not come in as fast as promised, Mr Neec came forward, and let loose his Divan Ram-lochun, a man who bearing already a cordial hatred to Hyaliram, plunged him into so much chicanery and trouble, that the Radja fearful for his honour as well as for his life, resolved to repair to Calcutta, and to refer everything to the Governor. But the difficulty was how to get out of Azim-abad, and how to elude Ram-lochun's clutches and watchfulness. He therefore applied by several petitions to the Governor, and represented, that should he (Hyaliram) be sent for to the presence, and rescued from the danger that hung over his head, he would demonstrate his own zeal and gratitude, by making many important discoveries. Maha-radja Calyan-sing, son to the late Shitábriá, was so slothful and so supine a nobleman, as to have lost all power and influence at the Council Board of Azim-abad, where he was looked upon as a cipher. But as he was much discontented with all the Members, he came to Hyaliram's assistance, and wrote respectful letters to the Governor, setting forth the other's good conduct,



and his punctuality in business. The Governor who at once comprehended that administration might draw some benefit from these disputes commanded Radja Hyaliram's attendance and the latter thinking it a piece of good fortune to escape from the paws of Ram lochun repaired to Calcutta, where he soon found admittance. For although he is not always well intentioned yet being as he is full of sense and wit and the times admitting and even requiring men of such active characters he was handsomely received by the Governor to whom he gave an account of the real causes of the endless failures and outstanding balances in the collections of the province of Azim abad. He informed him of the numberless infidelities of Ram lochun and of the endless oppressions and exactions, which he had been guilty of on the inhabitants of that unhappy country and which he was still committing by himself and his dependants as well as by the officers of the Fodjdary-office at the head of which he was in his master's right. The Governor on hearing such a dismal account of that country could not be brought to believe that men of his nation could be guilty of such excesses nor would he on Hyaliram's suggestions dismiss the whole Council of Azim abad a necessary measure, however and in consequence of which the people of God might have been rescued from the miseries of yielding obedience to such a set of rulers and the necessity of depending on their nod and pleasure. Nevertheless impressed by Hyaliram's sense and wit, and by the flowing easiness of his delivery the Governor granted him most of his demands and left the disposal of the collections of those parts to his discretion and knowledge although Hyaliram had no money of his own and he was supported by no own protector. Thus in consequence of his representations and good management, all the former collectors of revenue were dismissed and himself was invested with full powers and a decisive authority over the affairs of that resort. Hyaliram out of attachment and gratitude for former benefits received from Calyan sing set apart for his account some districts of that province and kept only some others for himself, and thus after having performed a voyage that did him a deal of honour and credit he returned to Azim abad, about the beginning of the year 95 of the Hedjra. A little after all the Members of the Council were dismissed from

The Council of Azim-abad accused of enormous infidelities in the management of finances.

their shares in the Revenue-office, and the two Radjahs addicted themselves jointly to the care of putting the finances in order. On the other hand, the people of the province, glad to return to the sway of their own countrymen, trusted to the appearance of unanimity and unity of command, which seemed to reign between them, and they imagined that the oppressed public would soon be released from the miseries of its former situation. But such are the revolutions of heavenly bodies, and such the instability which they impress on human affairs and dispositions, that hardly was Hyaliram arrived from Calcutta, hardly was he recovered from the bodily labour he had undertaken, partly on Radja Calyan-sing's account, than the latter, notwithstanding all the obligations he owed to his colleague, became altered at once. At the instigation of some foolish proud young men, he had the impudence to write complaints against him to the Governor, and to accuse him openly in Mr. Macsool's presence, who was Chief of Azim-abad. But the Governor, who is the first man of his age for knowledge of the world, and who to form an estimate of a man's character and abilities, needs only to see and to hear him once, the Governor, I say, who in a few conferences with Hyaliram had already with his eagle-like keenness of sight, made himself master of the degree of that man's abilities and genius, and was likewise thoroughly apprised of the soft and ductile character of Calyan-sing's, paid no attention to the latter's imputations, but sent to the other, the investiture and honorary dress of Deputy to Calyan-sing, making him the sole disposer of all revenue matters. My God! Almighty turn the dissensions and jealousies of the people of this country into union and love, so that all its inhabitants may enjoy rest and comfort, and may they exchange evil for good!

It is not improper to observe on Hyaliram's subject, that although he is so determined a liar, that there is no trusting to his word, yet such as he is, he must be endowed, and he is really endowed with so many laudable qualifications, that it would be difficult to find his equal in this present time, as characters go now, nor would I be surprised at all to see him turn better than he is, and improve his character essentially, on being favoured with an accession of power, and more extensive office, nor would it be at all improbable, but that in such a case, the people of this

All the Members of that Council dismissed from the management of finances

Strange and yet valuable character of Hyaliram, with an affecting little story, that does him a great deal of honour

province should come to better their unhappy condition and to enjoy a release from the pains and miseries they endure, for there are some particulars so that mao's odd character that do him an infinite deal of honour

A few days before our writing these lines there came from Bengal to Azimabad a venerable gentleman with a flowing white beard. He was a Persian born and a stranger. The day of his arrival after having fatigued himself in setting his little things in his new lodgings he was suddenly taken ill and died about midnight. At day-break the officers of the Fodjdary office rushed headlong into his lodgings with so intention to take possession of his effects. He had four small children all motherless. The poor fellows waked suddenly at the noise and seeing their father motionless and so many strange faces in the house, took fright and clung as close as they could to the dead body as if for protection they fell a weeping and trembling. The man's servant waking at last, and being at once overwhelmed by a number of questions and by the threats of those oppressors wanted to part the children from the corpse and these angoring nothing but ill from that violence fell a screaming all together with all their might, so as to fill the whole quarter with an uproar which people compared to that of the Day of Judgment. Radja Hyaliram came to hear of this matter but his chairmen not being at hand he ran on foot out of his house and going into the lodging to question he exerted himself in soothing and pacifying the affrighted children. Sending at the same time for a Minister of the Mussulmoo religion and for a winding sheet with some other necessities he ordered the prayers directed by law to be pronounced over the deceased his body to be washed according to those rites and then to be buried in a particular spot which he had bought a few days before for his own burial, and which he from that moment bequeathed as a burying ground for poor faithful travellers (76). This done, he took by the hand those children who were now orphans indeed, and carried them to his house where he desired his consort to bring them up as his

---

(76) By faithful, the author understands no others than those of his own sect that is, the Shyiah sect to which Hyaliram as well as his master Shyab-riy were so strongly biased.

own, with no difference at all in the treatment, and that very day, he settled a pension upon them, appointed a servant to their service, and found out a tutor to teach them their letters, and to bring them up in their father's religion. Lastly, he appointed a retired part of his lodgings for their habitation, and now they are carefully educated, until some relation or other, comes over to claim them, otherwise, he intends to adopt them himself, and to marry them amongst the Mussulmen. May the Most High God, by His favour and grace, augment that man's inclination to perform such meritorious actions, and may He turn other people's hearts towards practices of benevolence and charity! Amen

It is to be wished we could speak with as much fulness of the affairs and campaigns in Decan, but the detail of the battles and transactions in that country cannot be well known to any, but to those Commanders, who having been in battle against one another, have made trials of each other's valour and strength. As for me, I know only as much of them as has been published by common report, or has been written by Indians constituted in power and dignity, and it is these reports and relations which I am putting in order throughout these sheets. I was at Azim-abad, when I heard of the expedition and achievements of Colonel Godard's. That Commander being arrived at Ilah-abad, heard that the army in which he had been appointed to serve, was gone to Calpy, on which he made haste, and soon joined it at that spot, where he found that the English Commander had opened a correspondence, and a commerce of friendship with some Zemindars of those parts, and with some of the enemies of the Princes and Radjahs of the Bundul-cund, with whom he had concluded treaties, with a view to open a passage through their countries, and to conciliate their good will to the expedition. But on advancing a little beyond Calpy, Lesley who commanded in chief, and to whom Godard obeyed against his inclination, had the imprudence and thoughtlessness to engage himself in a parched country, where for some leagues together in every direction, no water at all was to be found, and no habitation to be seen, and this too at a season of the year, when the heats are intolerable, as it is always the case in India, just before the setting in of the rains, so that this imprudence cost him in that single day, three or four English

Colonel Lesley engages his army in a tract destitute of water, where he suffers a loss for want of that refreshment

officers, ten or twelve or even more English soldiers and above a hundred of those native soldiers that go by the name of Talingas all which dropped dead for want of water to quench their thirst. The remaining officers shocked at this enormous thoughtlessness of Colonel Lesley's as well as at the covetousness of his temper and the supineness of his conduct became discontented against him and wrote an infinity of complaints to the Committee of Calcutta. Colonel Godard himself wrote in the same style. He exposed his reasons of discontent, and observed that as no union and concert could take place between Lesley and him he requested either to be excused from so disagreeable a service or that some other officer should be appointed to the supreme command. The other officers did not fall short of such a style in their letters and even some of them wrote in common 'That if the Committee intended the safety of this army and to see it victorious they must appoint

Colonel Godard to the command of it. The Governor and Council on these universal complaints thought proper to reprimand Lesley and then to recall him from the army and having raised Colonel Godard's station and rank they appointed him to the sole command of that army. A brevet drawn up in very honorable terms was sent him at the same time. But by a singular good luck it happened that before the order could come up the ministers of destiny and fate had dismissed Lesley's spirit from the command and government of his body and had forbidden the latter to obey any more the directions of the other so that Godard was already in the full command of the army when the order arrived. This officer who in good manners and in the art of commanding has not his equal in the world gained so much upon the hearts of his soldiers and even of those of the Zemledars on his passage and he kept so strict a discipline over his people that he made great progresses in his journey. Having given two shameful defeat to the troops of Bundulcund which at two different times attempted to oppose his passage he marched on boldly through an enemy's country and over an unknown tract of land and with no more than five or six thousand men and ten or eleven pieces of cannon and mortars he cut his way with great vigour and conduct for three months together until he arrived very near to the spot

Death of  
Colonel Les-  
ley, by which  
accident the  
command de-  
volves on Col  
Godard.

destined for the junction of his troops with the other English army that had set out from Bombay, but here he found matters very much altered. General Carnac, Commander of the army from Bombay, proud of his command, and anxious to acquire a great name before Godard's arrival, had hastened forward, and with an army under his command, which both in numbers and in artillery, was superior to Colonel Godard's (77), he attacked the Marhattas, and was completely vanquished. He was even besieged and enclosed in such a manner, as to suffer a total defeat, and to bring a complete disgrace upon the English arms. Those that survived that defeat, joined General Carnac, and were obliged to enter into some shameful articles with the victorious, and after having exchanged some stipulations, they returned to their fortress and homes at Bombay. Colonel Godard being apprised of that event, concluded that as his army had greatly suffered from the length of his march and from the very numerous engagements in which he had been victorious, his troops to all appearance would prove unequal to the task of facing an enemy flushed with victory. He therefore thought it expedient to strike to the right, and to march on to Surat, which was a city and port in the power of the English. As soon as he arrived, and he had put his troops into quarters of refreshment, he wrote to the Council of Calcutta, which of late had been invested with a Dictatorial power over all the English factories on the Indian coast, and with the absolute direction of all the English armies and officers in India. The Governor and Council, together with the Council of Bombay, refused to ratify the treaty made by General Carnac, and they commanded General Godard to fight the Marhattas.

Colonel Godard cuts his way with great vigour for three months together, and is on the point of effecting a junction with the army of Bombay, when the latter is totally defeated.

Whilst that Commander was in cantonments, Umed-el-mulk *alias* Mir-sheab-eddin, the same who had sown so many troubles in Hindostan by his endless infidelities, and eternal intrigues, and had brought on the ruin of the Empire and even of these very kingdoms, by the revolutions he had caused, at once made his appearance in that city. That wretched, who had projected to ruin the sons of his own uncle, that is, the posterity of Nizam-el-mulk (78), and to complete the downfall of the remainder of

Mir-Sheab-eddin *alias* Umed-el-mulk, suddenly appears in Decan.

(77) This is a mistake of our author's. Carnac's army did not amount to more than four thousand men. Godard's troops exceeded six thousand.

(78) He was son to Ghazi-eddin qhan, elder brother to Selabet-djung, to Nizam-aaly, to Bessalet-djung, and to Mir-musherff, all sons to Nizam-el-mulk.

that family (which to this day enjoys great power and great dominions in Decan), was gone into those southern parts with sinister intentions. But the Grandees and Commanders of those countries, who luckily had still in their hearts some respect for their masters welfare as subjects and some regard for their own reputation and characters as soldiers refused to pay any attention to his intrigues and suggestions and the man now reduced to straits as well as unable to find throughout all the cities of Hindustan or even in all those of Decan a single spot whereon he might tread in safety repaired to Surat, under pretence of a pilgrimage to the glorious Mecca and he kept himself concealed for a length of time, nor was he discovered but by some jewels of value which he got out for sale. Colonel Godard was obliged to write to the Governor and Council to know their pleasure with respect to this man and he was at first forbidden to have any connections with him but in the sequel they concluded that an intriguing man is always a shrewd man and that being acquainted with all the chief men of Decan as well as allied to the family of Nizam-el mulk he might be of great use. Accordingly they ordered the Colonel to have connections with him in hopes that at some future emergencies his abilities and knowledge might answer some purpose in their cause. The General upon this letter admitted him to his friendship and gave him a pension for his subsistence.

The English  
acquire in  
Gudjrat a  
potent ally

Whilst the Bengal army was yet in Surat the English interest had been recruited by a new ally. This was Ráo Fateh sing cáicvar ooe of the principal feudatories of the Marhatta Empire. He had been invited over by Ragonat ráo who had engaged him to conclude a written engagement with that nation in which he was promised to have the whole Gudjrat (79) for himself under

---

(79) The Marhatta Empire consists of several feudatories, the principal of which are the Bhosselabs, who possess a country almost as extensive as Bengal, to the south-west of it, but more warlike the Singhas, who possess the Malva; the Cáicvars who possess about fifty lacs of reveane in Gódjrat and the Holcars, who are masters of the country round Bérhampoor. They are obliged to appear in the field, whenever called upon and their quota is from twenty to thirty thousand horse, all paid and maintained by them. But whoever should imagine that this Vassalage amounts to little more than that of the Princes of Germany to the Emperor, would be much mistaken and here is a proof of it. So long as the Marhatta arms were kept at bay by the success of the English in Decan the Court of Poona put up

condition of his joining the troops to his English, and of his being assisting in their expedition. The Colonel, after that junction, conceived the scheme of taking the city of Azim-abad-Gudjrat, and about the end of the year 1190 of the Hedjra, he marched out of Surat, and presenting himself before that city, he at first offered the Marhatta Commanders terms of capitulation for surrendering the place, but this being rejected, he in a little time ruined the walls, and took the place by mere force and by assault, and although it is not customary with the English troops to plunder or to kill after a victory, nevertheless at the capture of this place, there was some plunder made, and some bloodshed, whether because the Cáicvar, with his Marhattas, was in their company, or for some other reason that has not transpired. This much is certain that some plunder was committed, and possibly some blood was shed. The Colonel having delivered the city and fortress to Fateh-sing-cáicvar, and established that Prince's government over it, came out and marched forward, resolved to fight another Marhatta army that had come to the assistance of the garrison. But such brilliant successes having spread the renown of the English far and near, did not fail to suscite in their favour a new ally, and this was a Prince called the Rana of Gohud. In a few days his agents arrived at Calcutta, and offered to join the English, but requested at present a small number of troops. The reason of this negotiation was, that the Rana of Gohud, who had this longwhile disputes with the Marhattas, and was always at variance with them, hoped that as the English were now waging war against that nation, he might avail himself of that new power to snatch from his enemies some districts and fortresses of his which they detained this longwhile, after which, he would be ready to shew his gratitude to his new allies, by proving his zeal for their cause. The Governor had too much wisdom and knowledge, not to perceive the utility of an alliance with a great Prince who had money, troops, and dominions, who could afford so much local knowledge of the countries and affairs of the

A D. 1780

Ahmed-abad-Gudjrat taken by assault, and sacked and plundered

The English acquire a new ally, the Radja of Gohud

---

with Modadjí-bhosselah's tergiversing conduct, and with his ambiguous connection with that nation, but as soon as peace had taken place, he was sent for at Poonah, threatened with a resumption, and obliged to redeem himself of the corors by which his dominions were in arrears to the treasury, by making concessions, and paying down one coror of rupees, or a million and-a-quarter sterling



Marhattas upon whom his dominions bordered, and who offered himself to the English as a guide for his country became of course a new conquest that cost him nothing. So that the Governor looking upon such an event as a favour from above sent to his assistance Captain Palmer, with three regiments of Talungas. This officer was accompanied by Tefez zul hossein qhan who had once been tutor to Mirza saadet aaly second son to Shudjah-ed döwlah (80) and was now sent in quality of an agent from the Governor to gain the Rana's heart. The two envoys being arrived at Gohud took possession of the castle under pretence of lodging themselves and under the mask of friendship and a visit they kept him prisoner and surrounded by their forces.

The English  
take possession  
of Gohud.

But before we continue the history of that expedition we must take a view of some other parts of Decan. In consequence of the necessity of some affairs of my own and of the tyranny exercised by destiny I was obliged to make an application to Calcutta and of course to take a journey to Bengal and it was in the year 1794. On my arrival at Moorshoodabad and at Calcutta, I learned with a little more detail what concerned the Decan from the principal men of those cities and as I was actually writing the rough draft of this book in that journey I used to insert occasionally in it whatever I heard worth notice and credit. It amounts to this. That the Grandees of the Court of Poona and Satara, who now govern the dominions of the Sahu Radja and of Ram Rajah (81) finding the English bent on the destruction of their Empire had united together and had invited over on one hand Fateh sing cáicvar, who had already joined the English and on the other the sons of Rago hhoselali who from Aaly verdy qhan's time had ever been at peace with the rulers of Bengal and had now by the means of Mr Elliot's and Mr Anderson's embassy and negotiation renewed that peace and entered into a new treaty of friendship and amity with Governor Hushtin. These were now called upon by

A D 1780 81

The Marhattas  
join together to  
make an effort  
against the  
English

(80) This Saadet-aaly lives now at Banares, where the English, after having recommended him to a pension of four lacs a year from Assef-ed-döwlah, Navab or King of A8d keep him there as a Bugbear to frighten occasionally his elder brother into good manners.

(81) These are two of the first Emperors of the Marhatta Empire.

dint of threats to unite with the others, and they agreed to an union of concerns at last. It was about the middle of the year 1194, at which time Colonel Godard had already discovered Fateh-sing-câievar's defection, and as he found, on the other hand, that the rainy season was coming, he became tired of a kind of warfare that had no end, and served only to render the difficulties and necessities of his army greater and greater. With this view he returned to Surat. That city was only a few days journey. But the enemy eternally hanging on his rear, it cost him full forty or fifty days fighting, to cut his way through an hostile country, and this he did with a deal of steadiness and activity. At last he arrived in that city, where he put his troops into quarters of refreshment. But whilst he was preparing all the necessaries for commencing early another campaign, Fateh-sing-câievar, who had got so easily and so cheaply possession of the G8djrât, but had now become envious of Colonel Godard's prosperity, put himself at the head of his own forces, and took his station in the districts which originally had been in his possession. Whilst such a change was taking place in G8djrât, Chinnadjî, another Marhatta General, who was nephew to Rago-dji-bhosselah, having listened to the instigations and menaces of the Ministers of Poona (82), set out with a good army from the Great-Nâigpoor, his capital, and marched

---

(82) To give some idea of those Ministers, which many might be apt to call barbarians, it must be remembered that they consented to let go from Vargam an army of English, which they had beaten and defeated, and which they might have kept besieged until it should have perished to the last man. Instead of that, they gave it a pass, and an escorte. We must likewise read some of those letters written by people which are called Idolators in Europe. Here is the beginning of a long one written to Governor Hastings, the first April, 1776, by Sircaram baboo, Prime Minister of the Court of Poona. It is a Barahman that speaks.

"The all-wise Creator and Protector of the Universe, formed man superior to  
 "all other of his creatures, and endowing him with reason, made him lord over all,  
 "and by the gift of speech, adorned by the gem of veracity, put into his hands the  
 "authority over all the terrestrial world. It is consequently the duty of all Magistrates,  
 "and all those invested with authority, to provide for and protect the people of God  
 "entrusted to their care. As this is not to be affected without apparent means,  
 "wise men have established the mode of corresponding with each other by letters  
 "and messengers. It was therefore my earnest desire to establish such a corres-  
 "pondence with you, and although certain weak and little minds considered this  
 "design as the effect of timorousness, yet in the sight of wisdom it will be regarded  
 "as a proof of a great soul."

towards Djagennat and Cateck There he took up his winter quarters, whilst his agents were now repairing to Calcutta, and professing amity and friendship to the English cause The Governor who did not trust altogether to their professions opposed an army of English to the Marhatta army in Cateck and stationed troops besides at all the passes in the mountains where those enemies had used to pour into the provinces of Bengal and Bahar These troops had orders to oppose force by force should they make any motion that way (83)

But as Hâider nâic is now going to cut so great a figure in our history It is proper to part with our subject for a while in order to give some account of that extraordinary man Hâider nâic originally was a Commander in the service of the French in Decan in which he commenced by serving as a Nâic which signifies a Commander of ten or fifteen men By degrees he rose to the offices of Djemaat dar Soohadar Comidan (Commandant) which last is the highest title of command to which one can attain amongst the nations of hat wearers. What appears very singular is that notwithstanding that superior station, the surname of Nâic stuck to him ever after In the sequel he served the Radjahs of Decan made himself a character and acquired much power and becoming famous little by little he was taken into the service of the Radja of Malavar (84) where in a little time

Some ac-  
count of  
Hâider nâic

---

(83) Modaji-bhosselah, who would not fall out with the Court of Poona, whose feudatory he was sent an army of twenty-five thousand horse upon the frontiers of Bengal And as he would not fall out with the English neither from whom he received a pension he sent that army by so circuitous a road that instead of two months and-a-half it did not arrive upon the frontiers of Bengal but after a seven months journey that is, just at the very beginning of the rains, which always last with violence for six full months. On the other hand, as he had a much greater liking to English rupees than to English Cannon-balls he availed himself of their fears and anxieties to squeeze from them under two or three plausible pretences a contribution of about two-and-thirty lacs; a sum which the English had the wisdom to think very inferior to two or three hundred lacs of damage, which those merciless freebooters might have easily done

(84) The author who had no better memoirs upon the affairs of Decan than hearsays, has mistaken the case Hâider nâic did not take service with the Radja of Malavar but with the Radja or King of Mayssor whose little country exceedingly well peopled and cultivated, as are all Hindoo countries, yields un less than a Coror of rupees a year or a million and-a-quarter sterling The truth is that all Hindostanies have but confused notions of any difference betwixt the Malavar and the Mayssor

he fell out with that Prince's Divan, who according to the custom of that country, disposed of the revenues and expenditures of that Prince, and directed all his Councils absolutely Háider-náic, who despised that Minister's pusillanimity, as much as he confided on his own valour and talents, had the boldness to fall upon him in broad day-light, and to kill his rival, after which he took possession of his office. From that day he acted with an absolute sway in everything, but still with the policy of leaving the Radja alive, and in his usual employment That Prince is still alive and whenever his keeper thinks it proper, he is produced in public as an ancient relic, at which time he never fails to pay him every mark of respect and veneration After his establishing in this manner his authority over the Malavar, he thought proper to march to the assistance of Nizam-aaly-qhan, son to Nizam-el-mulk, Sovereign of the Decan, who having fallen out with the English, and with Mahmed-aaly-qhan, Viceroy of Arcat, had marched at the head of an army, and given them a great battle, in which he was assisted by Háider-náic, with his person and a body of troops But the English having obtained the victory, Nizam-aaly-qhan in despair of his defeat, obstinately remained on the field of battle, resolved rather to perish in the field than to survive his defeat It was at this moment he was descried by Háider-náic from afar, who being informed of his despair and resolution, galloped up to him, and made use of force and violence to turn his elephant about, and to make him quit the field of battle Nizam-aaly-qhan consented at last, but told him that it was under condition that he (Háider-náic) would provide for his obtaining his revenge of that defeat The other promised it; and really after having spent some time in making his preparatives, he turned about, and fell on the English, or else, he let Nizam-aaly-qhan depart, and then in a few days he turned about, faced the English again, but was defeated and obliged to fly for life Either from some particular emergency, or from the concurrence of destiny, he was obliged to turn his back, and to return to his own country But the English, bent on his pursuit, arrived in his dominions, where they took, one after another, whatever fortress opposed their passage, and after having established contributions in the country, they used to proceed forward These many sieges having given him time to collect his

He fights  
the English  
with a variety  
of successes  
but in general  
with advantage

resources, he quickly repaired to a strong fortress of his, deposited there most of his baggage, and having taken out of it as much provisions and ammunition as would serve for some days all his troops, he turned about, and by rapid marches, he fell suddenly upon the English, and gave them a great defeat. But as the vanquished army continued in a body and after having been drawn up in battle array wanted to renew the combat, he at once disappeared from before them without their being able to know any thing of his motions and having marched by roads which nobody suspected he suddenly made his appearance before Mendaig (Madras) which was empty of troops and where there were no preparatives made against his coming and he surrounded it on all sides. The Governor and principal men seeing no resource at hand set open the gate of amity, went to meet him, and made a treaty with him by which the troubles ended by a peace. But this peace having afforded some repose to Haidar Ali, he returned to his own country and diligently employed himself in disciplining his troops, and in providing every implement necessary for war and conquest. After a length of time had elapsed, a dispute arose between the Marhattas and himself in which he was shamefully beaten and obliged to fly to his country where he soon repaired his losses. The Marhattas meanwhile overawed by his superiority of genius and intimidated by his art of finding resources, united with Nizam Ali-ghan and undertook to demolish his power and to ruin him totally. For this purpose they joined twenty five thousand horse of their own to some thousand more which Nizam-Ali-ghan had sent them under the command of Cala-ghan-dhonsa and they made an irruption into his dominions. Haidar Ali finding that he could not stand against such a force, abstained for a whole year from encountering the enemy. But yet he constantly kept at the distance of some miles without losing sight of him unless he sometimes chose to make a stay and then he was always provided with such a numerous body of pioneers and such an immense artillery, as enabled him at any time to fortify a good post, and to tarry there nor did his enemies dare to attack him in such a fortified camp. Nevertheless with all this good countenance he wisely concluded that in time his country would be ruined by such a warfare and he sought his safety in a treaty of peace by which he gave a deal of money to the

Marhattas, to Nizam-aaly-qhan, and to the latter's General, Calaghan, and in this manner he extricated himself from his difficulties

After this peace, he passed ten or twelve years in rest and tranquillity, but spent this interval in making mighty preparatives. He sent Embassadors with rich and curious presents to Kerim-qhan-zendi (85), then master absolute of all Iran, and these in their master's name requested leave to raise in his dominions some thousand men of cavalry. The permission being soon granted, the Envoys, who were furnished with large sums of money, soon brought from thence some thousand Persian Moghuls, all young vigorous men, commanded by proper officers of their own. On the other hand, he opened a correspondence with the French of Mauris, an island over against his country, and by their means he opened another correspondence with the Ministers of the French kingdom. Thither also he sent curious and rich presents. Meanwhile he imported into his country a number of excellent horses, which he got mounted by Bar-ghirs, or men which he paid (86) a part, as it is customary in India. These he disciplined in a manner particular to himself, teaching some thousands of them to form their ranks, and without breaking them, to face about and attack on a full gallop some thousands of others opposite them. He also obliged the Moghul and Indian troopers that were in his service, to be exercised every day for nine hours together, in the evolutions and rules of moving and fighting in order, insomuch that he rendered them expert in their business, and capable of any service. To this numerous body of cavalry, he added seventy thousand musqueteers,

Sets up a cavalry of Persians and other foreigners, which he disciplines after a method of his own

---

(85) Kerim qhan was his name, Zendi, that of his tribe, which was a tribe originally Iranian, living in the Lorestan, a mountainous tract, in the north of Pars. There are other tribes of Iranian origin, settled in the middle and southern parts of Iran or Persia, whereas the Turkish tribes, that furnish almost all the soldiers of that Empire, dwell in the northern parts of it from west to east. The Sefi family, that has just become extinct in our days, was of a Turkish tribe settled in Ader-báy-djan or Media, and Nadyr-shah (*alias* Tahmasp cooly-qhan), who put an end to it, was an Asshar, of that division of that tribe, which is settled in Qhorassan. It was remarked of Kerim-qhan, that although a Monarch absolute, and a conqueror, he never struck money in his own name, but only under that general one, of *Sahab-seman*, the reigning Prince.

(86) In India the trooper finds himself in horse, arms, and accoutrements. The Bar-ghirs or burthen-bearers, find themselves in arms, but are found in horse and accoutrements by the State.

Provides a  
numerous in-  
fantry disci-  
plined after  
the European  
manner; and  
an immense  
artillery  
mounted and  
served in the  
English and  
French model

His severity  
to his own  
was consider-  
ed as a mili-  
tary officer

armed with flint locks, and which he disciplined in the European manner This mighty army was followed by a train of seven hundred pieces of artillery mounted and served exactly in the English and French manner After spending some years in these preparations, he became so conscious of his own strength that he sallied forth and conquered both from the Malavar Princes and from the Marhattas an extent of ground that yielded a revenue of about four Corors a year (87) His army accoutred and furnished abundantly with every necessary exactly as in Europe is kept under the strictest order and discipline They say that his eldest son who is now his best General does not dare to deviate a hair's breadth from any of his orders so far are any others from daring it themselves One day he commanded him to be on horseback seven hours after sunset and to go to such a spot It happened that although he mounted at the proper time it was however after a short delay But that short delay was taken up that very moment he sent for him back and made him undergo the punishment of the whip Nor was he less exact in other respects On observing that the Moghul and Persian Officers in his army were perpetually fighting amongst themselves he sent for them and represented to them in a moderate tone of voice and in a friendly manner 'That as he had procured them from afar and they had cost him already an immense sum of money they ought to reserve themselves for his service instead of killing and slaughtering each other as they did every day he added that as they were strangers in this country they ought to live upon good terms with the Indians and by all means upon terms of tenderness and love with their own countrymen But this friendly reprimand had no effect and they went on in their usual way above all making no account of the Indians and endlessly quarrelling and fighting amongst themselves and against the others Two or three times he repeated his reprimand and two or three times he repeated it in vain At last he grew tired and one day he ordered two or three of those disobedient officers to be seized and made fast to an elephant's feet where they were trampled to death From that day they returned to order and obedience and having tucked up the hem of obedience into the sash of zeal

and submission, they are now brought under a strict discipline, and are at all times ready for immediate action. To defray such expenses, he has got possession of immense treasures, amassed from ancient times by the Princes of Decan for several ages past, nor is there in all Hindostan a power comparable to his in wealth, strength, splendour, discipline, and number of good troops. However, all this I mention upon general report, for after all, God only knows whether I am mistaken in that assertion. Háider-náic finding himself able to assert his rights, conceived now the design of recovering several territories which the Marhattas had wrested some years before from him, and he sent them word, that if they returned quietly those countries, and made a treaty with him, he would assist them with all his forces in their quarrel with the English, else, they must prepare for war. The Court of Poona which was now sensible of the importance of such an ally at such a critical time, concluded that it was as happy an offer as they might wish for, and having soon agreed to his demands, they proposed a treaty with him on these two conditions. The first, that he should himself come over to their assistance, and fight by their side. The second, that if his affairs did not permit him to come so far, then that he should invade the province of Arcat, carry ruin and devastation in every part of it, and keep in continual alarms, the armies and power of the English. Háider-náic, finding it impossible and inexpedient to join the Marhattas, accepted the second condition.

Gives the law to the Marhattas, with whom he makes a treaty

As soon as this treaty had been concluded and executed, he prepared to fulfil it on his part. In the middle of the year 1194 of the Hedjra, he invaded the province of Arcat with an army that covered the plains, like the waves of an angry sea, and with a train of artillery that had no end. Being arrived at about forty or fifty cosses from the territory of Mendradj, he stopped there, and suddenly dispatched a strong body of troops under his son, with orders to push hastily to the capital. This General arriving unexpectedly, made himself master of that city, as well as of the palace of Mahmed-aaly-qhan, the Viceroy of the province, together with whatever they contained. They say that he did not offer much injury or damage to the inhabitants of the city, but that he ruined the gardens and country-houses

A. D. 1780

He invades the Carnatic, and pushes to the very gates of Mendradj



belonging to the English and made prisoners those he found there Gen Monro the same who had heretofore beaten the Vezir of Hindostan at Bacsar when he was only a Major was now General and appointed to the defence of the factory and fortress of Mendradj. He came out of the walls with ten battalions of Talingas and sixteen pieces of cannon furnished with every necessary such as ball and powder and he intended to fight. Bnt Hâider nâic hearing of this wrote to his son to retreat from thence and to draw the English army into the plain, and meanwhile to retrograde himself gradually towards his father. The son having obeyed punctually Gen Monro put his army in battle array and having ordered a regiment with some Captains and Lieutenants and Ensigns and some Sergeants with two pieces of cannon, and necessities to advance forward as usual nt two or three cosses distance from the main body he followed himself with his whole army; and in this manner he advanced ten or twelve cosses farther from the fortress. Hâider nâic hearing of this sent a body of troops under the command of his son with orders first to charge the regiment in question and then to send intelligence every moment and meanwhile to stand ready to execute further commands. The son did as he was commanded and he attacked the regiment with so much vigour that the Commander of it after having bravely stood his ground and received the enemy with a fire of musketry and cannon sent word to the General that the combat was drawing to a length that his numbers were thinned, the enemy numerous and that he wanted immediate relief. As the distance was great and one-quart of the day was already spent when the combat commenced, it was noon before the trooper with the intelligence arrived and some time more being spent, before the General could fix his mind on a resolution, there remained only one third of the day, when he sent four regiments to the assistance of the first, two of which were European white soldiers, new landed from Enrope the others being Indian Talingas. But it was evening before they could arrive. The five regiments being joined passed the night on the spot. On this intelligence, Hâider nâic sent his son in law with fresh troops to his son's assistance and these recommenced the attack at day break. The English were worsted

and finding that their General had erred, in not marching up with his whole army, they thought it expedient to retreat to the main body, and they commenced a retreat, but always in good order, and always turning about, and always facing their pursuers. The enemy continued pressing on all sides, and perpetually attacking with rockets, cannon-balls, muskets and bombs, and they had already burned the plants of the lives of numbers of English soldiers, when they were likewise favoured by fortune. It happened that one of the English carts of powder and ammunition took fire. In an instant the whole provision blew up, and carried away such vast numbers of men, which happened to be near or at no great distance, that those that survived the disaster, proved not numerous enough to continue the combat. The enemy having surrounded them, sent them promises of quarter. The English who are a courageous nation, full of military pride and firmness of heart, refused to surrender, upon which an order came to put them to the sword, and the poor souls were all hacked to pieces (88). It happened that three or four men escaped from the slaughter, and reached General Monro's encampment, but their report struck such a panic in his mind, that this General, whose courage had never been doubted to that day, no sooner heard the detail of the slaughter, than he lost his wonted firmness, and betrayed every mark of fear, trepidation and dismay. The report goes that he passed the night without going to bed. And that at day-break he mounted a fleet horse, and without stopping anywhere, or giving himself a moment to breathe, he retired within the fortress of Mendradj. The forlorn army following in much distress and disorder retired into the fortress likewise, and the victorious in full pursuit of the runaways, entered the city of Mendradj, which they mastered; so that there remained to the English nothing but the fortress of that name. They say that in a few days after, the fortress of Arcát, the capital of Mahmed-aalyqhan's dominions, who was the Viceroy of the Carnatec, was taken by the enemy, as well as that of Pool churry, which last

Beats the  
English

The English  
pursued to the  
very gates of  
Mendradj

---

(88) The author is mistaken. All those troops surrendered, and were taken prisoners, and even then Col. Baillie was at the head of seven hundred English, and of three thousand Sipahis. Nor did the English want either courage or numbers, they wanted powder, and were exhausted by three days' continual fighting against troops continually renewed.

had been lately taken by the English from the French, and as in times of calamity, a misfortune never comes alone, it happened that a difference arising between the English and the Talingas of the garrison of Is-hac patan (Vizagapatam) these last who were numerous fell upon the small number of the English and killing some of them, imprisoned the others and thus that place also came cheaply in Hâider nâic's power

General Monro having quitted the field in so disgraceful a manner did not fail to be accused both by friends and foes who covered him with shame. But this news had not yet reached Calcutta, where meanwhile the fire of dissension which had been raging with so much violence between the Governor General and Mr Francis had now risen to such a height that from bad words and disputes, they had proceeded to fighting with guns and at the end of Redjeb or the beginning of Shaaban both parties according to the established custom of the nation, went out by themselves and fought with pistols. The Governor, being befriended by destiny came off harmless but Mr Francis was wounded. As he was predestined to live a great deal more, the pistol ball, although it entered at his right side did neither break the bone nor even rend the curtain it stopped between bone and flesh and in a few days he was cured. It was justly at this time that General Coote a Kling's servant who had succeeded General Clavering as Commander in Chief of all the forces in India arrived from Lucknow whilst Mr Doocreel (Mr Ducarell) arrived from Bardvan. These two men who had connections with both parties interposed their good offices and became mediators of forgiveness and peace between the Governor and Mr Francis. They brought them together and made them take their seats at the Council board and it was about this time that the intelligence of Monro's defeat arrived at Calcutta. The letters mentioned that the enemy grew daily more powerful and that General Monro had fled from the field of battle.

News came likewise of General Godard's having come out of Surat and of his now besieging the town of Bessl (Bassain) which is one of the strongest fortresses in the Marhatta dominions. It was likewise at this time that an Englishman of some consequence arrived in a Packet ship from Bombay, which means in English a Courier ship and God knows what news he

A duel between the Governor and Mr Francis.

Colonel Godard besieges Bessl.

brought with him. He found the Governor-General with all the principal English of Calcutta overwhelmed with sorrow, but busy contriving expedients to raise a great sum of money, and to form an army. The Governor after borrowing upon interest, from the wealthy Bengales of Calcutta, so great a sum as one coror of rupees, engaged General Coote to repair to Mendradj, and to take the command of the army there.

It was in those times of calamity and distress, I arrived at Calcutta, where I paid a visit to the Governor-General. That Viceroy, who has a vast fund of innate goodness in his nature, condoled much with me, and promised that I would one day see the accomplishment of my wishes, but he was so overwhelmed with public business, that he could not afford to give me many hearings, or to remember his promise. As to General Coote, he both objected to the scarcity of men and of money, until both being remedied, he consented to go to Mendradj with three or four battalions that had been brought together, and these being joined to the six or seven regiments now shut up in the fortress of that name, the whole with some other troops then in those parts, would form a body of ten or twelve regiments, a force which was thought sufficient to fight Háider-mác in the field. For the English trusted much to the goodness of their troops and to the talents of their Commander, nor do they admit any interference of the deity in the affairs of this world, but attribute their repeated victories, and numerous conquests, to the good conduct of their officers, and to the bravery of their troops, nor do they ascribe the defeats given to General Carnac, and to General Monro, to anything else but to the misconduct of those two men, whom they loaded with imprecations and obloquy, as the principal authors of those disasters that had disgraced their nation. There is no doubt, indeed, but that wisdom and prudence bear a great sway in the direction of the affairs of the world, but not so much neither, as that the Original Mover of all events, He that has created and bestowed that wisdom and prudence, should remain idle himself, and as it were out of office, or that the affairs of the world, for want of apparent solidity and permanency, should be wholly and entirely in the power and disposal of human wisdom, and foresight. Be it as it may, General Coote, who commanded in chief all the troops in

A D 1780.

the Company's service in India, and had under his care all the affairs of war, as his particular province consented to repair to Mëndradj. Urged by a thorough sense of the critical situation of affairs both in Mëndradj and in Decan he embarked in the middle of the blessed month of Ramazan, of the year 1194 on board of a ship (89), and repaired to that fortress. As to myself, perceiving that the Governor could not pay any attention to my affairs, and that I had no chance for any assistance at Calcutta, I returned to Moorshoodabad being very uneasy on account of a threatened invasion from the Marhattas of Cateck and on account of my having left my children and family like so many forlorn souls in a city that had no Governor and no Ruler that might partake of the distresses of families, and watch over their safety. For both the Nazem (90), and his Lieutenant were perfectly free from such cares nor could much be expected from the English themselves who had in most places bestowed the offices of Rulers and Lieutenants on some principal Indians, who trusting to their interest with their masters paid little attention to the situation of the people of this land. I arrived at Moorshoodabad the seventeenth of Shavval and remained there till the 25th Zillhidj of that same year and all the while I was hearing accounts that differed from each other. Nevertheless whatever was most confirmed, has been inserted in these sheets and it amounts to this much that General Monro having as has been already said retired in that shameful manner within the fortress of Mëndradj, had become a standing stock for the shafts of reproach from every one of his countrymen as well as from the enemy. But as Hâider ali's troops had taken possession of everything without the walls, and even of the city itself, as far as the precincts of the fortress, the English shut up within the place resolved to fall by surprise upon those bodies of the enemy that were encamped close to their walls, in hopes of making an impression upon them. For this purpose there came out of the fortress at

---

(89) It was September a time exceedingly unfit and dangerous for going out of the Ganges and still more so for navigation to Madras by sea unless it might be a circuitous navigation of two or three months; and yet the General was so miraculously lucky as to fetch Madras in a fortnight.

(90) Mubarec-ed-dowlah, and Mahmed rera-qhan, his Nâib or Deputy

day-break, nay before day-break, two battalions of Grandils (Grenadiers), which word signifies in their language, picked men, tall and stout, and of tried bravery. But as Háider-náic is fully acquainted with the particular turn of genius of the English in war matters, and is indefatigable, and always thoroughly informed of the motions of his enemies, he never suffers his people to be supine, or off their guard, or negligent in their duty. His troops therefore proved to be ready for the enemy's reception. A furious combat commenced, and troops being continually sent to the assistance of those engaged, the two battalions in question were surrounded, and finding no way open for a retreat, they continued fighting heroically, until they all rushed into eternity, leaving to Háider-náic's troops a full possession of the victory. It was after this disgrace that the news of General Coote's coming became public. General Monro seemed struck with the intelligence, and fearing for both his life and character, should that Commander land unexpectedly at Mendradj, he resolved to exert himself in recovering his honor. With this view, he came out with all the troops he could muster, leaving only such a small number as might guard the gates, and the Company's magazines. He had with him a great train of cannon and mortars, with every necessary for some important expedition. On the other side, Háider-náic's son, with an army of disciplined troops, and a good train of artillery, advanced to meet the enemy, and a mighty battle ensued. But again destiny would have it so, that Háider-náic's son gained a complete victory; and General Monro being vanquished again and defeated, was forced to retreat within the fortress with the shattered remains of his army, where probably, he is safe from an attack. For it is reported that Háider-náic does not care to fight against walls and fortresses, and has been heard more than once to say, that it would be a folly to expose the lives of so many brave men for the sake of acquiring the possession of three or four thousand yards of ground, and that, provided God Almighty would give him the open country, and victory against the English, he did not care to dispute walls and brick-bats with them. This much is certain, that he must have known how little they could hold in a place destitute of everything. He knew that as the fortress of Mendradj is seated by the sea-side, it has no

sweet water at all and although provisions of it are daily imported from abroad it was impossible that they should answer the necessities of twenty or thirty thousand persons of all professions and sexes which were shut up within its walls, and that too for a space of three or four months. Add to this that Mentrady is not really a fortress (91). It is only a wall drawn round the habitations of an infinity of merchants and other numerous people residing there. These men daily import their own water from without the walls where there is a city apart. But even supposing that in times of full peace they should have formed an aqueduct or a rill that should carry a supply of water up to their habitations still such a contrivance would prove of little avail as an approach to that rill is now opposed and full of danger. Now as it is certain that they can no more import provisions than their water it becomes altogether incomprehensible how that multitude can have subsisted all this while without suffering every extremity (92). It is a pity that the English do not mention such matters and the like details publicly. They never talk of them to such people as we and I cannot get any sure intelligence from any one else. But for that reservedness of theirs we should have set down all those events with a full detail.

It has been already related that the Governor, from the very first arrival of General Clavering and his party, had found it out of his power to come to an understanding with them. For although now and then both sides listened to the persuasion of *common friends who forcibly pointed out the inconveniences of dissension and the advantages of concert* so as to seem inclined to unite together yet such was the difference of tempers and such the diversity of interests that no union and no concert could take place. Even of late, that is some time after the duel had happened some appearance of peace and even some union had been perceived between the Governor and Mr Francis on the mediation of General Coote and Mr Doocreel but after the General's

(91) This is a mistake. Madras although very inferior to Bombay and still more so to Calcutta, is nevertheless a fortress betwixt the second and third order.

(92) They subsisted, however by the endless Squadrons perpetually forwarded from Bengal—Squadrons that carried livestock as well as grain, and salt provisions—the Governor who gave himself no rest on that head, having exerted himself in supporting Madras and its territory which he considered as the outwork of Bengal.

departure for Mendradj, matters took to their former course. For Mr Francis wished that some arrangements might take place, to not one of which the Governor would listen. The first was the sending back Mr Brishtoo to his office of Lucknow, with his former appointment and authority, for both which, repeated orders had come from Europe. The second, that the Divanship of the Calcutta department should be given to Ramchund-ráy, instead of Ganga-govind, who now holds it. The third was, that Nand-comar's son should be put at the head of the Qhalissah or Revenue-office. There were some other demands, to none of which the Governor would consent. He had of late met with several new subjects of discontent, insomuch that his enmity had risen to a height.

But whilst there was so much dissension and enmity at home, great misfortunes had befallen the English arms abroad. Two or three veteran armies, with a number of renowned Commanders, had been destroyed, and an immense sum of money having been spent in those expeditions, the Company's treasury was become so empty, that Government had been obliged to have recourse to a loan, which was obtained from the Bengalies, and all that, at the very time that the Supreme Council were forbidden from making any new conquests. It was from such events, and from such formal disobediences of orders, that Mr Francis who brought them into one point of view, thought he could prove a great body of misdemeanours and mismanagement in the Governor's conduct. He now re-digested the whole into a methodical writing, which he got bound like a book, and after having obtained its being registered, he thought himself strong enough with such a piece, and he departed this country at the end of Zilcaad, of the year 1194 of the Hedjrah. He was attended by a number of gentlemen, all dissatisfied with the Governor, who all repaired to London, which is the Capital of the dominions of the Kings of England. By this departure he freed the Governor from a troublesome antagonist. For hitherto the latter had been at some trouble in managing the Government in an absolute manner, although he took all the risks upon himself, but now that the whole Council is reduced to his own person, and to that of Mr Wheeler's, he is become sole master of binding and unbinding, of appointing, and dismissing in every department, without either controul or dispute,



Time only can show in what manner shall end these dissensions as well as these troubles which are just commencing and time alone shall determine what completion his schemes are likely to have. Then shall we know something of what is to become of the poor injured people of this land who now have no other friend and no other comforter but God Almighty. As to myself having set out from Moorshood about the 26th Zilhidj and in that same year having stopped some time at Radjemahal for some particular business and especially for performing the rites of the ten days of Moharrem on the cloth of that same month, I heard from a person of consequence and credit that General Coote, having joined the troops he had brought with him to those he found at Mendradj had set out from that fortress with a great train of artillery and having given battle to the troops of Háider náic, he had been beaten as had already been General Monro, and forced to retire within the walls without which Háider náic is now master of everything, throughout the province of Arcat and up to the walls of Mendradj.

Nor did the affairs of the English wear a more favourable aspect in Hindostan where the troops which had been carried by Captain Palmer to the assistance of the Rana of Gohud having lodged themselves for their own convenience in the fortress of that name, turned their thoughts towards recovering some other strongholds and places which had been in the possession of the Ranas (93) ancestors. That Commander put to the Radja a number of questions about every spot and every place in that region. The Rana answered "That one of the principal possessions of his ancestors, was the fortress of Goallar a place renowned for strength all over Hindostan and which the Emperors of the family of Babr (94) had seized by force having maintained their conquest by a superiority of power. That from that time it had belonged to them being called by

(93) The word Rana signifies more than Radja or King, although it comes from the same root. It is an appellation, by which the Radja of Gohud designates himself, as does the Radja of Chitor his neighbour.

(94) The reader knows that although the reigning family of Hindostan descends in a direct line from Timur or Timur lang the conqueror of that country yet it is better known under the name of Babr great-grandson of that conqueror as it is he who first thought of leaving his dominions in Euzbeg-tartary (*alias* Tooran) to settle in the less difficult regions of Hindostan.

“excellence the Imperial fortress That in process of time as  
“the Empire came to lose of its power, and the Marhattas to  
“increase theirs, it happened that the Governor and Garrison  
“finding themselves neglected by the Ministers and Grandees  
“of the Court, as well as reduced very low for want of pay and  
“necessaries, thought it high time to listen to the offers of the  
“Marhattas, to whom they consented to surrender the fortress on  
“condition of being paid the whole of their arrears, and thus  
‘having received the money in exchange for the fortress, they  
‘had surrendered it to a body of Marhatta troops That from  
‘that day it had remained in their possession, a transaction  
‘which was fresh in every one’s mind, as it had happened in  
‘the time of Ahmed-shah, son to the Emperor Mahmed-shah,  
‘of the Babr family” This was the information given by  
he Rana Now as that place is only at about thirteen cosses  
rom Gohud, and, it had been constantly an eye-sore to the  
Gentoo Prince, he was thoroughly informed of every corner of it,  
ind of every manner of approaching it, as well as completely  
apprised of a particular path, hidden by the rock, and quite out  
of sight, where the rampart was lower than any elsewhere Of  
all this he gave information to the English, and added a number  
of men who had a local knowledge of every part within and  
without the walls The English Commander formed his project  
upon those lights, and having with great secrecy prepared a  
number of ladders proportionate to the height of the wall, and  
meanwhile spread a report of an attack being intended against  
another fort, he set out from Gohud, the place of his residence,  
stopped at about five or six cosses distance, and from thence at  
the beginning of the night, he posted his army, and with a  
proper number of light troops which he furnished with ladders,  
he marched forwards At the end of the night, being arrived at  
the spot he intended, he placed his ladders, and availing himself  
of the neglect and supineness of the garrison, he got upon the  
wall, and commenced firing at the garrison, which was thrown  
into the greatest consternation For one or two thousand of  
such troops, being once got within the fortress, were by all means  
an overmatch for any ten thousand of such slothful fellows as  
composed the garrison. They say that the Marhatta Governor,  
either out of despair and shame, or for fear of being called to

and account killed himself and there is also another report, that this surprise had been concerted with the ancient Imperial Commander, who dissatisfied with his not being paid his arrears, had only dissembled his resentment, and had remained within the fortress until he could find some opportunity of introducing an enemy. It was in this manner that so famous a fortress fell in a twinkling in the hands of the English who took care to put a garrison in it (95). I was in Calcutta when news came of the capture of Goaliar and I heard with my own ears the discharges of cannon, by which that happy event was announced to the public. It was there I learned also that Maha-dj-sindia one of the principal feudatory rulers of the Marhatta Empire who has the absolute government of the provinces of Malva and Oodjéin as well as of the castle of Goaliar hearing of General Godard's being gone to Surat

---

(95) That Prince, like all the Zemlodars of India, whether greater or lesser had connections with a tribe of highway men, who having discovered a hidden path by which they climbed every night up the rock, and from thence up the wall, were let in by some of their associates settled within the fortress. And it was over that same path that the English with such guides at their head, found means to scramble over the rock and to surprise the place. And it is observable that the impregnable Goaliar has always been taken through treachery or by surprise. The fortress of Goaliar is seated on a rock, of seven or eight miles in extent, in which there are woods arable pasture lakes and ponds, an everything requisite to furnish for years together to the necessities of a garrison. All this is surrounded by a wall and towers thirty feet high, that leave betwixt the foot of the fortification and the brink of the rock a berm of about ten or twenty feet in breadth surrounded by a parapet over which the plain below is looked at the frightful depth of two or three hundred feet. The rock, which stands single and insulated, rises abruptly from the plain and is everywhere cliffy and were not naturally so, is cut perpendicular with the chisel. Nor is there any way of approaching unseen that strange fortification, but by a path hidden by the rock which by a very difficult and very laborious ascent rises obliquely until it leads you at the foot of a berm of thirty feet perpendicular and it is over that berm that the wall itself rises at ten feet distance. The whole is built of an excellent kind of pink stone, and with the magnificent Palaces, and buildings within it cuts a most superb appearance. Such kinds of fortresses, after all, are not uncommon in India there may be seventy or eighty of them. Rhotas in Bengal, Asir and Dowlét-abad in Decan, Gondavir and Gondapilly in the neighbourhood of Masulipatam, Gandkotta and Gingi in the Carnateck, are all of the same kind. However it must be observed here, that this very difficult and very dangerous piece of service, was performed by Captain Popham, an officer who acquired a great character in those wars, and not by Captain Palmer who although a man of merit himself happened to be then upon a different command.

to take his winter quarters there, had set out in the height of the rains in the year 1194, and had passed that difficult season A D 1781 in that country, without it being known whether he intended in the sequel to fight General Godard, who was to besiege the fortress of Bessi (Bassein), or whether he would turn his thoughts towards recovering Goahar, from the hands of the English, or rather would think it better to make a diversion against them, by invading the provinces of Atava and Corrah and Ilah-abad. Some others, however, conjectured that he would turn his arms against the English troops about Gohud, and especially against that body commanded by Colonel Camac, who having taken his route through the mountains in the height of the rainy season, had invaded the provinces of Malva and Oodgén, and made great progresses. Notwithstanding all these, the English came to be tired of this warfare, both on account of the immensity of the charges, and of the difficulty of subsisting armies in such countries, where a dearth and a scarcity of provisions is always to be expected, for the Marhattas seldom fight, but only endeavour to cut off an enemy from the necessities of life, especially from grain and forage, burning and destroying every village and every heap of grain, whether it be their own or of the enemy's country, so as to surround him with a desert, to all intents and purposes. The English, moreover, were disgusted with this war, as there appeared at this very time signs of defection in the Radja of Gohud, and this Gentoo Prince seemed tired of his new allies. This discovery made them take their resolution suddenly, and leaving that Prince to himself, they abandoned the fortresses of Goahar and Gohud, and expressed a disposition of coming to an accommodation with the Marhattas, nor was Scindia himself averse to such a measure. Reckoning such an event to be a favour of Providence, which came unexpectedly, he slackened the preparations for war, and abstained from committing hostilities: a conduct which was imitated by the English Commanders themselves, who returned towards Corrah and Canpore, and encamped within the frontiers of the province of Ilah-abad, on the hopes of a treaty of peace and amity, which is wished for by both parties. They abstained therefore from hostilities on their side, but peace is not concluded yet, and we must see how matters shall end.

Meanwhile this suspension was the cause of the Rana's ruin. Scindia incensed against him for his having availed himself of the assistance of the English to snatch out of his hands the fortress of Gwalior, and for his having projected to recover all the countries they detached from him, undertook to ruin and demolish him totally, so much that at the time these lines were writing, he had so much reduced the Rana as to have recovered every spot and every fortress out of his hands save those of Gohud and Gwalior which his troops were actually blockading so that the Prince was reduced to extremities. We must see how matters are likely to end. Scindia possibly had then another project to his head. He had over his camp a Prince who having given some trouble to the Governor had been entirely driven out of his hereditary dominions by the English. This was Radja Chéyt sing Zemindar of Banares, who hoped by the Marhattas' protection and support, to be one day reinstated in his dominions. We shall also see what is likely to be the result of all his endeavours and as to General Godard nothing is heard of him but news that clash with each other. If in process of time some congruent intelligence should come to hand I hope if I live to write a full account of his expedition as well as of that of General Coote's. As to the latter it is certain that after his departure for Meodradj the Governor proved so zealous in his cause that he resolved to send to his assistance another well appointed army by land through Cateo, and Jagernaut and Gandjam and Sleacol. This army was put under the command of Colonel Pearse Governor of the Citadel of Calcutta a Commander renowned and a great Mathematician. He was satisfied that the Marhattas of Cateo would not form any opposition to such a passage as there subsisted a peace of long standing between that Power and Bengal which had been renewed of late and moreover their ambassador affirmed that their master had nothing but friendly intentions for the English. This much is certain that the rainy season being on the point of setting in and the troops who were all picked men which the Governor had assembled from various parts shewing an eagerness for their departure, he gave his last orders on that subject (96). For

---

(96) The Marhattas of Cateo had tergiversed for sometime in granting a passage to those troops; so that the Governor who joins in his person courage of mind to animal courage sent them orders to go on with their journey whether the Marhattas consented or not.

further precaution, a gentleman from amongst the English advanced forward with the sum of three lacs of rupees, and a variety of rich presents, as curious and costly jewels and precious stuffs. He had taken with him from Calcutta the Ambassador of Chinnadji, nephew to Ragodji-bhossia, Prince of the Oressa, which Chinnadji was now Commander in-Chief of the Marhatta forces actually in Catek, and he set out for Náigpoor with him. He had letters from the Governor, requesting that out of regard to the amity subsisting between the two Powers no opposition should be made to their passage. Chinnadji having in appearance shewn a friendly disposition, took the presents, but left the finishing of the negotiation to his father's pleasure, who resided at the Great-Náigpoor, his Capital. They say that the Ambassador went thither, exposed his errand, but received for answer, "That it appeared from the usage offered to the Sovereigns of Bengal, and of late, to the successors of Shudjah-ed-dowlah, (usage became notorious) that there was no trust to be reposed in the treaties and promises of the English, and he added, that the Court of Náigpoor was, in matters of war and peace, bound by the pleasure of the Ministry of Poonah, and that whatever party those should take, would prove a rule by which the Court of Náigpoor would be bound to abide. That as to affording passage to their people through the Oressa, the matter did not depend upon us, added he, but upon the Court of Poonah, who have ordered us to oppose such a passage, and moreover, to put everything to fire and sword in the provinces of Bengal and Bahar, which instructions we have not yet complied with, on account of the several pretences set up by ourselves, for instance, of the treaties subsisting of old between the Court of Náigpoor and the rulers of Bengal. Let then the English remain satisfied that we have not yet put these orders in execution." Such an answer had nothing very encouraging, but the Governor, who had his views, and is not a man to be intimidated, took care to send word, "That as the Princes of Náigpoor had treaties of old standing with the rulers of Bengal, he did not see what could prevent their joining the English in the present case, after receiving, as an earnest, the present sum of three lacs, nor what could hinder their joining the English troops going to the south, with a body of their own cavalry, who should receive their pay

regularly every month, the more so as this sum of three lacs would be over and above the pension due of old on account of 'the Chōṣt.' This representation had its effect on Chimnadjī who with his father's consent accepted the proposal and answered that the case standing as stated they had no objections provided the English should discharge fully the sum of one hundred and sixty lacs of arrears due on that Chōṣt, together with the interest due thereon and should henceforward pay the future Chōṣt regularly every month after which they would find the Marhattas of Nāigpūr disposed to join their cause. The Governor finding that such expressions and such a tone of voice savoured much of an inimical disposition declined the tender and suspended the departure of Colonel Pearce and the English troops, as before continued to watch every passage and every inlet that would afford the enemy an entrance into Bengal and Bahar whilst Chimnadjī's troops are spread all over the Orissa upon their own frontiers each party seemingly in ambuscade against the other and waiting only for an opportunity to fall upon him. We may possibly see what seeds of peace and amity the Supreme Disposer of events may have concealed under such appearances of opposition and hostility and at what time it shall be His pleasure to bring forth the fruits of union and concord. It has been since said that the Court of Nāigpūr having turned the negotiations to its advantages, had been paid *the full arrears of the Chōṣt over and above the valuable presents which they had already received* and that their very Agents and Vakeels at Calcutta had been honoured with presents and enriched with estates(97). It must be observed

---

(97) The Governor not content with paying down some money to the Court of Nāigpūr on account of the two Corors and-a-half which were claimed upon the Chōṣt or pension due by Bengal to Orissa (and this pension is of twelve lacs a year) and with assisting the Marhatta Vakeel or agent to obtaining a loan of sixteen lacs more in Calcutta, that is with becoming answerable for the payment (which in fact was never made by the Marhattas) the Governor not satisfied with all that threw another bait in the Marhattas way. He took into his pay a body of two thousand of their Cavalry who were to escort Colonel Pearce through the Orissa. This last article riveted the Marhatta Prince's inclination and after all that Cavalry behaved in an orderly manner and proved of some use to the Colonel a detachment were it but not molesting his baggage and his convoys. As the Vakeel or Ambassador from Nāigpūr the Governor took with him the very same method, taken every day at Moorsheedabad and elsewhere by saltors; these bribe the

however, that the Court of Náigpoor bore a cordial enmity to the Ministers of Poonah, and to the Rulers of Decan, on account of pretensions of old standing (98), and the Governor having availed himself of those discontents, Chinnadjí had thought proper to return to his father and to leave Colonel Pearce at full liberty to march at the head of a veteran army through the whole Oressa from whence he continued his journey thro' Gandjam and Sicacol, and Mendradj, where he effected a junction with General Coote. After which both those Generals gave several battles to Háder-naic, but reaped no other advantage from them than that of clearing the environs of that fortress, for Háder-naic, has remained undoubtedly the master of the whole province of Arcat. We have learned since, that Colonel Pearce having got on board of a ship, was arrived at Calcutta, from whence he had taken with him the great sums which the Governor had obtained as a loan from the principal men of his nation, and from the Bengalees. But he had hardly reached Mendradj, when General Coote himself returned to Calcutta, on account of sickness, leaving however the Colonel and the army in that fortress, where it is universally reported that the dearth and scarcity of grain, nay, of every necessary of life, has risen to such a height, as to be past suffering. But such is the strength and firmness of mind, which the English are possessed of, and such the wise dispositions made by the Governor in sending endlessly supplies of provisions, that the garrison has kept a firm footing, notwithstanding the distress felt within, nor has the fortress of Mendradj been conquered in these three years' time. God only knows what is to happen after this, but as our accounts do not reach farther, we intend to continue these sheets, whenever we shall have assembled materials

---

very Attorney employed by their adversary. This ambassador was Benirampandit. The Governor enriched him, won him to his side, and made him instrumental in winning his master's heart.

(98) These pretensions of old standing were as follows. Madadjí-bhossia, the feudatory Prince of the Oressa, being of the elder branch of the Radjpoot or Military family, which reigned at Satara, could not see without a sore eye that Baladjí-ráo, the founder of the Sacerdotal or Brahmanical family, which resided at Poonah, at two days' journey to it, should govern everything throughout the whole Empire, under the modest title of *Nana* or maternal uncle, and of *Pishva*, or precursor and agent.



Meanwhile we shall compliment our reader with some account of Mubarec-ed dōwlah and of the English Government and policy in Bengal. This prince is the fourth son of Mir djaaffer-qhan, and is now aged about twenty two years. He is a very civil young man always speaking in a kind friendly manner to any that approaches him. He seems particularly disposed to shew a regard to such persons whether men or women, as descend from illustrious families and is always ready to oblige them by word or by action, or at least to compassionate their case. Naturally tender hearted he listens with patience to those that are unfortunate or oppressed and he is always disposed to relieve them. But his time is not well distributed and he is always dissolved in all kinds of effeminating delices and always immersed in the pleasures of the table, or in the company of dance women. this is his whole care being perfectly indifferent to everything else, either in this world or in the other. his apathy being such that no man is the gladder for his friendship nor the uneasier or worse for his aversion. The very least of his slave boys or of those of his father's will make no difficulty to say or do in his presence, whatever comes uppermost in his mind. nor do they pay any regard to the rules of serving modestly or to those of a respectful behaviour. His very liberality is of a kin to the thoughtlessness of his character there being nothing more common than to see him give away where it is improper to give anything at all and to refuse obstinately where it is proper to give. And here is an instance of this. The people of India have a singular custom in the rainy season. They make boats of paper or straw which being supported on hodies of plantain trees and filled with lamps and lanterns are let loose upon the stream where they make a pretty effect in a still night. After this they boil wheat with a quantity of milk and sugar and make a composition which they give away to the water hearers that they may pronounce a prayer over this fare which they deem an offering to Qhadja-qhydyr or (the Lord green) (99) upon whom be peace! This offering which

---

(99) What the English most unaccountably call in India *Plantain* (and this is but an herb or a grass in Europe) is nothing else but the *Musa* or *ficus Pa adisiaca* of the books. The natives call it *Keld* and *Kald*. These boats are made of coloured paper supported by a slight bamboo frame just enough to shew the appear-

is of Hindoo origin, was heretofore introduced by that idiot of Seradj-ed-dowlah, an ignorant Prince, who knew nothing of either religion or rite, and who in the pride of youth and wealth, celebrated that festival with a deal of magnificence and ostentation. He assembled a great number of boats, some of them big enough to carry a hundred men, and having filled them with an infinity of lampions, and with gardens and parterres of all sorts

---

ance of a boat, and this is supported by the body of some *Kelá* tree, which although so soft and juicy, as to be cut through with a small knife or even with the nail, has the faculty of floating. The providing at least one such boat, and the launching the same, is deemed so obligatory on all the Bengalees, especially the Mahometans, that the very women, those beings immured the whole year round, are no more to be kept under controul, at that festival. They sally forth in droves, preceded by their boats and by drums and hautboys, and carry their boats to the water side, where they are filled with lampions and a variety of coloured fires. There they launch them, leaving on the shore some sliced ginger, some raw rice, and some *kelá* fruits, and having cried two or three times *Qhadja Qhydyr* (Lord Verdant or green), the piece of devotion is performed, and they retire to their homes. This festival happens about the middle of September, and this is the way of celebrating the same amongst the Mahometans (of Bengal), who cannot give any account of either the origin or intent of such an institution. The Gentoos of Bengal celebrate it likewise, but it is by a rigorous fast of three days, where the most delicate take only some fruit and water. At the end of that fast they come in crowds to the river side, bathe devoutly, shift their clothes, and leave on the shore some sliced ginger, &c, &c, being the fresh productions of the land after the inundation of August, an inundation which would destroy the rice (although the latter cannot grow but in water), were it to last more than a few days. This in the Gentoos seems to be a religious ceremony, to thank the Author of all plenty, for the fruitfulness of the earth, for the critical disappearance of the waters, and for the subsequent crop of rice, which they had left free, but which however is mostly reaped in boats. It is observable that neither Gentoos nor Mussulmen can give an account of this festival, but whoever reflects that it looks exactly like the festival of lanthorns in China (festival, of which the Chinese can give no rational account neither), whoever remembers that this festival, which the author attributes to Seradj-ed-dowlah (who only adopted it) is very ancient in Bengal (and only in Bengal, exclusively of all India) and recollects also that inoculation and silk-worms, which are so common all over China, are to be seen only in Bengal (and nowhere all over India), a country once conquered by the Chinese about a thousand years ago, who knew it under the name of Mandji, a name by which all boatmen are known to this day all over Bengal, whoever perpend's all those scattered branches of knowledge, will not be at a loss to guess whence came the three institutions of inoculation, silk-worms, and the lanthorn. Add to this a fourth the Chinese have also left in Bengal their very method of constructing boats. For whereas the Europeans with all India, set first the keel and timbers, and then cover the whole with the skin, that is, with the boards, the Bengalees, first of all, make

of transparent fires he let them loose on the river whilst the shores were as well as the water illuminated by an infinity of fires of various colours a sight at which he seemed exceedingly delighted. Such a whim did not fail to be continued by his successors, who took care to look upon it as an yearly institution and a law inviolable and sacred. And of course Mubarec-ed dōwlah himself could not fail to adopt so wise so useful an institution although he is not possessed of the thousandth part of Seradj ed dōwlah's wealth and his servants and officers as well as men of the highest rank suffer and go to wreck for want of their salaries and sometimes for want of the very necessaries of life. Nevertheless money and plenty too is found and squandered away for such idle senseless expenses and so addicted is he to that childish shew that he oversees it himself and makes nothing of spending upon it ten or fifteen thousand rupees a year. To this as in every other matter, his ignorance and neglect are so notoriously known that one half of that sum is embezzled by the infidelity of his people and only the other half spent in that and the like childish pastimes, and although religion invites to other expenses and every one of his dependants suffer real distresses for want of being paid their salaries, yet he sets apart another sum of five or six thousand rupees for performing the rites of the Divaaly (100) which is a festival of Gentoo institution the principal rite of which is that people send to each other for their children a number of simulachres made of clay or sugar or of a composition of sugar and meal which is cast in imitation of men and beasts so as to represent a variety of actions and postures. They are to be found ready made in the shops. As for the H8h (101) itself it is again a festival of Hindoo institution but held so sacred

---

up the frame and figure of the boat with boards and finish it totally and then only put in the ribs, beams, &c., &c.

Qhadja qhydyr (or the Lord Verdant) is the name under which the Prophet Elijah, deemed alive by the Mahometans, is known all over the East.

(100) The Divalee, in which all kinds of games, such as hazard, dice &c., &c. are permitted, seems to be a wise institution. The legislator unable to restrain altogether the propensity to gambling, has shut it up within those three days of the Divalee.

(101) The H8h has been described more than once. Look at the notes 69 and 227 of Volume I

amongst our delicate Grandees, and so very obligatory, that they never fail to spend a deal of money in dancers, and such kind of spectacles, and especially, in making presents to low people, who, at such a particular time, are in possession of acknowledging those favours by the liberty of giving to the donors, as well as to each other, a great deal of abusive and shameful language, and that too, not in obscure terms, but in the broadest and coarsest language, and by naming everything by its proper term, without any regard to rank, station, or decency ( 92) In one of these H8lies I happened to be at Moorshood-abad, when Mubarec-ed-dowlah was circumcising his children a ceremony in which he spent thirty-seven thousand rupees in clothes and presents to his slave-girls, to his favourite women, to principal eunuchs, and to those of his mother, Babboo-begum, and all this, whilst the screams and complaints of his creditors were rending the air It was remarked that amongst all those he so complimented, he had been sedulous in distinguishing one Saader-mend-qhan, Overseer of the household of that Princess He received a rich paleky, an aigrette, and a serpitch or circlet, all of jewel-work, with a rich jewel called calghy, a chaplet of pearls, and several other articles, to the great wonder of everyone, who could not understand what business an eunuch could possibly have in such feasts as these about a circumcision, nor what such mighty services (103) he could have performed, that should intitle him

---

(102) Should we observe that in the H8li people disguise themselves, throw dust at each other, and that the politest people syringe coloured waters at each other's faces and clothes, that servant are then allowed to do or say what they please, and that nothing is more common than to see them, and especially the chair-men carry upon their shoulders, in burlesque pomp, and much laughable ceremony, an-old man with all the insignia of grandeur and sovereignty, rendered ridiculous and extravagant, we should be apt to think that this festival has passed from the Indians to the Persians and Lydians, (which two nations appear to have had but one language and one religion), and from the latter to the Tuscans, and at last to the Romans, whose *Saturnalia* need no description

(103) Had the author been more prying and inquisitive, or possibly less impressed with an idea of the gravity of his history, he would have easily learned what mighty services stout eunuchs can render to immured Ladies, although indeed it was improper to publish them to the world by conferring so much extra distinction on the performers It is certain that Indian eunuchs, although totally and completely so, contrive to afford a variety of consolations to sequestered Ladies, and as certain that Indian Ladies come in time to acquire such a relish for such kinds of intimacies, that they conceive a disrelish to all other modes This is so far true, that we have

to such high favours and to so much distinction. But this is not the only thoughtless expense of Mubarec-ed dōwlah. There are many more, and more indeed than can be numbered, should we take into the account the high salaries paid to a number of singers and dancers, to whose abilities as much respect and regard is shown to-day as was ever paid in times of yore to men of learning and of worth by the former Sovereigns and Emperors of Hindostan. But no wonder in that since Mubarec-ed dōwlah himself is become one of them. At least, he is a scholar to some of those dancers and singers (104). Justly at that time there arrived at Moorshoodabad one of those dancers and story tellers. He was son of one Sheriff-qhan a famous story teller and dancer who had been superintendent of the people of that profession in the service of Ali dja mir cassem qhan. Such was the pedigree of that mighty personage. Immediately a house was provided for him as if he had been some man of importance. A high salary was assigned for his expenses and a rich Persian sabre (105) which doubtless had cost no less than a large sum of money was presented to him together with a couple of shawls fit for a Prince without reckoning some other rich presents. And he was held in as much honour and estimation

---

been Bhag-Bha the famous mistress of Nawazish-mahmed qha continue to live thirty years together with one eunuch with whom she had contracted an intimacy during her lord's lifetime. And there are to this day at Lucknow two pretty sisters, who have agreed to share amongst themselves the person of a young eunuch on whom they had cast their eyes, whilst they were yet in Sh. djah-ed-dowlah's Seraglio. Some young women, who saw them at a wedding having rallied the sisters on the oddity of their tastes, and even cracked a ludicrous double entendre on their connection were at once silenced by a formidable answer equally ingenious and free which made a great effect on the company but which English paper would not bear.

(104) Dancel g and singing is an accomplishment all over Persia and Turkey amongst Ladies, and in Turkey performing upon some instrument. A woman who should have no skill in at least one of them would be deemed ill educated and clownish. In India both dancing and singing are strictly confined to professional women which although not always prostitutes, are however reputed such being equally called to perform in companies of men as well as in those of women. This is the case both in India and Persia with regard to women dancers but in Turkey they have the misfortune to admit amongst men none but dancing boys. It must be observed here that, although singing and performing and dancing are reputed accomplishments both in Persia and Turkey it is only for women for amongst men dancing would be deemed an infamy and it is the same in India.

(105) There are plain Persian blades that will fetch 500 R.pees.

as any of the nobility, and indeed in a great deal more, being exceedingly caressed and courted

So much bad example has had no influence on his mother, Babboo-begum, and that Princess, although originally a dancer herself, and of a dancing family, is by no means intoxicated with the fumes of elevation and wealth. On the contrary, it is remarkable that she never speaks to women of distinction, but with modesty and deference, and that sensible of the advantages, which nobility and high descent are possessed of above the other ranks in life, she makes it a point to shew to persons of that description every mark of distinction and honour in her power. If to those valuable qualifications be added the high regard, and tender gratitude, she constantly pays to those of her own family, and the attention she constantly shews to all her relations whatever, and even to any person she remembers to have once known, to all whom she is exceedingly complaisant and generous, the whole of such a character will form a very amiable person.

Much may be said likewise, in praise of Menny-begum, step-mother to the young Navvab. It is observable, that although she was once a dependant of Babboo-begum, and a slave-girl to that Princess's mother, who introduced her to Mir-djaffer-qhan's bed, yet she enjoys a pre-eminence, and a priority in that office, over that Princess herself, who was known to that General but afterwards. She is a woman of much sense and spirit, but haughty and over-bearing, although at the same time, she proves so steady and stiff, in supporting and protecting her officers and friends, that she cannot be brought to dismiss any one she has taken into her service, unless indeed he be guilty of some enormous misdemeanour. Her conduct in other respects is always regular, and her liberalities always rational. I remember, on that subject, an anecdote that does her a great deal of honour. I was just landed at Moorshoodabad, when it happened that one of the women, attached to the service of the Princesses, her daughters, stopped short in the preparatives she was making to marry an only child. On notice of this failure, Menny-begum sent her immediately seventy or eighty Mohurs (106), with a quantity of necessaries, and it is in the like manner she has raised Itbar-aaly-qhan, an eunuch,

from the lowest distress to the height of affluence and power and has likewise conferred riches and favours upon Hekim askery, her body physician without seemingly intending to lay him under any obligation. Nor are these instances of generosity few in number. Indeed there are so many of them that it is become a standing observation that whoever has been so lucky as to get into her service, is sure to have found a true receipt for the philosophical stone. Such a man has from that moment turned his back for ever from the door of the avaricious and he is for ever secured against the unfeeling look of the hard hearted. If to so many qualifications, she could add some sweetness of temper and some condescension in her behaviour and would she place at the head of her affairs a wise man by whose counsels she could consent to be advised she would indeed prove an incomparable woman.

As those two Princesses of whom we have just spoke have had similar intimacies and similar connections with Mahmud reza qhan his name comes naturally after theirs. This nobleman of whom mention has been made more than once in these sheets, has a very singular character. Although well stricken in years and as such supposed to have seen much of the world, never theless he is blunt and thoughtless nor does he in his words pay a sufficient attention to what he is about, or to those that overhear him. And on the other hand, he does not seem to have right notions about truth and falsehood nor does he seem very sensible of the different consequents which they never fail to produce. As to his morals they say that some years ago, when he had the absolute direction of the Revenue office, as well as of everything else in Bengal, he shewed the utmost disregard to every matter of chastity and decorum still less did he know the value of men of learning and merit. Unmindful of his own rank although so full of himself he passes much of his time in playing at cards and dice and makes nothing when in company, of talking much and in relating during whole hours together stories which he has picked up in ancient times and books without once minding the ignorance and inadequateness of his audience. It is singular that whilst he proposes his ownself for pattern to his children he lives meanwhile like a thorough spendthrift and although he is

provided with an ample estate (107), and many other emoluments, he manages so well by being always busy in building, and perpetually adding to his houses and places, (of which he has already too many), that he contrives to be constantly in debt, and eternally borrowing a management that keeps him always needy, and always embarrassed. Unable through whim and thoughtlessness to set some bounds to his prodigalities, he is ever ready to snap at whatever he can hook in, either by borrowing or otherwise, and above all, careless and unmindful of the necessity of payment. Hence we see him eternally dunned by his creditors. It is in this manner he has provided to himself a bad character, and he is become a standing-stock for the curses and imprecations of mankind. His children, in imitation of their father's pride, think themselves equal or even superior in rank, to every one, and also better. Nor do they think it consonant to their exalted rank to speak to men of distinction and high pedigrees, with that modesty and that deference which is agreed to in good companies, nor do they seem to be scrupulous in matters of decorum. But what is singular, these two hopeful sons of his, although actually suffering from scarcity of money and straightness of influence, are no less proud and haughty in their behaviour, indeed they are haughty to an excess. Their whole household does not consist of more than a hundred people of all sorts, nor can they afford to go abroad with more than thirty or forty, and even these, for want of being paid their arrears, pass their time in suffering famine and in sobbing. It is in the middle of such a court of famished wretches, that those hopeful noblemen firmly believe themselves equal to Assef-dja (108), and have such high notions of themselves, that they think it a sin to bow the head of modesty and civility to any man (109), or to go to visit any one, and although he should be of an illustrious family, they think

---

(107) About eighty thousand pounds sterling a year

(108) Assef-dja, *alias* Nizam-el-mulk, possessing all the rich countries that extend from the river Nerbeda to Cape Comorin, had an income of ten millions sterling, and this in a country where grain is five or six times cheaper than in England.

(109) The Indian salute consists in putting the fingers and palm of the right hand, (and never that of the left which is reserved for uses of cleanliness) to the forehead, so as to cross it vertically, inclining the body at the same time, and there are many niceties in making such a salute, and many more in returning it, or, as is the Indian phrase, in taking up.



it a reflection upon themselves whilst at the same time, the smallness of their means and income is such that they have not one gentleman to attend them and to keep them company. Hence they are desirous of seeing their houses frequented (110) and this is so far true that whenever any one chances to fall in their hands they lay hold of him, and detain him so long by prolonging the conversation that he is ready to lose his temper. With all this they will not suffer any one to smoke his *Hocca* (111) in their presence, nor to ease his legs by (112) altering his respectful posture. On all these accounts the few that frequent their houses are discontented but no man of rank chooses to go there.

It is not so with Mahmed *hosséin ghan* elder brother to Mahmed *reza ghan*. He is a benevolent learned man and an able Physician and his son Mahmed *zeky ghan* who has espoused one of Mahmed *reza ghan's* daughters is a young man well bred and of a good disposition as well as capable of holding a conversation with men of sense and abilities. Bend *aaly ghan*, son to the Physician *Aaly naky ghan* and of course cousin to Mahmed *reza-ghan* to whom he has been further allied of late by marrying his daughter is a young man who although very much of the same temper and disposition with the young men of Hindostan is not void of some good qualities nor does he assume such lofty airs as do most persons of that family. He

(110) All these Strictures are much exaggerated. Mahmed *reza-ghan*, when he pleases, is certainly a man of great sense his elder son *Behram-djung* is now dead (1787) but his younger son *Dilaver-djung* is alive, has two or three children and governs his father's household nor does the latter consume now his time at cards and at such pastimes. This second son is handsomely featured, and so was his elder. As for the father his chest is so broad, his body so erect, his tone of voice so very loud and his eyes so very full of fire at the age of seventy that he seems to have yet thirty years to live.

(111) The *Hocca* or as the English call it the *Hocaw* has been mentioned more than once.

(112) The respectful posture from Constantinople to Tibet when sitting, is to kneel down, and to bend both legs under one's self so as that they should touch the ground, and then to lean the hams upon them so as that the soles of the feet should be turned upwards. This posture which is so very painful to a European is become so very easy to the Orientals that they will sit several hours without suffering any incommodity from it. The familiar posture is to sit so as that the legs should cross each other under the hams which behind are leaning on the ground. This latter posture is called *Chakar-Zand* or four corners the other is called *De-Zand* or two corners.

is fond of the company of gentlemen, and lives upon good terms with them. As to the other persons and dependants of that family, they all copy their master, and seem perfect strangers to the fear of God, as well as quite indifferent to the acquisition of a good character. And now after having misapplied some of our time in giving an idea of the man set up by the English at the head of these countries, it becomes highly proper to atone for that excursion, by saying something of the English themselves, as well as of their India Company.

The word Company signifies in English an assembly of some men, and on that account, even amongst Military men, a certain number of soldiers, is called a Company. And formerly a hundred Musqueteers constituted a Company, but now only seventy-five form a Company, whose chief man is called a Sobahdar. The Commander of twenty is a Djematdar, or a Náic, of ten or twelve, a Havaleh-dar, and of six, and Amaldar. Ten Sobahdars with their men form a Paltan (113), and the Commander of these ten Sobahdars is called a Comidan (Commandant), but every Paltan with its men and officers is under the orders of an English Captain, who has the power of confirming, dismissing, and appointing the officers, as well as of bringing others in their stead, of disciplining the men, and of giving them their pay, with a turbant, a coat, and a sash or girdle, of repairing their arms, of examining them, and of giving them new ones. All that is in the Captain's office, who, in the command of this single Paltan, has many benefits, which amount to a good Djaghír or landed estate (114), so that whenever a Commander is inclined to oblige a Captain, he gives him a Paltan, else, the officer remains with his particular pay, as a simple Captain (115), and waits for the moment of being appointed to such a command. As to those European warriors that come from their country, if they be vile and low born, they are first turned into soldiers, to be afterwards advanced to the office of Sergeants. Now a Sergeant has a command in disciplining the men, and in keeping them in order. But amongst their gentlemen and men of the better

---

(113) This word is a corruption of the English one Platoon, which comes from the French *Peloton* clusters.

(114) To about two thousand Rupees per month, and some say, to the double.

(115) The pay of Captain of Infantry in the field is above three hundred half crowns, and some that are in office, have a great deal more.

sort the first rank is that of Ensign which word is to be written with the *Alif* surmounted by a *Kesra* as is the *sin* by a *fetah* *quiescent*. After that, they become Loftununs and after that Captains. The next rank is that of Major the next after it is that of Cornal after which comes that of Gernal (General) which is the highest rank to which Military men can pretend to. The gentlemen likewise other than the Military who are in high offices and employments have amongst themselves degrees of service and rank which have not come minutely to my knowledge but the whole of them collectively are called *Carranis* (116). The ranks and degrees of both corps are reckoned by seniority of time and by priority of rank so that whoever has got soonest into the service has an advance upon the others and whoever has got into it latest is later in station and preferment likewise. And thus they follow each other in order nor can a junior servant pretend to the preferment of a senior, unless some link should happen to get loose from the chain and this cannot be the case but only by a demise by resignation of the service or by a dismissal for some fault or misdemeanour. In this manner so soon as this one is got out of the chain the others follow of course and advance by one degree in their respective classes without needing any intreaty or application for that purpose and if three or four happen to go out at a time by so many degrees do their juniors become at once advanced. So that it is possible that in the Military line for instance, a Loftonun (lieutenant) without becoming a Captain may as well as a Major become at once a Colonel and this barely by the departure of his senior. It is the same in the corps called of writers. The Company itself that body which now under the name of Divan of the provinces of Bengal Bahar and Orissa possesses in fact the sovereignty and dominions of those countries as well as that of most of the coasts and port towns of India, is composed of a number of rich and creditable Englishmen of the country of England, inhabitants of the city of London, which is the Capital of the English Kings. These

---

(116) The author takes this word to be English for Writers or Clerks. *Carr* is an Arabic word but used only at the Malaba Coast and it is singular that our author should know anything of it. However it is known in Calcutta under that signification, although all over Hindostan they have no other word for that profession but that of *Amir-ul-Mak* which is Persian, and that of *Makir* which is Arabic.

in the beginning were a number of wealthy merchants, who having got themselves authorized by the Council of their country, and by the Ministers of their King, commenced trading and merchandising in the kingdoms of Hindostan , and as they soon became knowing and intelligent in that branch of trade, they kept it going on by admitting from year to year into their body their own children and heirs, or any one else that would apply These last also became Company, which they are to this day And they went on trading and commercing, until the throne of Bengal chanced to be occupied by Seradj-ed-dowlah , and as that Prince's able government, and military talents, and political qualifications happened to be inherited to the full by his successor and kinsman, Mir-djaaffer-qhan, and by his Minister, Radja D8l8b-ram , there is nothing strange in those merchants having found the means of becoming masters of this country, and nothing so wonderful in their having in the sequel availed themselves of the imbecility of some Hindostany Sovereigns, equally proud and ignorant, to turn conquerors, and to rise to such a pitch of strength and influence, as to become in that vast region a preponderant power, that outweighs and overawes all the Sovereigns of India They are so powerful even in Europe, that the Sovereigns of that nation, whom these people call *King*, although absolute in his commands, cannot give them an order, without the advice and consent of his Council, and that of the nation , and if he should venture so far, the order would not pass the seals, and would remain unexecuted

The Members of his Council are Omrahs, or great Lords of that land , but the Council of the nation is composed of a number of persons, which the principal inhabitants of every city and town of that land have chosen amongst themselves, some one, and some two, and whose attachment and knowledge they have approved So that those chosen men are entrusted with the concerns of the whole, and become the Advocates and Attorneys of those by whom they are sent All these assemble in the Capital, where they immediately turn their attention towards the public accounts , and then occasionally examine whatever business happens to offer, or whatever is proposed by the Sovereign, and his Council, as objects likely in their opinion to become beneficial to themselves, to the senders, and to the

people in general They weigh and examine it carefully amongst themselves and when it has been approved by them it is from that moment willingly admitted and obeyed as law by all the inhabitants of the land and in such a manner that whatever those Attorneys have approved of as beneficial and intimated accordingly to the sunders is immediately put in execution by them with all their might, and all their heart nor is there an instance of their having ever covered themselves with any excuse or pretence whatever An admirable institution this, extremely useful and beneficial and an excellent rule which these people have contrived for themselves! It is so capable so productive of order! Here in India, as well as in England these people are guided by those institutions, and keep them amongst themselves but only amongst themselves for as yet in what concerns the welfare of the people of these countries, and in all revenue matters relative to these provinces they trust to what rules and constitutions they have heard of here and to whatever instructions they may have received from Mootsuddies (117) and officers of their own appointing These they have already committed to their books, and they have made of them so many rules to distinguish right from wrong but the reason why such a custom has been instituted and what might be its cause and ground these are matters which they never discover themselves nor ever ask of others or if they comprehend anything in them they willingly counterfeit ignorance, without any one's being able to guess what they mean by counterfeiting that ignorance. In short as the gates of communication and intercourse are shut up betwixt the men of this land and those strangers who are become their masters and these latter constantly express an aversion to the society of Indians, and a disdain against conversing with them hence both parties remain ignorant of each other's state and circumstances It is true that a small number indeed of natives are in the service of the Members of the Committee and of the Collectors of the six Districts but those are not such a sort of men as can expose their own requests, or represent what may conduce to the welfare and ease of the subjects still less are they capable to point out such regulations as might conduce to the prosperity of the land and of

---

(117) Peo-men employed in revenue matter

"its inhabitants And on the other hand, " *not one of the English  
 Gentlemen shews any inclination or any relish for the company  
 "of the Gentlemen of this country, or from listening to the con-  
 "versation, or to the stories of the natives, although nothing  
 "but conversation, is likely to put in the power of some virtuous,  
 well disposed man, to learn what aches these poor natives,  
 "and what might give them relief, and nothing but inter-  
 "course would enable him to transmit such useful hints to  
 "Government as might conduce to the welfare of the distressed  
 inhabitants of this land ' It is therefore with a view to  
 promote so desirable an end, that we have attempted in the  
 following sheets to shew how managed the ancient Sovereigns  
 of this country, those Princes so renowned for the equity of  
 their Government, and what object they had in view, whenever  
 they set up such and such practice, and such and such custom;  
 what advantage they intended by each of them, and what benefit  
 they had in fact received We shall point out likewise what their  
 late successors intend by certain institutions and rules of their  
 own, set up of late under pretence of putting the ancient ones  
 in force, and how these have disguised their own intentions in  
 the eyes of the public, by masking their intentions All those  
 matters are exposed here to the best of our abilities and power,  
 so that with a little attention one might obtain, in these humble  
 leaves, a full knowledge on those unknown or misunderstood  
 subjects This at least is our aim and intention, and we hope that  
 with the assistance of the Sovereign Bestower of Graces, good  
 shall at some future period succeed evil, and that the afflicted  
 people of God shall at last find pity in the heart of their Rulers,  
 and come to enjoy some relief from their sufferings. In com-  
 pliance, therefore, with the sentence of the Holy Writ, *that who-  
 ever induces others to good, promotes his own welfare*, we shall  
 endeavour to point out the right way, and may God grant that  
 we may all see it ' Amen*

---

## SECTION XIV

### CONTENTS

*The Author accounts for the peculiar character of the Indians from the peculiarities of the soil—Indian Princes love their subjects as fond parents do their children—On the contrary the English hate the natives of India and disdain their company—Twelve causes assigned for the diminution of revenue and population all over Bengal—The first that the English are aliens—The second is their ignorance of the customs and usages of the country—Account of those usages—A Daroga of Audalet office—A Cazi—This last office greatly abused now—A Sadr-el S8d8r—Governor Hastings informed in time rescues an infinity of families from the oppressions of the actual Sadr—Fervent prayer of the Author s—The Daroga of the Audalet another Civil Judge whose office is shockingly abused at this day—The Emperors and Rulers of Hindostan think it their duty to sit as Supreme Judges—Warning given to the Princes of Hindostan by the Author—Unsociableness and inaccessibleness of the English another great defect of their Government—The Moktesib or Clerk of the Market—The Vacaa naviss and Sevana naviss—The Emperor by the means of the post minutely informed every day of what happens in the remotest parts of the Empire—Two singular notes in the hand of the Emperor Aoreng zib s—The Fodjdars Military Commandants in some fortresses and some difficult countries—An infinity of persons in each province dependent immediately on the Emperor and not on the respective Viceroy s—Extents of duties expected from Fodjdars—Happy conditions of Indians under their native Princes and latterly under Aaly verdy-ghan—Third reason or cause the Zemindars too loose and too unrestrained under the English Government—The Fodjdar's office as it is exercised now it become one of the main grievances of the natives—Fourth cause this country having no apparent master lies under all the disadvantages of a house untenanted—Men of confessed superior abilities*

*eternally thwarted by majorities sent from home—Fifth cause, the subordinate rulers do not stay long enough in their employs—Benignity and tenderness of the Indian Emperors to the conquered—The natural insociableness of the English, as well as the inaccessibleness of their rulers, produces the first cause of the declension of these countries—The second is, the difference of language, manners, and way of life—The third is, the endless variations and mutations in posts of trust and importance—Slowness of proceedings in the Supreme Council, is the fourth—Differences in giving audience between the benignity and condescension of the ancient native rulers, and the superciliousness, and roughness of the present ones, is the fifth—The sixth is, the rapacity of the English, who engross all the trade of the country, very different in that from their native Princes, who left all those livelihoods to the subjects—Fifty thousand Cavalry, and ninety thousand Infantry kept up in only these three provinces—The seventh cause is, in the exorbitant powers left to Zemindars, a race deemed incorrigible in all ages—Eighth reason, the slowness of proceedings in the Council of Calcutta, and in the subordinate Councils—The ninth is, that wrong custom of giving employments and offices by seniority of rank—Tenth, partiality of the English to their own countrymen—Eleventh, establishment of the Supreme Court of Judicature of Calcutta—Twelfth, the English decide in their closets, what ought not to be decided only in public*

NOTHING is clearer in itself, or better understood by men of intelligence and penetration, than that the gradation of climates is such, that every tract of land has properties of its own, which have been denied to others. In other words, that in consequence of some hidden causes, in a certain tract of land, the diversity of the soil produces immancably a diversity in the genius of the inhabitants, and that this diversity is so self-evident, that the man of perspicuity needs no discourse or argument to be convinced of it, and indeed, were all soils and lands of one and the same nature, that astonishing difference in the colour of the inhabitants, and in the fruits, metals, waters, plants, and animals, so conspicuous everywhere, would not be constant and permanent in every tract of land. Amongst so many climes and so many lands, India looks the strangest



country on the face of the earth. Whether we cast our eyes on the actions and practices of the inhabitants or consider the institutions and maxims by which they are restrained and ruled nothing in the world bears so evident marks of strangeness, and nothing under Heaven is so completely dissimilar from what we see in other countries. This is so far true that unless the Sovereign turn his inclinations towards a management adapted to the climate and country, no steady Government can be expected nor is it possible that the ease and prosperity of the inhabitants or the peace and tranquillity of the country should take place. Now as this climate in consequence of its being under the influence of Saturn is dominated by that planet, hence most of its inhabitants are feeble in action and slow in comprehension and withal prove so very feeble in the frame of their bodies, that they have been constantly subdued by foreign conquerors and vanquished by foreign armies. But however, so tenacious were at all times the vanquished of their own tenets and customs that the victors soon found themselves under a necessity of assimilating with them and so soon as these mighty conquerors had acquired a firm footing in these countries and the violence and extortions inseparable from a state of warfare slaughter and confusion came to be over, their very first thought was always to quiet the minds of the inhabitants, and to afford them relief by always becoming their protectors in whatever concerned their lives fortunes honors and families. They used to call up all the abilities of the land to their sides, would give them weight and consequence and prepose Vezirs and Omrahs of the country to the management of their own affairs. In consequence of such a conduct, each individual high or low finding an easy access to the Princes and to their Ministers (118) used to meet with opportunities of shewlog

---

(118) Should we listen to the books and relations found in Europe, we should be apt to think that the Princes of the East are a set of inaccessible men eternally shut up within the walls of their palaces. This accusation is brought by no others than those who have never seen but the stores of India and never had any opportunity to approach either Prince or Minister. The fact, however is that there are no Princes and no Ministers on the face of earth so accessible, and none so inclined to put up with the murmurs, the reproaches, and even the foul language of their disappointed suitors. We have no idea of such condescension in Europe. *God had drank wine* (said a man to the famous Mir-cassem-qhan) *when He appointed*

what business he was particularly fit for , so that those Princes, who were naturally endowed with penetration, and had their minds exercised in the art of conjecture, soon found out the capacity and fitness of every one, and soon preposed him to a business adequate to his talents and abilities , whilst themselves, standing above them all as so many overseers, attended to the regulation of affairs, to the tranquillity and ease of the country and its inhabitants, and to the promoting of men of penetration and knowledge ; which last never failed, after a proper trial of their abilities and virtuous dispositions, to be advanced to offices of trust and dignity Hence those Princes lived amongst their people, and amongst their nobles, as kind and condescending parents amongst their children , nor did they suffer the dust of sorrow to darken the heart of any of the creatures of God, by a show of tenderness to one part of the people, and of rudeness to the other For they looked upon them all, whether conquerors or conquered, with an equal eye ; so that for several ages together, down to the times of Shan-djehan, everything in Hindostan was quietness, love, and harmony It is only since the times of Aoreng-zib-Aalem-ghir, his son, a Prince extremely warlike and ambitious, that evils have crept upon the land But yet these were light matters , for such were the abilities, prowess, and strictness of government under that reign, that the established rules and institutions did not suffer any considerable injury from the wickedness of the turbulent Grandees , nor did the people of God meet with much oppression in the civil wars, during which it never ceased to be protected and cherished The main evil resulting from his time was this, that to make a diversion in the minds of the people, to the ill renown of ingratitude and hardness of heart, which he had acquired by killing his brothers, and keeping his father in prison, he had assembled the Ecclesiastics

Indian  
Princes love  
their people,  
as fond pa-  
rents do their  
children

---

*such an one as you for a Ruler* The Navvab overheard him, and all his Court expressed some indignation 'Why so? (said the Prince) this man has lost his cause, and is out of his senses, and you won't let him exhale himself in abuse!' The Emperors of Hindostan used to give public audience twice a week , and were imitated by all their Lieutenants and Governors Whereas the charge of inaccessibleness brought against Europeans by their Indian subjects, is founded on matter of fact, and on daily experience, although, after all, the charge is exaggerated, nor do they observe that an ordinary Englishman has more writing, and more business of his own to go through, than any two Navvabs of India put together

about his person, and had given them such unbounded sway that the populace complimented him with the titles of *the Faithful Emperor, ever victorious and the constant Cherisher of Religion*. But those hypocrites so soon saw themselves at the head of affairs than their avarice and covetousness gave rise to such a train of evils, as shed even now their baleful influence on these countries, continuing to pour ruin and devastation on the posterity of the Faithful a revolution which has been succinctly mentioned at the end of our first volume, where our narrative gives the history of the latter Emperors of Hindostan. Matters grew worse in the reign of Feróh syur who was a nothing without brains. In his time Ratan chund Divan to Séyd-abbollah qhan then omnipotent under the name of Vezir got so far possession of his master's mind that he governed the whole Empire, and drove from the helm or disgusted entirely those very Grandees and Ministers that had supported its honor and glory in the time of Aoreng zib. Then commenced the custom of leasing out all the branches of the Finance office and all the districts and laods of the Imperial demesnes. Then bribing men into compliance became of fashion and of current use and sluggish people addicted to their ease thinking it a good fortune to get at once so much assured money made no difficulty to sacrifice the sweat of the people of God and the toil of the helpless farmer to the rapacity of lease takers tax gatherers and contractors. It is from those times that must be dated the sinking of rents the decrease of husbandry the distress of the people and their detestation of their Rulers. These evils went on increasing from day to day till at last the office of Cazy or Judge and than of Sadr or of Great Almoner with many other Magistratures came to be put up publicly to sale so that the people skilled in law and in matters of distributive justice entirely disappeared from the land nor was anything else thought of but how to bring money to hand by any means whatever. This, and this alone became the utmost ambition of all ranks and especially of the hypocrites amongst the men that meddled with law. It was in such an enfeebled state of the Empire that there arose a new sort of men worse than the former who so far from settling up for patterns of piety and virtue, or pretending to shew the right way to others squandered away the lives and

properties of the poor with so much barefacedness, that other men, on beholding their conduct, became bolder and bolder, and practised the worst and ugliest actions, without fear or remorse, so far are they from thinking it a shame or an infamy to imitate and follow such examples. From those men sprung an infinity of evil-doers, who plague the Indian world, and grind the face of the wretched inhabitants. Those men having in process of time assembled in bodies, there arose an age of senseless, slothful Princes, and of Grandees, ignorant and meddling. Then it was that the Sun of Justice and Equity, that had already been verging from the meridian, inclined downwards, degree by degree, and at last entirely set in the Occident of ignorance, imprudence, violence, and civil wars. It is in consequence of these excesses, that evils are arisen to such a height, as render a remedy impossible. It is in consequence of such wretched administrations, that every part of Hindia has gone to ruin, and every one of its discouraged inhabitants have broken their hearts. Life itself is become disgustful to most. So that, on comparing the present times with the past, one is apt to think that the world is overspread with blindness, and that the earth is totally overwhelmed with an everlasting darkness.

Amidst the strange events which these revolutions have brought about, the introduction of European foreigners, in the heart of the land, is an important one. The wise men of Europe have been casting their eyes upon the conquest of India, and have contrived to achieve great part of that conquest, having already acquired an absolute dominion in several tracts. But such is the complete difference, and the total dissimilarity betwixt the manners of their own country, and the customs and usages of Hindostan, that all the endeavours of their chief Rulers, and all the resorts they have put in motion, have answered no purpose at all, nor has the face of regulation in the country, and of ease to the inhabitants, made its appearance as yet. But, over and above those considerations, it may be said with great truth, that *such is the aversion which the English openly shew for the company of the natives, and such the disdain which they betray for them, that no love, and no coalition* (two articles, which, by the bye, are the principle of all union and attachment, and the source of all regulation and settlement) *can take root between the*

On the contrary, the English hate the natives of India, and disdain their company

*conquerors and the conquered* and as we see that the very reverse is actually taking place so we may rest assured that the distresses of the people and the depopulation and desertion of the land will go hand in hand until they are come to their height, and the desolation is become complete and general. Such a state of things may be deduced from several causes, which I hope to be able gradually to unfold. And the first is that these new Rulers are quite alien to this country both in customs and manners and quite strangers to the methods of raising tribute as well as to the maxims of estimating the revenues or of comprehending the ways of tax gathering because in their country a Landlord or Zemindar paying Royal rent from year to year to the public treasury is a being that has no existence. Taxes and imposts upon husbandry and land Soobadaries Fodjdaries, Qhalissas and Djaghirs are not customary in that country. As much as I can trust to the information I have obtained from intelligent persons amongst them it appears that they take something by way of duty from coaches and from windows of houses from plate and other vessels of gold and silver, and from merchandise and that they differ widely from the customs of this country. In the mode of giving salaries to the servants of Government and to those that are at the head of affairs as well as in punishing misdemeanours and trespasses. In so much that there are some trespasses that are finable in this country and are not there some more that are reputed slight here and are accounted very high there and some that are the very reverse. On the other hand there are some other matters that are unnoticed here and passed by and are not so there some practices which are become there of custom and obligation and which here have never been heard of or seen as for instance counting the inhabitants of every town and city and examining how much they may have earned and how much spent how many are dead and how many are their children and how many their old men. In one word it may be said in general and indeed in almost every institution and custom, that there is a wide difference between the two nations and Governments and that it is of such a nature as cannot be remedied at all. Nor does it seem possible to bring the people of this country into such customs and usages whereas the English

The author assigns the fall of rents, and the decrease of population and revenue, to twelve causes, which he explains at length. The first is that the English have at all times, and still are, a great many

being accustomed to them in their own country, want to introduce them here likewise, and think such an introduction easy, and of small moment

The second cause is, that what little these foreigners have gleaned of the institutions of this country, and which they have examined and committed to their registers, proves to be no more than what they have learned from their own servants. Hence they know nothing of either the reason or intent of them, but by the absurd report of their own servants, who being all beardless and unexperienced, have no view but that of their own benefit, and think only of pleasing their English masters. Those men never fail to shew a deal of revenue matter in every institution and custom, and they are so firm in that opinion, that one would be inclined to believe, that the setting up this and that institution was for no other view, but that of scraping together a few pence, not that it could have any other intent, but that of hooking in some more, and in reality there is no other for men of such sordid dispositions. Nor is this opinion a novel one, it is of some standing, and has commenced so early as the times of Feróh-syur. No wonder then if these foreigners, that are lately come into this country, and know nothing in any such matters, should take for truth, and for useful advice, such crude explanations as are afforded by those that approach their persons, and should act according to what information they receive. Nevertheless, such is their natural genius, and such their innate penetration, that of their own accord they have set aside and abolished some institutions, which they thought oppressive, and here is an instance of this. The first Mussulmen Sovereigns disapproved of public women, and of their being of general use, especially on the eve of a Friday, which is a day particularly holy(119), nor would they suffer any one to defile himself with the crime of fornication, and therefore they denounced punishment, and even a capital one, against any such as indulged in keeping in their houses slave-girls or concubines, without having them consecrated by the forms of law, and the

The second cause is the ignorance of the English in what concerns the customs and usages of the country, as well as in what may be the intent and aim of those usages and customs

---

(119) The Friday is distinguished, not by a cessation of work, but by longer noon-prayers, at which time likewise is pronounced the Qhotba or appreciation, by the officiant, which being assented to, and partly repeated by the congregation, amounts to an oath of allegiance for the Reigning Prince.

rites of religion and for these reasons they discerned a variety of pains, which to sinners appeared as hard as death itself or any other extreme misfortune. It was on that account they had appointed a Daroga whose business was to be informed of any such women as had rendered themselves public, and had made profession of prostitution and this officer's business was to take from them a heavy fine every day and if found trespassing against the eve of Friday a heavier one. The drum and haut boy players were also put under this officer's inspection that they might not go to play anywhere without his knowledge and leave. He had also the authority of determining finally such differences as arose in that tribe amongst themselves and a power to repress their excesses and punish their misdemeanours. In this there was another intent and view namely that in feasts and weddings every one should send for as much music only as his means could afford without casting in his entertainment an eye of jealousy upon the Nobles and his betters and without launching out into expenses of prodigality or pretending to equal still less to surpass his superiors. But as we have already remarked people of sordid dispositions did not fail this longwhile to pervert this institution into a catch penny and an item of tax gathering and shutting their eyes upon the original intent of it they have observed no other end in it than the wretched one of scraping up a little money by such a pretence so that even this pitiful article has been converted into an item of the tax gathering business. This is so far true, that the English themselves conceiving it to be a shameful *finesse* that drew after it the worst consequences have forbidden that tax in their dominions and totally abolished it. And so it is with every one institution besides. And indeed if those strangers who have naturally much penetration and much impartiality were made acquainted with the infamous practices now in vogue but concealed under the bark of Institution and custom it is highly probable that they would endeavour to correct them, as so many defects in administration. It is therefore to assist their efforts in that view, that I shall assume the task of explaining the reason and intent of some of those institutions and customs of Hindostan and I am in full hopes that my notions shall awaken the minds of men of sense upon subjects so misunderstood.

The Cazy's or Judge's office, for instance, was to put in force the ordinances of the law, without partiality or pity, in every matter, and against any person whose case should require his animadversion, and as he had a salary from the treasury, and such a Diaghur besides from the Emperor's liberality as, afforded amply to all his wants, he did not dare to take any fee or any bribe from any one, and if peradventure any one was found capable of any such infamy he became from that moment, an object of the Imperial resentment was adjudged guilty of having dishonoured the law and the Mussulman religion, and became henceforward and object of taunt and reproach from every rank of men. Insomuch that finding himself pointed out with the finger, he pined away with shame and remorse, was for ever excluded from any office, and remained infamous and cursed in this world and the other. But now since from a length of time, it is become customary to put up everything to sale, the office of Cazy is leased out, and under-leased, and a practice which never was heard of in any nation, in any religion, or in any sect whatever, is become a matter of course, so that we see every day faithless Cazies, who, ignorant even of the principles of Musulmanism and worse in their lives than so many Renegadoes and so many Atheists take leases of what they call the Cazy's rights, and under-lease them openly to others, although these rights are no more than so many new inventions to torment the Mussulmen of this land, and to extort money from them, under a variety of pretences. No wonder then, if it is come to pass, that by the repeated efforts, and the serious approbation of those faithless wretches, those new-fangled practices have taken such deep root, as to become the current creed of those under-judges, insomuch, that to reclaim them from those practices, is become an absolute impossibility. One would say that the holy sentence, *Shew me, O Lord! those that have made me go astray, that I may trample them under my feet*, has been revealed on purpose for them.

Here is, for instance, one of the inventions set up by those calumniators of the law. Whenever any Mussulman of the poorer sort comes to die, these poor people, who never had any other instructors than those faithless tutors, enemies to all law, never fail to think that until the Cazy's substitute is come, and has

Cazy's office, that is, that of Judge of such civil and criminal matters as are relative to religion

Abuses that now seem to make a customary part of that awful office



received the fee designed by his principal the deceased's spirit does not quit the house and as sometimes a poor fellow cannot afford the fee, he from that moment is deemed so impure and defiled, himself his family and dependants and all that his very neighbours and acquaintances shun his company avoid drinking and eating with him, and carry matters so far as to refuse him both fire and water nor is such an interdict withdrawn until the fee is discharged So that the deluded man, in despair either betakes himself to the highway in order to raise the necessary money (and thus acquires a relish for the trade of highwayman), or sells away his ground and furniture and becomes a vagrant or at least he finds means to borrow and immediately runs in debt In all which cases he becomes either useless or pernicious to society and all that to get rid of the entailed curse upon himself and family

It is the same with respect to boys that need circumcision and to the girls that are marriageable as being both come to the age of puberty If they chance to be unable to pay the Cazy's fees they remain bound for years together and are debarred the former from the rites of circumcision and the latter from the comforts of marriage This superstition and abuse goes so far that if they continue unable to pay the fees especially those due to the Cazy they are sure to consume their lives in privation and sorrow for it is not possible for them to get rid of the interdict other wise than by paying Hence it is that so many young persons of both sexes being debarred the benefit of either of those rites turn loose and become dissolute Those then who after approving of such interdicts and such vexations still pretend to be Mussulmen will never make any difficulty, on receiving a sum of money as Cazy's fees to turn right into wrong and injustice into justice and what is still more afflicting they have such a collection of oppressive practices and they are put in force so barefacedly that it would be tedious and painful to mention them at length However we shall touch upon some of them although even with so light a hand

The Sadr-el sood8r or Sadr of Sadr8 and the other Sadr8 of every Soobah (120) and every Sercar were established for

The Sadr  
el-sood8r or  
great Almo-  
ner

(120) A Soobah is a large province held by a Shoobah-dar or Viceroy; a Cheel8 or Sercar is a division of such a province and a Pergana is a division of the Sercar

trying the capacity of the Cazies, and for ascertaining the circumstances of people possessed of *Amlács* and *Aimas*, and other lands set apart for pious uses, but especially for watching over the capacities and morals of Cazies, lest by assuming the appearance of learning and knowledge, men ignorant of the principles and rites of Mussulmanism, should find ways to introduce themselves into those offices by dint of artifice and *finesse*, and thus, from their ignorance of law, religion, faith, and truth, prepare themselves a punishment in the other world, and in this. Their office was likewise to take back and to resume such lands, which being originally consecrated to pious uses, should come to fall into the hands of other than such needy and worthy persons, for which they were originally set apart. He was also to protect those persons to whom they had been given in charity, and to prevent or hinder their being dispossessed in their own persons or that of their heirs, either by threats, or by artifice. His business was also to prevent their usurping upon each other, or their making encroachments upon the Crown-lands, or upon such spots as belonged to the Qhalissas, or Exchequer office. These were some of the duties expected from the Sadrs. But now the business of the office of Sadr is become a scene of oppression and violence, and in the hands of that Atheist, Zehor-ollah-beg, it has devoured the substance of thousands of necessitous, inoffensive people, and all this, without his ever minding the consequences, without fear, and without remorse. That man is now dead and gone, and he has carried away upon his shoulders the whole load of the lamentations and groans of an infinity of oppressed, undertrodden people. Thanks be to God! that the words of the Scripture, *The Sun is in the middle of the day*, have been verified literally in the Governor's person, who no sooner heard of the complaints of the holders of charity-lands, and of the oppressions committed under the veil and pretence of Sadrship, than he showed his detestation of those shameful and sordid actions, and discarded those accursed ones that took upon themselves such a sacred name, and dishonoured the function. At the same time, he confirmed to that office such small fees as were allowed to it, time out of mind, by Emperors, lovers of equity and religion, but he entirely rejected, and utterly abolished the augmentation which this stone-hearted wretch

Governor Hastings, informed in time, rescues an infinity of oppressed families from the grasp of the actual Sadr

had set up in addition to the perquisites of that office and which he wanted to carry still higher, as if not yet satisfied with all the havoc he had been doing by raising them from one thousand eight hundred rupees to thirty five thousand a year May the Almighty Bestower of Graces and Favors reward the Governor for his having hastened to the assistance of so many afflicted families and may He put it in his heart and that of the other heads of administration to set apart two hours or even one hour, in every week, for the purpose of taking notice of the many customs and institutions perverted at present and of listening to the groans and sobs of so many thousands of oppressed ones, who know how to suffer but cannot speak (121)! Let them consecrate two hours, or even one hour in the week, to so meritorious a purpose Let them enjoy the luxury of becoming the reversers of every violence and oppression and let them regale on the dainty of affording relief to those multitudes of the people of God who groan under a variety of oppressions and exactions, and have no other advocate and no other comforter but God Almighty Let those unfortunate souls find at last in their Rulers a relief from their numberless misfortunes *I have called upon You O Lord (122) that are the Most Merciful of the merciful! May my request be granted! Amen*

The office of Daroga of the Adalet that is of Auditor of the Court of Justice was established for the purpose of affording instant relief to such poor defenceless weak people as could not at all times, and for every subject resort to the Ministers and to the Emperors He was provided with a salary and a Djaahir sutable to his station and his business was to sit in his tribunal from day break (123) to three in the afternoon (124)

10 Daroga  
of the Adalet  
another Judge  
in civil matters.

---

(121) It appears by the sequel that his request was heard by Heaven, and that the Governor routed by so shocking a fact, not only set apart from his many avocations a day in the week when he heard these sorts of complaints, but referred them in general to a Board, by a special command.

(122) Sentence of the Coran, often in the mouth of the oppressed.

(123) It is day-break in India at four o'clock

(124) If the English knew how much business can be fully comprehended, and consequently dispatched by rising at four o'clock in the morning and working as far as ten or eleven; did they know how the most intricate subject that has puzzled during the heat of a day becomes at once plain by rising with a clear head at that early hour they would not sip their tea at eight or nine in order to work as far as

and to lend an attentive, patient ear to the voice of the oppressed ones, be they whoever they might. If the defendant proved to be a man of consequence, and one whose dignity did not admit of his being sent for, his Attorney was ordered to stand up in his stead, or even himself obliged to attend personally, if the gravity of the case did require it, and the matter was examined with patience, and with an equal look. If it proved to be a slight one, it was made up with the consent of both parties, else, if it proved of moment, then after having carefully ascertained it by witnesses on oath, and by other lawful means, the whole was made up into a Sooret-hal or judicial narrative, and together with the witnesses, and with the plaintiff and defendant, it was presented by the Daroga and his officers to the Emperor and the Minister, who used to sit twice a week on purpose to hear such matters, otherwise, it was presented to the Lieutenant-Governor, or the Lieutenant of the Fodjdar of the town and district, where the different had happened, and the Emperor and the Minister having examined the case, according to their wisdom, gave their decree as they saw fit and equitable. But if the matter was not thoroughly investigated and determined at that one sitting, they referred it to a second, and after such examination as might stand the look of the Imperial eye, they determined according to the rules of truth and justice. Such was the method used in former times. But now the painful task of rendering justice being turned into a powerful engine for making a fortune, the office of Daroga, which so many persons used to decline, is become an object of ambition and strife, and men give presents and make interest to obtain it, whilst Government itself bestows it on them, as an object of favour and predilection. Of late the salaries of the Daroga, and of his officers and dependants, are paid out of the fines and monies arising from it, so that the incumbent, with his dependants, being in the centre of his wishes (125), finds means in a little time to amass immense sums, nor is there any

The Emperors and Princes of Hindostan make it one of their duties, to sit as Judges in civil cases

---

three in the afternoon, that is, in the very hottest part of the day, and when the natives themselves prove fainting, and incapable of any tension of mind. More business may be dispatched from four in the morning to ten, than from nine in the morning to nine at night.

(125) The original has *swimming in full water*

one to enquire after the rate of the perquisites they are drawing from that office. Heretofore few men of piety and knowledge could be found that would dare to take upon themselves such an office, which consisting in decisions about property, exposed their consciences to be answerable to God for errors and misconceptions. nor could the Prince and his Ministers, after an exact inquiry about people of good morals, and sufficient knowledge and fear of God, prevail upon them but by dint of intreaties to accept such offices. They bestowed more of their attention upon this part of administration than upon any other, nor did they suffer that injustice should become justice by prescription or that any one should oppress another, at his will. They took care to appoint proper persons in every branch of such an office and had rendered extortion and bribery so odious that to call one a bribe-taker was resented much more, than if it had been the most opprobrious word. It was in consequence of such regulations and attentions that such men of virtuous principles were found out, as reckoned bribery amongst the highest reproaches and thought it little short of infidelity and apostacy; whereas venality and bribery as well as the art of bringing money by any whatever means, are now reckoned amongst the greatest and most laudable qualifications of the knowing ones of these our times. there being rulers and under rulers who seek out men of such stamps, and think them the only ones capable of business. *Hear ye men of penetration? and benefit by the example.* It was so very easy for poor men to arrive at the very feet of the Emperors and to obtain redress, that when notwithstanding all these precautions and all these attentions some oppression chanced to take place, we have instances of oppressed ones who would sometimes come from two or three months journey, and obtain audience and expose their complaint and be they the poorest of men, they were sure of being righted against the most powerful adversary. Now that it is exceedingly difficult even to men of the most illustrious descent to approach the Governor and the men in office now that the English seldom visit or see any of us the distressed inhabitants of this country to obtain justice is become a very difficult business a very operose article or if any one us, by the strength of his introducer, or the weight of some forcible reason chances

Warning  
given by the  
Author to the  
Princes of  
Hindustan.

Insociable-  
ness and in-  
accessibility  
of the English  
in general.

to be admitted for once or twice, it avails little, as the Gentlemen, in consequence of their being engrossed by a variety of public and private affairs of importance amongst themselves, have no attention to spare for the concerns of the people of this land, and as their Mootusuddies or officers and dependants, are always men of such a stamp, that being at all times afraid of some discovery about the lining of their coats, they cannot bear that any one of the oppressed ones should come near their masters. From thence we can easily conclude what is likely to be the fate of the unfortunate people of this land, and how their sufferings are likely to end. Possibly is it, their peculiar fate, that after having been subjected by Providence to the yoke of these strangers, they are still destined to find them such inattentive rulers, as do not think it worth their while to mind the welfare of those prostrated at their feet, and such supine masters, as do make nothing of leaving them at the disposal of their own servants and substitutes, although, however, nothing should be so important to a Sovereign, as the care of the subject, and he ought never to lose sight of the Indian adage,—

“ Do not refer his complaint to your Divan,

“ Since his complaint is probably against that very Divan ”

Amidst such scenes of oppression on one side, and inattention on the other, we ought to praise God, that at the end of the year 1195, the office of Daroga of the Court of Justice, together with the Fodjdary, was taken from the hands of the Indians, and transferred to the English Gentlemen immediately, by which revolution the oppressions and sufferings of the people of this land have been upon the whole somewhat alleviated. But as their officers and dependants are a set of people always prone to offer injustice, and these are entrusted with all the details, as well as Deputyships, whilst they make it a point to uphold the corruption and indolence of their masters, it happens that they become in fact the centre and hinge of all decisions, and all matters come to pass through their hands unavoidably, as it appears undeniably that such of their masters, as are preposed to these offices, will not, or cannot, attend personally to their duties. So that there is still left in the sneaker much of the late broth. “ *O God, come to the assistance of your afflicted people, and set open some door through which they may escape from*

Severe  
reflection  
upon the  
English, as  
masters of  
Bengal

A D. 1782

' oppression ! ' But let us return to our narrative about the several offices set up formerly by our Sovereigns

The Muhtasib an officer that had inspection upon weights, measures, and markets.

The Muhtasib (or Clerk of the Market) was established for the purpose of inspecting weights and scales exposing to view the false bottoms and artifices of Corn meters and Scale men and for fixing the price of grain and other similar commodities. He had a great salary and some fees but the latter were rather honorary and the intent was to render him alert in putting a stop to all altercations and disputes between buyer and seller by disabling the latter from over reaching the other. The punishment and coercion of the disorderly and insolent was also of his resort. It was his business in particular to take care that no drunken men or any other people out of their senses should walk loose throughout the markets that no injury or insolence should be offered to any one by threat action or infamous words and that modest women obliged sometimes to cross a street or a market, should not be exposed to any insult or indecency from the voice, hand, or sound of the profligate and thoughtless. But now every one does as he pleases. The Muhtasibs take a great deal more perquisites than were heretofore their due and in one and the same city the prices of grain vary in the same market at the distance of three or four shops, nay of three or four yards and the differences varieties, and rogueries in weights and scales are risen to such a height as not to be conceivable. Moreover not only all the markets and thoroughfares are thronged with disorderly people, and disorderly houses but every street and every corner is infected with drinking shops and tippling houses with here and there groups of drunken servants butlers harcarrias qhalassies (126) and alpahis, but especially of servants belonging to the English a set of disorderly people who availing themselves of the respect paid to the men in power to whom they belong and of the influence they acquire by their being linked together make nothing of lying in wait, sometimes half naked and half drunk and quarrelling without an antagonist nor do they make any difficulty of doing and saying whatever they please, and to whom they please

(126) This word, which comes from *Qhalass* free, signifies sailors and seamen; and this name was given to sea-faring people, because when once on board, they were freed from the searches and administration of land justice.

So that Gentlemen accustomed to decency and respect, are at a loss how to go from their homes, upon urgent business, through a market, or along a street, and how to come back again, without being entangled within some mischance or other, in consequence of the words or actions of those insolent people, nor is it uncommon to see them recommend themselves to God Almighty's safeguard on their going out, and to wish they may come back without being forced into some mischance

The Vacaa-nuvis, or Remembrancer, or Gazetteer, and the Sevana-nuvis, or Historiographer, and the Harcara, or Spy, were appointed for writing down the events that might happen in the respective provinces, territories, and districts of their residence. Their duty was to inhabit such cities and towns as were the seats of command and Government, to the end that they might have it in their power to write down at day-break such events as should have happened the whole day and night before, and to send the paper to the Emperor. There were posts established, that carried the dispatches, with all speed, and in all weathers, to Court, where a Daroga or Inspector examined the same, after which he reduced to a concise exposition the substance of such as deserved the Imperial notice, presenting at the same time, the whole detail as forwarded by the provincial intelligencers. Nevertheless whatever amongst those papers was addressed personally to the Emperor, was sacred, and could not be set open by any other hand than his own. It was perused by the Monarch himself, who alone could break the seal, and he alone ordered what he thought proper about the contents. By these means the Emperor was informed of every private man's affairs. He knew what one had done to his neighbours at four hundred leagues from Court, and what the latter had done to others, and what such an one wanted from such another, and what this other pretended from his antagonist, he knew all that, and gave directions accordingly. Nor was it uncommon for him to be informed by such a channel of the requests and wishes of the concerned ones, nor at all extraordinary to see directions arrive at the cities of their residence long before their private petitions could have reached the Court. So that the petitioners often had gained their cause in the middle of a distant province, sometime before they had agreed upon

The Vacaa-nuvis, Sevana-nuvis, and Harcara, &c.

The Emperor, by means of the post, minutely and daily informed of almost every material transaction amongst private people



the wording of their petitions. But all this correspondence was for the Emperor's personal inspection only for if at any time it came to appear, that the secret Gazetteer or the Remembrancer of any other public officer had himself found means to acquire the least interest with the Imperial Princes or with the Grandees of the Court, or with the men in eminent station, or was in any connections with them such a man was forthwith dismissed, and another appointed in his stead and to this purpose there are yet extant notes written by the Emperor Anreng-zib's hand, to his own Vezir, Assed-qhan and here is a copy of one

Copy of a Note of AORENG-ZIB-AALEM-OWIN TO HIS VEZIR.

Two singular notes in the hand of the Emperor Aoreng-zib.

' My grandson Mahmed muh-e-ddin (127) has been writing to me to recommend N N Remembrancer, of such a province. Of course something must be done for him but yet, the man is to be dismissed from that office directly, that the Gazetteer may remember to write Gazettes no more

"As interest has taken place abilities have been obscured

And a hooded sort of films have covered his eye-balls (126)."

But the answer he sent to that grandson himself is still more curious Here it is:

' Dutiful sons, that are acquainted with their father's temper do not write recommendations in behalf of Gazetteers and such sort of people Your request is granted and the man has been promoted accordingly but yet he has been dismissed from that office. Do not commit the like offence again'

In short as amongst the arts of government information and knowledge of the state of the land and of its inhabitants,

(127) He that reigned afterwards under the name of Djshandar-shah.

(128) These are verses of the Emperor's composition, a Prince, who used to write an infinity of notes and letters with his own hand, and always to add at the end, or any elsewhere, some verses of his own. To a relation of his, Viceroy of Bengal, who had slided into some Hindoo customs, &c., &c., he wrote a letter of reprimand, which ended by these two elegant distichs

Destar i Zaafrani ber fe  
Oo Djamé-i Eghavan, der ber  
Sen sherif Chahel sheh  
Aafin, ber in rish oo vesh.

A yellow turban upon the head,  
And a crimson coat upon the shoulder;  
Your Highness is, I believe, full forty six;

Observe that the yellow is, as well as the pink, the favourite colour of the Gentoo; and that the Emperor had introduced the custom of wearing nothing but white throughout his Court.

hold a principal rank, and the interest of the Legislator's in gathering knowledge, is always to tranquillise and quiet the people of God, by whose providence the Princes and Rulers have come to have the command and power over them, and as the happiness and ease of the subject is their main concern, so, to obtain the above end, no less than four persons have been appointed to discharge the duties of this one office of intelligence, *to wit*, the Vacaay-nugar or Remembrancer, the Sevanah-nugar or Gazetteer, the Qhofiáh-neviss or Secret-writer, and the Harcara or Spy, to the end, that should any one or any two of them attempt to send in writing an unfaithful account, still the truth and real state of things might soon be investigated, by comparing their information with the accounts written by the two or three others, a discovery always followed by the disgrace of the faithless or uninformed writer, who never failed to be dismissed from a post of honour and affluence, and to be consigned to shame and distress. Now all those offices being suppressed it comes to pass that, not only in villages, but in towns and in renowned cities, the servants, the favourites, the dependants, nay very often, the very spies and emissaries of a Zemindar, having wriggled themselves into the service of Government, commit upon the inhabitants a variety of oppressions and exactions, and always with the utmost safety, nor is there found a single man to ask them what they are doing, so far from there being any one to inflict a condign chastisement upon them. It is then worth an observer's while to examine what kind of Government existed then, and how matters stand now, and what were the circumstances of the subject then, and what they are to-day.

The Fodjdars were next in rank to the Nazems, or Military Governors of the provinces, and men of great distinction and note. Some of them exerted themselves so meritoriously as to leave behind them the very Nazems themselves in whatever could promote the Imperial service. Their exertions were so continual and so strenuous, that those officers were sometimes more in favour with the Court than the latter, and often obtained more credit, and became objects of graces without number. These officers were fixed in each Soobahdary or Viceroyalty, according to its extent, and the number of refractory Zemindars or great Landlords, in it, and several of these had under their

The Fodjdars, or Military Commanders, of some frontiers and some difficult countries

commands bodies of some hundreds of troopers and were decorated with the military degrees of a thousand horse, some of a thousand and five hundred of two thousand of two thousand five hundred and some few of three thousand and as far as four thousand with a number of effective troopers according to their stations, or the necessities of their post. They marched in state with standards displayed and kettle-drums beating, and lived with splendour and dignity in those towns and fortresses which were fixed and reserved for their residences. All these together with the Maosobdars the Paymasters, the Rememhracers the Gazetteer, the Secret writer, the Head Spy the Cazy or Judge the Mufty or Bishop the Sadr or Grand Almooer the Muhtasib or Clerk of the Market the Imperial Divan and the Daroga or Superintendent of the Justice-office, down to the very head messenger or Mirdaha and down to his peons or messengers and to the very Book binder of that spot, all these were immediate servants of the Crown. Every one of these held their offices immediately under the Emperor but were attached to some particular part of the country and fixed to some particular duty but in such a manner however as to be totally independent from the Nazem nor could any great man or Governor General divest the lowest of them or turn him out of his office. As to the officers of the Divaoy, they were dependants of the Imperial Divan or General receiver in whatever related to revenue and finances but the Maosobdars or Military dignitaries with their paymasters and troops were all dependent on the Fodjdar who gave orders about arraying and marching their corps chastising malefactors or coercing torhuleot people. The Fodjdars special business was to take care that no overgrown Zemindar should make provisions of war instruments such as musquets or wall pieces in any great quantity, or should put in repair any old fort or raise a new one on his own account. But if notwithstanding all those precautions the Zemindar should avail himself so far of some neglect or connivance or chance as to compass any such design then the Fodjdar was to require him to surrender the above articles and to dismiss his troops. And in case of obedience the Zemindar was to be forthwith removed from that spot and Zemindary but in case

An infinity of persons in each province, who were under the orders of the Military as well as Civil Governors, although independent from them.

immediately, to chastise him with severity, to demolish his castle, and to act with so much expedition and vigour, as that the refractory land-holder should be reduced to extremity, and henceforward obliged to wear in his ear the ring of obedience, as well as to carry on his shoulders the trappings of submission, in such a manner, as to have it no more in his power to disobey or to resist. The Fodjdar was to drive the delinquent from that spot, and never to suffer him residing again in it unless by a special order from higher authority, still less was he to suffer him to recover a footing in his former possessions. But in case he had been able to lay hold of him, he was to send him to the Governor-General, prisoner and chained, or to keep him confined until he might receive orders respecting the disposal of him. These he was to put in force, and to execute in a time of tranquillity, and meanwhile his business was to be attentive lest other Zemindars should turn refractory likewise, and invade the little Djaghirs and possessions of those promoted to the enjoyment of Aimas, Amlacs, and other charity-lands.

Extensive  
duties expected from Fodjdars

Another business of the Fodjdar was to give chase to banditti and highwaymen, so as to prevent their finding a place of retreat, he was to hunt them down wherever he could discover any of their footsteps, and to put them to the sword as soon as he had seen them. In short, wherever he could perceive a malefactor, he was to pursue him incessantly, until he had torne up by the roots the hairs of his existence and power, and in case any one of those banditti should assemble in troops, and dare to appear in such bodies as might baffle or elude the exertions of one single Fodjdar, then the neighbouring Fodjdars were, upon his requisition, to join him forthwith, and to fall together upon the malefactors, driving them from post to post, and giving them combat upon combat, and engagement after engagement, until they had extirpated the whole of them. Nor did any banditti in those times dare to shew their faces in any of the lands belonging to the Revenue-office, or in the Amlacs, and Altimghas given to necessitous people, nor did they attempt to oppress or plunder even the lowest of the tenants or farmers resident on them.

With regard to the particular stations appointed to the Fodjdars in other provinces, I have not any information sufficient

on that head, nor would such a list answer any great purpose. But as to the stations heretofore appointed to them in the provinces of Bengal and Azimabad I know something of them, as numbers of them have lived, for years together with honour and splendour in their offices, and they had formed friendships and alliances with the Governors of these countries. Now as our family has enjoyed commands and offices in those two provinces, I can afford a thorough notice of them and as a mention of them would be proper here, and in its place it is hereby offered to the public and is as follows. The eight Sercars or grand divisions of the province of Azimabad were Shahabad and Rhodas Mongher and Bahar Champaran and Sarun Tirhoot and Hadjipoor. These had Fodjdars stationed each of them with a body of from five hundred to one thousand five hundred cavalry, or more or less with a proportional number of those Imperial officers mentioned just above every one of whom were immediate servants of the Emperor's. Those Fodjdars, upon any sudden emergency of importance used to leave deputies in their stations and to join together in order to repair in a body to the Nazem or Governor General. Nay when the matter became past their united power the Nazems of two or three contiguous provinces joined together without waiting for an express order from Court and they provided for such an emergency as the case required or if the matter chanced to be of such a magnitude as exceeded their united efforts it was provided for by the Emperor himself who receiving daily information from every part of the Empire dispatched distinguished Generals from his Court, or even if he saw fit Imperial Princes with considerable armies and large trains of artillery who had orders to exert themselves with vigour in pursuing the expedition to a successful issue or as long as any breath remained in their bodies and were exhorted to exhibit their attachment to the State as well as their personal valour in bringing to an end an affair of that consequence. Nevertheless as some one happened sometimes to show a remissness in the discharge of such a duty, such a one was forthwith exposed to the Emperor's displeasure to the contempt and derision of his equals and to a chastisement adequate to his demerits.

The province of Bengal was also divided into Fodjdaries and by what I can learn into ten districts that had Fodjdars

It was in the following order Islam-abad-chatgam, Silhut, Rangpoor, Rangamattv, the Castle of Djelal-gur-poorania, Radj-mahal-acbar-nagra, Radj-shahv, Bardvan, Midnipoor, and Bacshy-bender-hoogly. All those parts had Fodjdars, but Djehanghir-nagar-daca had a Nazem of its own, with all the train of Imperial officers, mentioned above. All these were attached to their duties and by their good government, the people of God as well as the nobles, enjoyed tranquillity and comfort, all districts were well governed and quiet, and the people of God, satisfied with the Emperor's munificence and kindness, were praying for stability to his reign, and length of days to his life. They rehearsed the praises of his clemency and benignity, knew no enemies but his, and no friends, but his friends, nor did they see their own ease and happiness anywhere, but in the ease and happiness of their Princes. With their hearts and tongues, and hands and feet (129), they were zealously attached to their Monarch, and to anything that appertained to him. In consequence of such administrations on one side, and such sentiments on the other, the country was populous and flourishing beyond imagination, and the inhabitants contented and happy, as well as sincere. They lived with their doors open, for the means of subsistence being easy, and always at hand, the lowest, as well as the highest, contented themselves with being busy only by day, and at night they drank long draughts from out of that cup of ease and pleasure, which was presented them by plenty and safety, and they lived free from cares and anxieties. The intent of command and sovereignty was then no secret at all, it was abroad, and the truth and sincerity of elevation and dignity were public, and exposed to every one's sight. But the Empire having been declining these sixty years past, the Emperors became negligent, and the Grandees refractory and rebellious, so that every Nazem has set up for independent and for a King. But yet, as none of these thought of departing from those rules and maxims of government by which the Empire had hitherto flourished, their dominions continued to be in good condition, and their subjects lived easy and contented, so that few, very few of them, knew anything of sufferings and miseries, and matters remained in that condition, so

Happy condition of the Indians under their native Princes

And latterly  
under Aaly-  
verd-y-qhan.

late as the very time when Aaly verd-y qhan possessed himself of these three provinces and chose his residence in the middle of them. As he had a number of relations and friends and most of these were men of merit and abilities he promoted them to offices of importance and trust in which they studied the welfare of the people entrusted to their care. For this Prince although naturally valorous and of an ambitious warlike turn of mind, joined to his natural keenness and penetration so much benignity of temper towards his immediate subjects and so much condescendence and lenity towards the Zemindars who behaved dutifully that he seemed like a father living in his family surrounded by his children and relations. He raised every one of his friends to offices equal in dignity to that of Fodjdars without, however suffering them to become negligent or oppressive. Being studious of governing his subjects with every sentiment of benignity love and tenderness very different in that from his predecessor Ser efrax qhan who suffered himself to be swayed by partialities about religion and rites he looked upon all his subjects to be creatures of one and the same God and brothers of one and the same mother and he used to promote Gentoos and other dissenters, according to their merits and just on a footing with the Mussulmen themselves. In fact these people became his Ministers, and his men in office were promoted to dignities of five thousand horse and to offices entrusted with affairs of the utmost importance. No wonder then, if having been made partakers of his fortune and powers they not only remained quiet and happy in the palm of that family's hand but served it with an exemplary zeal. And such a conduct was founded in reason as well as in policy for an Emperor or whoever may be in his stead being in fact the shadow of God he must render himself conformable to his prototype and as the Almighty chooses to suffer the diversity of clans and religions amongst his creatures and He nourishes with an equal hand those that obey and those that disobey or disregard His commands so it becomes the Princes and Rulers of this world to imitate His goodness in abstaining from such partialities as would prove an inclination to one side.

In the reign of that family the sums received from these countries were expended in these countries, and conducted to

their very flourishing circumstances The inhabitants being easy about their own livelihood, were attached to his Government, lived quiet and happy during his long reign, nor did they ever feel any inquietude about their subsistence, no wonder after that, if no disturbances whatever were ever so much as heard of in his time, unless it was in a remote corner of these provinces, where resided some refractory Zemindars At Azim-abad, for instance, the Bodjpoorias used to commit now and then some disorders, but the rest of these countries enjoyed abundance with a profound tranquillity Matters lasted on that footing, until Aaly-verdy-qhan came to depart this life, after his three nephews had already departed theirs, and then there came upon the stage of the world such a man as Seradj-ed-dowla, a Prince equally proud and ignorant, whose fate we have seen, and a Mir-djaaser-qhan, a man destitute both of wisdom and common sense, as well as void of all religion, whose administration we have felt, and it was these two men, with their successors, that gave a total overthrow to all those institutes and maxims of justice and Government, which had rendered these countries so very flourishing

Under the English Government the principal Zemindars being now their own masters, and the hinges of all business in their own lands, and having been so lucky as to carry some favour with their masters, and all this in contrariety to former institutes, which held it as an invariable maxim, to keep them low, these people do now just as they please, and in what manner they please, nor do they make any thing of fighting amongst themselves, and killing and slaughtering their subjects; whilst the Fodjdar dares not to quarrel with them, and is even afraid to give them an order, or to revenge the oppressed ones upon those tyrants, or even to reclaim from their hands the property of those travellers whom they have despoiled Or if at any time the Fodjdar chances to receive any such thing from their hands, he keeps it to himself, as if to verify those verses of Sheh saady, (upon whom be mercy for ever)

The Zemindars too little restrained, and kept under in the English Government

"Once a sheep was by a stout man

"Rescued from the jaws and grasp of a wolf,

"But at night the man drew his knife and cut the sheep's throat

"The animal, in expiring, did not fail to utter these words with a groan:

*"To no purpose didst thou snatch me from the wolf's grasp,*

*"Since at last thou provest to be a wolf thyself.*



The Fodj-dary office, or Criminal Court, as it is exercised now becomes one of the main grievances of the natives.

It is from such men that the English have received these countries and from them have they obtained all the instructions they want. So that those strangers hearing for instance, of the Fodj-dary office and how useful and salutary it was in former times they have set up the like officers everywhere in their dominions, and, in imitation of the ancient Princes of this country they bestow on them large sums of money but yet to very little purpose and to no benefit at all. For the office itself answers no other end in these days, than that of multiplying oppression and of tormenting in private and public the inhabitants of those large towns and famous cities that had served in times of yore for stations to the former Fodjdars insomuch that whilst the sobs and groans of the oppressed are reaching the very canopy of heaven those officers go on approving themselves incapable of performing the business expected from them. The Fodj-dary of these new Fodjdars is entirely pointed against the principal inhabitants of those large towns and cities as we have been mentioning for now it consists only in circumventing and involving unwary people in every artful accusation and chicanery which they can devise, that they may squeeze from them a few pence and this they do, without the least anxiety about their being called to an account, having already provided *a strong interest with the head of their brotherhood*(130) *and knowing full well, how little the English care about what concerns us poor natives and how little Hindostanies can find access to the Governor General* (131) *or to the men in authority so as to converse with them, and*

---

(130) Mahmed-ressa-qhan.

(131) So the Author thought, at a particular calamitous crisis, when Governor Hastings groaning under the weight of an exterior multifarious war that devoured every resource of the Company and harassed by intestine personal broils that gave him no rest, could afford very little of his time to private affairs; and yet it was at that very time that any man who had business with him might speak to him from six in the morning to eight at night. But the Author did not mind that the number of speakers amounted sometimes to thirty and we have counted eighteen in a morning. There is an adage in India, which says, that never will any man's worth be known but when he is dead or gone. He is gone afar now and if we may judge that extraordinary man by the standard of the public voice the tide of admiration and regret runs now very high in his favour; the natives are unanimous in his behalf and even amongst the English the dissenting voices if a y at all, are but few.

*to make a representation of their grievances* Hence those men go on in their iniquities with the greatest security, tormenting the people of God, by every artifice and oppression they can contrive So small a branch of business as this, which in little cities was heretofore so easily performed by a Cutwal, with honour to himself and advantage to the public, is found to afford now employment for a multitude of illustrious Fodjdars, whose names and titles are such, that with the proud tip of their caps they seem to rub the canopy of heaven, whilst by exercising every art of oppression and injustice,

---

As to the accusations brought in general against the English by the natives, they may amount to these That of so many English that have carried away such Princely fortunes from this country, not one of them has ever thought of shewing his gratitude to it, by sinking a well, digging a pond, planting a public grove, raising a caravansera, or building a bridge, and that even where there are bridges already, they never fail to clog them with a toll, if they but make any slight repairs to any of them These accusations are true, but cannot, however, much affect the national character of the English, who being to a man occasional sojourners, have no time to conceive an affection for this country, and the proof of this assertion may be found in the following particulars Governor Hastings, who lived long enough in this country to have conceived an affection for it, has left ample proofs of his being a lover of it, as well as a keen-sighted Statesman He has built and endowed at Calcutta a Seminary of Mahometan law, a settlement pointed out by policy itself, and useful to Government as well as to the natives He has established, in the uncultivated parts of Bengal, colonies of invalid Talin-gas or Sipahes, to whom he has allotted waste lands, rent free, an establishment so obvious, so common in the Roman and in the Gothic feudal Governments, so like Columbus's egg, and which, however, never occurred to any one, but when it was effected and done, an establishment, which by conferring happiness on thousands of natives, has riveted the English dominion in the country better than would a hundred citadels There is another important, very important, benefit conferred by Governor Hastings on this country, a benefit so unknown in Europe, so much unknown even to the English of Bengal, and nearly forgotten by the natives themselves, although they reap every day the advantages resulting from it We mean the suppression of those numerous chokeys and toll-houses, that infested all the rivers, as well as every road in Bengal, twenty years ago If then there remains still some internal trade in Bengal, if some new branches of commerce have been introduced, if an infinity of crimes, convulsions, and oppressions of all sorts, have been put an end to, if disparities of boats and crews have become incomparably less common, all that is owing to that suppression of those toll-houses, those sinks of all crimes, crimes and oppressions which all the world were exclaiming against, but which none but himself had either the genius or the courage to put an end to, by a decisive stroke that has secured twenty-five lacs of customs to the Company with no less ease to the governed, than to the Governors

they render themselves odious and contemptible in every blind alley as well as in every frequented market. Nor does it appear that their office, as established by the Governor General and Committee throughout the Company's dominions, consists in any thing more than in suppressing the banditti, highwaymen and thieves in punishing those that dare betake to that profession in hindering people from killing or plundering each other and in providing against theft fornication and murder. All this business was easily done in the times of Aaly verdy qhan as well as long before him by the Cutvals in great cities and even elsewhere by thousands of little Aamlis and little Regissers who performed it better than these pompous Fodjdars of our days did at any time. The difference between those gentlemen, on one hand and the Cutvals and Regissers of former times on the other consists in this that these last for fear of accusations and after reckonings, did not dare to commit any oppressions or insolences whereas their successors proud of their dignities and connections and sensible of the neglect of the English in these matters fear no man and dread no consequence, but launch into every oppression which they can think of endeavouring especially to circumvent by every species of chicanery and to render contemptible and of small account, those men of ancient families and high descent and especially such as have made it a point to keep clear of them and if at any time complaints find their way to the Governor General they are hushed down by the authority and mediation of their head protector who for fear of accusations against himself and of consequent dismissal to his people puts in motion so many resorts and sacrifices so much money that the poor injured one is kept asunder from inspection and redress.

Severe hints  
against Mah-  
med-ross  
qhan and his  
substitutes.

And now that we have been exposing in a succinct cursory manner the institutes and maxims of this land and have pointed out what end was intended in each of them by our ancient Lawgivers it becomes our duty as Historians to relate what is become of the intent and aim of those institutes in these our days and to explain briefly, and with the candor of a faithful witness such parts of the English Government as differ totally from or even clash essentially with the customs and usages by which these countries have once flourished for it is to this

diversity of customs and institutes, and to that contrariety alone, that we must recur, whenever we attempt to account for that constant failure which has attended every endeavour of theirs in whatever tended to bring order into this country, and it is to that cause alone that we are to look up for the origin of those troubles and those confusions that have been, and are, the bane and ruin of the inhabitants of this country. Let this animadversion of ours stand as a monument, that has found favour with the minds of the enlightened ones. Let it be instrumental in giving a turn to confusion, in transforming it into order, and in rendering it conducive to the relief of the oppressed people of God, as well as to, the comfort of those that are suffering in their minds for the sakes of the oppressed ones. *O God, 'I ask Your grace Vouchsafe me Your assistance* (132)

It must be observed, first of all, that since the conquest made by the English of these provinces, this country seems to have had no master at all, and this, because there is no apparent owner whose children and offspring might be interested in inheriting his estate. This is so far true, that even on the supposition that the English nation at large are the owners of this land, still shall it be acknowledged that the Company is not one individual. It is a numerous body, nor are the Members of it permanent. On the contrary, they are daily renewed, so that whoever chooses to employ his money that way, has only to join his stock to the old fund, and from that moment he becomes an associate, and is a Member of the Company, and therefore the constituent parts are never permanent, nor is any supreme ruler appointed, to whom every one, from year to year, may be obliged to render an account, and to shew his face. No wonder then, if in so short a period as these twenty years past these countries have been blessed by no less than six or seven persons proposed to the Government of Bengal. Hence it comes to pass, that the man who is to be appointed, is not certain of his stay, nor has he full power over his business, he must consult and manage with four or five men that are called the Committee, and these are perpetually at variance with each other, and perpetually in suspense about their own staying, and their being succeeded by another. If then a house that has

The country seeming to have no apparent master, is of course, under the predicament of a house untenanted

---

(132) A passage of the Coran

no owner is not likely to be tenanted and such a house is likely to totter for want of repairs, and at last will become ruinous in a little time so likewise a country of this immense extent, having no apparent master, must in time cease to flourish and at last must fall to decay And what shall we answer to a man that will tell us that a stranger always wants to draw his own profit, be it from a house or from a kingdom that intent on his own views, he little cares about what ruins shall remain after him and that it becomes highly improbable that for the benefit of his successors himself meanwhile should forego his personal advantage by taking care that nothing be spoiled? Only if he be inclined to mind future examinations and after reckonings, he will be cunning enough to manage so as that the ruin he is likely to leave behind be not imputable to him Nor are we to expect that future Governors will be inclined to afford many exceptions to such a rule for it is certain that all that has been performed by Governor Hushtin was on the mere strength of his own genius and by taking the events upon himself without being moved by the perpetual opposition which he continually received from the Members of the Committee, or being sensibly discouraged by their rancorous dispositions. Such an exception is too uncommon to be deemed a rule. It is what he alone had the courage to undertake and what no one but himself would have dared to venture upon and what no one to this day has attempted. Such an instance proves nothing against our assertion for still will it be found that in consequence of the necessity of yielding a little and of paying a regard to the Members of the Committee, and in consequence of the dissensions that arose amongst them many a valuable occasion has been lost and it will be confessed by both sides that many a good business has been spoiled and undone for want of concert Nor have we done with these broils yet for we have yet to see in what manner all that great man's endeavours are likely to terminate

Men of confessed abilities, and superior genius, eternally thwarted and impeded by majorities sent from Europe

Nor is this case singular It is that of all the persons under his Government For the six districts into which the English had divided this country, are each of them governed by five or six persons all disagreeing amongst themselves and each of them a prey to endless divisions and disputes nor is there a head over them all with full power and authority On the contrary he that

might be their head, has not himself any hopes of his remaining long in his post, so that intent upon his own concerns, he keeps his ears eternally pricked up against every report of change and confirmation. Besides all that, there is another defect, and which is this. That if these five or six happen to differ essentially about any matter of importance, they are obliged to apply to the Governor and Council, and to wait for orders from thence. And this Governor and Council, obliged to partage their attention betwixt that infinity of public transactions and businesses that concern their dominions and conquests, and that other infinity of matters that concern their own state of personal warfare, what betwixt watching over their dominions in these provinces, and answering very long letters from Europe, guarding against their national enemies abroad, both in Europe and Hindostan, and providing against personal enemies at home, betwixt examining accounts of corors of rupees and providing for the Company's mercantile purchases, betwixt receiving as Sovereigns the revenues of so many dominions in their old and new conquests; what with these, and an infinity of other avocations, public or private, these men, with such a load of business on their shoulders, have no time to answer letters of Provincial Councils, or to give the proper orders thereon. They dispatch what business they think most urgent, and write answers to the Provincial Councils, just as they find time and opportunity, else matters remain at a stand for years together, in those parts, or are determined, at last, as the Provincial Councillors can agree together, or as it appears expedient to the foremost of them, or as it is most easy of execution, whether right or wrong.

Were any of those Gentlemen preposed to the direction of affairs, with a responsibility attached to his office, and were the regulation of those Provincial parts fixed on him, and himself allowed to stay long enough in his office to acquire knowledge and credit, so as to be convinced assuredly that the bad or good state of such a city would be laid to his account, and imputed to his management, there is no doubt but that such a man would look upon such a city as his own freehold, and would exert himself to the utmost of his power in promoting its welfare; there is no doubt but that such a man, for fear of after-reckonings about a diminution of inhabitants and revenues, would

The subordinate Rulers do not stay long enough in their employments

no owner is not likely to be tenanted and such a house is likely to totter for want of repairs, and at last will become ruinous in a little time so likewise a country of this immense extent, having no apparent master, must in time cease to flourish, and at last must fall to decay And what shall we answer to a man that will tell us that a stranger always wants to draw his own profit be it from a house or from a kingdom that intent on his own views he little cares about what ruins shall remain after him and that it becomes highly improbable that for the benefit of his successors, himself meanwhile should forego his personal advantage by taking care that nothing be spoiled? Only if he be inclined to mind future examinations and after reckonings he will be cunning enough to manage so as that the ruin he is likely to leave behind be not imputable to him Nor are we to expect that future Governors will be inclined to afford many exceptions to such a rule for it is certain that all that has been performed by Governor Hushtin, was on the mere strength of his own genius and by taking the events upon himself without being moved by the perpetual opposition which he continually received from the Members of the Committee, or being sensibly discouraged by their rancorous dispositions Such an exception is too uncommon to be deemed a rule It is what he alone had the courage to undertake and what no one but himself would have dared to venture upon and what no one to this day, has attempted. Such an instance proves nothing against our assertion for still will it be found that in consequence of the necessity of yielding a little and of paying a regard to the Members of the Committee, and in consequence of the dissensions that arose amongst them many a valuable occasion has been lost and it will be confessed by both sides that many a good business has been spoiled and undone for want of concert Nor have we done with these broils yet for we have yet to see in what manner all that great man's endeavours are likely to terminate.

Nor is this case singular it is that of all the persons under his Government. For the six districts into which the English had divided this country are each of them governed by five or six persons all disagreeing amongst themselves and each of them a prey to endless divisions and disputes nor is there a head over them all with full power and authority On the contrary, he that

might be their head, has not himself any hopes of his remaining long in his post, so that intent upon his own concerns, he keeps his ears eternally pricked up against every report of change and confirmation. Besides all that, there is another defect, and which is this. That if these five or six happen to differ essentially about any matter of importance, they are obliged to apply to the Governor and Council, and to wait for orders from thence. And this Governor and Council, obliged to partage their attention betwixt that infinity of public transactions and businesses that concern their dominions and conquests, and that other infinity of matters that concern their own state of personal warfare, what betwixt watching over their dominions in these provinces, and answering very long letters from Europe, guarding against their national enemies abroad, both in Europe and Hindostan, and providing against personal enemies at home, betwixt examining accounts of corors of rupees and providing for the Company's mercantile purchases, betwixt receiving as Sovereigns the revenues of so many dominions in their old and new conquests; what with these, and an infinity of other avocations, public or private, these men, with such a load of business on their shoulders, have no time to answer letters of Provincial Councils, or to give the proper orders thereon. They dispatch what business they think most urgent, and write answers to the Provincial Councils, just as they find time and opportunity, else matters remain at a stand for years together, in those parts, or are determined, at last, as the Provincial Councillors can agree together, or as it appears expedient to the foremost of them, or as it is most easy of execution, whether right or wrong.

Were any of those Gentlemen preposed to the direction of affairs, with a responsibility attached to his office, and were the regulation of those Provincial parts fixed on him, and himself allowed to stay long enough in his office to acquire knowledge and credit, so as to be convinced assuredly that the bad or good state of such a city would be laid to his account, and imputed to his management, there is no doubt but that such a man would look upon such a city as his own freehold, and would exert himself to the utmost of his power in promoting its welfare; there is no doubt but that such a man, for fear of after-reckonings about a diminution of inhabitants and revenues, would

The subordinate Rulers do not stay long enough in their employments.



give himself no rest in quieting and cherishing the subject, and in making that district flourishing and happy whereby the country would become more populous and himself would be the better for it in his private concerns. But as the Councils and Committees are packed up now every one of the Members is intent only upon removing every suspicion of fault or misbehaviour from his own person and making it fast upon his neighbour's shoulders after which he thinks himself safe. No wonder then, if they are eternally at variance with each other.

It appears by ancient records that go back as far as the creation of the world, that whenever these countries have been invaded by foreign armies the conquerors always divided into two distinct bodies, that had different views. Some of them who did not intend to stay, and thought only of slaughter and plunder, made haste to display the standard of return and to begone, as soon as they had got plunder and booty enough to gratify their avarice. Those men wanting from this land jewels only and money, by whatever means they might be obtained killed and plundered as fast as they could, and then went away. But there were others that thought in a quite different manner and these intending to settle for ever and to fix the foot of residence and permanency in these countries had a mind of turning their conquest into a patrimony for themselves and of making it their property and their inheritance. These never failed to assemble as many as had remained from the slaughter, and to cherish them in the palm of the hand of benevolence. These bent the whole strength of their genius in securing the happiness of their new subjects, nor did they ever abate any thing from their efforts, until they had intermarried with the natives, and got children and families from them and had become naturalized. Their immediate successors having learned the language of the country, behaved to its inhabitants as brothers of one mother and one language. And although the Gentoos seem to be a generation apart and distinct from the rest of mankind and they are swayed by such differences in religion tenets and rites as will necessarily render all Musul men aliens and profane, in their eyes and although they keep up a strangeness of ideas and practices, which beget a wide difference in customs and actions, yet in process of

Benevolence  
and tenderness  
of the  
Gentoos  
towards the con-  
quered.

time, they drew nearer and nearer, and as soon as fear and aversion had worn away, we see that this dissimilarity and alienation have terminated in friendship and union, and that the two nations have come to coalesce together into one whole, like milk and sugar that have received a simmering. In one word, we have seen them promote heartily each other's welfare, have common ideas, like brothers from one and the same mother, and feel for each other, as children of the same family, and this is so far true, that from the moment the son of the new Prince had acquired the name of presumptive heir, from that moment submission and acquiescence became a thing of course, and an article of fashion, every one yielding to him a willing obedience, and thinking that none was so worthy of dominion and government as himself. And this sense of attachment became reciprocal, for the reigning Emperor and his Imperial Prince, looking henceforward upon this land to be their patrimony and inheritance, conceived as much affection for their new subjects, as if they had been their children, fully sensible that they would all join together so heartily in repelling the common enemy, as to make him lose every hope of any public or private assistance. For such is Sheh-Saady's opinion and precept, in these two verses

The subject is a tree, if you cherish it,

You will eat of its fruit, to your heart's desire

Those Princes, therefore, thoroughly sensible that the strength and firmness of their Government and power rested on the number and ease of their subjects, and the consequent cultivation of the land, did everything in their power to keep them quiet and happy, and this is that which rendered their dominions flourishing, and the generality of their people contented and wealthy, and also submissive

#### VERSES OF SAADY

Be kind to the subject and fear nothing from foreign wars,

For when a king is just, the love of his subject is for him a mighty army

I have had myself opportunities of seeing with my own eyes, and of hearing with my own ears, the consequences of good and bad government, and this happened at the time when the Shah-zada-aaly goher, who is now our Emperor, under the name of Shah-aalem, was waging war against the English nation in the plains of Azim-abad. As soon as it became certain that the Imperial Prince intended an expedition into the province of

wall, and this happens not only because the Gentlemen having always a deal of business of their own to transact, cannot afford much of their time to others, but chiefly because they cannot understand each other, and are unable to have a communication of ideas. Whence it follows that no benefit is reaped by either description of men from such an intercourse but as the Hindians are always the petitioners, they always prove the greatest losers from that inconvenience, being always at a loss what to do next. And if the Moonshy or the Divan happen to be the Interpreter of communication, and the canal of comprehension and explanation it becomes necessary for the petitioner that after having said a few words to the master he explains the rest entirely to the Moonshy on which occasion the latter asks the whole matter over again and it is seldom but the suitor is thereby put off his guard and gives rise to much discontent and much dissatisfaction on either side. Were these men now, who rule every where to remain for a length of time in command, they would become acquainted with the language customs, and usages of one district, and would acquire a full knowledge of the several individuals that dwell in the same nor is there any doubt, but that they would rule much better and become much likelier to promote the welfare of the people than would be a stranger, who always comes thoroughly unacquainted with either men language, or country.

On the other hand as these rulers have all their necessaries from their own country, it follows that the handicraftsmen and artificers of this land suffer constantly, live in distress, and find it difficult to procure a livelihood sufficient to support their lives. For as the English are now the rulers and the masters of this country, as well as the only rich men in it to whom can those poor people look up for offering the productions of their art so as to benefit by their expenses? It is only some artificers that can find a livelihood with the English, such as carpenters silver smiths iron smiths &c, nay they subsist upon better terms than they did under the Hindostany Government, and possibly two or three trades more, the names whereof I cannot now recollect, may fare the better for these strangers. But as to those numerous artificers of other denominations, they have no other resource left than that of begging or thieving. Numbers,

therefore have already quitted their homes and countries, and numbers unwilling to leave their abodes, have made a covenant with hunger and distress, and ended their lives in a corner of their cottages. To heighten this picture now, let us imagine that at such a time of general distress and want of employment as this, when to get a meal at night is become a matter of so much difficulty, we are perpetually cursed with shoals of peons or messengers, and constables of the Fodjdary office, all let loose upon the necessitous people, whom they torment by every invention which chicane and accusation can contrive. These wretches, under pretence of diet-money to themselves, harass the people with so much cruelty, that the shaft has sunk to the quick, and the knife has cut through to the bone, and it is thus that the Fodjdary office, originally set up for the ease of the subject, has been perverted into a scene of extortion and tyranny. Nor does such an evil come alone and by itself, it comes along with the want of employment, and the want of subsistence, and over and above the vexation of being often impressed for public service. Nor does that evil make any distinction betwixt the high, the low, or the middling, nor is there any one to recur to in so much distress, but God Almighty. As the English Gentlemen, to rid themselves of the necessity of hearing these poor people, have made them over to the Fodjdars, and these Fodjdars, with their substitutes, find their own welfare in undoing these poor people, they go on without remorse in their iniquitous proceedings, and make nothing of spreading every day upon their table the carcass of some wretched, as an addition to their dessert.

The melting of the candle affords a hold to the moth

The oppressor finds his livelihood close to the oppressed

Thanks be to God, that since the Fodjdary has been taken from the Indians, and lodged in the hands of English Gentlemen, these violences have ceased and the weather has a little cleared up for the poor. May God grant that, in other matters likewise, evil may be changed into good!

The third cause that hinders the tranquillity of the country, and proves a bar to the happiness of the people, may be found out in the endless variations in the persons appointed to posts of trust and charges of importance

The third cause is the endless variations and mutations in posts of trust and importance

In this country the custom was, first of all, to enquire thoroughly into any ones faculties and abilities, to examine into his fitness and into the goodness of his character, and then to appoint him to an office, where as soon as his talents, his exactitude and his good management had been put to the test, he was confirmed of course and he acquired daily an experience which enabled him to dispatch business with so much vivacity and steadiness that life was like a parterre laid out with odoriferous flowers of delightful hues. But these rules and maxims are not adhered to by the English. They appoint to offices at their pleasure or on powerful recommendation or on the seniority of rank without minding whether the appointed is completely incapable of fulfilling his duty or unlikely ever after to acquire abilities. For it has been often experienced that one of them being appointed to an office to which he was a complete stranger managed so well as to acquire a stock of knowledge and abilities that would now entitle him to such an appointment of course were he to be appointed hereafter to it when lol presently such a man was transferred elsewhere and another appointed in his stead who was as complete a stranger to the duties of that station as had been the former and where as the English have besides a custom of coming for a number of years and then of going away to pay a visit to their native country without any one of them shewing an inclination to fix himself in this land hence ignorance and incapacity come to be transmitted from hand to hand. And as they join to that custom that other one of theirs which every one of those emigrants holds to be of Divine obligation I mean that of scraping together as much money in this country as they can and carrying it in immense sums to the kingdom of England so it is not surprising at all if these two customs blended together should be ever undermining and ruining this country and should become an eternal bar to its ever flourishing again. The case was different heretofore. It was these Gentlemen that imported every year gold and silver into this land where joining that which was already in the land it procured an abundant circulation and promoted every ones good. Still notwithstanding all those discouragements, it happens sometimes that a man once promoted to an office acquires in a course of years such a stock of knowledge and such abilities

as afford hopes of his continuing in it, and of his ruling according to those abilities of his which he has been at so much pains to hoard up, when straight there comes upon him a group of two or three men from Europe, who know nothing of business, but are superior to him in rank, or seniority, or influence, and these take possession of his post, while the man of abilities and merit, disgusted and discontented at his being deprived of what he deserved, thinks of going home, and of leaving the field to the disposal of the ignorant new-comers, who now sit in his stead, and in their ignorance of men and things, are immediately surrounded and hooked in by a set of wary, artificeous fellows, who, by hanging out false lights, and shewing them pretended flowery paths, and false gardens evergreen, find means to lead them by the nose, and to become meanwhile the centre and hinges of every matter of importance, to the utter ruin of all the good which their predecessor had done, and to the disturbance of all the regulations which he had been at so much pains to establish, and years elapse and come to pass, before these new-comers become qualified enough to hear of the practices of these their dependants. But even supposing that the able and experienced man above, foregoing his journey home, should choose to stay amongst the new-comers, nevertheless, as matters are to be transacted in a Council, all his efforts and all his speeches prove to be of no avail, unless the three uninformed new-comers choose to listen to reason themselves, and to enforce his regulations on their side. We have even seen that these men, being very often misled by their informers and dependants, as well as carried away by a desire of becoming themselves the centre of all transactions, are very apt to pay no regard, and to afford no confidence, to the representations of the able man above, but on the contrary, sure of a preponderance enforced by a majority of, for instance, three or four to one, they put shackles to his feet, and hinder his proceeding in business, all which we have seen to pass, when the Governor-General was overpowered by General Clavering and his party, nor do matters go much otherwise in the six departments of Bengal.

The fourth cause is the slowness of proceedings in the Governing Council

The fourth cause is what they call the Council. That Council is an assembly similar to that brought together by the second Qhalif, for the purpose of choosing a successor to himself,

but in which his intention was to debar the females of the Prince of the Faithful from those rights fixed on them by Divine institution (134) It signifies an assembly of Gentlemen intent upon a particular business, where if there be a diversity of opinion that opinion gets the better and is approved of that has most Members on its side whereas if the votes be equal then as the Governor in consequence of his superior station and dignity, is counted for two men, his side prevails just as it did happen in Abdol rahman's Council But that method, although extremely advantageous (since penetration and safety are always to be found where there is consultation,) has nevertheless its inconveniences. Now it is a condition requisite in all consultations, that the person who is to give his advice, should have deserved to be trusted, and also that the force of private views and partialities should not find admittance in the assembly, conditions that are not to be found in the English Council and which probably did not exist in the Arabian one neither Such assemblies, besides are to be wished for only on such occasions of extraordinary importance as embarrass the minds of the uncertain and stagger the feet of the most discerning; and noways in the details of execution and still less in every small matter, and every minutiae that may occur Such a system gives rise to an infinity of disturbances and confusions, and perpetually impedes the wheels of Government especially where the business requires dispatch and vivacity or where it is a question to determine *differents, or to send necessary orders* The rules of the Council happen to be such that whatever business has come to be

---

(134) The Prince, or First of Believers is Aaly cousin and son-in-law to Mahomet; for although Qhadidja the Messenger's first consort and Zéid, his servant, had already believed Aaly made no account of them, as they were of the house, and he continued to style himself the First of Believers. The second Qhalif or successor to Mahomet, that is, the second Arabian Emperor was Omar; whose intention in assembling that Council was to fix the succession upon Osman, or Othman, who in fact did succeed him in the Qhalifat, to the exclusion of Aaly who did not become the fourth successor till long after This preference was worth to Osman seventeen stabs which were given him by the enraged partisans of Aaly a bloody transaction, of which the latter remained so much suspected, that when Moavia's cousin and Secretary to Mahomet openly revolted against that fourth successor and rejected with indignation his first commands, he ordered Osman's bloody shirt to be fixed to the top of a spear and, in his first battle made use of it as his principal standard

offered to the Governor of Calcutta, or to the ruler of some other place, at the present moment, or has been prayed for by the petitioners this long while, all that is kept in store for the day of assembling the Council, when the above affairs are proposed in that assembly, the respective Agents and Advocates attending the same, at which time, if all that store of business is put an end to, and is determined, the Council give their answer in the form of a decree, else, the petitioners are to wait for another Council, and as over and above the multiplicity of public business, there are at all times dissensions in that assembly, and a diversity of opinions, whether out of friendship to any one, or out of disgust to the petitioner, whilst there is often an opposition of votes, as for instance, when two of the Members side with one person, and two or three more support another, or because some enmity has been conceived by one of their dependants to the petitioner, hence a sensible man will easily conclude that a determination becomes difficult and nearly impossible. And thus, after numbers have been consuming their time in attendance, if any one should, by chance come to gain his cause, it proves that upon the whole he is no gainer at all. Heretofore there was in every district a Chief, a man of knowledge, abilities, and experience, who determined with an absolute authority in every matter, and every difference, nor had he more than two or three principal dependants. On a first representation from a petitioner, the matter was immediately taken up and examined, and a determination was instantly given, to the best of the Chief's abilities. After a proper examination, an order, where necessary, was issued, and the plaintiff went away, either the same day, or a few days after, with his award in his pocket. So that matters had an end, one after another, nor was it necessary, as it is now the case, that a man, after having spent years of his time in expectation, and great part of his life in attendance, should, at the end of that, find himself disappointed and undone. In the beginning of the dominion of the English, where there was but one Chief to apply to, and but one able Deputy as Radja Shytábráy, and others, to transact the minutæ of business, the affairs of the natives went on briskly, and were dispatched, in some manner or other, but still were dispatched, nor was the people of God obliged to undergo such doubts and such losses of time, as



we see to-day and although those times were not free from partialities and private views neither yet upon the whole matters flowed on swiftly be it in what manner soever it seemed best to their rulers Nor did the miseries of endless delay and endless expectation melt mankind away nor did the people of God become the victims of endless altercation amongst their rulers For I remember that on the dismissal of Radjah Shytáb-ráy when Mr George Vansittart was appointed Chief and became the centre of all business I took the liberty to represent to him "That Radja Shytáb ráy used to spend his time from one half of each day 'down to one third of each night in hearing petitions and in 'giving decisions by which assiduity he dispatched much business, and gave a great deal of ease to every one I added that the people of God deprived of such a man would very naturally express their anxiety about what might be his pleasure now on that head He answered that *being not accustomed, like Shytáb ráy to sit in public amongst hundreds of people nor to listen to complaints and to determine causes, he could not believe that he would be able to comprehend one-half of them but that those that had any business with Government might apply to himself privately as he conceived that in the recess and silence of a closet he would be more recollected and better able to give a decision* Upon this I requested that orders should be given to the sentries to admit all comers and directions to the ushers or chopdars to introduce every one. Immediately he gave the necessary orders and they proved strict orders and as he was a man of quick apprehension and very active in body and mind and could not bear to have his lesson taught him by a Moonshy or Secretary or his task dictated to by a Divan or indeed by any man he proved to be as good as his word and he constantly dispatched a great deal of business. This state of things did not last, and the affairs and petitions growing numerous people began to suffer from delays when after a little time Mr Law arrived and wiped clean the eyes of the people of God with the sleeve of goodness and affability After this God knows what is likely to happen For it appears that to find out one single man's way and to be upon good terms with him is an easy matter or if he be discontented it is not difficult to make up matter with him but

to find one's way to the favor of fifteen or twenty persons, or even more, that compose a Council, (including their dependants and officers), or to guard against their resentment, is a task very difficult and complicated, and such as exceeds the power and abilities of a poor, suitor and indeed such as would prove above the patience of any one. Never was this so well brought to the proof as after Radja Shytáb-ráy's dismissal, and the establishment of a Council in his stead. It was at the festival ending the Ramazan, or month of fast, when the Nobility, Gentry, and principal men of the city who used in that day to offer their nezurs to Radja Shytáb-ráy, were necessitated to pay that mark of respect to every one of the five Members of the Council Vansittart, on seeing this, could not help observing openly, that whoever hitherto had been clear with presenting one mohur or one rupee only, would be now obliged to provide five, which was what many could not afford, whereupon having conferred upon the subject with the others, he published, that at the next festival of the Corban or Sacrifice people should present one nezur to the Chief only, and that would be enough, as no other was wanted, or expected, and in fact, so it came to pass. But some professed flatterers, who wished no good to any money that might remain in an Hindostani's pocket, went out, notwithstanding the prohibition, and, to shew their sentiments of respect to greater advantage, they repaired to the houses of the other Members, and presented a particular nezur to each of them. Some that could ill afford the contribution, did the same, lest the Gentlemen, thinking themselves slighted, should bear them a grudge, and those that were utterly unable, submitted to their fate, and remained moping in their corners.

The fifth cause consists in the difference betwixt the manner in which the English in office appear in public, and give audience to suitors, and that in which it has been at all times customary to hold a Durbar in this country.

Our illustrious Sovereigns of Hindostan, those Princes so studious of justice and equity, had it in custom to divide their time for different purposes, and had made a rule of that distribution, on which they never encroached by any other occupation, but in that division, two kinds of businesses held always the first rank. The first was the examination and decision of affairs

The fifth cause arises from the extreme difference betwixt the English way of giving public audience to suitor, and that which was customary in these countries, and also from their engrossing every thing to themselves

The Indian  
Princes, ex-  
tremely so-  
cessible

relative to revenue and Government the second the rights of Individuals and the rules of distributive justice to the people of God. For each of these purposes they had set apart to days in the week, at which time they appeared publicly in all their pomp grandeur and glory They were surrounded at some distance by their Ministers and officers and they gave a general audience where any one might present his petition himself and speak to them face to face, by which means the Sovereign being informed of the state of the country, and of the behaviour of its rulers could provide such a remedy as the matter required and by such means he became acquainted with the wants and complaints of his subjects and dependants. But as those Princes did not live in one and the same place but made a travelling circuit almost every year, of course they had opportunities of hearing with their own ears and of seeing with their own eyes the circumstances of the subject and the necessities of the country In the same manner they spent two days in the week in rendering justice and in hearing the cries of the oppressed nor did they shew any impatience at the screams and reproaches of the crowds that pressed upon them Matters are far from being so now with the English Gentlemen as these (and this has been already hinted at in the foregoing sheets) hate appearing in public audiences and whenever they come to appear at all it is to betray extreme uneasiness impatience, and anger on seeing themselves surrounded by crowds, and on hearing their complaints and clamours. Hence it follows naturally that they must be in the dark with respect to the real state of the country and the circumstances of the subject and hence multitudes of people remain deprived of the sight of their rulers and never see any thing of that benignity and that munificence which might be expected from people that now sit on the throne of Kings and figure as the representatives of Emperors.

Their jealousy  
in putting up  
with the re-  
proaches and  
a abusive  
language of  
disappointed  
sultors.

#### VERSES OF SAADY

Here is the only condition on which a ruler can live

And this is, that he be master of the circumstances of the law of his subjects

If the English, in imitation of those to whom they have succeeded vouchsafed to set apart some of their time for these landable purposes, and at certain stated times, gave admission

indiscriminately to all people, and heard their prayers by themselves, with gentle manners, and personal enquiry into the circumstances of their suitors, it is certain that even so small a change would gain their hearts, and would render them fearless and intrepid in exhibiting complaints, and representing matters against the very servants of their rulers, and although all this might not be brought to bear without some expense, and some trouble, on account of their being not accustomed to that practice, yet the benefits resulting from such an intercourse, would prove to be innumerable, and would be felt by both sides. May God grant that, as a favor to them and to us, there would result from that mutual commerce a nearer and more beneficial acquaintance with the inhabitants of this climate! For having once got acquainted with one individual, and tried his degree of ability, and his particular talent in business, they could station him accordingly, and oblige him as his rank or abilities might point out, and as they should come to know to what particular business he is fit, they might draw such services from him, as they should wish, or think convenient. Now all this is not attainable, without personal intercourse, and without inquiring into the characters and tempers of men, still less without observing every one's behaviour in a variety of circumstances, by changing the discourse, and hearing him speak on a variety of subjects, especially in this time and age, when there is so much envy and obloquy, and so much slander and artifice in every transaction.

The sixth cause is that the English have deprived the inhabitants of these countries of various branches of commerce and benefit, which they had ever enjoyed heretofore.

Our ancient Princes, who after the tumult of conquest, had conceived the project of making their homes of this country, were generous enough, after appropriating to the Crown the conquered provinces, and the principal revenues and tributes, to establish a vast body of pensions, and *Djaghirs* (135), for

The sixth cause is, that the English are engrossing all the trade of the country, and depriving the inhabitants of their accustomed livelihood

Munificence and generosity of the ancient Princes

---

(135) The *Djaghir* is a grant of land, severed either from the immediate demesnes of the Crown, or from the usual revenues of a province. It differs from the *Altungha* in this, that the latter is irrevocable although reversible, whereas the former is both reversible and revocable. The *Amlacs*, *Aïmas*, *Méded-méashes*, &c., &c., are lands set apart for charitable uses, for instance, to afford a subsistence to the physician of the town or city, to decayed noble families, and also to some Ministers of the Church, although these last are provided for by Church-lands or *Vacss*.

Altumghas and charity lands, as well as to associate in the enjoyment of their conquest, most of their principal relations and principal followers, together with the most considerable men of the land itself and at the same time they had left open to the subject various ways of revenues and livelihood, amounting to many corors a year, as a provision for the bulk of the inhabitants. Djaghurs, to the amount of lacs and revenues to the amount of mighty sums, were bestowed on Noblemen whether Muslmen or Hindoos, and indeed upon any others indifferently according to their stations and merits, with the hope of further preferment. In proportion to their abilities and exertions in the service. And in fact nothing was more common than to see these Noblemen promoted to higher emoluments after having exhibited further proofs of their zeal and activity, nor was this munificence restricted to their own nation. Old friends or new ones, old subjects or recent ones all of whatever religion, nation or tribe and profession they might be, were made partakers of their bounty but old decayed people amongst them and the necessitous together with the children of their old servants and followers as well as the poor and needy, from whom prayers only and good wishes could be expected were relieved with gifts of Altumghas, Amlacs, and such other lands which were set apart for pious uses and which they quietly enjoyed. As to the other ways of deriving incomes, for instance, from merchandising and from the exercise of arts and trade all these were left open for all the world and although they were made to see various branches of revenue in those articles they never turned their eyes that way but left all that for the bulk of the people. Over and above that thousands and hundreds of thousands of men (136), horse and foot, were kept in constant pay whether in the service of the Emperor or of the Governors of provinces, and they all enjoyed an easy livelihood. Compare now those multitudes with even that small number of men that still get a livelihood by enjoying Djaghurs and Altumghas in the English dominions. Even these in

---

(136) The troops of the Empire, under Shah-djehan whether near the Emperor's person, or stationed in the frontiers or in garrison amounted to above eight hundred and fifty thousand men and under his son, Aureng zib, to near a million, one-half of them cavalry

*consequence of the inattention of the English to the concerns of us, poor Hindostanies, and in consequence of the power left to their dependants and to extortionary Zemindars, in consequence, I say, of the cruelty of their lease-takers, and of the hardness of heart and faithlessness of the subordinate rulers, even these poor people also are come to experience a variety of losses, injuries and damages* For it is notorious that abuses have crept into that branch of the administration too, as it has been already mentioned in the article of charity and legacy lands, and in that of that Atheist, Zehoor-ollah-beg, and thanks be to God that there happened to be over against that flinty-hearted man such a person as Governor Hushtin in this land, and that the sufferings endure by these poor people for the space of a whole year's attendance, were rewarded at last by the Governor-General's having the goodness to remove that load of evils which oppression strove to place upon their heads On the other hand, out of that vast multitude of people, called musqueteers, whose numbers were heretofore counted by ten thousands in these provinces, only a small number of them have obtained a livelihood by inlisting as Talingas in the English service, and yet it was these two provinces that fed and paid regularly forty or fifty thousand horse, which were either in the Viceroy's service immediately or mediately, in that of his sons or relations and officers, or in that of the principal Zemindars of the province Thousands and thousands of merchants followed that numerous cavalry, and according to their respective means and callings, found a certain income in their connections with them, and in their turns afforded a livelihood to multitudes of others Now matters go otherwise Service for troopers and cavalry, there is none at all, and of the various branches of trade, heretofore open to all, none is left free They are all engrossed by the Company themselves, or by the English in general, as these, whether they enjoy the Company's service, and of course have power and influence, or chance to be otherwise circumstanced, very seldom are without concerns in trade But if, with all that, it happens that most of the superior military officers, whilst shewing a shyness for trade, are really merchants invested with high powers and authority, how can the poor subject pretend to derive a subsistence from merchandising?

No livelihood left to the Natives, and yet it was these two provinces that kept in pay no less than fifty thousand cavalry, and twice as much infantry.

Would they dare it? On the other hand, thousands of artificers cannot earn enough to support their families, as has been shewn a little above, because their arts and callings are of no use to the English nor can it be expected that the Nobility of this land, reduced as it is to that distress which we have already pointed out should afford to take the works of these people off their hands, and to give them employment as they used to do in former times by keeping them always busy, sometimes in their own houses. It is even become a matter of wonder and a subject of thanksgiving to the Divine Goodness how these poor people can make a shift to live now and how to this day most of them go on and endure with their children and families.

Advice to  
the English, to  
take into their  
service a body  
of Hindostany  
cavalry

Were the English to take into their service some thousands of that cavalry once commanded by such renowned Officers as Sheh muéz-eddin-qhan and Ahmed-qhan and the like there is no doubt but these men would render them important services in their wars against the cavalry of either the Marhattas or the Sykes, especially if care was taken to attach them to the service and to excite their zeal and emulation nor would these military services be the only advantages to be reaped by entertaining such a cavalry. There are some others that would arise collateral ly to such an establishment as for instance a further facility of livelihood to the people in general, an addition of numbers to the farming tribe and an increase of revenue to Government.

The seventh  
cause is in the  
exorbitant  
powers left to  
Zemindars  
The Zeminda  
dars deemed  
at all times,  
and in all ages,  
a race incor  
rigible.

The seventh cause may be found in the overgrowing power of the Zemindars and in their being trusted too much.

It is deemed an undeniable truth amongst the men of sense of this land and it was a standing rule amongst the Princes of these kingdoms that no trust is to be reposed in the words of a Zemindar, not even in his most solemn promises and treaties as they are to a man a refractory short sighted faithless set of people that mind nothing but present interest, and require always a strict hand. Our Government took care therefore that they should not get an opportunity of resisting or disobeying and likewise that they should not acquire the means of resistance and obstinacy as they are evil-doers by profession, and at all times disposed to injury and to distress the people of God ever ready to infest the highways to plunder and kill the travellers and the unwary ever ready to torment the subjects, and even

the Nobles, destroy the country, to ruin the revenue, and to distress and injure Government. All these are the accustomed performances of that malevolent race, and it was to keep them in awe, and occasionally to administer correction to them, that so many illustrious Fodjdars were stationed with such a number of officers and dependants. No trust was reposed in their words, nor in their actions, for their character was thoroughly understood. They were looked upon to be an incorrigible race. Now, in contradiction to ancient maxims, and to rules of old standing, and in contradiction to the most approved opinions, held equally by eminent merchants, as well as by knowing Princes, the English rulers have thought proper to compare the Zemindars of this country to the Zemindars and land-holders of their own, men whose possessions amount to no more than a few thousand yards of ground, or at most to an estate of two or three cosses in circuit, and who being all men of education and honor, pass their lives in enjoying their estates and beautiful seats, and in keeping open tables. It is to such men that the English Government has ventured to compare the Zemindars of Hindostan, and by comparison, to repute them men of honor and sentiment, worthy of being held in esteem and consideration, and deserving to be entrusted with full powers over their Zemindaries or estates, and yet it is these very men of honour and sentiments that ruin the whole country, torment the men of distinction settled of old in their lands, and are waiting only that time and opportunity may put it in their power by some extraordinary event, at once to display the standard of rebellion and dispute, and to raise commotions of consequence. They live quietly now, and astonished at the heavy blows they have felt from the hand of the English, as well as overawed by the superiority acquired everywhere by that nation, they wink at the state of things, and meanwhile, sure of the interest they have obtained, they silently pillage and oppress mankind, whilst the English rulers at the same time seem not to believe their conspiracies, and their malevolence and oppressions, or to have within their breasts some scheme, which to us, ignorant men, is yet a profound secret.

The eighth cause of the declining state of these countries may be ascribed, as it has been already observed, to the

Strange  
mistake of the  
English, in  
comparing  
the Zemindars  
of India to the  
landed Nobles  
of England



The eighth cause is the slowness of proceedings in the Council of Calcutta and in all subordinate Councils.

enormous delays experienced in obtaining decisions from the Governor and Council or in receiving the answers requested by the Provincial Councils and others. Those delays arise from their being, both the one and the other extremely occupied by their own concerns, and eternally busy in attacking or in defending, as well as from their being overloaded with an immensity of public business—a deplorable situation that necessarily occasions those incredible delays which dishearten which amaze which ruin and overwhelm every one that has the misfortune to have any business with them. Were a man of consequence appointed to hear such petitions at stated times for the purpose of making his report to the Governor and Council and were the necessary answers to the Provincial Council liable to fewer delays such a change undoubtedly would conduce to the ease and happiness of multitudes of people and the Governor and Council would hear their names proclaimed everywhere as being the cherishers of the inhabitants of this land the true lovers of justice and the benefactors of mankind nor could such a change hurt the English interest in any manner. But thanks are due to God Almighty the Author of all good counsels, that since these lines have been written I have heard that a lesser Committee has been appointed on purpose for such affairs, and that the standard of expectation and impatience being let down some relief has been administered to the poor despairing suitors of this country.

The ninth cause is traced to that custom of the English, who give offices and employments in seniority and priority of rank.

The ninth cause is as it has been already observed that the English pay too much regard to seniority whereas, it is talent and abilities that are the matter in question and not seniority of service or recommendation whenever it is necessary to fill up a post of consequence, and to provide for the happiness of a whole people. If without deviating too much from the rules of service Englishmen of capacity discernment and experience, were sent into the several districts where their character should have time to ripen, with a certitude of being fixed in that particular branch of business and if after having deserved the confidence of their owners and of the public they were left to enjoy their office, without fear of being displaced and if to so salutary a measure, Government added at the same time, that other of sending into each district a man of sense

knowledge, and credit, for a Divan, who, in a capacity similar to those *Canun-goes*, or Chancellors of old appointed by Islam-shah, should be made independent of any revolutions in the Council, unless indeed he should prove guilty of some misdemeanour; there is no doubt but mighty benefits might be derived from such a regulation. But at the same time it would be requisite that he should never lose sight of this, that as the Members of the Council are Englishmen, that is Lords and masters of this land, it is incumbent upon him never to deviate, either in his words or behaviour, from that respect which behoves him, both as a subject and a servant. It is requisite, likewise, that the Gentlemen, once sensible of his being an useful, zealous man, and an old attendant on that board, should listen to his advice in all matters, and not suffer their particular *Divans* and *Moonshees* (Secretaries) to engross all to themselves. This was a precaution constantly attended to, under George Vansittart, and also under Mr Ayoun Law. Whenever such a trusty servant at any time becomes guilty of any misdemeanour or infidelity, he must be punished in proportion to his guilt, that others of the same office and station, taking warning from his disgrace, may not deviate from the path of integrity, and if ever it shall be convenient to establish such a Council, it would be proper to diminish the number of Members, so as that they should not exceed the number of two or three, for the multitude of rulers never fails to produce confusion in business, and diffidence in the minds of the subject, and to be upon good terms with such a number of men, is impossible for poor people, as we have already hinted. It is proper also that in appointing a Fodjdar, with all his dependants and officers, the utmost precautions should be used, taking care to prefer not only none but men of experience and capacity, but also none but men of a humane disposition, and it may be even said that, as Fodjdars go now in these days, there needs none at all. In the cities, the Cutwal will do all that business, full as well, if he be equally able and humane, and little inclined to oppression; and in the country, the man in office or ruler is enough for such a purpose. For when those officers, so appointed, shall know that people can approach their masters, and that there may be instituted inquiries and after-reckonings upon them, you may rest assured



establish their dominion solidly, and extend their renown all over the world Saady says

"God Almighty is bountiful to him that renders justice

"Be beneficent, be forgiving and never be uneasy about your reward "

The under-officers and dependants of this department ought to be chosen the amongst very meekest, amongst the foremost of those that seek the pleasure of their Maker, know the importance of religion, have high notions of fidelity and integrity, despise recommendations, and detest bribery and corruption. They must perpetually tremble for their own honor and character, keep them always in view, and pay no regard to any thing, but God's pleasure, and the commands of their masters. Attention must be had, whenever men of this sort shall be found out, that they receive such a liberal salary from the generosity of Government, as may free their minds from anxieties about their own welfare, and that of their families and children, such a liberal provision as will leave their hearts free and at liberty to secure the garment of their honesty and integrity from being sullied by the dirt of bribery, and the mire of corruption. Thanks be to God! that this department also having been transferred to the English Gentlemen, the nails of the Indian Darogahs of Justice have been curtailed, and the people of God have gained some release and some repose from their enormous sufferings.

The eleventh cause is the establishment of what is called the Supreme Court of Judicature

It is hardly possible not to connive at misdemeanours, and not to forgive trespasses, for man by his nature is liable to forgetfulness and neglect, and should punishment and retribution be always intendend, and always administered, few persons would be free or exempted from the misery of punishment

The eleventh cause is the Supreme Court of Judicature established in Calcutta

"Nothing but dust is to be seen over this immense plain,

"Let us cover our eyes, and pass over it, as quickly as we can(138) "

In inflicting punishment and retribution, it is important to adhere to the modes in use in a country, and highly proper to pay a regard to the honor of every one, be he the meanest individual, for men easily submit, and willingly acquiesce, to whatever they find usual and established in their country, nor

---

(138) This alludes to the custom of never travelling by day in some parts of Asia, without carrying over the eyes a kind of muffler, of muslin or of horse-hair. In the hot weather they travel by night

Customs of  
that Court  
submitted to  
in England,  
but reputed  
enormous  
hardships in  
India

do they ever conceive fears and apprehensions on that head. But when they see any supplica unaccustomed, they think that every thing is upside down, and that the world will soon be at an end. This is the idea which people have conceived of the actions and customs of the Supreme Royal Court. That tribunal has power over all the English from the highest to the lowest, but sits in judgment by seasons and stated times. A whole life is needful to attend their long very long proceedings and till a decision is given, there is no comprehending what is going on, and what is likely to follow nor what is the probable end of the business. On the first complaint lodged by any one be it ascertained or not the defendant is obliged to find security to double the amount of the demand and if he cannot afford such a security the poor man must go to prison and if he cannot find bail or the complaint is not withdrawn or hushed down he must remain in prison ten or twelve years together whether he be guilty or not guilty. Add to these miseries that to translate a petition in the English language the translator exacts as many shillings (or double guineas) as there are lines translated and over and above all those evils and miseries so unworthily heaped over the heads of the poor Hindo tannies it is to be lamented that, on the first summons of that Court to answer to a complaint whether proved or not whether real or frivolous and even to give evidence on so small a matter a man having once heard of the affair in question or his having been somehow acquainted with it (although in fact he should be no witness at all) a poor man must directly forsake his family and children leave them in misery want and distress and run down for a whole month's journey to a spot where both air and water are bad (139) and if before his arrival the term of the Court over or its Chief be gone out to some other country for a change of air, then the

---

(139) There was a time when Calcutta was unhealthy. But since that time, so many drains have been cut its territory so many ponds filled in its precincts, and so many thousands of trees have been felled down to the southward of it, from whence blows the cool wind in a manner that Calcutta is become a healthy place. Add to this those broad streets bordered by lofty airy houses looking like so many Palaces and it shall be acknowledged that no city in India can be handsomer or healthier for the houses instead of forming as in Europe contiguous rows on each side of the street are every one of them insulated as to receive air from every quarter.

poor man must, without reason, and without subsistence, endure whole months at Calcutta. Nor is that all. There are other troubles and other miseries to be undergone at that tribunal, such as no one in Hindostan has even seen, or so much as heard of, the least of which is, that the English laws and statutes are so enormously voluminous, that were a man to spend his whole life on them, still the attaining a full knowledge would be impossible. After all these miseries, how painful it must be to a man, to be in the dark about the event, and all the while in a cruel suspense about his fate, constantly bereft of his family and beloved children, and without being able to guess at what is to become of himself at last?

*Preserve us, O God Almighty! with the whole multitude of your servants from such evils and miseries, if Thou really art the granter of requests (140)*

The twelfth cause is found in the English indulging too much in certain abusive customs of theirs. For instance, they trust too much, on one hand, to the representations of their dependants, making nothing of appointing them enquirers, especially whenever one has a complaint against any one of them, or against any of their associates, and, on the other hand, they pronounce in private upon matters relative to punishments, to murder, to the honour of families, to the pudicity of women, or to much property. Now in such delicate cases it is next to impossible for the oppressed to have redress, or for the injured to recover their property. It becomes therefore proper that, in cases of so much importance, the Governor-General and the Committee, as well as the Members of the Provincial Councils, should make themselves present to the oppressed, face to face. It is even to be wished that such matters should be examined in public audiences, and that after having patiently heard what the suitor has to say, examined thoroughly the tales of the plaintiff and defendant, compared the circumstances of the oppressed with the commands of God, and with the rules of distributive justice, and made the utmost efforts for discovering the *lining of coats*, and for probing the depth of secrets, then that they determine the matter in their own high wisdom, without shewing favour to one side, and frowns to the other; then

The twelfth cause is, that the English decide in private what ought to be decided only in public

only ought they to pronounce over its merit, by giving right to whom right is due And may God Almighty, out of His Divine goodness, grant such days both to them and to us !

#### VERSES OF SAADY—SHIRAZ

And now after having said so much we recommend you to God, and are gone.

But who should there be no inclination in any ear to listen to our message.

"Then the messengers have done their duty and there lies no reproach against them

Nor is any thing obligatory on us, but the task of pointing out the right way with the finger

Let us now return our acknowledgments to God Almighty for all His numberless favours, and let us pay to His Divine beneficence in particular some inadequate praises, for His having vouchsafed to carry to an end this valuable book, by making use of so inconsiderable an instrument as the slit tongued reed (141), and the very humble ministry of this most inconsiderable of mankind that is Gh8lam hosséin son of Hedâiet aaly-qhan grandson of Séyd allim ollah and great grandson of Séyd fâiz-ollah Tebateba who descended in a direct line from the branch of Hassen (on all whom may God's forgiveness and mercy rest for ever through the intercession of His Messenger, and that of His Messenger's venerable heir (142), as well as through the merits of their pure and innocent offspring on all whom may peace and forgiveness rest for ever, to the end of time ! ) If by the favour of the Omnipotent Lord of all benefits this fragile portion allotted to my share of life should chance to last some time longer it is my intention to complete my narrative by continuing the history of the several reigns of Mahmed shah and Ahmed shah and Aalemgblr the second, as well as by adding to the chain such events as are relative to his son by carrying the links from the twenty third year of Mahmed shah's (which corresponds with the year one thousand one hundred and fifty three of the Prophet's retreat, on whom be peace for ever ! ) down to the present times.

---

(141) From Gibraltar and from Belgrade, to the Ganges, the pens are made of reeds, called *Calam* in Phœnician and Arabic whence we have the Greek and Latin words of *Calamus*, *Calamus*. At a couple of hundred leagues farther than the Ganges, they are neither feathers, nor reeds but only pencils.

(142) Aaly was that heir and he transmitted that right to his two sons, Hassen and Hosséin





## SECTION XV

### CONTENTS

*Several Viceroys of high character are sent for to Court where Ab8l mans8r-ghan one of these appears with a retinue equally pompous and formidable—Curious anecdote of Mahmed yar an officer of great resolution—Origin of Aaly nahmed rohilla the founder of the Rohilla Colony—Origin of the Abdali Monarch—Emir qhan killed by Mahmed shah's order—Origin of Ahmed-shah-abdali who founds a new monarchy—He marches into Hindostan takes possession of two provinces and is defeated in a bloody battle—Heroical character of C8t8b-eddin qhan—Our Author's father makes a friend of him—Death of Mahmed shah who is succeeded by his son ahmed shah—Historical account of the private life of four illustrious personages who died within a little distance from each other Emir-qhan Nisam el mulk Camer-eddin qhan and Mahmed shah—Weak administration of his son Ahmed shah who becomes crapulous whilst his mother Udem-bay gives up both her heart and person to the Eunuch Djavid-qhan whom the Visir Ab8l mans8r-ghan cannot bear—Dissensions and a civil war in the Rohilcund fomented by the Visir who, jealous of the neighbourhood of so warlike a tribe as the Rohillahs to his country of A8d resolves to subdue such restless neighbours—Some of the Rohillahs submit put under the administration of Nevol ray a man whose excesses and violences cause a revolt—An Afghau Heroine rouses the whole nation—nevol ray defeated and slain—The Visir already much incensed marches against the Afghans—by the way his unruly Moghul troops plunder and sack the town of Barr wholly inhabited by S8yds—The Visir in despair at such calamity marches against the Afghans against whom his troops impressed with superstitious notions at the sacrileges committed lately in the sack and plunder misbehave and are totally defeated—The Visir grievously wounded is obliged to follow the runaways—The Afghans after this unexpected victory attempt Bel gram and Lucknow where they are roughly handled by the inhabitants race renowned for bravery but they plunder and*

*sack Ilah-abb, without however being able to take the Castle of that City—Singular appearance of a brave Fakyr, who daily exposee himself, daily attacks the enemy, and seems to be invulnerable—The Vezir undismayed by his defeat, makes a spirited and very sarcastical answer to those that thought him undone for ever—Even his Consort thinks of sustaining a siege in her Palace—The Vezir raises another army, plunders Feroh-abad and beats the Afghans, who submit to their Conquerors*

THE lovers of History, and those fond of enquiring into the diversity of events, will remember, doubtless, that in closing the Second Volume to the Review of Modern Times, which was finished in the year 1195 of the Hedjrah, by this humblest and most inconsiderable of the sons of men, Gholam-hosséin, son to Hedáiet-aaly-qhan, grandson to Séyd-aahm-ollah, and great-grandson to Séyd-fáiz-ollah, the Tebatebäite of the race of Hassen, (on all whom may the Divine mercy and forgiveness extend for ever!) I had carried that history as far down as the twenty-second year of the Forgiven Emperor, Mahmed-shah, answering to the year 1152 of the Hedjrah, to which history, I had thought it incumbent upon me to add a full narrative of the affairs of Bengal, being invited thereto by the novelty of the matter, as well as borne away by the number and variety of events that crowded upon me in that particular part. They remember doubtless, I say, that in closing that Volume, I had promised, that if I lived, I would continue the History of that Emperor as well as that of his successors. I do, therefore, undertake to fulfil that promise of mine, in humble hopes that the Bestower of unasked benefits, and the Conferer of unexpected favours, after having assisted me in my former Work, shall vouchsafe to support me in bringing my whole undertaking to a completion, and that by illuming with some of the rays of His Goodness, the dark understanding of this vile instrument, He shall vouchsafe to direct, with a faint emanation of His unerring wisdom, the trembling pen, and the defective style, of this insufficient individual, so as to keep them unsullied by the blemishes of error, and untainted with the vices of partiality. For He is the Omnipotent One, and the worthy Bestower of Favours.

We have already observed, that Nizam-el-mulk, under pretence of a hunting party, but really out of discontent against

the Court, had marched out of the capital, and had encamped in its neighbourhood, where he was loitering these many days without any apparent purpose nor was his intention guessed at, but on the seventeenth of Moharrem, in the year 1153 of the Hedjrah, when that Viceroy hearing of the resolution that had lately taken place at Court and of Emir-qhan's departure for Ilah-abad, returned to the city, and paid his respects to the Emperor. Some months after he received repeated intelligence that his son Nizam-ed dōwlah nassyr djung(145) listening to the suggestions of some impudent and thoughtless advisers, acted in an independent manner and had intirely shaken off all respect for his father's authority. The old General, obliged to bring his son to order, obtained the Emperor's consent for his departure, and as his intended expedition became incompatible with the exercise of his office of Prince of Princes, he first obtained that his eldest son, Ghazi-eddin qhan should be invested with that dignity, as Deputy to his father, and on the fourteenth of the first Djemadi, he set out for the Decan. But as he was perpetually endeavouring to reclaim his rebellious son, and a deal of time was spent in negotiations, and in sending and receiving messages, nine or ten months had already elapsed before he could arrive in the territory of Aoreng abad where he encamped on the western parts of that city and it was the seventh of the first Djemady in the year 1154 when the father finding that neither reasoning nor entreaties made any impression upon that unnatural son gave him battle and took him prisoner, after a sharp engagement in which the rebellious son was wounded. But this short Civil War in Decan did not interrupt the tranquillity of the capital, nor of the Empire.

Nizam-el-  
mulk beats his  
own son in  
battle & takes  
him prisoner

After Emir-qhan's departure for his Government Issac qhan's favour reached to the cupola of Heaven. He became the most beloved of the Emperor's favourites, and at the same time the disinterested advice which he had secretly given in behalf of the Vezir Cammer eddin-qhan and Nizam-el mulk having become public he was likewise cherished by the two latter, as their best friend. New honours and new emoluments were heaped upon

---

(145) This Nassyr-djung is the Prince assassinated by his own officers who were in the confederacy with Mons. Duplex, Governor of the French Fortress of Pondicherry

him, and besides the Qhalissah-office, that is, the controul of all the expenditure of the public money, he had the command of a Brigade of Cavalry. The latter was so much increased, that several thousand horses were to be seen at one time, all marked with a *Kaf*, which was the last letter of his name. He was likewise the Lord on whom the Emperor reposed the greatest confidence. But fate did not permit him long to enjoy so high a degree of favour. His eyes swelled at once, and the swelling gaining his nose, he sunk under his distemper, and in five or six days' illness, he departed this fragile world, and having answered his Lord's invitation, by the words, *I am ready*, he repaired to the mansions of the Divine Mercy. It was in the month of Safer of the same year. A few days after his demise, the Qhalissa-office, which he had left vacant, was conferred on Abdol-madjid-qhan, a Cashmirian, and he was installed in it with a Qhylaat of six pieces(146). Issac-qhan having departed his life, on the second of Safer, his three sons, on the ninth, paid their respects to the Emperor, who received them with the greatest kindness, and distinction, and each of them was honoured with a Qhylaat of mourning. The eldest of them, Mirza-mahmed, had his name changed into that of his father's, Issac-qhan, and in a little time he got so deeply in the Emperor's good graces, that the Monarch was often heard to say, that if Issac-qhan had not left Mirza-mahmed behind, he did not know how he should have been able to go through life. His tenderness for the new Issac-qhan rose so high, that it was customary with him to take the latter's son, then a child, within his throne, and, contray to the established rules, to make him sit over against himself, like an Imperial

---

(146) The Qhylaat is always composed of rich stuffs, but a Qhylaat-matemi or of mourning, is always of Muslin, dyed black or green, and is put on immediately but always set aside after one day. There are other tokens of mourning used in Hindostan, as for instance, dirty clothes, a disordered turbant, a neglected beard and body —

The body is always carried to its grave within the day, and from that moment victuals cease to be prepared in the house. Friends and relations take care for three days to provide for the family. The third day they are all invited to a commemoration, nay they come without invitation, when a prayer is pronounced over some Betel or Paan, and some flowers, the latter of which are sent to the grave, whilst the former is distributed to the invited, for whom victuals have been dressed in the house, part of which go to the poor. The fortieth day this ceremony is repeated, after which the family bathe, purify themselves, and put on clean clothes. This ceremony is also performed the ninth or tenth day. It is called P81—pan, and also Maatem-porsi.

prince He was no less profuse in his kindnesses to the two younger sons of the late Issac qhan, who were Mirza aaly-qhan and Mirza mahmed aaly

It was in this same month of Safer that Badjî rão the famous Marhatta General departed his life after feeling for some days a pain in his bowels By his death, the Viceroyalty of Malva being deemed vacant, the same was conferred on Zehir ed dôwlah Azim-ollah-qhan, who had espoused the Vezir Camer-eddin qhao's sister This nobleman, who was very inconsiderate, having had the imprudence to accept so dangerous an office, was invested in his new Government with a rich Qhylaât But it availed little for he had never borne a character for much prudence and great abilities The Fodjdary of Bessônlah was at the same time conferred on Himmet-dîlir qhan, who received the investiture of it in a Qhylaât of four pieces, to which was added a Sabre; and he set out for the Capital in the month of the first Reby A month after a Qhylaât of confirmation for the Fodjdary of the Dô-ab was bestowed on Djani-qhan, a Tooranian who had given his daughter in marriage to Mnâten-el mulk soo to the Vezir Cammer eddio qhan In the month of the second Djemady Intyxam-ed dôwlah, second son of that Minister, who on Qhandôuran's being slain in the battle against Nadyr shah had been appointed Viceroy of Adjmir, was dismissed to his Government and a few days after Semsam ed dôwlah, who bore the same title as his father, Qhandourn, received an additional grade of a thousand horse, in consequence of which his Military rank rose to the command of seven thousand About the end of the year, and in the night of the twenty seventh of Redjeb Mir Fâhr-eddin-qhan, one of the sons of the Vezir Camer-eddio-qhan, married the daughter of the late Muzaffer qhan, brother to Qhandôuran and these nuptials were celebrated with pomp as were those of Intizam ed dôwlah, the Vezir's eldest son with the late Qhandôuran's daughter, on the night of the first day of the Ramazan A strange event closed these rejoicings. The third of Moharrem, of the year one thousand one hundred and fifty four of the Hedjra, happened to be the New Year's Day(147)

---

(147) This is very remarkable, as the Solar festival of the Nôûrûs is a day of rejoicing, and the first ten days of the Lunar month of Moharrem are deemed days of mourning,

On the twenty-fourth of Shaaban, of the same year, a daughter was born to Mahmed-shah, from Sahabah-mahal (148), daughter to Sofian-sooltana-begum, which last was sister to Malekah-zemani, daughter to a sister of Saadat-qhan. This Princess had chanced to be seen by Mahmed-shah, who fell in love with her charms, and having married her, brought her to the Mahal-sera, or Seraglio. About this time, Azim-ollah-qhan, having proved by his ill conduct how little able he was to get the province of Malva out of the hands of the Marhattahs, was neglected by the Emperor, and fell into contempt. he was an opinionated obstinate man, who gave so many proofs of ill conduct, that even the Vezir himself, his kinsman, whose sister he had married, conceived a disgust against his manners. The man, incense at these marks of general contempt, resolved to shew his resentment in his turn, and had the imprudence to quit all at once the palace of the late Aaly-merdan-qhan where he resided, and to go and encamp without leave at the Charbagh, a seat belonging to the Vezir, as if to change his ground, exactly like one who intended to set out on an expedition. The Emperor, shocked at his behaviour, vacated his office of Sadr-el-soodoor, and bestowed it on Sheriat-ollah-qhan, who had enjoyed it before. At the same time, the command of the Goozer-bans, or door and way-keepers, was conferred on Agher-qhan, the Furk, as was the Fodjdary of Soharen-poor on Hafiz eddin-qhan. This Agher-qhan was, with some other Commanders, ordered to watch and attend Azim-ollah-qhan's behaviour and motions, and they kept round his post for some days, when the man, being sensible of the imprudence of his conduct, thought proper to repent, and to return to his house, where, having dismissed his troops he lived retired. This same year, it being the Festival of the Sacrifice, a Comet, with a tail of a full yard in length, made its appearance in the sign of *Caper*, inclining to the south. At last it turned to the north, and after having shined for a full month, it disappeared. And, on the thirteenth of Moharrem, being the beginning of the year 1155, the Nourooz, or New Year's Day, was celebrated with the usual ceremonies. There were some more promotions this year.

---

(148) *Sahabah-mahal* signifies the Lady of the seraglio, and *Maleka-zemani* signifies the Queen of the age

Radj mahmed qhan, the Cazi of Cazies, that is, the Supreme Judge of the Empire having departed his life his office was conferred on Moorad eddin qhan and this nobleman was installed in that high dignity with a Qhylaat of four pieces. In the month of Redjeh, Sheriat-ollah-qhan, the Sadr el soodoor, son to Mir Djumlah, that great favourite of Feroh syur's departed his life. It was in this year that there happened a conjunction of two Planets, in the end of the sign *Leo*, according to the Astronomical Tables, drawn up under the inspection of the learned Radja Djehl sing ketchvaha, by the mathematicians, Mirza.Qhâir-ollah and Shek Mahmed-âyed who comprised their observations in a book, commenced and finished under Mahmed shah. But according to Oolough beg's Tables (149) this conjunction happened in the beginning of the sign of *Virgo*.

In that same year Azim-ollah-qhan, tired of living private in his house, eloped from it, and for the second time quitted the city, with an intention to go to Lahor. He was that same day pursued by the sons of the Vezir Camer-eddin-qhan and Haider cooly-qhan, at the head of the Regiment called of Cabool and of some other troops amongst which was the body of two thousand horse belonging to the Artillery. Azim ollah qhan sensible of his being pursued made so much haste that in eight days he arrived at Lahor where Zekeriah-qhan who was allied to him, (the two Noblemen having married the two sisters) received him in his palace and made him a present of elephants and horses, and of every thing else requisite to appear like a nobleman of his high rank. Meanwhile, those that pursued him coming to the gates, the Governor received them with respect, gave them an entertainment, and after having put to them many questions about their ulterior orders he delivered his brother in law into their hands, and dismissed them, satisfied with the reception they had met with. The two officers having marched without stopping, carried their prisoner to Shah djehan-abad where he was, by an Imperial order confined in the Citadel. In this same

---

(149) An European would be surprised to hear who this Astronomer is. He was not only a Tartar but also a Prince Sovereign of Boqhara, in Eastbeg-Tartary an Historian a Warrior and a Geographer. As an Astronomer only he is vastly superior in abilities to Alphonsus of Castill and he had measured a degree of the earth several centuries before Picar I had the glory of his line across all France. I Louis the Fourteenth's time.

year, on the last day of the month of Shawal, there happened, in the sign of *Virgo*, a conjunction of the Planets, of bad omen (150) On the seventeenth of Zilcaadah, the Emperor set out of the city on a hunting party, and encamped in a garden contiguous to the town of Louly, but a few days after he was seized by an Esquinancy and a palpitation of the heart, which was soon followed by a pain in the side, and by a swelling that disturbed the animal excretions, and impeded the admission of liquids as well as solids. He was immediately requested to lose some blood, and to suffer an application of some leeches. But this not affording the desired relief, he returned in a few days to the Citadel, where, after some repose, he found himself better. The Nôu-r8z or New Year's Day, fell this year on the twenty-fourth of Moharrem, of 1156. On a Tuesday, being the seventh of the first Djemady, of the same year, Saad-eddin-qhan, Mir-ateshy, as well as Steward of the Imperial Household, after having made his obeisance to the presence, went home, and, about midnight, he found himself ill of pain in the bowels, of which he expired before day-break. His son, having a few days after, made his appearance before the Emperor, received a Qhylaât of mourning, with the confirmation of his father's two offices, to which was added a fringed Paleky, and an augmentation of his Military-grade, so that he was now Commander of five thousand horse, and Grandmaster of the *Imperial Palace, as well as Steward of the Household*. In this same year, an Imperial order, backed by notes in the Emperor's hand, was severally dispatched to Emir-qhan, Viceroy of Illah-abad, to Abool-mansoor-qhan, Governor of Aood to Zekeriah-qhan, Viceroy of Lahor, and Mol-tan, to Radja Baht-sing, Rathor, and to Radja Dehiradj-djehi-sing, as well as to several other persons of distinction, requesting their immediate attendance at Court. Nizam-el-mulk likewise received a similar order, but that Viceroy excused himself upon his great age, and the debility of body inseparable from it. The truth is that being at the head of six Shoobahdaries, or Viceroyalties, he thought himself strong enough to decline going to Court, he had besides resolved on conquering the kingdom of Carnatic, had already besieged and taken the fortress of

---

(150) Jupiter and Mars, or rather Saturn and Mars,—as those of good omen, are Jupiter and Venus,



Tir chloa pally (151), and received Arcat at composition. As to Radja Dehlradj djehising sevar he died the seventh of Shaaban, which was about the time of Hindoo Festival of the Dessara, when three Ranies or Princesses his consorts with three of his concubines, and some of his dancing women, thought proper to follow him into the other world, and horned themselves together with his body, on his funeral pile, which in the Indian language is termed to become *Saffi* (152). We have said, that several Viceroy's had been ordered to Court. Aboul mansoor qhan, on receiving the Imperial command refereed himself for his compliance to Emir qhan his neighbour, of Ilah shad, with whom he was closely connected, and to whom he acknowledged himself beholden for his promotion. That keen sighted nobleman, thought that bringing a General of that character to Court would redound to his own honor and advantage. He exhorted him to comply with the Imperial mandate and, on the other hand Aboul mansoor qhan having conceived that his affairs would receive some benefit by making a stay at Court, resolved to make the voyage and he tarried sometime to complete his preparations. Radja Nevol ray was ordered to act in his absence as his Deputy. This was a man whom he had raised from a common trooper in his service to the highest dignities at his Court, and whose abilities and zeal were so agreeable to him, that he had lately made him his Pymaster General. After making his mind easy on that subject, and spending some more time with his several Governors and Deputies he fixed a day for his departure, as he had given his word to Emir qhan that he would be in the Capital a few days only after him. The latter put his affairs in order and left for his Deputy Syed Mahmed-qhan an Iranian, renowned for so heroic a bravery which had greatly raised his character when he commanded at Corrah. After that he set out of his journey and on the twenty ninth of Ramazan he arrived on the strand of the Djumna over against the venerable Citadel of the Imperial city. There he was met, two days after by the Vezir Camer-eddin-qhan who on that day which happened to be the festival ending the fast, came out of the city took him on his own elephant and carried him to his palace. On that

---

(151) Once a great city and fortress, in the Carnatic; but now greatly fallen.

(152) This word is an adjective, coming from *Saf*, which signifies together.

same evening, Emir-qhan went to Court, and had the honor to pay his obeisance, and to kiss the columns of the Imperial throne

As to Abool-mansoor-qhan, on the day destined for his departure, he heard that Seyd Hedaïet-aaly-qhan, my father, (in whose company I had the honor to be, being then a very young man) was coming to Feiz-abad-Aood, upon which he sent Semi-beg-qhan, his introducer, to receive him at some distance from the city. My father having embraced Semi-beg-qhan, came with him to Feiz-abad, where he paid his respects to Abool-mansoor-qhan, but as that Viceroy was going to mount, and waited only for the favourable moment, the visit was an abridged one, and my illustrious father landed at Semi-beg-qhan's house. In about an hour after, Abdol-rahim-qhan, Astrologer to the Viceroy, having seen the sun in his astrolabe, sent word that this was the favourable moment, and the Governor mounting immediately, went and took his quarters in his Pish-khana, or set of spare tents, that had been pitched for him in a camp at a short distance from the City of Feiz-abad. There he stopped a few days, and then set out for the Capital, carrying with him, not only the best part of his troops, but also his whole family. Being arrived at a particular spot upon the Ganga, between Cannodje and Mekenpoor, famous for the Monument of Sha-Medar, he stopped four days there, both to pay his respects to that venerable spot, and to throw a bridge over the river, with the boats which he always carried with him over land. The bridge being ready, he first dismissed his Deputy, Radja Vevol-ray, and then bestowed the Fodjdary of Qhaïr-abad on my father, to which he added this compliment "You are already fatigued by a long voyage, and I therefore leave you to take some repose; but should you not agree with Raja Nevol-ray, then you shall come to me again at the Capital." This attention was flattering; but my father, not pleased with his being put under the orders of a Deputy, desired to follow him to Court. Being in the territory of Djan-Siter, on the day ending the fast of the Ramazan, that General stopped one day to fulfil the rites of that festival, which consists in marching armed in proceesion to some distance in the fields, and in assisting at the Qhootbah (153), for which purpose he ordered a

---

(153) The Qhootbah is a prayer pronounced standing by the officiant, but with his face turned to the people. It begins by the profession of faith, by a prayer not

number of tents to be pitched at some distance from his camp after this he marched on and arrived in the territory of Shah djehan-abad. There he was met by his own Agent at Court Radja Latchumi narain, and by Séyd nassar mohammed-qhan the Shir-djung, a Lord of the Court who was son to Syadet qhan, brother to the late Saadet-qhan, and of course nearly related to Abool mansoor-qhan. This spot was at three days journey from the capital and thither he proceeded in all haste. But being arrived on the bank of the Djumnah, he thought it incumbent upon him to make his appearance with some pomp and magnificence. Leaving therefore his baggage behind he marched on in great order being then within sight of the Citadel. He had with him about ten thousand men of Cavalry all well mounted and well armed the Hindostanies upon horses of value of their own country the Moghuls of whom his army mostly consisted upon Persian horses all stout and vigorous all armed to advantage all dressed in scarlet, and cutting an appearance equally pompous and formidable. This body was interspersed with a number of elephants carrying Ambaris covered with beaten gold. The General was preceded by the elephants richly caparisoned which carried superb ensigns and marched slowly surrounded by his troops. Luckily for him it had rained the whole night and the morning proved fair and cool when he made his appearance before the building called the Octagonal Tower which being richly gilt shone in emulation of the then rising sun. The Emperor was there although not visible. The General on approaching the tower alighted from his elephant and, according to custom made a profound bow and stood awhile in a respectful posture. The Monarch answered his bow by sending him one of the roses then before him with some fruit which was

---

to but for Mohammed and his four first successors, and ends by a prayer for the reigning Prince after which the Priest as well as the whole assembly pronounce the Fateha in a low voice, and the assembly is dismissed.

This Fateha is pronounced by way of appreciation. The official has in his hand a staff or a sabre, just as the place which he now officiates, has been taken by capitulation or by storm. It is customary on the day of the Sacrifice, and whilst he is praying for the reigning Prince, to throw over his shoulders a Ghylast or dress of honour and the same person rolls a rich turban round his head. This commemoration of the Prince, in the Qboothah amounts to an oath, or act of allegiance.



received another present of elephants and horses. And as it had been agreed, that the Minister should precede him to Court, and that the General should follow close, the Vezir was yet within sight, when the General mounted, and, with a deal of pomp and magnificence, he arrived at the gate of the Imperial Palace, where in the evening he had the honour to be presented, and to make his three bows. From thence he repaired to Dara shecooh's Palace, which had been given by the Emperor to the General's uncle and father in law, the famous Saadet-qhan. His army, which was considerable continued pouring into the city the whole night, and a mighty city it must have been indeed, where several such Princes, as Abool mansoor qhan Emir-qhan, Zekeriah qhan and Nizam-el mulk, could enter with their numerous armies, and as numerous attendants, without occasioning, in the houses and streets the least appearance of throng or confusion. The citizens who had business with those Princes, were obliged to inquire where they had landed but the common people knew nothing of either their being come in or of their being gone out.

My forgiven father also having hired the seat of Radja Baht mul who had been Divan of the Imperial Qhalissah went into the city. On the eighteenth of the same month, Shah nevar qhan son to Zekeriah qhan but who was commonly known by the name of Mirza pahlory, under which he had acquired some character for bravery and military abilities, was in the evening admitted to the honour of paying his bows to the Emperor. A month after but in the same year Ahd aaly qhan, second son to Mir djemlah, was promoted to the office of Supreme Sadr and honoured with a Qhylaah and four days after Bend-aaly-qhan son to Gharet qhan the Husseinian, who bore the same title as his maternal grandfather, namely that of Shir-el ken (157) having been introduced by Emir-qhan, with whom he had come to Court, was graciously received, and presented with a Qhylaah of five pieces. About this time it being a cool night of the thirteenth Shevval the nuptials of the Imperial Prince Ahmed mirza, with a lady descended from Mehabet qhan, were celebrated with a deal of magnificence. This same year 1156 being a Friday the twenty fourth of Zulcaadah a Comet with a tail half a

---

(157) Shir-el ken signifies the tearer and overthrower of Lion, and also the tearing Lion and overthrowing Lion.

yard in length, made its appearance, and shone for two-and-twenty days together, beginning with the dusk of the evening, and continuing as late as midnight, it remained motionless betwixt the end of *Pisces* and the beginning of *Aries*. At the end of that time, it seemed to move between the two signs towards the south-west, but then its tail assumed a pike's length, from the fifteenth of the next month of Zilhidja, and the Comet itself became of the bigness and brightness of *Vesper*, always increasing in magnitude and brilliancy, and inclining towards the east, when it disappeared on the last day of that same month. On the fourth of that month Sheh-saad-ollah, Divan of the musters, departed his life, as did, the next day, Mehr-perver, consort to Bahadyr-shah, and grandmother to Mahmed-shah, and they were both, according to their requests, buried close to Choodja-Cootoob-eddin's monument. This same day the Viceroyalty of Gudjrat was conferred on Fahr-ed-dowlah, brother to Roshen-ed-dowlah.

This was an indifferent choice, but it became necessary, for that Kingdom having, as we have said in the former volumes been severed from the Imperial jurisdiction, and transferred to the Marhattas, who held it these many years with a strong grasp, no one chose to accept such a charge. But as the new Viceroy bore a character for valour, Mahmed-yar-qhan, whom we have mentioned to have quitted Abool-mansoor-qhan's service, attached himself to him, and engaged him to turn his views towards that dangerous country. The story of that officer is singular enough — Tired with the laborious life he was obliged to lead in the camp of so active a man as Nadyr-shah, and fearing likewise his animadversion upon some other subjects, he had fled to Hindostan, where he had remained concealed, during that Monarch's sojourn. After his departure, he attached himself to Saadet-qhan, his countryman, who knew him for a man of great courage, and carried him to Feiz-abad, where he soon had an opportunity to signalise his abilities. A report spread at that time at Benares, where that General was with his army, that a great treasure of money was approaching from Bengal under a double escort of Marhattas, commanded by a Marhatta General, and of Hindostanies, commanded by an officer sent by Zin-eddin-ahmed-qhan, Viceroy of Azim-abad.

This convoy was sent by Aaly verd-y-qhan of Bengal, to Baladjiráo, the Marhatta Generalissimo, and was then on its way to the Marhatta Camp. It was this treasure which Mahmed yar-qhan undertook to carry off. Setting out with about two thousand Mogbul horse, he made so much haste to overtake it, that on his arrival at Saherseram, he found himself with only seventy horse. With this handful of men he fell upon the enemy, killed some, threw the whole in disorder and his troops following apace, he had already beaten the enemy before the whole of his force could arrive. He had killed numbers of them, made some prisoners, dispersed the rest, and seized the treasure, with which he returned to Benares (158). A service of that importance instead of promoting his interest, ruined him in Saadet-qhan's mind. The Viceroy took umbrage at so much daringness, and a coolness took place between them and the Officer, having parted from him in disgust, had now taken service with Fahr-ed-dowlah. The man, full of resentment, expected to be able to debauch the Moghul troops in Abool mansoor qhan's service and to bring into his possession by some means or other, his artillery also after which he doubted not, but under Fahr-ed dowlah's name, he would drive the Marhattas from Gudjrat. Full of this scheme, he fell to work, and intrigued with the Moghuls. But those people, who had fled from the laborious life they had led in Nadyr shah's camp and now enjoyed some rest in Abool mansoor qhan's service, did not choose to listen to a man whom they knew to be of a choleric restless temper, that would engage in endless expeditions, and allow them not a moment of rest and they refused his offers flatly and none stayed with him but some hundreds of men who had been his companions and who having personal obligations to him went over to his camp and it was

---

(158) Mahmed-yar qhan being sent for on the first intelligence of the treasure being on the road, that officer without waiting for the Viceroy's speaking broke out *I will do it—I am precisely said he, the man you want for such an enterprise.* For what enterprise? replied the Viceroy. *For falling like lightning upon those Covens that are marching at our elbows. Will you suffer these infidels to march off with so much money? Since you have guessed said the Viceroy for what I had sent for you, depart immediately and set out to-morrow.* To-night replied the man, *and if I come at all it will be with the money.* The Marhatta Escort of four thousand men was already defeated and flying before he had been joined by one-third of his two thousand Moghuls and he attacked it with only seventy men. It is remarkable, that he measured eighty or ninety Cosses of ground from Fels-adad to Saherseram, in thirty or forty hours time.

with these few men he undertook to carry Fahr-ed-dowlah to Gudjrat. He departed accordingly, but his numbers were so small, that all his efforts proved abortive, nor did he gain Fahr-ed-dowlah's heart, who was a man of courage, but of little understanding. The man, not pleased, retired to live in a corner, but being sick of a still life that did not agree with his temper, he returned to Nadyr-shah's camp; and although he had every thing to fear from that Monarch's resentment, he presented himself before him with an undaunted countenance. That Prince, on casting his eyes upon him, recollected him at once, and said, "Since you fled from my resentment, why have you come back?" — "Because," answered the man, "rather than to live amongst cowards, it is better to be killed by a brave man, like you, and now I bring you my head." Nadyr-shah, pleased with his answer, gave him his pardon, and sent him upon a command in Pars (159), or in Herat. After Mahmed-yar-qhan's departure, Fahr-ed-dowlah was beaten by the Marhattas, and became then prisoner, nor was it until after a deal of trouble and many sufferings, that he found his way again to Shah-djehan-abad, where he retired to his house.

At the end of this year, on the seventh of Zilhídja, there fell such violent rains, and these were mixed with so much hail, and so much lightning and thunder that people were confounded and amazed. The lightning fell in the Citadel, did a deal of damage in the public Audience Hall, killed two horses and two men, and stunned several others. On the 25th of the same month the Emperor was pleased to honour Sheh-saad-ollah's son with a Qhy-laát of mourning, and as by that death the office of Divan of the musters became vacant, the Monarch bestowed it on Abdol-medjid-qhan, the Cashmirian, who on that very day took possession of his office, by sitting in the cacherry or tribunal, and signing some papers. This year, being the one thousand one hundred and fifty seventh of the Hedjrah, the Nou-rooz, or New-Year's Day fell on the sixth of Sefer (160). This year also Nizam-el-mulk having besieged the Fortress of Paleconda, in the territory

---

(159) Pars is the Persis of the Greeks. It is one of the six grand divisions, into which the Persians or Iranians parcel out their country.

(160) The Solar year, amongst the Mussulmen, begins on the 22nd or third of March; but the beginning of their Lunar year wanders throughout all the seasons.



of Hâiderabad recovered that stronghold from the hands of Mucathe qhan, the Decanian. A great change happened this same year at Court. As the Emperor was dissatisfied with the Tooranian Lords, at the head of whom were the Vezir Camer eddin-qhan, and Nizam-el mulk, and Saad eddin-qhan, as well as his son Hafiz-eddin-qhan were known to be attached to them the latter was dismissed from the command of the Imperial Artillery, an office of the utmost importance, and which gives a disposal of the Emperor's person and family and at the same time the office of Mirateshy, or Grandmaster of the household, was on Emir qhan's recommendation bestowed on Abool mansoor-qhan the Emperor at the same time passing a compliment upon the many services he had rendered the State, and expressing his hopes of his continuing to be equally vigilant and faithful. On this promotion Abool mansoor-qhan ordered the insignia of his office such as the axes and other articles to be brought into his presence and having issued some orders relative to his charge he took from that day his residence in the Citadel. The next day he obtained for my forgiven father the Fodjdary of Sekendera, at a small distance from the Capital and he introduced him to the Emperor. On my father's paying his obeisance, he was honoured with a Qhylaot which he put on immediately and it was at the same time that myself, the poor man was with my younger brother, Nakv aaly-qhan, honoured with Military grades and the title of Qhan. We both remained some months at Court. In our father's service after which we applied to Abool mansoor qhan for leave to return to Azim-abad a city where our family was established these many years and where I had my glorious mother my aunt my uncle, and my brothers, a city where we had contracted connections and friendship both with Zin-eddin ahmed-qhan Viceroy of the province and with his uncle, Aaly verdy-qhan. That General not only obtained our demand but he dismissed us with every mark of honour and kindness decorating both brothers with a Qhylaot and a Serplich and sending by our means his prayers to the Nazem of Azim abad (161) and some curious presents to

---

(161) The Nazem of Azim-abad, although himself a Governor of an important province being so very inferior to Abool mansoor qhan the latter sent him only his *Dua*, or prayers. It is the usual expression. *Salam* is above it as it signifies both greeting and a bow. *Bendeghi* signifies attachment and respect and is the highest expression.

the Viceroy of Bengal. We arrived at Azim-abad the first of Zil-caadah of that same year, with all our retinue without meeting any accident by the way. At the end of this same year Aya-mull, Prime Minister of the late Maharadja (162) Asiri-sing-sevai, having had the honour to be presented to the Emperor, received a Qhylaath of five pieces; and on the fifteenth of the same month of the second Djemady, the Vezir Camer-eddin-qhan, who had been out of the city, and had got into a tent for the purpose of condoling with that Prince on his father the late Maharadja's death, and also for bringing him with more honour to Court, paid him a short visit, and on the evening of that same day, he received a respectful one from the Gentoo Prince. In the month of Redjeb, of that same year, Homaidn-baqht, brother to the late Emperor Feroh-syur, and son to Azim ush-shan, departed his life, and he was buried close to Qhoodjah Cootoob-eddin's monument. On the twenty-seventh of Shaaban the Fodjdary of G8aliar was taken from Qhyzyr-qhan, and bestowed on Emir-qhan, as was the Government of Cashmir, on Abbool-mansoor-qhan, after it was taken from Assed-yar-qhan, a simple man, on whom it had been bestowed by Emir-qhan's recommendation. This Governor now lost his appointment on some bad offices which were rendered him by the same Emir-qhan, and he was denied access to the Emperor's presence. At the same time both Emir-qhan and Abbool-mansoor-qhan were honoured by the Emperor with each a rich belt. The latter, who was attached by his office to the Emperor's person, sent Nessar-mahmed-qhan, a relation of his, to take possession of that Government, and he gave him a strong body of both Hindostany and Moghul troops, with instructions to bring the refractory people of that country under some order. This nobleman being arrived in his Government, found means, by dint of promises and by a faint agreement, to engage one Baber-ollah, a man of consequence in that country, but equally powerful and refractory, to come to see him; but as soon as he had him in his power, he got him seized and confined. The new Governor after this manœuvre, spent

---

(162) This word of Maharadja, which signifies great King in the ancient Hindoo language, signifies now only a great Prince, and it is a title of honour which the Emperor used to bestow as a favour on the principal Hindoos of his Empire, but which is bestowed now even by his Viceroys

some time to enjoying the pleasures afforded by that terrestrial Paradise, and then returned to Shah-djehan-abad, after having placed, as Deputy Goveroor, a relation of Abool-mansoor-qhan's called Efrasiab-qhan. On the seventeenth of the Ramazan of that same year, Azim-ollah-qhan, who had been this long while kept confined in the Citadel of Shah djehan-abad, was released from his confinement by death, and he went to join his relations and those that resembled him in character, the next morning, his body having been brought to his house in the city, where the Vezir Cammer eddin-qhan, who was his near relation had repaired according to custom, the throng that accompanied that Minister proved so very great, that the floor of the house which happened to have a Tah-qhana (163), and possibly was that moment under some secret influence, gave way, and the body the Vezir and all his people fell into the apartment underneath, but, however without receiving any great hurt. The Vezir having escaped that danger, ordered the body to be hurried close to the monument of Shah nizam-eddin. At the end of this same year about the last day of Zulcaadah, there happened to be an unpropitious conjunction in the sign of *Libra*. It made its appearance again in the month of *Sefer* of the year 1158 and having appeared for the third time in *Virgo*, about the end of the second of *Reby* it disappeared entirely. The last month of this same year Sooltan Eaz-eddin son to Mu'izz eddin Djehandar shah departed his life.

After having detained the reader's attention with these unimportant events, it is time to introduce to his knowledge a man who has founded a Sovereignty very near the Capital of the Empire. This man is Aaly mahmed-qhan Rohillah. We have already mentioned several times in the former volumes the name

origin and  
-story of  
Rohillah, the  
founder of a  
colony of  
Afghans.

---

(163) Tah-qhana signifies *house of heat*. It is a subterraneous apartment always under the ground-floor and so contrived as to admit little light, and of course little heat. People resort to those places from noon as far as the evening in the months of March, April, and May at which time there blows a wind that seems to come out of an oven. Some people have jets d'Eaux in those apartments, but all are besprinkled with water. There are no Tah-qhanas in Bengal, (excepted at Patna), the country being too humid and too much infested with snakes. The Author's superstition makes him mention the words of secret influence, as if the deceased had become the object of the Divine malediction, for having by the Vezir's attack and slain Self-qhan, a *Séyd*.

of that extraordinary man, especially as having been so instrumental in Séif-qhan's ruin and death. This man, originally a son of a Gentoo Ahir(164), and adopted by an Afghan of no higher pedigree than himself, had a fund of bravery and capacity, which rendered him worthy of command. He availed himself of the neglect and supineness so conspicuous in the Vezir Camer-eddin-qhan's character, to carry his point, and to establish his power firmly in his new dominions on the other side of the Ganga, which he peopled with a multitude of Afghans that flocked to him from all parts, and henceforward took his name. The means by which he raised himself to the pinnacle of fortune, are so extraordinary and so sudden, that it becomes necessary to give here a succinct account of them. He was at first a Commander of a small body of Afghan Cavalry, with which, having taken service with the two Governors of the province of Moorad-abad, he behaved on all occasions so well, and rendered so many services, that he became a favourite with them both, and acquired a character highly esteemed all over the country. This country, which was the Djaghír of the Vezir Camer-eddin-qhan, had been for a length of time governed by two Noblemen much in favour with that Minister, namely, Osmet-ollah-qhan, and Ferid-eddin-qhan, who took a particular liking to Aaly-mahmed-Rohillah. The latter had already acquired a high character for prowess and military conduct, by assisting so timely Azim-ollah-qhan, in his engagement against Séif-qhan, and as Azim-ollah-qhan was so nearly related to the Vezir, that officer, by his means, became known to that Minister, who got him decorated with a title, and with a military grade. He procured him likewise the grant of some lands from the Emperor, and gave him from himself the command over some Districts of his Djaghír of Moorad-abad. The man no sooner saw himself in some force and power, than availing himself of the Vezir's inattention, and of the effeminacy of the neighbouring Djaghír-holders, he found

---

(164) The Ahirs of Hindostan, called Goalas in Bengal, are a particular class that abstains from animal food, and have for occupation every thing that may be done in a dairy, cheese excepted. They are also shepherds, but only of cows, bulls, and buffaloes, but never of sheep, goats, or any other animal whatever. Nevertheless they neither make nor eat any cheese, and by a Bizarery hardly to be believed, those men which put salt into milk curds, turned sour, hold it a sin to put any into sweet milk.

means to seize their lands, by way of taking a lease of them and meanwhile Death having snatched Osmet-ollah-qhan and Ferid-eddin qhan, those two brave Governors, who had done so much honour to their age, Aaly mahmed-qhan, who now passed for an Afghan to all intents and purposes, availed himself of that opportunity to engage in his service a number of Afghan Officers and Commanders, who resolved to share his good fortune. Those men whom the severities of Nadir-shah had driven from their homes and who were floating at random upon the Ocean of uncertainty and despair, were glad to hear of a place of refuge and shelter and they resorted in shoals to a man who had already acquired so much renown under the name of Rohillah, which was that of one of their clans. The man no sooner saw himself so strongly supported than he cast a piercing eye upon the state of things in Hindostan. The weakness of the Empire, the effeminacy of its Generals and Grandees who all aspired to independence and the inattention of the first Minister, who wholly engrossed by his pleasures as well as by Court intrigues spent his time in intemperance and in the company of the handsomest youths he could procure from all parts of the Empire—all these vices of administration—could not escape the sight of so keen a man. He availed himself of so many favourable circumstances to build his own grandeur and after having remained a long time crouching he raised his head at once and settling up for himself he became refractory and neglected sending the usual remittances to the Treasury. The Vezir roused from his lethargy by so bold a step, sent for Radja Harunnd, a Roudja by clan and having furnished him from his own stores with a sum of money, a train of artillery and a quantity of rockets he gave him the Government of Moorad-abad and the neighbouring countries with orders to raise as many troops as he might think necessary for subduing Rohillah and with him all the refractory Zemindars of those parts. The Radja having raised an army, marched with his troops and artillery to Moorad-abad and, proud of his power and forces he commenced issuing orders and exacting submission. Rohillah like a shrewd Politician, kept an attentive eye upon him and meanwhile he was sending respectful messages, by which he excused the imprudence of his conduct and requested for the future some abatement in the high rents which had been

heretofore expected from him. The Radja, elated with his dignity and the Vezir's support, would not hear of any abatement, he required an unconditional submission, and was intent only on picking up some quarrel with him, and tearing him by the roots. The man, seeing himself thus pressed hard, turned his eyes towards his Afghans, and having assembled the principal men amongst them, he made an exposition of the state of things, and asked them, what was their opinion, and what they intended to do. The Afghans, a race naturally brave and determined, who breathed nothing but conquests and new establishments, seeing the Radja bent on their destruction, advised Rohillah to stand upon his defence, and requested him to reckon upon their hearty assistance, and support. The man, satisfied to see them so resolute and unanimous, assembled them secretly in several bodies, and on an appointed day, he joined them himself, and effected a general junction, after which he marched against Harnund. The latter sensible now, that matters had grown serious, was already in readiness, and he advanced with intention to fight, nor were the two armies at a great distance, when the Hindoos, who not only are careful observers of the meteors and phenomena of the air, as well as of the motions of celestial bodies, but who trust so far to the conclusions they draw from them, as to think that they concern their happiness in this world as well as in the other, the Brahmans, I say, who abounded in the Radja's army, where they bore a sway, opposed themselves to his moving farther, and requested his waiting for the favourable moment. This request engaged him to raise an intrenchment round his encampment, which he lined with his artillery, in expectation that with soothing messages, and protracted negotiations, he would keep the Afghans at bay, until the favourable day should come. Rohilla fully informed of all this, as the two armies were so near, suffered himself to be apparently amused, and having spread a report that in the evening he would pay his respects to the Radja, he fell that very night upon his camp, and threw every thing in confusion. It is observable, that intelligence being brought the Radja that the Afghans were approaching in an hostile manner, the man who was then consulting his idols, answered, that this was not a fighting day for them, and went on with his devotions. Meanwhile the Afgans entered the intrenchment, and commenced killing and sacking and plundering

Rohillah  
revolts

Surprises  
Harund in  
his camp.

every thing in their way In this confusion Motiram, a Hindoo Commander, mounted his horse with a few of his men, and opposed the enemy, but he was cut down with his followers and he hastened with them into the regions of eternity Harund, all this while was still in his oratory, and occupied at his devotions with which he went on, and without attempting to get up, or to interrupt his prayers he suffered himself to be cut down by the astonished Afghans Rohillah having in this manner dispersed all that multitude in a little time, found his power established by a victory equally great and easy and his force recruited by the addition of a treasure in money and a great train of Artillery But the Minister was not roused by such an important stroke Like a man lost to all sense of honour he was not ashamed to commence a negotiation with the rebels and he chose for that purpose his favourite wife, Sholah poori (165) and his youngest son Mnaïen ed dōwlah, better known under the name of Mir mannoo Aaly mahmed-qhan hearing of her errand and knowing that she was already crossing the Ganga in her boat got himself into some boats that were at hand and with a few friends only he crossed over and paid the Begum and her son his respects and duty After the first compliments, the dispute about rents and tribute was between them dispatched in a few moments It is even said that they concluded a match between the young Lord and Rohillah's daughter but we have never heard since that day that the ceremony of marriage had been performed between the young people Be it as it will from that period Aaly mahmed qhan rose to figure amongst the Princes of Hindostan and having in a little time assembled an army of forty thousand determined Afghans he stretched his dominion from near to near, and established his authority in Moorad-abad, Berheily Andulāh Bed'ion Bun gar Sambal and Amrōah, as well as in some other places Henceforward he became so proud as to make no account of the Court, and matters remained in that state until the time when Abool mansoor qhan becoming Grandmaster of the Emperor's household incensed that Monarch against the insolence of Rohillah and engaged him to exert the Imperial power in chastising and crushing the Afghans

Rohillah  
becomes an  
independent  
Prince.

---

(165) The title of Poori attached to her name renders it evident that she must have been originally a dance woman and an actress

The Emperor, sensible of the goodness of the advice, and that it arose from zeal for his honor, resolved to march against the rebels, and on the twenty-fourth of Moharrem, he at day-break displayed the standard of departure, and went in the suburbs to the seat of Lo8m, as if to change his ground. After a stay of twenty days he proceeded farther, and crossed the river Henidun, from whence he encamped at Dasna. From thence he dispatched Saadat-qhan, maternal-uncle to the Empress Malekazemani, with a commission that gave him the Viceroyalty of the province of Delhi, as well as the command of both the capital and its citadel. The Emperor at the same time made him a present of a sabre, and invested him in that new charge, by dressing him in a suit of new clothes, which had just served his Imperial person (166). The Qhan, having taken his leave, entered the city on the 23rd of Sefer, and the next day he took possession of the citadel, whilst the Emperor, who continued his march, arrived at Sumbul on the first of the Reby, and on the twentieth he encamped at Bedaon. This march struck Aaly-mahmed-qhan with dismay, who not thinking himself a match for an Imperial army, quitted the field, and took shelter in the fortress of Bun-gur, which was immediately besieged, and whilst the troops waited only for the order to mount the breach, this Imperial army was reinforced by a body of troops, brought by Káim-qhan, son and successor to Mahmed-qhan-Bangash, who having set out from Feroh-abad, his capital, was arrived in the Imperial camp, where he had the honor to pay his obeisance by the Vezir's mediation. About the same time Nevol-ráy, Deputy to Abool mansoor-qhan in Aood, set out likewise for camp by his master's order, with a body of veterans and a train of artillery. As this body of troops was yet on its march on the other side of Bun-gur, which fortress remained betwixt them and the Imperial camp, it was feared lest the Afghan should avail himself of that opportunity to fall suddenly upon the reinforcement, and thereby give a mortal blow to Abool-mansoor-qhan, whom he considered as his personal enemy. And as on the other hand, there subsisted a misunderstanding between Rohillah on one side, and the Vezir on the other, which

The Emperor  
or marches  
against him

---

(166) This is a very uncommon honor. Its importance may be guessed from this, that when two persons intend to be henceforward sworn brothers to each other, they actually exchange the turbants upon their heads.



latter had taken umbrage at Abool mansoor-qhan's power and would have been glad to see him undergo both a loss and an affront the Viceroy to parry such a disgrace, took the Emperor's leave, and having put himself at the head of his own troops he marched out to meet his Deputy, who was now drawing near. The junction being effected, that General returned with a deal of honor and having marched throughout the whole length of the Vezir's encampment he returned to his own former post. The next day he presented Nevöl ráy to the Emperor and for his own honor engaged that Monarch to make him several presents. The Vezir meanwhile shocked at these distinctions and intent on lessening the influence of both Emir qhan and of the Viceroy was underhand encouraging Rohillah to stand his ground although he ought to have remembered that he was the very man from whom he had received so many affronts. This connection of interests could not long remain concealed from the two Lords who finding the Vezir intent on assuming the honor of an accommodation left negotiation entirely to him. And thus on the third of the first Djemady of the year 1158 the Vezir who had undertaken to make Rohillah's peace bound both his hands with a handkerchief and in that condition brought him to the Emperor. The Monarch on casting his eyes upon him ordered his hands to be set at liberty and turning to the Vezir he said *We recommend this man to your guard*. People were dispatched at the same time to take possession of the effects in the fortress where they found a great quantity of grain and some small cannon, but no ready money and nothing precious. Only a small sum, which Rohillah had deposited in the hands of Kálm qhan was declared by the latter, and sent to the Treasury. This affair being brought to an end, the Emperor's Pish qhana was, on the fourth of that month, sent towards Shah-djehan-abad and himself after dismissing Kálm qhan and Nevöl ráy to their respective offices, returned victorious and satisfied. It was on the first of Djemady in the same year at which time the sun being then at the end of the sign of *Leo*, the Emperor made his entry in the citadel of his Capital and took his seat in the Imperial Palace.

Rohillah  
besieged sur-  
renders.

The Emper-  
or returns.

At the end of Moharrem Nevarish-aaly-qhan departed his life and was entombed in the monument of the

Hylostep (167) A month after Eshrefi-qhan, eldest son of the late Qhandouran, Lord of Lords, departed his life likewise, and was buried in his father's mausoleum. On the seventeenth of Sefer, the New Year's Day was celebrated with the usual solemnities, and about the middle of the first Reby, Assed-yâr-qhan, the famous Poet, who bore the title of Assed-ed-dowlah, departed his life, and his body was carried to Acbar-abad, the place of his nativity and residence, as well as that of his ancestors. He was a man equally sensible and good-natured, of an equal temper, acquainted with the sciences, and inclined to utter extempore verses. He had been presented by Emir-qhan to the Emperor in one and the same day with Djaafer-aaly-qhan, (another famous Nobleman of similar temper and talents, and a great friend of my father's) and with Issac-qhan, (since Mutemen-ed-dowlah), as well as a fourth person whose name I do not recollect at present. The two former were that same day promoted to the grade of five thousand horse, and the two latter, to that of four thousand. Djaafer-aaly-qhan, having personally attached himself to Emir-qhan, did not rise higher, but Issac-qhan's fortune was so rapid, that he rose to the third Heaven, and no favour ever equalled that which he enjoyed, as we have already mentioned. Assed-yâr-qhan rose very high likewise. He was honoured with the title of Assed-ed-dowlah, and the grade of six thousand

Death and  
some account  
of the famous  
Lord and poet,  
Assed-yâr-  
qhan

---

(167) There are in India numbers of monuments dedicated to the Holy-step, they being raised by pious persons at the very spot where they have seen the Prophet in their sleep, and where he has been pleased to leave an impression of his foot. As man is naturally an imitator, where he is not persecuted, we have seen whole sets of Gentoo Dance-women, who having found relief on invoking the Holy-step, went in procession to that monument, and danced for a whole day before it, nor will those women, though free to all at other times, suffer themselves to be touched by prophanes on such days, or even to be gazed at, they disappear immediately to come again when the crowd is past. However, there are other Cadem-Ressools, who have a different origin, namely, an imitation in marble or other materials of the impression which the Prophet left of his foot in a very hard stone, now in the temp'le of Medina, which impression might have been really left of that Holy-foot upon some soft clay as he was standing upon it when intent upon some building of his at Medina. It is true it has not one of the spiral lineaments which the soft clay must have received in that case, but it is no less true that the Pilgrims by endless kissing it, and passing the palms of their hands upon it, and then upon their faces for a course of time no less than twelve centuries, may have effaced the delineaments, and a great deal more, just as they have by the same practice bored a hole at the top of the Granite Cavern of Herra, of three inches deep

horse, and he enjoyed the command of five thousand effective troopers in his Brigade moreover he was decorated with the insignia of the Mahi, or fish Emir-qhao, who had taken umbrage at his behaviour on account of his not having attached himself personally to him as Djafer Aaly qhan, and many others had done was bent on ruining his credit and finding at his return from Ilah-ahsd, that he had recovered his former ascendancy over the Emperor's mind he rendered him so many ill offices that his Brigade of five thousand effective horse was disbanded an action that reflected a great odium upon Emir qhan's person It is reported of Assed yâr qhan that he kept no less than one hundred and forty chopdars or mace bearers divided in two companies, under two distinct officers that did duty alternately at his gate, for the sole purpose of keeping it free from the noise and tumult so customary at the gates of men of distinction, and of *men of no distinction?* which however they could not compass and he used to say that it was with a view to afford a livelihood to these people and to avoid the imputation of sordidness. He was so good natured that on being visited by people of rank greatly inferior to his own, he used to receive and treat them as his friends and equals May God assign him a place in the mansions of His mercy! A few days after his death, intelligence came that Zekeriah qhan, Viceroy of Lahor and Mooltan had departed this borrowed world and had taken his journey towards eternity, a piece of intelligence which the Vezir who was brother to the deceased's consort, kept secret until he could dispatch Yahia qhan the deceased's eldest son who was also his son in law to put in order his father's household and effects at Lahor and also to sit in his stead That Minister on hearing that he was arrived published Zekeriah qhan's death and took mourning for him The customary days of that rite being over he went to Court and on that very day obtained a *Qhyla* of departure for Gholam mahl eddin qhan whom he invested with the commission of going to Lahor, and taking possession for the Imperial Treasury of all the deceased's effects A few days after the Vezir himself, being installed in the charge of Viceroy of Lahor and Mooltan, appointed Zekeriah-qhan's two sons, to act in those two offices as his Deputies, but the two brothers disagreeing together and

their disagreement ending in an open rupture Shah-nevaz-qhan, the youngest brother, seized and confined Yahia-qhan, his elder. However, the latter, having found means by his mother's contrivance to get himself conveyed in a Qhoan (168), out of the house, quite through his guards, reached the City-gate, where mounting an excellent horse, kept ready for him, he set out on a gallop, and was soon out of sight and out of his brother's reach. In a short time he arrived at Shah-djehan-abad, where he had the meanness to put on brick-coloured clothes, to cover his head with ashes, and, in a word, to turn Fakir. He built himself a tenement upon the canal, which he called Pim-bari, and as he was a Vezir's son-in-law, and was worth a great deal of money, he soon found followers and disciples, who imitated his garb, and lived in the same manner with him. After his departure, the younger brother remained in full possession of those two Governments. Sometime after, that is, on the sixteenth of Shaaban, Ased-ollah-qhan, elder brother to Emir-qhan, winged his flight towards the mansions of the Divine mercy, and on the ninth of Shevval, a son was born to Ahmed Mirza, the presumptive heir of the Empire.

The No8-r8z fell this year on the twenty-seventh of Sefer. A few days after arrived at Court, Ghoolam-mahi-eddin-qhan, who had been dispatched to confiscate the estate of the late Zekeriah-qhan, in compliance with an infamous custom which has taken place in the Babrian branch of the family of Temoor (169). The deceased Viceroy's son put in his hands some of the most apparent effects, with a sum of money, as the whole of the estate, nor was anything more brought to the presence. Nevertheless

Infamous  
custom of the  
Emperors of  
Hindustan

---

(168) Qhoans are tables of three feet in length, and two in breadth, railed in and covered with a Cupola of lattice-work, over which they throw a piece of broad cloth that shelters the whole. It is in these Qhoans that victuals are carried from the kitchen to the table, and also abroad, it being customary in Hindostan to send dressed victuals to friends and acquaintances. It is also in such machines that young imprudent men find means to get themselves conveyed into Seraglios, where they are immediately taken possession of by a number of young women, who have clubbed together for such operations, and who, after having thoroughly squeezed the orange in a few days, are for their own sakes obliged to throw the rind into a well, or it is thrown by the master of the house himself, who chooses that expedient to save his honor, whenever he comes to discover what has passed.

(169) Temoor, or more properly Timur, pronounced Tamer-lang or Tamerlan, in Europe, had several sons. His posterity, in the person of Soltan Babr, returned to Hindostan and firmly settled itself there.

the Commissary was rewarded for this expedition with a fringed paleky, and an augmentation of a thousand horses to his grade. A strange affair happened about this time.

Behroz qhan, one of the eunuchs of the presence, after performing his Friday devotions in the mosque, repaired to the house of a slave of his, who had been many days dead, with intention to carry away the deceased's wife, in order to make a present of her person to his own saint and director who had chanced to see her and to fall in love with her charms. The widow refused, and declared that she had no inclination to marry a second time. This declaration having produced many intreaties and much altercation the pimping eunuch who was resolved to gratify that infamous director of his at any rate attempted to carry the woman away by force. At this moment her father made his appearance, and interposed by intreaties and persuasions but the eunuch proud of his station and presuming on his power and influence, commenced talking so high, that the father unable to bear his insolence and ill language and thinking like wise that his honour was concerned in protecting his daughter from so vile an attempt struck the invader with his poniard, and laid him sprawling on the ground. He struck likewise the eunuch's adopted son who had followed his father within the inner apartments but he was himself instantly dispatched by the attendants of that infamous wretch. The eunuch being stretched at full length in his paleky was carried to his lodgings where in a little time he expired. He was buried in the dormitory of Qhoadja Cootoob-eddin.

"I should be glad to know whether those travellers intend to go,

"Who have for a guide a man that has himself lost his way and is going astray

This strange accident was followed by one full as strange. Hafyz vadjich qhan, an eunuch, Superintendent of the Imperial Kitchen, being at his prayers at day break fell suddenly into a swoon, and expired within an hour. It was on the second of Djemady. His office was given to his adopted son. At the end of the month the Emperor, having set out to take an airing in the seats about the Capital, was pleased to entrust Mahmed Issack qhan with the guard of the Imperial persons, an office become vacant by Behroz-qhan's death and that nobleman after making his bow in acknowledgment of the favour was installed

in his office by being presented with a belt After which the Emperor, on the fifth of Redjeb, returned to his blessed mansion, where an important event soon came to take place

We have already mentioned, more than once, the high degree of favour and authority to which Umdet-ul-mulk-Emir-qhan had risen by degrees. He had indeed such talents for business, and such fitness for command, that he was reputed superior in those respects to all the Lords of the Court, as well as to all his cotemporaries On his own part, he had so high an opinion of his influence, that he made but little account of all the other Ministers It happened just at this time that the Vezir being in liquor, and taking the fresh air upon the top of his Palace, staggered and fell down upon the ground, where he broke some of his bones, and otherwise received so much hurt, that he kept his bed for eight months together, and although he recovered his health, he continued to be so much bruised and hurt, that he seldom came to Court, being unable to stand before the Emperor And, on the other hand, as he had but a slender opinion of the capacity of his sons, and did not think any of them worthy of being entrusted with the management of affairs, he requested Emir-qhan to transact business in his stead with the Emperor, and then retired to his house to enjoy some rest, for he came to Court very seldom, and sometimes but once a month, at which time, after having stood a few moments in the Imperial presence, he was always dismissed, or took his leave of himself As to Abool-mansoor-qhan, he was personally attached to Emir-qhan, to whom he thought himself indebted for his fortune, and thus this Nobleman's influence and authority, having no one to contend with, became boundless and infinite But he was naturally gay and lively, and being accustomed for some time to talk familiarly to the Emperor, he began to lay aside that tone of deference and air of respect, which ought never to be departed from in the presence of Kings and Sovereigns For now being sole master of the Court, with, not one rival to envy, and not one competitor to contend with, he forgot himself so far, as to take unusual liberties with the Emperor, thinking that his advice ought always to preponderate, and that his requests ought always to be complied with. But the Emperor had another favourite, Mahmed-issac-qhan, whom he raised so high,

Rise and disgrace of Emir-qhan.

together with his brother, that they seemed so many Princes although Emir qhan would make no account of them as it was to him that their father owed their elevation. The Emperor sensible of this, was desirous of strengthening Issac-qhan's interest and it was with that view he concluded a match between Sudjah-ed dōwlah Djelaleddin-haider qhan son to Abool mansoor qhan, on one side and Issac-qhan's sister on the other and to engage Emir-qhan's good will to the match, he declared himself the author of it, and appointed that Nobleman to act as his Deputy, and as Agent from the Lady, in making the necessary preparatives for the nuptials. Abool mansoor qhan extremely pleased with the match and desirous likewise of complimenting the Imperial pleasure, exerted himself in rendering the nuptials as pompous and as magnificent as possible. Amongst other articles which he sent, as usual, to the bride, as part of her future necessaries people took notice of no less than a thousand and some hundreds of Vessels (170) for water all of silver not one of which could weigh less than a Hundred Rupees. After the celebration of the nuptials Emir-qhan thought proper to take his leave, and to repair to the Castle of Selim gur where the Princes of the Royal blood lived confined. To these he paid a visit and by such a conduct he rendered himself suspected and became obnoxious to many especially to his jealous enemies. The Emperor himself conceived a disgust at such a step. His heart insensibly altered and he came at last to hate the man whom he had once loved so much but thinking it improper to shew his resentment, he went on with dissimbling and with disguising his sentiments until a crisis was occasioned by Emir qhan himself. One day as he was actually speaking to the Emperor of some matters of State, he brought forward some representations likely to take up much time. The Emperor, tired, told him these words *Umdat ul mulk bahadyr* (171), *leave that for some other day*. Emir-qhan answered that *he had no*

---

(170) These Vessels being mostly for female ablutions and bathings must have contained, most of them, several gallons of water and weighed a Thousand Rupees each at least.

(171) This expression would answer to the English expression *My Lord Duke*, as it is not customary amongst the Princes of Hindostan to design their servants and Grandees by any other appellation, than that of their title.

*"more than a few words to say, and requested to be heard, as the subject was urgent"* The Emperor repeated what he had said. The Minister insisted, and both the request and excuse were repeated three several times, and three times did Emir-qhan repeat his importunity, and be guilty of the same fault — Unfortunately for him, there happened to be present an eunuch of the presence, whose character was as impatient and peevish, and as unaccountable and perverse, as any of that choleric tribe, and as he was an old slave of the Emperor's father and grandfather, and had now, as Superintendent of Imperial Seraglio, the disposal of several gates of the Palace, (an office of high trust), he was much in favour with that Monarch Rooz-afsoon-qhan, (for such was his name) impatient to see the Minister's importunity, chanced to say, (but not so low, however, as not to be overheard by Emir-qhan) *"I suppose this to be such a high flavored story as admits of no delay, and must at any rate be repeated to-night to all the old women of the neighbourhood"* The Minister, shocked could not help saying, *"that it little became slaves to take such liberties, whilst Grandees of the Empire, and Ministers of State, were talking of matters of importance to their masters."* The eunuch, without being discomposed by this reprimand, sharply replied, *"that if they were slaves, they were so to none but the Emperor, and by no means to and others"* On this, Emir-qhan, addressing the Emperor, said, *"if this man continues in the superintendence of the Palace, your slave cannot come to Court any more"* The Emperor, after having said some obliging things to the Minister, to appease his rising resentments, added *"Do not be uneasy, Undet-ul-mulk-bahadyr, your interest is greater than his, and it shall be done as you wish"* The Minister, after a pause, replied, *"if your Majesty really wishes to oblige the slave of your Imperial Throne, let the superintendence be bestowed upon me, and I shall appoint a proper person to execute that office, on my part"* The Emperor agreed. The Minister getting up immediately to acknowledge the favour, made a profound bow, and departed. Being arrived at his home, he sent for Agah-qhan, an old eunuch of his own, who was Superintendent of his Hall of Audience, and he promised to promote him to-morrow morning, to a high office in the Imperial



Palace But matters, meanwhile, were taking a different turn in the Palace On the Minister's departure, the Emperor complained of his importunity, and added, "*that he had been this long while tired of Emir-qhan, and found it difficult to live with him but now that he wants to get the disposal of most of the gates of the Palace*" added he "*I suppose I shall be no better than his prisoner*" The eunuch answered, that if such was His Majesty's pleasure it was an easy matter to provide for it. *Do then,* replied the Emperor *'and make haste for once he shall have taken possession of the superintendence it will be then too late'* The eunuch having got his cue went on ruminating how he could find a man that would dispatch the Minister He spoke of it to one of his confidants who answered that he knew a very fit man for the business and that it was his own brother, who had been lately in Emir qhan's service and having parted with him on the very worse terms had said more than once in the agonies of his resentment, that he would some day or other take his life The desperado being asked whether he would undertake to perform the work answered in the affirmative, and was carried by his brother to the eunuch who on putting the question to him was earnestly requested not to provide any other man for such a business as he was determined to be revenged of the Minister The eunuch seeing him resolute and eager got him enlisted amongst the guards, and placed him in the inner apartments, where he informed him that as soon as Emir qhan should get beyond the door of the private hall of audience, he must fall upon him directly The wretch being shewn his post went in and placed himself in his ambuscade The next day being the twentieth of Zilhidje in the same year, Emir qhan came to Court at day break although it was no Court day, and brought with him the eunuch he wanted to entrust with the superintendence He alighted from the palkey, and as soon as he had disengaged himself from the crowd of his numerous attendants, and from the still more numerous throng of suitors he advanced towards the hall, when the abominable murderer, without giving him time to advance above three steps within the door, rushed from behind, and gave him such a stroke in the breast with his poniard that the unfortunate innocent Séyd fell sprawling on the ground and expired instantly The guards took up his body

and stretching it in his paleky, sent it home, followed by a crowd of men who were going by order to take an account of his effects and to confiscate his property

This was opposed by the military in the murdered Minister's pay, who refused both to give them admittance (172), or to suffer the body to be buried, unless their arrears were first paid or insured. Not content with that, they shut up the gates, and would suffer no one to return home amongst those numerous noblemen that had come to console the family, and to purify and take up the body (173). In consequence of this, Haddey-aaly-qhan, elder brother to the deceased, and Superintendent of the Elephant office, as well as Abdol-medjid-qhan, Divan of the Imperial Qhalissah, were shut up within together with a multitude of persons of high distinction, amongst whom were Naamet-ollah-qhan, and Bairam-qhan, and many other noblemen of high pedigree, and of great rank. The Emperor, incensed at the opposition made by the soldiery, ordered the Minister's effects to be taken possession of, without minding the pretensions of his troops or of his guards, and in case of resistance, he commended that they should be put to the sword. But the Imperial soldiers themselves, sensible that it might be some day or other their own turn, refused to fall upon people that asked only for their due, and both parties being now come

---

(172) All the troops of Hindostan, the English excepted, are wretchedly paid. Twenty or thirty months of arrears are no rarity. The Ministers, Grandees and Princes, always keep twice or thrice as many men as they have occasion for, and fancy to concern them in the conservation of their Lord's life by withholding their pay. It must be observed that any impotent debtor, kept these many years out of his money by a powerful creditor, assumes sometimes a right of stopping his corpse. This he does by putting his hand upon it, and pronouncing a sentence of the Coran, and in general the relations and invited make up the matter by an accomodement. We have seen this done once at Lucknow by a merchant, who stopped the coffin of Mia-amber, an eunuch of the Palace, and once at Mooshoodabad. But such an attempt requires a resolute man, otherwise it will produce a good drubbing.

(173) It is customary for the nearest relations, or the best friends, to take up the Charpay or funeral bed upon their shoulders and to carry it alternately burying ground, repeating, *there is no God, but God and Mohamed is His Messenger*. Some of the most zealous put their hand to the spade, and all throw a handful of earth upon the tomb, the body is previously shaved, washed, purified, perfumed, and wrappped, and there are a hundred rites and niceties in performing all these duties.

to a pause, Abool mansoor qhan, interposed. He sent two persons of distinction to take in his name upon themselves the arrears due to the troops, and to render the last duties to the body of his murdered friend. By this time four days had been spent in messages and negotiations the body was become offensive, and the ungrateful servants, together with the ungrateful Emperor being obstinately bent in carrying their point matters came at last to this settlement, that the body should be dismissed out of the house and the deceased's effects sold publicly to as much amount as would discharge the sums due to his troops. These having kept as hostages both Sidy Bilal (174) and Merid qhan Babadyr the two persons of distinction, that had been sent by Abool mansoor qhan, then only the body of that unjustly murdered Minister was suffered to come out. He was entombed in the Monument of Qhalil ollah-qhan, his grandfather close to Roob-ollah-qhan's Sera,—may the God of Infinite mercy have bestowed upon him a place amongst his pious ancestors! After the burial, the deceased's effects were put up to sale and his troops and dependants received their arrears from the amount the Emperor having taken for himself some of the deceased's jewels and all his arms, the latter of which he so greatly admired as to pay ten or twelve lacs for them which was more than their value, these two articles produced fifty or sixty lacs and had cost a great deal more. It was only after the sale that the noblemen who had come only to condole with the family and who had been involved in its misfortunes so far as to remain besieged and confined for full eight days found means at last to escape to their homes. Abdool medjid qhan, a Minister of State was of that number but Haddy aaly qhan the deceased's elder brother with some

---

(174) By his name he appears to be an Habissinians and all Habissinians are in the highest esteem in India. The Europeans accustomed to see in America the human nature degraded and to pass an indiscriminate condemnation on all Africans, as a race morally and physically inferior themselves would be surprised to see what sort of men Africa can produce. No Englishmen themselves are not braver or more intrepid than the Nobis or Nubians; and no European can be more faithful and grateful than an Habissinian slave. We have had slaves of both races, and have been amazed to see their exertions all over Turkey Arabia and Persia. In India, Negroes, Habissinians, Nobis, &c., &c., are promiscuously called Habeshies or Habissians, although the two latter are no Negroes; and the Nobis and Habashes differ greatly from each other.

other persons related to the family, could not obtain their release, even after the troops had been paid off, but by presenting the servants and dependants of the deceased, with full two years' pay as a gratuity. As to the house, and the patrimonial lands, together with the appendages of the murdered Minister, they were presented by the Qhalif of the age (175), that is, by the Emperor himself, to his own daughter, and that Princess made them over to Mahmed-issac-qhan's care. Let us now pass to some matters less melancholy.

This year the Nö8-r87 fell on the ninth of the first Reby, in 1160 of the Hedjah, and this same year Yahia-qhan, who on Abdol-medjid-qhan's dismissal had been promoted to the Divanship of the Qhalissah-office, departed his life. The third day after his demise being elapsed, the Emperor sent for his six sons, and one of his grandsons, and presented each of them with a Qhylaät of mourning, after which, of his own motion, he promoted the eldest son, who appeared the most capable, to the office of Moonshy or Secretary of State, held by his father. A few days after, the office of the Qhalissah was bestowed on Mahmed-issac-qhan, who was installed in it with a Serpah of six pieces, and that Minister in a few days after took his seat in his cuchery or tribunal, where he signed some papers as a mark of possession. On the middle of Shaaban, Agher-qhan, the Turk, Commandant of the Corz-bearers, dying (176) his son, Chaghlyr-qhan (177) received, at one and the same time, a Qhylaät of mourning, and his father's office. This year likewise ushered in an event quite unexpected. Nassyr-qhan, the famous Viceroy of Cabool, who had fled from the grasp of Ahmed-shah-abdali, came suddenly to Shah-djehanabad, where he was honoured with a Qhylaät of six pieces, a sabre, and an elephant. This was in hopes that, as Nadyr-shah

---

(175) The word Qhalif signifies successor. It has been given to the first successors of Mahomet, namely, to Aboobeker, Omer, Osman, and Aaly, and likewise to all the Emperors of the two Houses of Ommiah and Abbass. The Turkish Emperor styles himself a Qhalif, and so does the Emperor of Hindostan, and his two Capitals of Delhi and Agrah are styled in his Coins and in his Ordinances, Qhalifal Residences, and also gates of the Qhalifat. The author glances here at the hereditary adversion of all the Qhalifs against the Séyds, of which Emir qhan was one.

(176) The Corz, or War Club, is a Turkish or Tartarian arm, and he that bears this arm in the Emperor's presence, commands a body of Corz-berdars, or guards, with such a weapon.

(177) It is very strange that these words signify in Turkish the *crying Lord*.

was no more he might, by his connections with the Afghans of those parts, bring Cabool again under the dominions of Hindostan

The year following being the one thousand one hundred and sixty first, was remarkable by two considerable events which changed intirely the face of the Empire The one was the demise of Mahmed shah who may be considered as the last Emperor of the House of Babr the other the Irruption of Ahmed shah-abdali, the King of the Doorannies into Hindostan As that Prince's invasion took place in the beginning of this year and the battles which he gave, as well as the troubles and commotions which he caused together with his return home and the accession of Prince Ahmed to the throne of Hindostan, have taken up so much space of time, as to extend down to the first Djemady we have thought proper to bring all those events into one point of view

Death of  
Mahmed  
shah.

History of  
Ahmed shah  
abdali, the  
founder of  
the new Mon-  
archy of the  
Doorannies.

This Ahmed shah-abdali was originally one of the principal Chiefs of that tribe of Afghans settled in the province of Herat, under the name of Abdalles (178) His tribes having revolted against that conqueror of his age the formidable Nadyr shah, he fell prisoner in his hands and was for some time one of the slaves of the presence when that Prince chancing to take notice of him presence when that Prince chancing to take notice of him promoted him to a post of Yesäol (179), and in a little time raised him to the command of a thousand men and here it must be observed that although Nadyr shah was one of the principal of those Turkish tribes settled in Iran yet he had so effectually incurred the hatred of his tribe and of the whole Turkish race (180) that being thoroughly sensible of its consequences, he had made it a point to attach to his person the several tribes of Afghans and Tooranians or Usbeghs which he had vanquished conquered and subdued His army was mostly composed of

---

(178) Herat is a Capital City of Iran, or Persia, in the province of Qhorasan. It has been said, that the Afghans established there were called Abdalles or servants of Aaly because they had once embraced the Sect of the Sbyias although they are now zealous Sunnis.

(179) The Yesäols answer to the Indian Chopdars, or Mace-bearers, but with this difference, that the Yesäols are armed

(180) It is those Turkish tribes who spread chiefly in the northern parts of Iran, where they live under tents, and are in general either husbandmen or shepherds, that furnish almost all the soldiers of Persia.

those two nations From them he drew most of his officers and Generals, and he gave them so much influence and authority, that they seemed intirely to engross his attention and favour, the Afghans especially, to whom he seemed to trust still more than to the Turks of Tooran, and he raised them so high, that on his being killed, most of the principal Afghan Commanders aspired to a Sovereign power, and for a long term of years commanded as so many Kings, in most of the provinces of Iran The most powerful of them was Azad-qhan, who was at the head of thirty thousand horse, a man who had raised such a flame in Iran, as nothing could extinguish but the waves that plentifully flowed from Kerim-qhan-zendi's sabre (181), another adventurer like himself, who vanquished him in battle, took him prisoner, and then made him one of his Generals Ahmed-abdali was such another Commander, but he had the wisdom to avail himself of the counsels and support of Taky-qhan, Governor of Cabool, a man whom Nadyr-shah had castrated, and whom he nevertheless feared This Ahmed-abdali, in the confusion that ensued after Nadyr-shah's death, fled from camp, and meeting in his flight a convoy of treasure which was going to the army, under the charge of Tahmasp-djelair, he fell upon the escort, seized the money, and made use of it to attract so many Afghans to his service, that in a short time he became a potent Prince, who struck money, and was prayed for publicly in the mosques He made seven journeys or expeditions in Hindostan, all which shall be successively mentioned in these sheets The first was at the end of the year 1150, being then in Nadyr-shah's victorious army, with which he likewise returned to Iran, the next year As he had been bred by that Prince, much regard was always paid him, and the next year he obtained leave to go home, and see his friends On his return to the army, he resolved to go in pilgrimage to the monument, guarded by hosts of Angles, the venerable Mausoleum of the Pontiff of men and spirits, Sooltan-abool-hassen-aaly, son to Moosa-reza, (on whom be grace and endless praise <sup>1</sup>) (182)

---

(181) These excellent Sabres made in Persia, are of a steel that seems to run into waves

(182) This tomb is in the city of Tooss, which has from thence been called Mesh-hede Those that are sticklers for miracles, ought to go to that spacious mosque, where every year several miracles are performed, in so public, and notorious a manner that there is no room left for a doubt Blind, or lame men, or maimed, known

After having performed his devotions at that sacred shrine, he was going away, when he observed a Religieuse, setting up close to the head of the Miraculous tomb, a bit of cloth upon two sticks, as if it were a tent for small children. Ahmed could not help pausing awhile to ask him what he was playing about? The man looking steadfastly in his face, answered 'Art thou Ahmed-abdaly?'

*I am*' said the other "*This tent,*" replied the Fakyr '*is Nadyr shah's Imperial tent whenever it comes to fall thou shalt become a King*" Ahmed surprised at such a prediction left one of his attendants at the Fakyr's with orders to attend to the motion of the tent and to take down the day and hour whenever it should fall and he continued his journey to camp. He was hardly arrived when Nadyr shah was killed and Ahmed, assembling those of his own Clan fled with them, and arrived at Mesh-hed where his first care was to visit the holy monument, and the man stationed at the tent. The latter looking at his paper mentioned the day and hour when it had tumbled down of itself. Ahmed overjoyed at this intelligence compared the dates, acknowledged the veracity of the prediction and from that moment he commenced to aspire to a throne. He joined to his own body of troops as many Abdalis as he could persuade, and being now at the head of a considerable force he engaged Taky-qhan to join his party. This Governor nick named Capon who was a man of consequence, that had rendered great services to Nadyr shah by whose order he had been castrated was then in that country and by his counsels he proved of great service to Ahmed. The latter now put upon his turbant the Djica or Aigrette of Sovereignty and hearing that the tribute of Cabool and Mooltan was on its way to camp under the guard of

---

for such amongst their own tribe and throughout that populous city recover their sight or the use of their limbs and as soon as the Saint has granted such a request, the military music seated at the top of the maingate, plays the whole day to give public notice so that imposition seems to be out of question here, and not so much as thought of and yet imposition appears on the very face of every one of those miracles, as well as on the face of this very credulous tale. We have seen, at Mecca, two men that had recovered in Mesh-hed, the one the use of his eyes shut up by small pox; and the other the use of his leg. They had certificates better attested than any of those miracles so renowned in Europe; and for all that it was evident on the face of the certificates that the writers knew nothing of physics, nor of truth and that they were mere bunglers at miracle making.

Mir-mahmed-sayd and Noor mahmed-qhan-Leti, to officers of character, he fell upon the escort, took the treasure, and engaged the two officers to join his party. Being thus reinforced by a good body of troops, and in possession of so much money, he marched against an Afghan who commanded in Candahar, and having killed him in battle he took that fortress. From thence he engaged, by dint of intreaties, Shah-sabur, the Religious of the tent, to come into his camp and to follow his fortunes. This Saint-Patience (for such is the import of his name) was a grandson of the famous master Helal, the farrier of Cabool who had likewise turned Fakyr, and was greatly revered by the Tooranians (183). Ahmed-abdaly, after seizing the above treasure, offered the Government of Cabool to Nassyr-qhan, who had commanded there ever since Nadir-shah had confirmed him in that post, but it was on condition that, on his arrival at that fortress, he could send to camp immediately the sum of five lacs. The condition being accepted, the Governor received his Qhylaat, and he repaired to his post, where he assembled the principal inhabitants, to whom he exposed the Shah's demand. As that city is mostly inhabited by Afghans, a nation whose characteristic qualification is faithlessness and deceit, they all declared that it was impossible to raise any money amongst them. The Governor observed that, if they did not pay the money, they would be called to an account, as well as himself, and what then do you intend to do, added he,—"We shall fight" answered the assembly. Nassyr-qhan having expressed many doubts on this resolution of theirs, they all joined in confirming their engagement by the most sacred oaths and the most solemn execrations. On which the Governor sent back the Doorani's guards, which had come back with him from camp. Ahmed being informed of all this, ran to besiege the place, when the inhabitants, forgetting their late engagements, retired every one to their houses, and Nassyr-qhan, not thinking it safe to tarry in the place, retired to Peshavor, after having fortified some strong passes, whilst the Caboolians, joining Ahmed, informed him of the manner of penetrating to that place. The Abdaly on this intelligence, hastened to Peshavor, and Nassyr-qhan,

---

(183) The Euz-beg Tartars, as well as all the Tartars and Calmuks, are called Tooranies or Tooranians in Hindostan.



seeing his danger said farewell to his family and prepared himself for a vigorous defence

Whilst Ahmed abdaly was marching to besiege Peshavor fortune was planning a new set of successes for that new Monarch We have mentioned that, on Zekaria qhan's demise, his second son, Shah nevaz qhan had seized the Government and driven away his elder brother he was now governing the two Provinces of Lahor and Mooltan with nearly an absolute authority He had, for his Paymaster General one Adina beg qhan who was a very devil under the appearance of a man This man, who had resolved to upset his master's power and to raise his own on its ruins addressed him in these words

*'You are no more than a nephew to Vezir Camer-eddin qhan but your elder brother Yahia qhan is his son-in-law besides and he is gone to carry complaints against you to Court Rest assured then that neither Emperor nor Vezir shall let you alone in the full enjoyment of two Governments*

*You have however one resource and it is this Join Ahmed abdaly's party a powerful and successful man who openly aspires to a Crown and will look upon your joining his party as the most unexpected favour which Heaven could confer upon him*

This speech had its full effect Shah nevaz qhan acknowledged the goodness of the advice and opened a correspondence with the Abdaly These two men soon came to an agreement and it was concluded in these terms *The Crown to Ahmed the Vezirship to Shah nevaz* The Abdaly had been so astonished at the proposal of making him a present of two such Provinces that he had prostrated himself on the ground and had acknowledged the Divine interposition on his undertaking He immediately ordered the agreement to be drawn up, got it witnessed and guaranteed by the principal Commanders of his army, and then sent it by a person of distinction

This scheme having taken place the incarnate devil set up another He wrote to Camer-eddin-qhan the Vezir That his nephew had conceived chimerical schemes in his mind affected Independence and had opened a channel of correspondence with Ahmed-abdaly That he was become so head strong as to make no account of the remonstrances of his best servants but that they would not fail to make another

"effort upon him as soon as the Minister should have endeavored to sooth his mind, and to gain his heart" The Vezir, astonished at the intelligence, took pen immediately, and with his own hand wrote a very affecting letter to his nephew. The purport was, "That their family, at all times attached to the Emperors of Hindostan, had never been defiled by the crime of ingratitude and treason. Beware of such a crime, beware of thinking that a traitor can thrive. It is a pity that a man like you should wish for the honour of obeying Ahmed-abdaly, the Yesaol, rather than that of driving such a fellow from the frontiers of Hindostan. Would not the five Provinces of Cabool, Cashmir, Tatta, Lahor, and Mooltan, fall into your hands in such a case, and would not your good uncle exert himself in supporting you with all the power of the Empire (184)?" This letter produced its effect, and he was reclaimed from, his folly, but Adina-beg-qhan, who had put together all the parts of his scheme, resolved to avail himself of this rupture with Ahmed-abdaly.

We have left this Prince wondering at Nasser-qhan's defection, and marching to besiege him in Peshavor. The latter, after having defended himself as long as his provisions and ammunition lasted, and his small numbers would admit, was thinking of escaping out of the town, and providing for his safety, but this was far from being easy. His Deputy, who was equally brave and zealous, seeing his distresses, addressed him in these words: "*Get out of this place as well as you can, and fly towards Hindostan. I shall contrive to hold out one day and two nights more, by which time, you shall be too far off to be overtaken by any enemies*" Nassyr-qhan, having approved the advice, escaped out of the town with a few friends, and fled with all his might, but in distress of every thing. Meanwhile the Deputy having held out as much as he promised, was slain at the second assault, and Ahmed-abdaly got possession of the town, in which Nassyr-qhan's family and consort came into the

---

(184) It appears from this, that Ahmed-abdaly had already taken possession of Cashmir, which is north of Cabool, as well as of Tatta, which is south of it, the two Provinces of Mooltan and Lahor being betwixt. All those countries now, as well as Candahar, Herat, and all Qhorason, as far as Mash-hed, belong to the Abdaly or Doorani Monarchy, as does part of Euzbeg-Tartary.

Victor's power Ahmed, out of regard to her merit, and to her being daughter of Zlr dest qhan, grandson to the famous Aaly merdan qhan (185), not only took care of supporting her with decency and honour but he in a little time set her at liberty

Whilst that forlorn family was receiving so generous a treatment Nassyr qhan arrived at Lahor where he had taken his residence in a Mosque (186) But Shah nevaz-qhan, no sooner heard of the arrival of such an illustrious fugitive than he went to see him and intreated him to join him in attacking the Abdaly The other declined the proposal several times, and declared his resolution of going to Court Shah nevaz-qhan, finding he could not prevail upon him took his leave carrying with him that Governor's Steward Being arrived at his palace, he desired him to accept in his master's name an equipage suitable to his rank and former station and he immediately sent him all the elephants horses, camels arms and furniture necessary for a Nobleman of high pedigree without forgetting a kitchen and a water equipage (187), with a number of cooks and a quantity of provisions To this he added four lacs of rupees in gold for his travelling charges

The Viceroy had hardly dismissed that illustrious fugitive when he received a letter from the Abdali king with an invitation to come over to his camp The other refused flatly The Abdaly reminded him of his engagement and Shah nevaz qhan answered only by letters that shewed how much his mind was altered Thus being heard of by Shah sabur, who was become Ahmed's director and tutelar saint and who now remembered of his being born at Lahor and of his having lived a long time there he took Ahmed's leave and went alone to Lahor where he landed in the Musty Abdollah's house Shah nevaz qhan hearing of that extraordinary man's arrival sent Adina beg-qhan and his

(185) Aaly-merdan-qhan, after revolting from the famous Shah-abbas of Persia then occupied against the Turks, made a present of his person, and of his fortress Candahar to Shah-djehan whose favourite he became

It is he that made that Canal of seventy-eight miles, which brings so much water to Delhi It is now choked up.

(186) As do all Fakirs and all people in distress.

(187) As water is cooled in India by the assistance of Saltpetre, and people are so very nice in that element as to drink only of some Rivers, the article of water becomes an office by itself

Divan, Radja Kura-mull (188), to know his purpose. The holy man answered: "*I have no business with any of you, nor do I intend you any harm. I come only because I cannot help remembering that I was born in this city, had connections with some of its citizens, and am under obligations to some of its former rulers. I cannot help feeling for them all, therefore I tell you, faithlessness had never proved successful, neither is it an object of approbation with either God or man, nor is your sabre equal to Ahmed-abdaly's sabre.*" He was yet speaking, when a voice from behind broke out in this exclamation: "*Is his sabre of iron, and ours of wood?*" "No," replied the Fakir, "*your sabre, as well as his, is of iron, but your fortune is not equal to his. His star is now in its ascension, and I do not see that yours keeps pace with it.*"

Adina-beg-qhan, who carried this message to his master, seemed to be affected by it, nor was Shah-nevaz-qhan himself without some emotion. But, however, no peace took place, and he ordered the Fakir to be kept in custody in Adina-beg-qhan's palace. Ahmed, finding that nothing was to be gained by letters, marched to Lahor, from whence Shah-nevaz-qhan came out with a numerous army, well furnished with artillery and every other necessary, and both sides seemed eager to engage, when the Viceroy sent to ask from a Fakir, who meddled with Astrology, what he thought would be the fate of the day. Sha-kelb-aaly (for such was the man's name) (189) answered: "*This day is not favourable to you. If you can help it, abstain from fighting to-day. The day of to-morrow, with the following days, will be more favourable to your cause. Beware of engaging to-day.*" The Viceroy, on this answer, sent orders to his Commanders not to fight to-day, but to keep themselves within their retrenchment, even should they be attacked, in which case, they were only to repel the enemy. This said, he went to his tent, and took some repose until supper time came, and he was already seated with

---

(188) The importance of these two personages shews that a high degree of respect is paid to Fakirs, and especially to living Saints in Hindostan.

(189) These words signify *Saint Dog of Aaly*. The Persians, who think all dogs impure, make however an exception in favour of Aaly's dog, and they are fond of bearing his name, which was *Camber*. Nay, they assign him a place in Paradise.

Adina beg qhan and some other Commanders, when they heard the report of a great gun, and then another Upon enquiry it was found that a body of the enemy's horse having made its appearance, two hundred Kuzzelbashies on horseback had quitted the intrenchment to fight them, and that the enemy had retired but had come again to the number of about two thousand, which large body had dispersed on some cannon being fired at them. Some time after a swift horseman came to the Viceroy to desire immediate assistance. He said that Kuzzelbashies having sallied forth a second time, had been worsted and obliged to retreat within the enclosure, and as they came pellmell with the enemy the artillery had therefore forbore firing in consequence of which the Abdalies had penetrated within the camp, and were filling it with slaughter and confusion. On hearing this Shab nevez-qhan was going to mount, and he immediately sent Adina beg qhan to the assistance of those attacked, with orders to drive the Abdalies out of the intrenchment only. This officer, having put his hand upon his eyes in token of obedience marched with his troops, but he took to the left, and contented himself with being a spectator of the engagement. By this time the Viceroy was upon his elephant and whilst he was encouraging his men Adina beg qhan advanced a little farther but stopped short again. Luckily it was already dark and the Abdalies had retired of their own accord. But Adina beg-qhan having already retired with his troops within the city even so early as the evening a panic had seized most of those that remained, and every one strove to save himself within the walls without minding their Officers. The Viceroy confounded at this reverse returned to his quarters where he wanted to alight in his tent. This was strongly opposed by a relation of his who sat behind him and objected that there was no safety left in camp and that it was better to retire within the walls and to fight the enemy from behind that cover. This the Viceroy admitted but he proposed to take such a party only to morrow, adding that this was an unfavourable day for him and that to morrow all would be well again. The other continuing to object, the Viceroy gave way but as soon as he had turned the head of his elephant towards the city such as had remained yet in camp took example from him, and fled on all sides making haste to get at the gate. At

of the Hindians, who never think themselves a match for an army of foreigners, stopped short, and surrounded his army with an intrenchment and a ditch, within which he kept himself, and from the fifteenth of the first Reby until the twenty-sixth, nothing was to be seen but continual attacks and skirmishes, with great slaughter on both sides. The Abdaly had no artillery, but fortune brought him a convoy of provisions, cannon, rockets, and ammunition, which fell into his hands. He availed himself of this assistance to pour in a shower of balls within the intrenchment, insomuch that the Hindostany army although very numerous, seemed to be besieged by the Abdalies and Kuzzelbashies. The seventh day of this singular siege it happened that the Vezir Camer-eddin-qhan, being about noon-day at his prayers (191), a cannon-ball came and killed him on the spot. This accident discouraged the Hindoos who were in camp, to the number of twenty or thirty thousand, under the command of Asiri-sing, and some other Radjahs. With one common accord they despaired of the cause, and coming out of camp, they stretched the feet of trepidation on the boundless plain of despondency, and marched back to their homes. But this desertion, considerable and discouraging as it was, did not damp the courage of either the Shah-zadah's, or of Abool-man-soor-qhan's, or of Muaien-el-mulk's, or of the other sons of the late Vezir's. They fought the enemy several times with an undaunted courage, and always with much slaughter on both sides, until the morning of the twenty-sixth, when the Abdaly-king, putting himself at the head of his troops, gave an assault to the Vezir's quarter, but was vigorously repulsed by Muaien-el-mulk, *alias* Mir-mannoo, the Vezir's eldest son, who acquired a great deal of honour in that trying occasion. A body of Tooranians, commanded by Djanish-qhan, and some other officers, mindful of the many obligations which their nation owed to that family, fought with great vigour, and cheerfully shed their blood in their defence, and vast numbers of the Vezir's troops became that day so much food to the scimitar, that devouring crocodile of the seas of slaughter and blood. The enemies pushing forwards, penetrated to the very quarter of the Shah-zadah's, and a mighty loss, together with a great disgrace, was going to befall the

---

(191) The Musulmen pray five times a day. The noon-prayer is the longest

Hindostanies, when they were timely assisted by a body of troops in good order sent by Abool mansoor qhan. That Georcal ordered the remainder of his horse mostly Moghuls to alight and putting himself at their head he marched fiercely to the enemy preceded by some small canoon and a number of men armed with rockets and wall pieces. He came to a very critical moment and putting himself between Mir manoo and the Abdahes he brought the latter to a stand and here the engagement taking a new vigour became warm and bloody. The enemy already fatigued by the resistance made by the Shah zada and Mir manoo found themselves at once assaulted by a body of fresh troops, who marched in good order and were pouring a storm of musket bullets cannon balls and rockets upon them. At this critical moment, some of the ammunition and rocket carts seized at Ser hend by some accident took fire. In an instant thousands and ten thousands of rockets and other artifices were at once in a blaze and these flying in all directions throughout the Abdaly's army destroyed most of the enemy's troops by heaps (192). The rest fell into disorder and confusion and Ahmed after having made repeated efforts to remedy the accident and to rally his dismayed troops reluctantly turned his back to the field of battle and fled where his bad fortune pointed leaving the victory to the Hindostany Prince, and the greatest part of his army on that field of slaughter. He had sent in the evening a message to Abool mansoor-qhan the purport of which I could not learn but the next morning he beat the General at day break and marched back by the high road that leads to Cabool and Candahar.

Mahmed shah on being informed of so signal a victory, and how instrumental the Vezir's three sons had been in it especially the eldest, as well as how timely and vigorously they had been succoured by Abool mansoor-qhan's critical interposition, could not help giving way to his joy and satisfaction, although he was then upon his death bed. He himself read the relation and immediately bestowed the Governments of Lahor and Mooltau

---

(192) It appears by the constant testimony of two officers now in Moorsheedabad, but who commanded amongst the Moghuls of Abool-mansoor-qhan's, that they took one part of the Abdaly artillery and that the fire took only in the other part.

on Mir-mannoo, and at the same time he wrote pressing letters to his son, to Abool-mansoor-qhan, and to the other Lords, with orders to repair immediately to Court. With these letters came a Qhylaas, with which the Imperial Prince himself invested Mir-mannoo in the name of the Emperor, his father, giving him order at the same time to take possession of the two Governments conferred upon him. The Prince, after this ceremony, set out for the Capital without loss of time, as the Emperor was growing worse and worse, and signs of an approaching gangrene were making their appearance. The Monarch beheld death advancing step after step, and letters after letters arrived daily demanding both his son and Abool-mansoor-qhan. Nor did these two noble persons give themselves any rest, they were already arrived at Pani-Poot (193), in the neighbourhood of the Capital, when intelligence came that the Emperor was no more. He died the twenty-seventh of the second Reby, in the beginning of the thirty-first year of his reign, which answers to the year 1161 of the Hedjrah. But in consequence of a consultation between Issac-qhan and Djavid-qhan the eunuch, and some other Lords, to which the Empress Maleka-zamani gave her consent, his death was kept secret, so that his body, remaining some days above ground, became offensive, as had already happened to Emir-qhan's body, as if to prove that holy sentence of the Coran, "*So hast thou done, so shalt thou find*." Abool-mansoor-qhan, being repeatedly informed of all this, passed secretly with the Shah-zadah three days in mourning, and the fourth day he made choice of a favourable moment to erect a canopy, and to whirl several times round and over the Prince's head a chatry or umbrella (194), which he had run up in haste for the occasion, after which he presented his nuzur by way of making his homage, prayed for his prosperity, and wished him along reign. The new Emperor, after this

---

(193) Pani-poot is a town three days' journey from the Capital, and upon the Canal that carries so much water to that City. Nay, this very circumstance has given name to the town, for *Pani-poot* signifies derivated water, or water's offspring.

(194) An instrument, to keep off the sun and rain, has been always held as one of the principal insignia of Sovereignty in Hindostan. It is made like a French Parasol, and a Chinese umbrella, and the Taht taooss, or Peacock-throne, made by Shah-djehan, had such an appendage, as have all thrones of an Emperor, but the whirling it round a few times over his head, in token of Sovereignty, is curious anecdote, to be found nowhere else.



ceremony, marched to the Capital with great pomp and magnificence. Being arrived at Shaleh mar, an Imperial seat in the neighbourhood of the Capital, he received the applause and respects of all the Ministers of State and all the Grandees of the Empire, who proclaimed him with common voice. After this ceremony, the body of Mahmed shah was brought out of the Haram sera, or sanctuary, and in the middle of a pompous cortege was carried upon the shoulders of all the Grandees to the Monument of Shah nizam eddin where it was buried in a mausoleum close to that which the Prince's mother had erected for herself in her life time. The new Emperor, on the seventh of Djemady made his entry into the Capital mounted upon a moving throne and from thence he went to reside in the citadel. Five days after, it being on a Friday he repaired to the great Mosque, where having heard the Qhootbah pronounced in his name with other appreciations usual on such a solemnity he returned to his Palace. In this same month both Moorteza-ghan and Moorid-ghan departed their lives.

The author  
quits his his-  
tory to speak  
of himself

As to myself I was about this time in great perturbation of mind having just lost Zin-eddin-ahmed-ghan my patron who had been murdered by the treachery of Shimsbir-ghan an afflicting event, which I learned at Gazipoor and which made me retreat to Benares from whence I went to Brhëily which was my forgiven father's residence. That city is the Capital of the countries of Bedaön and Shah-djehan poor &c which constituted Nizam-el mulk's *Djagbir* and had been put by Ghazy eddin-ghan his son under the command of my father. It was at his feet I lived sometime, when a terrible event happened there, from the consequence of which I escaped with difficulty as I shall mention in the subsequent pages.

My forgiven father had been as I have said promoted by Abool mansoor-ghan's influence to the Government of Saken derah when taking my leave of that General I repaired to Azim ahad, where I paid my respects to my glorious mother, and visited my uncles and my other relations most of whom were allied either to Aaly verdy-ghan himself, or to his nephews. There also I took a spouse in the family, which my mother had appointed. From thence I followed my uncles to the wars, and in the engagements against Mustapha-ghan, I rendered such whatever services

could be expected from me But a rupture soon took place between Abool-mansoor-qhan and my father, after the latter had remained one year in Sekenderah, and about the same time the countries of Moorad-abad, Sambal, and Berheily having been recovered from the hands of the Rohillahs by Mahmed-shah in person, who thought proper to return those lands, and Districts to those to whom they had belonged before, either as Altumghas or Djaghirs, my father was a second time sent to command in those parts with full powers The City of Berheily, with the circumjacent country was a paternal Djaghir of Nizam-el-mulk's, and as in consequence of the power and usurpations of Aaly-mahmed-qhan-Rohillah, those parts had become of small revenue, no person caring to expose his purse and honor on their product, the whole had been committed to the care of my forgiven father, who found much difficulty in quieting his Government For although Rohillah himself had been driven away, and was gone to Ser-liend, there were thousands and ten thousands of Afghans spread all over the country, where they had taken so deep root, that they had become the Zemindars of that tract, and had to their own Afghan stubbornness added all the perverseness and all the refractory behaviour inherent to the character of a Zemindar So that, none but my father was thought equal to the task of bringing them to order and submission Ghazy-eddin-qhan, therefore, having sent his own Steward thither for a while, recalled my father, and after conferring with him some time, and furnishing him with every necessary, and with full powers, he sent him back with instructions My forgiven father, thus supported, raised a good body of troops, and marching throughout the country, he soon brought the city of Berheily and the seventeen other Districts under order and controul For a further security, he thought it a piece of policy to admit the principal Afghans amongst his troops, and thus Serdar-qhan, of Berheily, and Mangal-qhan, of Telhur, took service with him, each at the head of about two thousand men, as did another Afghan, of illustrious race, with seventeen hundred others This last was called Pir-ahmed, and was a descendant of Sheh-abdol-cadyr-Ghilani, the great Saint of the Afghan nation

But these were not all the turbulent spirits of that country There lived then in those parts a man of great character and

Troubles in  
Rohil-cund.

distinction, a descendant of Uzmet ollab qhan, one of the two brothers who had so long commanded in Moorad-abad. It was Cootoob eddin mohammed-qhan Bahadyr, who was nephew to Ferid eddin qhan a nobleman in whose service Aaly mahmed qhan, Rohillab had been for a length of time. He lived in the Castle of Cha-chntt, and seemed inclined to quarrel with my father but he had but a small force and still less money. My father sent him several mild rebukes on his improper behaviour but all to so little purpose that he was at last obliged to think of correction and chastisement. Cootoob-eddin's troops seeing that he had brought the Governor of the country upon himself deserted him immediately and there remained to him only twenty or thirty ancient friends and servants who would not leave him but chose to shut themselves up with him in the above Castle. My father hearing of this surrounded it immediately and went several times round the walls on his elephant to find out a proper place for an assault. It must be observed that Cootoob-eddin qhan greatly valued himself upon his skill in shooting with a musket and in fact he was renowned all over the country for making use of balls and muskets of twice the size and length of the ordinary ones and he fired with so much precision that he never missed his mark. Several of his followers were equal to him in that art. Now as my father was going every day round the walls both himself and his best marks-men repeatedly took aim and repeatedly fired at him without being able to hit any thing but the boards of his hammock or his cushions or his clothes and turban. Cootoob-eddin-qhan incensed at his eternally missing his enemy threw down his gun swore he would never fire again and sent to my father to desire a conference and an accommodation. This interview was requested with a design to kill my father in the middle of the conference the man being of such a determined daringness that he never stuck at any thing to compass his own ends. His few followers being as daring as himself resolved to stand by him in that trying occasion. But as they pretended fears and suspicions it was agreed that they should come armed and the agreement was guaranteed by Séyd aaly qhan my father's fourth brother and by Pir ahmed, the Rohillab Commander. On the appointed day, they came out of the Castle, and were received by my uncle in his tent, in expectation of

being sent for by my father. But that nobleman unwilling to meet so hastily a party of desperadoes, whom he knew to be highly incensed against him, returned for answer, that he hoped they would repose themselves the remainder of the day in his brother's tent, as his guests, and that the next morning he would give them the meeting. The man hearing such an answer, suspected some treachery, and although he with his ten or twelve men was sitting amongst a multitude of armed Afghans, and close to my uncle and Pir-ahmed, he expressed his resentment without minding his situation, and said that they ought, with their beards as men, to wear long hair upon their heads, as women, openly reproaching them at the same time, with their faithlessness in bringing him in such a deceitful manner out of the Castle. My uncle and Pir-ahmed, without minding his air and tone of voice, represented mildly that no breach of faith would happen, and that no harm was intended to him, but that the Governor being eternally busy, might have particular reasons for his putting off the interview till to-morrow, and that meanwhile there was no harm at all in his requesting him to be his guest. That officer was yet speaking, when several sneakers of a cool lemonade were brought in, and a moment after these were followed by a number of tables, covered with a variety of costly and dainty victuals, to which was added a message from my father, requesting his guest to partake of such an entertainment as his camp afforded, and to take some repose until the next morning. The man, who had been both hungry and angry all this while, finding himself so gently used, dropped his resentment, and fell to eating so heartily that at the end of his meal he had commenced speaking in a friendly manner. After his dinner, some presents were sent him, which he accepted. Cootoob-eddin-qhan, seeing that no harm could be intended, altered his resolution within his heart, and became reconciled to my father. The next morning, the Derbar being full, the new guest was conducted to the audience-tent between my uncle and Pir-ahmed, followed by a numerous throng of Afghan officers. My father on descrying him got up, and having embraced him, made him sit with himself upon the same Mesned, and he received his friends as they approached one by one, in the manner which his guest seemed to wish. Cootoob-eddin overcome by so much

kindness and so unexpected a condescension, could not help exposing the intention with which he had originally come out of the Castle and he added that the sudden change wrought in his heart yesterday, together with his missing perpetually his aim,—he who had never lost a bullet—were events which he could ascribe to nothing but to some sacredness inherent in his person and doubtless derived to him from his Séyd ancestors. My father hearing this could not help laughing, and he continued speaking to the man with so much regard and favour that he made a conquest of his heart after which he proposed to him to take service in his troops, and to attach himself to his person as a friend and a companion. Cootoob eddin, after stipulating some conditions accepted the proffer and thus enmity and diffidence ended in friendship and confidence.

So much sudden favour, and such marks of distinction, excited sentiments of envy and discontent in Pir-ahmed a principal Commander amongst the Afghans who thought he had more right to them himself. His mind was so ulcerated that every fresh kindness shewn to the new guest seemed to thrust thorns and scorpion stings in his heart which otherwise was disinclined on account of the difference of sect between himself and his master, the latter being a zealous Shyah and the other a turbulent Sunni. Whereas Cootoob-eddin as well as his friend, Sheh-müer eddin-ghan (an officer now living at Lucknow and whose feats of valour and generosity we shall have occasion to mention) were of a race celebrated for their zealous attachments to the tenets of the Shyabs, as well as for their illustrious achievements, and for their being descended of persons attached to the service of the Holy house (195) (upon all whom be grace!) He was himself respected by the countrymen as their Lord, and their master's son and it was on that very account that my father had introduced him in all the affairs of administration. This alienated entirely Pir-ahmed's heart. He quitted the service, and sought a revenge in exciting troubles and as the Afghans in my father's service, as well as those all over the country were all

---

(195) It appears that the Shyabs, by the words *Holy-house* understand the Temple that contains the remains of Hosséin at Kerbelah, near Bagdad, whereas with the generality of Musulmen the words *Holy house*, or those of house of God signify always the Caaba or square house within the Temple of Mecca.

either his tenants, or men accustomed to serve under him, they made it a point to join him, and to obey his summonses, and the evil rose to such a height, that my father was obliged to march against him, and to bring him to order Cootoob-eddin, who was appointed his General, took the command of the Vanguard. An engagement ensued, when Pir-ahmed dividing his troops in two, opposed his bravest and best marksmen to Cootoob-eddin, and with the rest he concealed himself in the ruined houses of an abandoned village, and in some fields grown over with tall sugar-canes, expecting to have my father at his discretion from such an ambuscade. The engagement being already commenced, Cootoob-eddin, with his bravest men, taking his musket, and quitting his horse, rushed through the thickest of the enemy, bearing down every thing before him. They say, that whilst he was taking aim with his gun, a trooper of the enemy's sprung at his side, and crying "*Cootoob-eddin-mahmed-ghan, have at you,*" he advanced with his sabre up-lifted. Cootoob-eddin altering only the direction of his piece, answered, "*have at you yourself,*" and laid him sprawling on the ground. That brave troop of his, animated by such exertions, continued to advance through the enemy's ranks, which at last they broke entirely, and forced to an open flight, but by this time he had already advanced so far from his main, as to be within reach of that piece of sugar-cane where Pir-ahmed was waiting for my father, and the latter approaching on the opposite side, he was set upon with the utmost fury, by a body of horse that rushed out suddenly, put to flight most of those that were with him, and struck a panic in those that remained. In this state of things, my father was putting his foot out of the amhary to jump down from his elephant, and to fight on foot, when the son of Cootoob-eddin, a young man whom he had taken upon an elephant, out of regard for his father, interposed, and he observed, that so long as himself, his soldier, was alive, with so many others, such exertions would be unbecoming a General. Meanwhile some of his relations and men, seeing their Commander's danger, quitted their horses, and surrounding his elephant, they mixed with the enemy, soon covered the ground with the blood of many of them, and put the whole to a stand. Pir-ahmed was advancing himself, and encouraging his people to

push on but Cootoob eddin, who now was at hand, advanced to charge him Pir-ahmed fatigued already by the resistance he had met round my father's elephant, from that valiant troop that fought like lions accustomed to tear their enemies, and thinking himself unequal to a fresh engagement, gave way, and he retreated full of shame and confusion whilst a zephyr of victory rising over the field of battle unfurled the drooping standards of my father's troops and cheered their hearts Pir-ahmed, however was overcome, but not ruined and he soon came to another engagement, but was so severely beaten that his Afghans humbled and dispirited slipped away one by one, and dispersed to their homes And thus tranquility being re-established my father with Cootoob eddin-ghan, his friend lived happy in the middle of relations acquaintances and soldiers

It was about this time, that, inspired by a desire of kissing the sacred paternal feet I quitted Azim abad a little before Shimsbir-ghan's treason and in the first days of Moharrem of the year 1161, I arrived at Berhilly by the way of Gharipoor and Banares where I was favoured with the blessing of seeing the paternal face It was about the time when the Imperial Prince Ahmed mirza had gained that great victory over the Abdalies which we have sometime ago mentioned It was at this very time that Aaly mahmed-ghan Rohillah who from being the Vexir Cammer-eddin-ghan's prisoner had been by his influence set at liberty and moreover promoted to the command of Ser hend, thought proper to quit his post after which he soon assembled an army of forty thousand Afghans and marched by Soharen poor and Gundj poor across the Djumna, directly to Moorad-abad and Berhilly where he had once commanded with so much power and having possessed himself of that Capital where he established his Government and authority he crossed the Ganga to attack my father As soon as this intelligence was spread in the country, the Afghans that constituted the greatest part of my father's troops being all either countrymen or acquaintances of Aaly mahmed-ghan's or attached to him personally were overjoyed to see him again amongst themselves and pretending that they were in arrears of pay by some months they assembled in bodies and probably with no good intention surrounded the house where my father lived

whithin the Castle of Berheily. He had with him only about three hundred Hindostanics, from about Shah-djehan-abad, and a small number of friends, relations, and servants. By this time Aaly-mahmed-qhan being arrived within ten cosses of Berheily, the situation of the besieged was become critical. In this conjuncture Cootoob-eddin-qhan took my father aside, and addressed him in these words, "*Rohillah is come upon us with an army which we cannot pretend to fight, admitting even that he had not been joined by the Afghans of these countries, who have flocked to his standard in as great numbers as if they had been so many locusts or pismires. On the other hand, your very soldiers are now besieging you, and thirsting after your blood. I see then no other party left but this — I will go out to meet Aaly-mahmed-qhan-Rohillah, and examine his sentiments respecting you. If he is not inclined towards you, I shall engage him to let you extricate yourself from your actual difficulties, if I discover that he means you any ill, then I shall kill him instantly, and, as I shall be dispatched myself upon the spot, you may then manage as your fortune shall point out*" This proposal my father accepted, and the brave and faithful Cootoob-eddin, having sallied out of the fort with a few of his most trusty men, went to Aaly-mahmed-qhan's quarters. Being arrived at that General's tent, he left his men at the door of the first enclosure, and went in with only two or three of them. Meanwhile those who were left without, being all extremely attached to him, and at all times ready to shed their blood for his sake, could not see him going in so weakly accompanied without being somewhat alarmed, so that two or three of them wanting to get in, were stopped by the Chopdars and other people at the General's door. Cootoob-eddin hearing the noise returned back, and striking one of the Chopdars slightly over the head, he asked him why he presumed to stop his people. This action having increased the tumult, some great mischief was likely to ensue, when Aaly-mahmed-qhan, surprised at the cries and noise, ran bare-footed out of the enclosure, and taking that illustrious hero by the hand, he drew him to his breast, embraced him tenderly, and apologised for what had come to pass. After which he carried him within the tent where he made him sit in the middle of his own Mesned,

Singular  
character of  
Cootoob-  
eddin's



himself taking a seat at the corner of it, and his behaviour in every thing else was very respectful. After Interchanging the usual excuses and some customary compliments, Cootoob-eddin addressed him in these words: "*You doubtless, have heard that I am become an intimate friend of the valiant Seyd hedäiet aaly-ghan the Lion in Wars an attachment which he has been pleased to repay with every mark of kindness and love. You know likewise that his very soldiers enticed by the hopes of your coming have ungratefully turned their arms against their lord and master and are now thinking of mischief. If such is your intention also dismiss me that I may return and lay down my life in my friend's cause and by my seal and fidelity prepare for myself a durable monument in the registers of posterity—march on with your troops join those ungrateful wretches and by falling together upon that handful of besieged folks acquire the glory of having killed a Seyd. Else if you be an open hearted soldier and you intend no mischief then assist the man with some necessaries for his voyage to the capital repress the seditions use your influence to make them accept as much as the ready money and effects at the Castle can afford and let him quit this country with safety to his person and some honour to his character.*" This speech had its full effect. Rohillah with the most solemn oaths protested that he intended no personal injury and sending for the officers of his household he directed them to prepare an equipage suitable to the Governor's rank and condition after which he dismissed his guest with every demonstration of honour sending him back fully satisfied and contented. He only required that Cootoob-eddin should not go to Shah djehan-abad where he was apprehensive lest the forlorn state of so illustrious a man might engage the Ministers to reinstate him at the head of an army in his father's Government. My father, the next day after this treaty came out of the Castle with all his people and took up his quarters at Pandj mahla, a building at some distance without the walls of Berhelly where he spent some days in much altercation about settling the respective claims of the seditions and he was every day in the hope of being soon able to get out of their hands. At last by the Divine assistance this point was gained and he arrived at the Capital.

About the middle way, as we had passed Feroh abad, we heard at once a multitude of news. That Mahmed-shah had departed this life, that his son, Ahmed-mirza, had returned, after having gained an important victory, that the Vezir Camer-eddin-qhan had been slain, that Mir-mannoo, his son, had been promoted to the two Viceroyalties, Lahor and Mooltan, and lastly, that Abool-mansoor-qhan had installed Ahmed-mirza in the Imperial throne at the seat of Shahleh-mar. Nevertheless, the death of Mahmed-shah had made such an impression in the country, that the roads were swarming with robbers and banditties, that did their business by troops, so that it became necessary to march with great precaution, and to be continually upon the watch. My father being arrived at Shah-djehan-abad, waited upon Ghazi-eddin-qhan, son to Nezam-el-mulk, in whose Djaghir was Berheily and its districts, but finding that he had but little inclination to provide for such a loss, he turned his views towards Abool-mansoor-qhan. That General, who heard of his intention, sent him Radja Maha-narain, son of his Divan, and did him the honour to invite him to his Palace, where he repaired with the Radja, and where he paid his respects to that General, now Vezir of the Empire, an interview of which I availed myself to make my bow to that Prime Minister, and to exchange a few words with him. In a few days he was pleased to bestow on my father the command over Panipoot, Sonpoot, and the thirteen Districts under the immediate management of the Qhalissah-office, after which he got him decorated by the Emperor with the grade of five thousand horse, and with the insignia of a kettle-drum and a fringed Paleky. This appointment, being so strictly connected with the Qhalissah-office, at the head of which was Issac-qhan, afforded a fair opportunity of making a connection with that great Lord himself, by whose means he obtained for Cootoob-eddin-mahmed-qhan, his valuable friend, the Fodjdaries of Hyssar and Djudjar, and he therefore invited over that invaluable pearl of the seas of prowess, generosity, and fidelity. But that hero, who had his heart full against the Afghans and Rohillas, and who held them to be so many usurpers that had deprived him of the post of Moorad-abad, an office which was hereditary in his family from the time of Feroh-syur, and which was thought in every sense equal to a

Viceroyalty, declined the appointment, having then other designs in his mind. Moorad-abad, the place of his birth, was what he wanted, and all his thoughts were bent on driving the Rohillahs from thence, and on regaining that hereditary Government. This could not be attained in the Vezir Camer-eddin-qhan's life time, who was evidently Aaly mahmed-qhan's protector. But now circumstances had become more favourable, for Aaly mahmed-qhan, who had come back with an army in those countries, and had conquered Monrad-abad and all the Districts that had once been in his power, was sometime since dead of a cancer. His conquests had been divided and parcelled out by his relations for instance by his father in law, Doondy-qhan, by Hafyz ahmed and one of his sons, and by several other Chieftains, who under pretence of securing the estate for his sons in law, had taken possession of it for themselves, insomuch that when the real heirs came to ask their right, they were only allowed some Districts sufficient for their maintenance, but were kept out of the estate by a strong grasp. In process of time, the usurpers became masters of extensive dominions, and saw themselves Lords of armies, as well as Sovereigns of a Court.

It was such dissensions that engaged Cootoob-eddin's attentions. He concluded that this was the time to fall upon the Rohillahs and to drive them from Moorad-abad and their other recent conquests and he applied to Intyzam-ed-dowlah son to Camer-eddin-qhan for the patent of the Fodjdary of those parts, a request which was complied with the more willingly, as those countries had ceased to acknowledge any subordination to the Capital. Cootoob-eddin then having his hands full of this project had some reason to excuse himself from accepting my father's proffers, and he remained at the Capital to push his point with the Minister. The latter gave him, without delay the patents he requested but went no further and he had the stinginess to assist him but feebly towards putting himself in equipage, and assembling an army with the necessaries for such an expedition. But such was the high opinion entertained of Cootoob-eddin's prowess and conduct, that he found private purses that assisted him with the sums of money which his expedition required. The same renown that procured him money procured him an army, still more than the Minister's

exhortations Vast numbers of people, accustomed to a camp-life flocked in shoals to his standard, desirous to serve under the Hercules of his age, and soon formed him something like a Court and something like an army Notwithstanding these reinforcements, he tarried awhile for a body of three hundred men that had been his war companions, and whose bravery and attachment he had always experienced, and it was with such a small force, and such a handful of bravoos, that he undertook to dispossess a nation of fresh conquerors, that could muster more than fifty thousand men in the field, and had plenty of money, cannon, rockets, and ammunition When he saw himself at the head of a force which he thought sufficient for his purpose, he came out of the city, and encamped in the environs, resolved to compass his purpose or to perish in the attempt The Afghans having got intelligence of this, assembled from all parts, and joined together at Mooradabad But on his drawing near, and even on his setting out from the Capital, they sent him several messages, offering to come to an accommodation, under condition that he would give up all pretensions to Mooradabad Their proposals were to come in for a share of the country, on the same footing with themselves, in which case they would be glad to assign him a portion suitable to his rank and pretensions, as they were desirous to see him come and enjoy the products of that country, and live happy and quiet as they did themselves But Cootoob-eddin was too high-spirited to stoop to such an agreement, and resolved to have the whole or nothing He advanced on them at the head of his force The Afghans intimidated by so much obstinacy, commenced despairing of their cause, although they were so far superior to him in numbers, and in every thing necessary for war and battle, for they were impressed with the highest opinion of the prowess and conduct of that Lion, accustomed to tear his enemies Cootoob-eddin, still advancing, was soon in sight of his foes, and an engagement took place, when that hero alighting from his horse, put himself at the head of his three hundred bravoos, and did so much execution, that the Afghans were pushed back as far as two or three cosses But he was now come into a spot full of broken ground, where their dispersed troops, observing how ill their enemy was accompanied, and how he was far from his main, commenced firing under

a variety of covers, and little by little they destroyed that formidable troop which was now reduced to twenty or thirty men, mostly wounded, but which stuck close to their heroic commander. This latter had already received several wounds, and now being aimed at on all sides like a mark, several bullets were lodged in his breast and he at last fell after having performed in that trying day a number of memorable actions. About one hundred of his braves fell round his body, mixed their blood with his own, and afforded an everlasting topic to the encomiums and regrets of both their friends and enemies. Ten or twelve men of that heroic troop having survived this scene of blood and slaughter were taken up from the field of battle, and cured of their wounds but it was only to become so many objects of envy and jealousy amongst military men who all envied their fate. O God! vouchsafe to forgive their sins and accept them in the Day of Judgment amongst the martyrs and the just!

We have already mentioned that the Imperial Prince Ahmed mirza after his victory, had come to Shaleh-mar where he was saluted Emperor by Mahmed Issac qhan, the Minister and by Djavid-qhan the eunuch as well as by all the Grandees of the city, with whom he made his entry in the Capital and at last in the Imperial Palace. The new Emperor had offered the Viceriship to Aboul mansoor qhan, but that General although so very worthy of that high office, did not choose to meddle with it during Nizam el molk's life so high an opinion he had conceived of his wisdom and power. Letters and messages went to him to Decan both from the Emperor and from his Ministers. Nizam-el mulk, already on the wing for the regions of eternity, answered by excusing himself on his old age his inability to make voyages, and his disinclination from meddling with the affairs of the Capital. He even wrote to Aboul mansoor qhan to exhort him to assume that high office and he ended his letter with these words

*You are now the most promising of the children of these days. Take that office upon yourself and exert yourself in recovering the affairs of the Empire and bringing them to some order.*

This letter had its effect on Aboul mansoor qhan but such was the high respect he bore to the very name of Nizam el mulk that he declined assuming the office in that Viceroy's life time who, however, lived but a few days after the

above letter So that on hearing that he had set out for the other world in the territory of BSrhanpoor, from whence his body had been carried to Doulet-abad, in which city it had been buried without the fortress in a garden, close to Shah-burhan-eddin, he gave his consent, and conscious of adequate abilities, he went to the Palace, where he was installed in that high office by a Qhylaat of seven pieces, to which were added four plates, full of gems and jewels So soon as he had put it on, he was saluted in full Derbar by the titles of "Principal of the Kingdom,—Centre of all Business,—Hero of the Age,—Trustworthy of all the Provinces of the Empire,—The Father of Victory,—The Hercules in Battles,—and the Generalissimo of the Imperial Forces "

But, as we have just been mentioning Nizam-el-mulk's demise, it is proper that we should leave for a while the thread of our narrative in order to say something about the characters and private life of that famous man, as well as of three more illustrious personages, who seemed to have concerted together their voyage for eternity, after having acted the most important parts on the theatre of this world These were Emir-qhan Camer-eddin-qhan, and Mahmed-shah After that, we shall, if it pleases God, the Author of all favours, revert to our history, and recount such remarkable events as have distinguished Ahmed-shah's reign and Abool-mansoor-qhan's Ministry

Umdet-el-mulk-Emir-qhan-Bahadyr, Governor of Ilah-abad, was son of another Umdet-el-mulk-Emir-qhan-Bahadyr, Governor of Cab81 His ancestor in remote times was an illustrious man, an Husseinian-Séyd, of the branch of Naamet-ollah, whose family in process of time came to be called the Mir-miranians, from a descendant of his, who received that surname (196) This family

---

(196) The word *Qhan* is always the first title of honour conferred upon a man It signifies a Prince, or a mighty Lord, and answers to the English word *Esquire*, a word without consequence, doubtless, for the translator himself is a Qhan in Hindostany, and an Esquire in English Umdet-el-mulk signifies both the greatest of the Kingdom, and a column of the Kingdom There are two branches of Séyds, the one descended from Hassen, and the other from Hosséin, both sons of Aaly, cousin to Mohammed, and of Fatemah, his daughter Hosséin is the idol of Persians, and were his father to return into the world, he would be jealous of the figure his son cuts, for as to be grandfather, he is nearly out of question, when compared to those two Mir-mirani, the Lord of Lords, it signifies in Persia, a Governor-General, or Supreme

is so very illustrious, even in Iran, that it needs neither eocomiums, nor writing. One of these Mir miranians, grandfather to our Emir qhan, on some misdemeanour or some other subject, quitted the Court of Isfahan without taking leave from Shah-abbass, the Hero of Iraco, and fled to Hindostan where he was so well received by the Emperor Djehan ghir, so to Soltao Acbar, that he soon became a favourite with him, living in his Court to the utmost splendor. His prosperity, however was constantly embittered by the thoughts of being parted from two beloved sons whom he had been obliged to leave in Iran and he often declared that he would revive and seem to commence a new life as soon as he could behold them once more. His sorrow was so continual and so affecting, that amongst the several articles of instruction given to Qhan-aalem whom that Emperor sent in Embassy to the Court of Iran the requesting and obtaining those two beloved children was a considerable one. The ambassador rendered himself so agreeable to Shah-abbass that he obtained all his requests, and these two sons amongst the rest. On their arrival at the Court of Hindostan they were honoured with the title of Qhan and promoted to the highest offices. Qhalil ollah-qhan, the eldest, rose to considerable dignities and from that time the family never ceased to move in the highest sphere of honours employs and offices. Emir qhan's uncle was Paymaster General to Aoreog zib, the Conqueror (197) and a great favourite of his. His father died Viceroy of the important Government of Cabool and so satisfied was Aoreng-zib with that Governor's abilities and talents for government and for war, that so long as he knew him in that important post, he never expressed any apprehensions from the enterprising genius of the Monarchs of Iran. So that being thus left at liberty to pursue his designs in Decan he made it a point to ascribe publicly to him every one of his conquests and victories and he used to express himself in that style in the many letters which he wrote to the Governor. Our Emir-qhan son of that Viceroy arrived by his merits and abilities at so much power and influence, and he seemed to deserve them so well that no one of the Grandees of the Empire could be compared to him. He seemed a compendium of every valuable qualification he was besides so learned that few men

could pretend to enter the lists with him. His prowess and military abilities could be compared to nothing but to the keenness of his penetration, and to the clearness of his comprehension, which gave him at once, as if by intuition, so comprehensive a view of every affair, either public or private, which was brought before him, that the very suitors thought themselves happy to be eased of so great a part of their trouble. He delighted in the company of all sorts of men of merit, whether they were soldiers of a determined valour, men of talents, or men venerable by their learning. Every species of talents attracted his notice: eminent singers, eminent dancers, and in general all kinds of eminent men, especially in composition and poetry. Whoever had been once in his company, could not part with him, and I have seen people fall so far in love with his conversation and character, that long after his death, no man of eminence ever pronounced his name, or reported any thing of him, or made his eulogium, without shedding a flood of tears. The numbers of men of merit introduced by him into the world is not small, and numbers there are to-day whom he has raised from penury and distress to affluence, dignities, and power—numbers whom he enlisted amongst the Lords of the Empire, and the Grandees of the State. He composed with great elegance and much facility, both in Persian and Hindostanv poetry, of ten uttering extempore verses, but no man ever equalled him in the talent of saying *bon mots*, and in rejoining by a repartee. He possessed the art of narration in such a high degree, that people charmed with his story, kept it hanging at their ears as a fragrant flower, whose perfume they wished to enjoy for ever. On the other hand, his generosity was such that, when he had once allowed a pension to some one, high or low, he never recalled it, but continued it to the person, although the occasion and necessity should have ceased long ago. Ingeniously delicate, everything about his person or in his Palace, received from his directions such an elegance of form, that from that moment it was taken up as a pattern by all men of taste, and thenceforward became the fashion at Court, and the standard of elegance both for apparel and furniture (198)

---

(198) There is a whole book of the remarkable sayings of Emir-qhan, and we have already mentioned two of these. There is another which shews the readiness of his wit. Mehreban-qhan, a Lord, whose disgrace he had procured, being in



Truth will not permit us to say much of Camer eddin-qhan, notwithstanding he was Prime Minister of State, and bore the titles of 'The Trust worthy of the Empire, and the Victorious in "War"'. He was son of Mahmed-amin-qhan, who had cut so great a figure in the beginning of Mahmed shah's reign and drew his pedigree from Qhadja Ehrar. Mahmed amin early quitted Tooran (199), his native country, and came into Hindostan in Aoreng zib the Conqueror's time, where he rose by degrees to the military grade of five thousand horse. In process of time he rose to the grade of seven thousand, and this happened in Feroz syūr's reign chiefly through the countenance he received from the famous Abdollah qhan which, however, did not prevent him from joining in the conspiracy for murdering Husséin-aaly qhan, brother to his benefactor. He was promoted to the Vezirship in the beginning of Mahmed shah's reign, but enjoyed that office but a few months having been seized by the claws of Death that universal Tyrant who mows down indiscriminately the Minister with the beggar. Camer-eddin-qhan, his son, enjoyed in his father's life time the office of third Paymaster General (200), and of Superintendent of the bathing place or private apartments and he was promoted to the Vezirship after Nizam el mulk's departure for Decan. In which high office he exhibited no great talents for government being slothful inattentive, indolent, and eternally immersed in all kinds of pleasures (201).

---

Mahmed-shah's company complained bitterly of an affray in which the cart-men had beaten his people. I know not how it happens, added he, but all those whose names or callings end by a *Ban* prove all faithless all ungrateful all unruly and quarrel some; *Gari-ban*, Cart man, *Ser-ban* Camel-driver *Gesser-ban*, Toll-man &c. &c. True, *My Lord Mehre-ban* interrupted Emir-qhan whose cart-men had headed the affray what you say is nothing but true. I have experienced it this longwhile, and I am glad that you are become sensible of it at last.

(199) What they call *Great-Tartary* and *Siberia* in Europe, is called *Tooran* all over Asia; but *Sasbeg Tartary* or *Turkistan* is more properly understood by that name in Hindostan.

(200) We have already observed that the Paymaster-General is always a military man and something like a Major-General.

(201) He has a Seraglio of five thousand women, which being dressed by regiments in gold or silver tissues at such a particular day were let loose in a park or garden, where he used to gallop up and down after them mounted upon a *ag*. But he had besides another Seraglio in the style of that kept by Trajan; and this was of no less than fifteen hundred persons, as handsome as could be found throughout the Empire.

but he was inoffensive, and such an enemy to oppression, that the people of the Capital remember him with regret to this very day. He was a magnificent friend, and a bountiful patron, but a weak Vezir, wanting firmness and activity. He lived in a style of the utmost grandeur and magnificence, denying himself no kind of pleasure, and passing his time in tasting of every one of them successively. He died, as we have said, a month and some days before his master Mahmed-shah's demise

This Prince, who was son to Djehan-shah-qhojista-ahter, grandson to Bahadyr-shah, and great-grandson to Aoreng-zib-Alemghir, wanted neither genius nor abilities, but he was so very good-natured, that in that respect he exceeded the measure, proper in the character of Kings and Princes. Naturally of a passive temper, and wanting firmness of mind, he was apt to be led by his servants, and he became dependent on his Ministers in such a manner, as to become as indolent as themselves, and as incapable to recover the Empire from that state of debility in which it fell under Feroh-syur. Young and handsome, and fond of all kinds of pleasures, he addicted himself to an inactive life, which intirely enervated the energy of the Empire. This inactivity of temper became still more conspicuous after Nadyr-shah had ruined his Capital, and restored him his crown. The fire of his youth and the turbulence of his passions having then subsided, his genius subsided likewise, he studied his repose above all things, and so as to become averse to business. About the end of his reign, he seemed to have taken a liking to the conversation and company of Fakyrs and religious men; and he condescended so far as to listen to a representation from them with the best grace in the world. Being naturally averse from blood and violence, his subjects under his reign enjoyed much rest and prosperity. It may be said with truth that, under his reign, the Government was still respected, the honour of the Empire supported, and the Majesty of the Throne kept alive and standing, for, after his demise, every thing went to wreck, and he may be considered as the seal and last of the Emperors of the House of Babr. A little time after his demise the words, Empire and Emperor, became only empty sounds and mere names, that conveyed no distinct meaning.

ceremony marched in the Capital with great pomp and magnificence. Being arrived at Shaleh mar, an Imperial seat in the neighbourhood of the Capital he received the applause and respects of all the Ministers of State and all the Grandees of the Empire, who proclaimed him with common voice. After this ceremony the body of Mahmed shah was brought out of the Haram sera or sanctuary and in the middle of a pompous cortege was carried upon the shoulders of all the Grandees, to the Monument of Shah nizam eddin where it was buried in a mausoleum close to that which the Prince's mother had erected for herself in her life time. The new Emperor, on the seventh of Djemady made his entry into the Capital mounted upon a moving throne and from thence he went to reside in the citadel. Five days after it being on a Friday he repaired to the great Mosque, where having heard the Qhoothah pronounced in his name with other appreciations usual on such a solemnity he returned to his Palace. In this same month both Moortesa qhan and Moorid qhan departed their lives.

The author  
quits his his-  
tory to speak  
of himself

As to myself I was about this time in great perturbation of mind having just lost Zin-eddin ahmed-qhan my patron, who had been murdered by the treachery of Shimshir qhan an afflicting event which I learned at Garipoor, and which made me retreat to Benares from whence I went to Brbaily which was my forgiven father's residence. That city is the Capital of the countries of Bedaon and Shah-djehan poor &c which constituted Nizam-el mulk Djaghir, and had been put by Ghazy eddin qhan his son under the command of my father. It was at his feet I lived sometime when a terrible event happened there, from the consequence of which I escaped with difficulty, as I shall mention in the subsequent pages.

My forgiven father had been as I have said, promoted by Aboul mansoor-qhan's influence to the Government of Soken derah when taking my leave of that General I repaired to Azim abad where I paid my respects to my glorious mother, and visited my uncles and my other relations most of whom were allied either to Arly verdly qhan himself or to his nephews. There also I took a spouse in the family, which my mother had appointed. From thence I followed my uncles to the wars and in the engagements against Mustapha-qhan I rendered such whatever services

could be expected from me. But a rupture soon took place between Abool-mansoor-qhan and my father, after the latter had remained one year in Sekenderah, and about the same time the countries of Moorad-abad, Sambal, and Berhaily having been recovered from the hands of the Rohillahs by Mahmed-shah in person, who thought proper to return those lands, and Districts to those to whom they had belonged before, either as Altumghas or Djaghirs, my father was a second time sent to command in those parts with full powers. The City of Berhaily, with the circumjacent country was a paternal Djaghir of Nizam-el-mulk's, and as in consequence of the power and usurpations of Aaly-mahmed-qhan-Rohillah, those parts had become of small revenue, no person caring to expose his purse and honor on their product, the whole had been committed to the care of my forgiven father, who found much difficulty in quieting his Government. For although Rohillah himself had been driven away, and was gone to Ser-hend, there were thousands and ten thousands of Afghans spread all over the country, where they had taken so deep root, that they had become the Zemindars of that tract, and had to their own Afghan stubbornness added all the perverseness and all the refractory behaviour inherent to the character of a Zemindar. So that, none but my father was thought equal to the task of bringing them to order and submission. Ghazy-eddin-qhan, therefore, having sent his own Steward thither for a while, recalled my father, and after conferring with him some time, and furnishing him with every necessary, and with full powers, he sent him back with instructions. My forgiven father, thus supported, raised a good body of troops, and marching throughout the country, he soon brought the city of Berhaily and the seventeen other Districts under order and controul. For a further security, he thought it a piece of policy to admit the principal Afghans amongst his troops, and thus Serdar-qhan, of Berhaily, and Mangal-qhan, of Telhur, took service with him, each at the head of about two thousand men, as did another Afghan, of illustrious race, with seventeen hundred others. This last was called Pir-ahmed, and was a descendant of Sheh-abdol-cadyr-Ghilani, the great Saint of the Afghan nation.

But these were not all the turbulent spirits of that country. There lived then in those parts a man of great character and

distinction, a descendant of Uzmet ollah-qhan, one of the two brothers who had so long commanded in Moorad-abad. It was Cootoob eddin mohammed qhan Babadyr who was nephew to Ferid-eddin qhan a nobleman in whose service Aaly mahmed qhan, Rohillah had been for a length of time. He lived in the Castle of Cha-chnett, and seemed inclined to quarrel with my father, but he had but a small force and still less money. My father sent him several mild rebukes on his improper behaviour but all to so little purpose that he was at last obliged to think of correction and chastisement. Cootoob-eddin's troops seeing that he had brought the Governor of the country upon himself deserted him immediately and there remained to him only twenty or thirty ancient friends and servants who would not leave him but chose to shut themselves up with him in the above Castle. My father hearing of this surrounded it immediately and went several times round the walls on his elephant to find out a proper place for an assault. It must be observed that Cootoob-eddin qhan greatly valued himself upon his skill in shooting with a musket, and in fact he was renowned all over the country for making use of balls and muskets of twice the size and length of the ordinary ones and he fired with so much precision that he never missed his mark. Several of his followers were equal to him in that art. Now as my father was going every day round the walls both himself and his best marks men repeatedly took aim and repeatedly fired at him without being able to hit any thing but the boards of his hemhary or his cushions or his clothes and turban. Cootoob-eddin qhan incensed at his eternally missing his enemy threw down his gun swore he would never fire again and sent to my father to desire a conference and an accommodation. This interview was requested with a design to kill my father in the middle of the conference the man being of such a determined daringness that he never stuck at any thing to compass his own ends. His few followers being as daring as himself resolved to stand by him in that trying occasion. But as they pretended fears and suspicions it was agreed that they should come armed and the agreement was guaranteed by Seyd aaly qhan my father's fourth brother and by Pir ahmed, the Rohillah Commander. On the appointed day they came out of the Castle, and were received by my uncle in his tent, in expectation of

Troubles in  
Rohil-cu d.

being sent for by my father. But that nobleman unwilling to meet so hastily a party of desperadoes, whom he knew to be highly incensed against him, returned for answer, that he hoped they would repose themselves the remainder of the day in his brother's tent, as his guests, and that the next morning he would give them the meeting. The man hearing such an answer, suspected some treachery, and although he with his ten or twelve men was sitting amongst a multitude of armed Afghans, and close to my uncle and Pir-ahmed, he expressed his resentment without minding his situation, and said that they ought, with their beards as men, to wear long hair upon their heads, as women, openly reproaching them at the same time, with their faithlessness in bringing him in such a deceitful manner out of the Castle. My uncle and Pir-ahmed, without minding his air and tone of voice, represented mildly that no breach of faith would happen, and that no harm was intended to him, but that the Governor being eternally busy, might have particular reasons for his putting off the interview till to-morrow, and that meanwhile there was no harm at all in his requesting him to be his guest. That officer was yet speaking, when several sneakers of a cool lemonade were brought in, and a moment after these were followed by a number of tables, covered with a variety of costly and dainty victuals, to which was added a message from my father, requesting his guest to partake of such an entertainment as his camp afforded, and to take some repose until the next morning. The man, who had been both hungry and angry all this while, finding himself so gently used, dropped his resentment, and fell to eating so heartily that at the end of his meal he had commenced speaking in a friendly manner. After his dinner, some presents were sent him, which he accepted. Cootoob-eddin-ghan, seeing that no harm could be intended, altered his resolution within his heart, and became reconciled to my father. The next morning, the Derbar being full, the new guest was conducted to the audience-tent between my uncle and Pir-ahmed, followed by a numerous throng of Afghan officers. My father on descrying him got up, and having embraced him, made him sit with himself upon the same Mesned, and he received his friends as they approached one by one, in the manner which his guest seemed to wish. Cootoob-eddin overcome by so much

kindness and so unexpected a condescension, could not help exposing the intention with which he had originally come out of the Castle and he added that the sudden change wrought in his heart yesterday, together with his missing perpetually his aim,—he who had never lost a bullet—were events which he could ascribe to nothing but to some sacredness inherent in his person and doubtless derived to him from his Séyd ancestors. My father bearing this could not help laughing and he continued speaking to the man with so much regard and favour that he made a conquest of his heart after which he proposed to him to take service in his troops and to attach himself to his person as a friend and a companion. Cootoob-eddin, after stipulating some conditions, accepted the proffer and thus enmity and diffidence ended in friendship and confidence.

So much sudden favour and such marks of distinction excited sentiments of envy and discontent in Pir-ahmed a principal Commander amongst the Afghans who thought he had more right to them himself. His mind was so ulcerated that every fresh kindness shewn to the new guest seemed to thrust thorns and scorpion stings in his heart which otherwise was disinclined on account of the difference of sect between himself and his master, the latter being a zealous Shyah and the other a turbulent Sunni. Whereas Cootoob-eddin as well as his friend, Sheb-mûez-eddin-ghan, (an officer now living at Lucknow, and whose feats of valour and generosity we shall have occasion to mention) were of a race celebrated for their zealous attachments to the tenets of the Shyahs as well as for their illustrious achievements and for their being descended of persons attached to the service of the Holy house (195) (upon all whom be grace!) He was himself respected by the countrymen as their Lord, and their master's son and it was on that very account that my father had introduced him in all the affairs of administration. This alienated entirely Pir-ahmed's heart. He quitted the service, and sought a revenge in exciting troubles and as the Afghans in my father's service as well as those all over the country were all

---

(195) It appears that the Shyahs, by the words *Holy-house* understand the Temple that contains the remains of Hoeslin at Kerbelah near Bagdad, whereas with the generality of Mussulmen the words Holy house, or those of house of God signify always the Kaaba or square house within the Temple of Mecca

either his tenants, or men accustomed to serve under him, they made it a point to join him, and to obey his summonses, and the evil rose to such a height, that my father was obliged to march against him, and to bring him to order Cootoob-eddin, who was appointed his General, took the command of the Vanguard. An engagement ensued, when Pir-ahmed dividing his troops in two, opposed his bravest and best marksmen to Cootoob-eddin, and with the rest he concealed himself in the ruined houses of an abandoned village, and in some fields grown over with tall sugar-canes, expecting to have my father at his discretion from such an ambuscade. The engagement being already commenced, Cootoob-eddin, with his bravest men, taking his musket, and quitting his horse, rushed through the thickest of the enemy, bearing down every thing before him. They say, that whilst he was taking aim with his gun, a trooper of the enemy's sprung at his side, and crying "*Cootoob-eddin-mahmed-ghan, have at you,*" he advanced with his sabre up-lifted. Cootoob-eddin altering only the direction of his piece, answered, "*have at you yourself,*" and laid him sprawling on the ground. That brave troop of his, animated by such exertions, continued to advance through the enemy's ranks, which at last they broke entirely, and forced to an open flight, but by this time he had already advanced so far from his main, as to be within reach of that piece of sugar-cane where Pir-ahmed was waiting for my father, and the latter approaching on the opposite side, he was set upon with the utmost fury, by a body of horse that rushed out suddenly, put to flight most of those that were with him, and struck a panic in those that remained. In this state of things, my father was putting his foot out of the amhary to jump down from his elephant, and to fight on foot, when the son of Cootoob-eddin, a young man whom he had taken upon an elephant, out of regard for his father, interposed, and he observed, that so long as himself, his soldier, was alive, with so many others, such exertions would be unbecoming a General. Meanwhile some of his relations and men, seeing their Commander's danger, quitted their horses, and surrounding his elephant, they mixed with the enemy, soon covered the ground with the blood of many of them, and put the whole to a stand. Pir-ahmed was advancing himself, and encouraging his people to



pnsh on but Cootoob eddin who now was at hand, advanced to charge him Pir-ahmed fatigued already by the resistance he had met round my father's elephant, from that valiant troop that fought like lions accustomed to tear their enemies, and thinking himself unequal to a fresh engagement, gave way, and he retreated full of shame and confusion whilst a zephyr of victory rising over the field of battle, unfurled the drooping standards of my father's troops and cheered their hearts Pir-ahmed however was overcome, but not ruined and he soon came to another engagement, but was so severely beaten that his Afghans, humbled and dispirited slipped away one by one, and dispersed to their homes And thus tranquillity being re-established my father with Cootoob-eddin qhan, his friend, lived happy in the middle of relations acquaintances and soldiers

It was about this time, that, inspired by a desire of kissing the sacred paternal feet I quitted Azim-abad a little before Shumshir qhan's treason and in the first days of Moharrem of the year 1161 I arrived at Berhaily by the way of Ghazipoor and Banares, where I was favoured with the blessing of seeing the paternal face It was about the time when the Imperial Prince Ahmed mirza had gained that great victory over the Abdalies, which we have sometime ago mentioned It was at this very time that Aaly mahmed-qhan Rnhillah who from being the Vezir Cammer-eddin-qhan's prisoner had been by his influence set at liberty and moreover promoted to the command of Serhend, thought proper to quit his post after which he soon assembled an army of forty thousand Afghans, and marched by Soharen poor and Gundj poor across the Dymna, directly to Minrad-abad and Berhaily where he had once commanded with so much power and having possessed himself of that Capital where he established his Government and authority, he crossed the Ganga to attack my father As soon as this intelligence was spread in the country, the Afghans that constituted the greatest part of my father's troops being all either countrymen or acquaintances of Aaly mahmed-qhan's or attached to him personally were overjoyed to see him again amongst themselves and pretending that they were in arrears of pay by some months, they assembled in bodies and probably with no good intention surrounded the house where my father lived

whithin the Castle of Berheily He had with him only about three hundred Hindostanies, from about Shah-djehan-abad, and a small number of friends, relations, and servants By this time Aaly-mahmed-qhan being arrived within ten cosses of Berheily, the situation of the besieged was become critical In this conjuncture Cootoob-eddin-qhan took my father aside, and addressed him in these words, "*Rohillah is come upon us with*  
"*an army which we cannot pretend to fight, admitting even that*  
"*he had not been joined by the Afghans of these countries,*  
"*who have flocked to his standard in as great numbers as if*  
"*they had been so many locusts or pismires On the other*  
"*hand, your very soldiers are now besieging you, and thirst-*  
"*ing after your blood I see then no other party left but*  
"*this —I will go out to meet Aaly-mahmed-qhan-Rohillah, and*  
"*examine his sentiments respecting you If he is not ill in-*  
"*clined towards you, I shall engage him to let you extricate*  
"*yourself from your actual difficulties, if I discover that he*  
"*means you any ill, then I shall kill him instantly, and, as*  
"*I shall be dispatched myself upon the spot, you may then*  
"*manage as your fortune shall point out*" This proposal my father accepted; and the brave and faithful Cootoob-eddin, having sallied out of the fort with a few of his most trusty men, went to Aaly-mahmed-qhan's quarters Being arrived at that General's tent, he left his men at the door of the first enclosure, and went in with only two or three of them Meanwhile those who were left without, being all extremely attached to him, and at all times ready to shed their blood for his sake, could not see him going in so weakly accompanied without being somewhat alarmed, so that two or three of them wanting to get in, were stopped by the Chopdars and other people at the General's door Cootoob-eddin hearing the noise returned back, and striking one of the Chopdars slightly over the head, he asked him why he presumed to stop his people This action having increased the tumult, some great mischief was likely to ensue, when Aaly-mahmed-qhan, surprised at the cries and noise, ran bare-footed out of the enclosure, and taking that illustrious hero by the hand, he drew him to his breast, embraced him tenderly, and apologised for what had come to pass After which he carried him within the tent where he made him sit in the middle of his own Mesned,

Singular  
character of  
Cootoob-  
eddin's

himself taking a seat at the corner of it and his behaviour in every thing else was very respectful After interchanging the usual excuses and some customary compliments, Cootoob-eddio addressed him in these words ' You doubtless, have heard that I am become an intimate friend of the valiant Seyd hedäiet ' aaly-ghan the Lion in Wars an attachment which he has ' been pleased to repay with every mark of kindness and love You know likewise that his very soldiers enticed by the hopes of your coming have ungratefully turned their arms against ' their lord and master and are now thinking of mischief If ' such is your intention also dismiss me that I may return and lay down my life in my friend's cause and by my zeal and fidelity prepare for myself a durable monument in the ' registers of posterity—march on with your troops join those ' ungrateful wretches and by falling together upon that hand ful of besieged folks acquire the glory of having killed a Seyd Else if you be an open hearted soldier and you intend no mischief then assist the man with some necessaries for his voy ' age to the capital repress the seditious use your influence to make them accept as much as the ready money and effects at the Castle can afford and let him quit this country with safety ' to his person and some honour to his character ' This speech had its full effect Rohillah with the most solemn oaths protest ed that he intended no personal injury and, sending for the officers of his household, he directed them to prepare an equi page suitable to the Governor's rank and condition after which he dismissed his guest with every demonstration of honour, sending him back fully satisfied and contented He only required that Cootoob eddin should not go to Shah djehan abad where he was apprehensive lest the forlorn state of so illustrious a man might engage the Ministers to reinstate him at the head of an army in his father's Government My father, the next day after this treaty came out of the Castle with all his people, and took up his quarters at Paodj mahla a building at some distance without the walls of Berhëilly, where he spent some days in much altercation about settling the respective claims of the seditious and he was every day in the hope of being soon able to get out of their hands At last by the Divine assistance this point was gained and he arrived at the Capital

About the middle way, as we had passed Feroh abad, we heard at once a multitude of news. That Mahmed-shah had departed this life, that his son, Ahmed-mirza, had returned, after having gained an important victory, that the Vezir Camer-eddin-qhan had been slain, that Mir-mannoo, his son, had been promoted to the two Viceroyalties, Lahor and Mooltan, and lastly, that Abool-mansoor-qhan had installed Ahmed-mirza in the Imperial throne at the seat of Shahleh-mar. Nevertheless, the death of Mahmed-shah had made such an impression in the country, that the roads were swarming with robbers and banditties, that did their business by troops, so that it became necessary to march with great precaution, and to be continually upon the watch. My father being arrived at Shah-djehan-abad, waited upon Ghazi-eddin-qhan, son to Nezam-el-mulk, in whose Djaghir was Berherly and its districts; but finding that he had but little inclination to provide for such a loss, he turned his views towards Abool-mansoor-qhan. That General, who heard of his intention, sent him Radja Maha-narain, son of his Divan, and did him the honour to invite him to his Palace, where he repaired with the Radja, and where he paid his respects to that General, now Vezir of the Empire, an interview of which I availed myself to make my bow to that Prime Minister, and to exchange a few words with him. In a few days he was pleased to bestow on my father the command over Panipoot, Sonpoot, and the thirteen Districts under the immediate management of the Qhalissah-office, after which he got him decorated by the Emperor with the grade of five thousand horse, and with the insignia of a kettle-drum and a fringed Paleky. This appointment, being so strictly connected with the Qhalissah-office, at the head of which was Issac-qhan, afforded a fair opportunity of making a connection with that great Lord himself, by whose means he obtained for Cootoob-eddin-mahmed-qhan, his valuable friend, the Fodjdaries of Hyssar and Djudjar, and he therefore invited over that invaluable pearl of the seas of prowess, generosity, and fidelity. But that hero, who had his heart full against the Afghans and Rohillas, and who held them to be so many usurpers that had deprived him of the post of Moorad-abad, an office which was hereditary in his family from the time of Feroh-syur, and which was thought in every sense equal to a

Viceroyalty, declined the appointment, having then other designs in his mind. Moorad-ahad, the place of his birth, was what he wanted, and all his thoughts were bent on driving the Rohillahs from thence, and on regaining that hereditary Government. This could not be attained in the Vezir Camer-eddin qhan's life time, who was evidently Aaly mahmed-qhan's protector. But now circumstances had become more favourable, for Aaly mahmed qhan, who had come back with an army in those countries, and had conquered Moorad-abad and all the Districts that had once been in his power, was sometime since dead of a cancer. His conquests had been divided and parcelled out by his relations, for instance, by his father in law, Doondy-qhan, by Hafyz ahmed and one of his sons, and by several other Chieftains who under pretence of securing the estate for his sons-in law, had taken possession of it for themselves, insomuch that when the real heirs came to ask their right, they were only allowed some Districts sufficient for their maintenance but were kept out of the estate by a strong grasp. In process of time the usurpers became masters of extensive dominions, and saw themselves Lords of armies as well as Sovereigns of a Court.

It was such dissensions that engaged Cootoob-eddin's attentions. He concluded that this was the time to fall upon the Rohillahs and to drive them from Moorad-abad and their other recent conquests and he applied to Intizam-ed-dowlah son to Camer-eddin qhan for the patent of the Fodjdary of those parts, a request which was complied with the more willingly, as those countries had ceased to acknowledge any subordination to the Capital. Cootoob eddin then having his hands full of this project had some reason to excuse himself from accepting my father's proffers, and he remained at the Capital to push his point with the Minister. The latter gave him without delay the patents he requested but went no farther and he had the stinginess to assist him but feebly towards putting himself in equipage, and assembling an army with the necessaries for such an expedition. But such was the high opinion entertained of Cootoob-eddin's prowess and conduct, that he found private purses that assisted him with the sums of money which his expedition required. The same renown that procured him money, procured him an army, still more than the Minister's

exhortations Vast numbers of people, accustomed to a camp-life flocked in shoals to his standard, desirous to serve under the Hercules of his age, and soon formed him something like a Court and something like an army Notwithstanding these reinforcements, he tarried awhile for a body of three hundred men that had been his war companions, and whose bravery and attachment he had always experienced, and it was with such a small force, and such a handful of bravoës, that he undertook to dispossess a nation of fresh conquerors, that could muster more than fifty thousand men in the field, and had plenty of money, cannon, rockets, and ammunition When he saw himself at the head of a force which he thought sufficient for his purpose, he came out of the city, and encamped in the environs, resolved to compass his purpose or to perish in the attempt The Afghans having got intelligence of this, assembled from all parts, and joined together at Mooradabad But on his drawing near, and even on his setting out from the Capital, they sent him several messages, offering to come to an accommodation, under condition that he would give up all pretensions to Mooradabad Their proposals were to come in for a share of the country, on the same footing with themselves, in which case they would be glad to assign him a portion suitable to his rank and pretensions, as they were desirous to see him come and enjoy the products of that country, and live happy and quiet as they did themselves But Cootoob-eddin was too high-spirited to stoop to such an agreement, and resolved to have the whole or nothing He advanced on them at the head of his force The Afghans intimidated by so much obstinacy, commenced despairing of their cause, although they were so far superior to him in numbers, and in every thing necessary for war and battle, for they were impressed with the highest opinion of the prowess and conduct of that Lion, accustomed to tear his enemies Cootoob-eddin, still advancing, was soon in sight of his foes, and an engagement took place, when that hero alighting from his horse, put himself at the head of his three hundred bravoës, and did so much execution, that the Afghans were pushed back as far as two or three cosses But he was now come into a spot full of broken ground, where their dispersed troops, observing how ill their enemy was accompanied, and how he was far from his main, commenced firing under

a variety of covers, and little by little they destroyed that formidable troop, which was now reduced to twenty or thirty men, mostly wounded, but which stuck close to their heroic commander. This latter had already received several wounds and now being aimed at on all sides like a mark, several bullets were lodged in his breast, and he at last fell after having performed in that trying day a number of memorable actions. About one hundred of his bravoes fell round his body, mixed their blood with his own, and afforded an everlasting topic to the encomiums and regrets of both their friends and enemies. Ten or twelve men of that heroic troop having survived this scene of blood and slaughter, were taken up from the field of battle, and cured of their wounds but it was only to become so many objects of envy and jealousy amongst military men who all envied their fate. O God! vouchsafe to forgive their sins, and accept them in the Day of Judgment amongst the martyrs and the just!

We have already mentioned that the Imperial Prince, Ahmed mirza after his victory had come to Shaleh-mar where he was saluted Emperor by Mahmed Issac-ghan the Minister and by Djavid-ghan, the conuch as well as by all the Grandees of the city, with whom he made his entry in the Capital and at last in the Imperial Palace. The new Emperor had offered the Viceroyship to Aboul mansoor qhan, but that General although so very worthy of that high office, did not choose to meddle with it during Nizam el mulk's life, so high an opinion he had conceived of his wisdom and power. Letters and messages went to him to Decan both from the Emperor and from his Ministers. Nizam-el mulk, already on the wing for the regions of eternity, answered by excusing himself on his old age, his inability to make voyages and his disinclination from meddling with the affairs of the Capital. He even wrote to Aboul mansoor qhan to exhort him to assume that high office and he ended his letter with these words: *You are now the most promising of the children of*

*these days. Take that office upon yourself and exert yourself in recovering the affairs of the Empire and bringing them to some order.* This letter had its effect on Aboul mansoor qhan but such was the high respect he bore to the very name of Nizam-el mulk that he declined assuming the office in that Viceroy's lifetime who, however, lived but a few days after the

above letter So that on hearing that he had set out for the other world in the territory of B8rhanpoor, from whence his body had been carried to Doulet-abad, in which city it had been buried without the fortress in a garden, close to Shah-burhan-eddin, he gave his consent, and conscious of adequate abilities, he went to the Palace, where he was installed in that high office by a Qhylaát of seven pieces, to which were added four plates, full of gems and jewels. So soon as he had put it on, he was saluted in full Derbar by the titles of "Principal of the Kingdom,—Centre of all Business,—Hero of the Age,—Trustworthy of all the Provinces of the Empire,—The Father of Victory,—The Hercules in Battles,—and the Generalissimo of the Imperial Forces"

But, as we have just been mentioning Nizam-el-mulk's demise, it is proper that we should leave for a while the thread of our narrative in order to say something about the characters and private life of that famous man, as well as of three more illustrious personages, who seemed to have concerted together their voyage for eternity, after having acted the most important parts on the theatre of this world These were Emir-qhan Camer-eddin-qhan, and Mahmed-shah After that, we shall, if it pleases God, the Author of all favours, revert to our history, and recount such remarkable events as have distinguished Ahmed-shah's reign and Abool-mansoor-qhan's Ministry

Umdet-el-mulk-Emir-qhan-Bahadyr, Governor of Ilah-abad, was son of another Umdet-el-mulk-Emir-qhan-Bahadyr, Governor of Cab8l His ancestor in remote times was an illustrious man, an Husseinian-Séyd, of the branch of Naamet-ollah, whose family in process of time came to be called the Mir-miranians, from a descendant of his, who received that surname (196) This family

---

(196) The word *Qhan* is always the first title of honour conferred upon a man It signifies a Prince, or a mighty Lord, and answers to the English word *Esquire*, a word without consequence, doubtless, for the translator himself is a Qhan in Hindostany, and an Esquire in English Umdet-el-mulk signifies both the greatest of the Kingdom, and a column of the Kingdom There are two branches of Séyds, the one descended from Hassen, and the other from Hosséin, both sons of Aaly, cousin to Mohammed, and of Fatemah, his daughter Hossein is the idol of Persians, and were his father to return into the world, he would be jealous of the figure his son cuts, for as to be grandfather, he is nearly out of question, when compared to those two Mir-mirani, the Lord of Lords, it signifies in Persia, a Governor General, or Supreme



is so very illustrious, even in Iran, that it needs neither encomiums nor writing. One of these Mir miranians, grandfather to our Emir-qhan, on some misdemeanour or some other subject, quitted the Court of Isfahan without taking leave from Shah-ahbass, the Hero of Iran, and fled to Hindostan where he was so well received by the Emperor Djehan ghir, son to Soltan Acbar, that he soon became a favourite with him, living in his Court in the utmost splendour. His prosperity however was constantly embittered by the thoughts of being parted from two beloved sons, whom he had been obliged to leave in Iran and he often declared that he would revive and seem to commence a new life as soon as he could behold them once more. His sorrow was so continual and so affecting that amongst the several articles of instruction given to Qhan-aalem whom that Emperor sent in Embassy to the Court of Iran the requesting and obtaining those two beloved children was a considerable one. The ambassador rendered himself so agreeable to Shah-ahbass, that he obtained all his requests, and these two sons amongst the rest. On their arrival at the Court of Hindostan they were honoured with the title of Qhan and promoted to the highest offices. Qhablollah-qhan the eldest, rose to considerable dignities and from that time the family never ceased to move in the highest sphere of honours employs and offices. Emir qhan's uncle was Paymaster General to Aoreng-zib, the Conqueror (1677) and a great favourite of his. His father died Viceroy of the important Government of Cabool and so satisfied was Aoreng-zib with that Governor's abilities and talents for government and for war that so long as he knew him in that important post, he never expressed any apprehensions from the enterprising genius of the Monarchs of Iran. So that being thus left at liberty to pursue his designs in Decan he made it a point to ascribe publicly to him every one of his conquests and victories, and he used to express himself in that style in the many letters which he wrote to the Governor. Our Emir-qhan son of that Viceroy arrived by his merits and abilities at so much power and influence and he seemed to deserve them so well that no one of the Grandees of the Empire could be compared to him. He seemed a compendium of every valuable qualification he was besides so learned that few men

could pretend to enter the lists with him. His prowess and military abilities could be compared to nothing but to the keenness of his penetration, and to the clearness of his comprehension, which gave him at once, as if by intuition, so comprehensive a view of every affair, either public or private, which was brought before him, that the very suitors thought themselves happy to be eased of so great a part of their trouble. He delighted in the company of all sorts of men of merit, whether they were soldiers of a determined valour, men of talents, or men venerable by their learning. Every species of talents attracted his notice: eminent singers, eminent dancers, and in general all kinds of eminent men, especially in composition and poetry. Whoever had been once in his company, could not part with him, and I have seen people fall so far in love with his conversation and character, that long after his death, no man of eminence ever pronounced his name, or reported any thing of him, or made his eulogium, without shedding a flood of tears. The numbers of men of merit introduced by him into the world is not small, and numbers there are to-day whom he has raised from penury and distress to affluence, dignities, and power—numbers whom he enlisted amongst the Lords of the Empire, and the Grandees of the State. He composed with great elegance and much facility, both in Persian and Hindostany poetry, of ten uttering extempore verses, but no man ever equalled him in the talent of saying *bon mots*, and in rejoining by a repartee. He possessed the art of narration in such a high degree, that people charmed with his story, kept it hanging at their ears as a fragrant flower, whose perfume they wished to enjoy for ever. On the other hand, his generosity was such that, when he had once allowed a pension to some one, high or low, he never recalled it, but continued it to the person, although the occasion and necessity should have ceased long ago. Ingeniously delicate, everything about his person or in his Palace, received from his directions such an elegance of form, that from that moment it was taken up as a pattern by all men of taste, and thenceforward became the fashion at Court, and the standard of elegance both for apparel and furniture (198)

---

(198) There is a whole book of the remarkable sayings of Emir-qhan, and we have already mentioned two of these. There is another which shews the readiness of his wit. Mehreban-qhan, a Lord, whose disgrace he had procured, being in

Truth will not permit us to say much of Camer-eddin-ghan, notwithstanding he was Prime Minister of State, and bore the titles of "The Trust worthy of the Empire, and the Victorious in War" He was son of Mahmed-amin-ghan, who had cut so great a figure in the beginning of Mahmed shah's reign, and drew his pedigree from Qhadja Ebrar Mahmed-amin early quitted Tooran (199), his native country and came into Hindostan in Aoreng-zib the Conqueror's time, where he rose by degrees to the military grade of five thousand horse In process of time he rose to the grade of seven thousand and this happened in Feroh-syūr's reign chiefly through the countenance he received from the famous Abdollah-ghan which however, did not prevent him from joining in the conspiracy for murdering Husséin-aaly-ghan, brother to his benefactor He was promoted to the Vezirship in the beginning of Mahmed shah's reign, but enjoyed that office but a few months, having been seized by the claws of Death that universal Tyrant who mows down indiscriminately the Minister with the beggar Camer-eddin-ghan, his son enjoyed in his father's life time the office of third Paymaster General (200), and of Superintendent of the bathing place or private apartments and he was promoted to the Vezirship after Nizam-el-mulk's departure for Decan, in which high office he exhibited no great talents for government being slothful, inattentive, indolent, and eternally immersed in all kinds of pleasures (201)

---

Mahmed-shah's company complained bitterly of an affray in which the cart men had beaten his people. I know not how it happens, added he, but all those whose names or callings end by a *Bax* prove all faithless all ungrateful all unruly and quarrelsome; *Garibax*, Cart man, *Ser-Serax* Camel-driver *Gossir-bax*, Toll-man &c., &c. True, *My Lord Makre-bax* interrupted Emīr-ghan whose cart-men had beaded the affray; what you say is nothing but true I have experienced it this long while and I am glad that you are become sensible of it at last.

(199) What they call *Great Tartary* and *Siberia* in Europe, is called *Tooran* all over Asia; but *East-Indy Tartary* or *Turkestan* is more properly understood by that name in Hindostan

(200) We have already observed that the Paymaster General is always a military man, and something like a Major General.

(201) He has a *Seraglio* of five thousand women, which being dressed by regiments in gold or silver tissues at such a particular day were let loose in a park or garden, where he used to gallop up and down after them mounted upon a nag But he had besides another *Seraglio* in the style of that kept by Trajan and this was of no less than fifteen hundred persons, as handsome as could be found throughout the Empire

but he was inoffensive, and such an enemy to oppression, that the people of the Capital remember him with regret to this very day. He was a magnificent friend, and a bountiful patron, but a weak Vezir, wanting firmness and activity. He lived in a style of the utmost grandeur and magnificence, denying himself no kind of pleasure, and passing his time in tasting of every one of them successively. He died, as we have said, a month and some days before his master Mahmed-shah's demise

This Prince, who was son to Djehan-shah-qhojista-ahter, grandson to Bahadyr-shah, and great-grandson to Aoreng-zib-Alemghir, wanted neither genius nor abilities, but he was so very good-natured, that in that respect he exceeded the measure, proper in the character of Kings and Princes. Naturally of a passive temper, and wanting firmness of mind, he was apt to be led by his servants, and he became dependent on his Ministers in such a manner, as to become as indolent as themselves, and as incapable to recover the Empire from that state of debility in which it fell under Ferozh-syur. Young and handsome, and fond of all kinds of pleasures, he addicted himself to an inactive life, which intirely enervated the energy of the Empire. This inactivity of temper became still more conspicuous after Nadyr-shah had ruined his Capital, and restored him his crown. The fire of his youth and the turbulence of his passions having then subsided, his genius subsided likewise, he studied his repose above all things, and so as to become averse to business. About the end of his reign, he seemed to have taken a liking to the conversation and company of Fakyr and religious men; and he condescended so far as to listen to a representation from them with the best grace in the world. Being naturally averse from blood and violence, his subjects under his reign enjoyed much rest and prosperity. It may be said with truth that, under his reign, the Government was still respected, the honour of the Empire supported, and the Majesty of the Throne kept alive and standing, for, after his demise, every thing went to wreck, and he may be considered as the seal and last of the Emperors of the House of Babr. A little time after his demise the words, Empire and Emperor, became only empty sounds and mere names, that conveyed no distinct meaning.

The principal of those that contributed to all that decay, was Nizam el mulk, who was styled the wise Minister(202) He was son to Ghazi eddin-qhan Bahadyr, and grandson to Abed qhan His own name was Camer-eddin, and he descended from Sheh sheab-eddin. His maternal grandfather, Saad-ollah qhan, was supreme Vezir to the Emperor Shah djehan, but his paternal grandfather, Abed-qhan, was one of the most venerable Magistrates of Samarcand(203), from whence he came into Hindostan in that Emperor's life time, and was taken into the service of the Imperial Prince Aoreng zib, who on his mounting the throne, raised him to the grade of five thousand horse, and twice promoted him to the office of Sadr-el soodoor(204) Being at the siege of Golconda(205) with that Prince he was struck by a musket ball and fell at once both from the paltry of fortune, and the horse of existence His son, Shehab-eddin, came to be one of the Lords and Grandees of Aoreng zib's Court, and rose by degrees to the grade of seven thousand horse, and to the title of 'Victorious in War' serving as a principal General in his armies At the taking of Bidjapoor he was decorated with other titles of honor After his master's demise, we find him Governor of G8djrat under Bahadyr shah He died in the year 1122 and left a son called Camer eddin qhan *alias* Nizam-el mulk, who in Aoreng zib's reign was honoured with the surname of The Sahr-drawing Lord(206) and the grade of five thousand horse At the end of that Prince's reign, he was Governor of Bidjapoor (207) In the beginning of Bahadyr shah's reign, he was Governor of A8d, with the title of "Lord of the Age(208)" A little after we find him disgusted at the absolute authority assumed by the Vezir

---

(202) Asef-djah, he that sits in Asef's stead, which Asef was Solomon's Vezir

(203) Samar-cand, the Maracanda of Quint-Curtius, is now a great city of Eusebgh Tartary

(204) Sadr-el-soodoor Bishop of Bishops, or great Almoner

(205) Gol-conda was once the Gentoo name of Bagnagar now Haldernabad. It is still the name of a very large Fortress at four cosses from thence *Feres djung* is translated in English, *Victorious in War*

(206) Chln-kyldj-qhan are the text of the words *Sword-drawing Lord* They are Turkish the original language of all that family

(207) Bidja-poor is the same as the Vizapoor or more properly of the Vizapoor of our charts.

(208) Qhan-d88ran.

Assed-qhan, or his son, the Generalissimo Zulficar-qhan, and resigning both his Government and title, to take up the garb of a Fakyr, and to lead a retired life. At the beginning of the reign of Muéz-eddin-djehandar-shah, he was requested to re-assume his grade and title, and to appear again at Court. On the first year of Feroh-syur's reign, he was decorated with the titles of "Composer of the Kingdom (209)," and "Victorious in Wars," promoted to the grade of five thousand horse, and appointed to the Viceroyalty of Decan. But some time after, that important office having been bestowed on Hussén-aaly-qhan, the famous brother of Abdollah-qhan, Nizam-el-mulk returned to Court, where, as an atonement for that recall, he received the great Fodjdary of Moorad-abad, which was equal to a Viceroyalty. Under the young Emperor, Refy-el-derjat, he was, by Abdollah-qhan's recommendation, promoted to the Government of Malva. But that did not prevent his falling out with him, as well as with the Viceroy, his brother; for in the beginning of Mahmed-shah's reign, he gave them the slip, and went into Decan, where he at once possessed himself of some of the provinces that go by that name, and in process of time, of all the six and-a-half Governments that compose that part of the Empire. On Mahmed-amin-qhan's demise, he was promoted to the office of Vezir, which he held but a short time. Being dissatisfied with the Grandees of the Court, and likewise with the Emperor himself, whose sentiments seemed altered, he quitted the Court, and retired to his Government of Decan, with which he lived satisfied. Still he was recalled to Court, and on Qhan-doðran's death, was decorated with the title of "Lord of Lords (210)," then vacant. But hearing at the same time that his second son, Nassyr-djung, whom he had appointed Deputy in Decan, had become rebellious, he resigned his office of "Lord of Lords," in behalf of his eldest son, Ghazi-eddin-qhan, and returned again to Decan, as we have already mentioned in the First Volume, and likewise in this Volume. Nor is that Decan to be thought of slightly. It contains the aggregate dominions of several ancient Kings, and it is in such an extensive tract that he governed with an absolute authority for the space of seven and

---

(209) Nizam-el-mulk-Nassyr-djung

(210) Emir-ul-umera,

thirty years His character was so highly respected amongst all the Lords and Grandees of Mahmed shah's Court, although some of them were of equal dignity, that they never wrote or spoke to him but as to their superior, and never demeaned themselves in his presence but with deference and submission

Covetousness and ambition seemed to be the basis of his character but if we can pass over that, we shall find him endowed with a number of excellent qualities He was a man of eminent merit, who filled a very exalted station that equalled him to the greatest Kings, with all the talents and all the sublime qualifications which his situation required His Palace was at all times open to the poor, the needy, and the aged, as well as to the learned and the deserving in one word to all that had any suit to prefer To all these he ever paid a strict attention, being careful to relieve their wants His character for distinguishing merit, and for rewarding it to its full extent, was so universally spread, that men of parts, and also people of all sorts, flocked to his Court from all the neighbouring countries, from Arabia, and from Mavera-al nahr (211) from Qhorasan, from Harac, and from R8m and all were sure to advance their fortunes in his service Fond of public works, he finished the walls of the city of Boorhanpoor, which he had commenced in the year 1141, and he re-peopled the city of Feridapoor which he found ruined and to which he gave the name of Nizam abad, building in it Mosques and Caravanseras as well as a Palace and a bridge He likewise raised walls round the city of Haider abad and built a superb Mosque at Aoreng-abad The canal that runs through the middle of that city is a work of his Afford repose O Lord of mercy and forgiveness, to such servants of Yours! He was a man of great equality of temper, and a learned one, fond of uttering extempore verses and there is a Poem and a volume of Poetry of his actually extant He departed his life thirty seven days after Mahmed-shah's demise and it was the fourth of the second Djemady in the year 1161 of the Hedjrah Mir gh8lam-aaly, the Poet of Belgram has comprehended in six words the chronogram of those three

---

(211) Mavera-al-nahr is Arabic, and signifies the country on the other side the water the Trans-oxana of the ancients Qhorasan is one of the six grand divisions of Iran and Persia, as is Harac or Hircania, another division R8m is the Roman country or the Turkish Empire

illustrious men deceased at the same time It is in an enigmatic style

" Past are they all three, whilst I am sobbing and saying, ah ! for one

" Gone are the King, the Vezir, and Assef-djah "

But he has spoken in a more open manner in the following verses

" Fallen are, ah ! the three columns of this Empire ,

" Disappeared are they from this world, as three precious pearls from an unlucky hand

" I have comprehended these three invaluable losses in this single verse

" Gone is the King, the Vezir, and the Assef of this age "

After complimenting our readers with that digression on those eminent personages, we shall return now to the thread of our history The Emperor and his Vezir being now satisfied as to Nizam-el-mulk's intentions, the dignity of Lord of Lords, with the office of first Paymaster, was bestowed on Saadat-qhan, son to another Saadat-qhan, who lived under Feroh-syur, and in the fourteenth of Redjeb of the same year, the Vezir Ab8l-mans8r-qhan went to Court, where he was received with the utmost distinction, and complimented with a sabre and a poniard of jewel-work, with a variety of other jewels, and with a Qhylaot of seven pieces He was at the same time installed with a rich belt in the Government of Acbar-abad-agrah The command of the Ahedian Guards was at the same time bestowed on Ahmed-aaly-qhan, son to his sister, and as Issac-qhan's sister had of late been married to Shudjah-ed-dowlah, son to the Vezir, this alliance raised that popular nobleman's power to the utmost pitch, and he soon succeeded his father, the late Issac-qhan, in the Divanship of the Qhalissah. But a man who suddenly came to cut a great figure at Court, was Djavid-qhan. This eunuch, who had from a long time intimate connections with Oodem-báy (212), mother to the reigning Emperor, became so great a favourite with that Prince also, that he fancied himself a Minister of State, and indeed soon came to act as such, through the insinuations of that Princess, on the mind of the weak Prince, her son As he was an ancient slave of the Imperial household,

---

(212) The words Bay, Poori, Coar, &c., added to a woman's name, always attest her to be or to have been a dance-woman, that is, not a prostitute, but a Courtesan, a sort of women admitted in all companies in Hindostan, and treated with demonstrations of regard and honour



in high favour with the late Emperor, and in consequence of his connections with the Empress's mother, possessed a perfect knowledge of everything within both the sanctuary and the palace, he was thought the fittest person for the office of Nazyr, an important charge that gives an absolute controul within the Seraglio, and was vacant since R8z-afzoon-qhan's decease. In this manner he came to be master of the Emperor's private honrs. That Prince, who in conformity to his maternal origin was in fact full of levity, and carried a head without brains, soon came to follow the example set him by that man. He fell into a course of crapulence and debauch, and he abandoned the helm entirely to him. So that the latter who was now decorated with the title of Navah Bahadyr or the valiant Depnty commenced meddling in every matter of State and at last came to have his opinion abided by, as a matter of necessary form. Such an authority in an eunuch was more than the high spirit of Ab8l mans8r qhan could bear, and as the other made no secret of his influence, every day furnished new matter of discontent and incessantly afforded fresh fuel to that fire which in a little time blazed out in a flame. About this time the office of second Paymaster with the Fodjdary of Moorad-abad. was bestowed on Intyzam ed-döwlah, one of Camer-eddin-qhan's sons, and a few days after a Qhylaat of mourning was given to Ghazy eddin qhan on the demise of his father Nizam el mulk. It was Djavid qhan who put an end to his mourning and brought him to Court. On the seventeenth of Redjeh the charge of Comptrol ler of the Qhalissah-office, together with a military augmentation of a thousand horse to his grade, was bestowed on Asker aaly-qhan and a few days after the Government of the Province of Adjmir was presented to the Vezir. About this time, being in Shaaban Haddy-aaly qhan, that illustrious proselyte of a new sect, departed this life, and was entombed near Shah nom8d, his Director's monnment. Terblyet-qhan likewise died in this month nor did this year produce any more important events. But now the scene will become more interesting.

We have already mentioned that Aaly mahmed-qhan Rohil lah had returned with an army to the country of M8rad-abad, &c., and after having taken possession of it, had expelled my father, the Imperial Governor soon after which he died of a cancer that

had spread all over his back. This event was seized upon by the Vezir Ab8l-mans8r-qhan, who had been taking this long-while much umbrage at the establishment which those warlike people had made on the frontiers of his Government of A8d. He had already engaged Mahmed-shah on an expedition intended to extirpate them, but which did not produce its full effect, his plan having been counteracted by Camer-eddin-qhan's management and double-dealing. An opportunity offered now to resume his scheme. He was himself become Vezir, and Director of all the affairs of the Empire. Aaly-mahmed-qhan-Rohillah had just crossed over to the valley of Nothingness, and divisions\* had arisen in the family of that new founder. With this view he engaged Cäim-qhan, son to Mahmed-qhan-Bangash, to recover that whole country from the hands of Rohillah's family, sensible that the defeat and ruin of either party would prove of so much gain to himself. Caim-qhan, who had already cast a wishful eye on the private and public estate of Rohillah's family, besieged his children in the castle of Budaon, and straitened them so far as to prevent their having any communication with any one without. These were Saad-ollah-qhan, eldest son of Rohillah, a young Prince, who had married Hafiz-rahmet's daughter, and being reputed his father's representative, actually sat on his Mesned, but the other was Dondi-qhan's son-in-law, and both these Chieftains having taken possession of the country in right of their sons-in-law, had in fact kept it for themselves, although the civil government was still in the hands of Saad-ollah-qhan. The latter, who was shut up with his whole family, and that of his father, finding himself reduced to the last extremity, and straitened by an enemy that would not relent, at once took his party. He came out of the Castle, and having assembled some troops, he resolved to risk everything in defence of his life and fortune. This happened in the tenth of Zilbidj, in the year 1161. Dividing, therefore, his troops into two parts, he concealed one in the bed of a river which had become dry, and advanced with the other against Cäim-qhan. The battle having already commenced and become very warm, Saad-ollah-qhan, unable to bear the attack of the whole Afghan nation, which fought under Caim-qhan's orders, was obliged to retreat, and at last he fled full speed, but still he turned about

Death of  
Ally-mahme  
Rohilla

The Vezir  
foments the  
troubles  
which follow

now and then, and charged his pursuers, till at last he came to the ambushade Cāim qhan, in the full hope of victory, was pursuing with ardour, followed by almost all the Commanders of his army, when at once some thousands of Saad-ollah-qhan's people who were concealed in the dry hed, got up, and let fly such a shower of balls and rockets that Cāim-qhan himself, with all his Commanders, were killed on the spot together with a vast number of his soldiers thus leaving a complete victory to Saad ollah qhan

Whilst the Afghans were involved in civil wars the Court seemed busy in promotions and rejoicings The Nō8 r8x was celebrated on a Friday the second of the second Reby and a few days after Mirza muhsen, elder brother to the Vezir Ah81 mans8r-qhan, departed this life About the end of the same year, Aaly-amjed qhan was honoured with a fringed Paleky but two months after as he was at his day break devotions and reciting *prayers upon his clay of mercy and health* (213), he suddenly fell down and expired This appearance of tranquillity at the Capital soon gave way to troubles of a most alarming nature

We may remember that Mir mannoo the late Vezir's eldest son had been appointed to the double Government of Lahor and Mooltan by Mahmed shah himself To support so great a burthen he had taken Begari-qhan as his Deputy and had allowed him an absolute authority The new Viceroy had just taken possession of that important post, and had found no time yet to prepare either an army, or to take any measures when at once

---

(213) The Persians and all the Shiyas, who pay an idolatrous worship to every thing that relates to Hosein, never make use of any other beads but those made of the clay of Kerbelah, where he is interred. This clay is dyed of a yellow green, and baked; they suppose it to be always of the soil taken from that Mosque. Was this the case in fact, the Mosque would have tumbled down long ago. Those beads are made of the soil of the territory of Kerbelah where every thing is stiff clay. Great miracles are ascribed to the holy clay and no Shya will pray unless he has before him a piece of that clay twice bigger and thicker than an English Crown, on which he never fails to lay his forehead in every one of the numerous protestations which characterise the Mahometan prayers. A little of that clay is likewise put in a dead man's hands and he is buried with it. It is given to the sick, and vast numbers of them daily recover and as it is likewise greatly instrumental in procuring the remission of sins, it is held by them as a miraculous Panacea. Hence the reason of that clay's being called the clay of health as well as mercy

news came that Ahmed-shah, the Abdaly, was again marching to Lahor. Unprepared as Mir-mannoo must have been, he was obliged to present himself against that Monarch, but as neither party had sufficiently prepared themselves for a decisive engagement, the Viceroy thought it better to shake the chain of friendship and accommodation, in the Abdaly's ears, and to smother a fire that had not yet broke out in a flame. The Abdaly who was no better prepared, was glad to hear that the affair took such a turn, and he agreed to retire, on the Viceroy's promising to him the revenue of four Districts that had always been appointed to defray the pay of the garrison of Cab3l, a condition which Nadyr-shah had likewise stipulated. These were Syal-cot, Areng-abad, G8djrat, and Pursurvur, and this condition being accepted, he retired to his own dominions, and left the Vezir at liberty to follow his scheme against the Rohillas.

Troubles  
in M8ltan  
quashed

This Minister no sooner heard of the state of affairs at Moorad-abad, than sensible that he had benefited in every sense by the defeat of one of the two parties, he resolved to avail himself of it so far as to recover those countries from the hands of the survivors. With this view he came out of the city with the Emperor, on the first day of Zilhıdj, and took up his residence in tents. In a few days he arrived at Kevol, where leaving the Emperor behind, he advanced himself to the river Gundj, which is only at twenty cosses from Feroh-abad. This approach intimidated Caim-qhan's mother, consort to Mahmed-qhan-Rohilla, who finding herself shut up in the place without any resource, submitted to necessity, and paid in money and effects a contribution to the amount of sixty lacs. After this the Vezir called Saad-ollah-qhan to an account for the elephants, horses, equipage, and artillery, which had belonged to the vanquished, and also for the Nazurana due to the Imperial Treasury, and got from him a large sum, but which did not become public. On hearing of this success, the Emperor returned to his Palace, and a few days after he celebrated the No8-r8z, which fell on the 12th of the second Reby of the same year. Meanwhile the Vezir, who had tarried some time about Feroh-abad, was busy in receiving the promised sums, and in taking possession of the country of the Bangash Afghans, but he thought proper to leave untouched the city of Feroh-abad, and the twelve Districts round the same,

The Vezir  
marches  
against the  
Rohillas

which had been Bangash's Altmughab or irrevocable fief ever since Feroz syer's reign. He left the whole for the subsistence of Cāim qhan's mother and family. Having in this manner recovered in a little time the stipulated sums and effects, he sent for Nevol rāy, the Deputy he had left at A8d, and put under his care and absolute authority the whole of the conquests he had lately made after which he returned to the Capital.

This Nevol rāy who was originally a Cāet by tribe, and of the lowest officers of Ab8l mansoor-qhan's household, had rendered his master so many services, and he had become so very agreeable to him that he was promoted to high offices, made his Deputy throughout the whole Government, and rose to so much favour, as to be equalled by no one man in the service. This Deputy took up his residence in the city of Cannodje (214), the private appanage of his master's, and only at twenty cosses from Feroz abad, from whence he spread his officers and collectors all over the country. He also seized most of the brothers of Cāim qhan. I mean such as were from other mothers, together with some trusty slaves of the family and sent them all prisoners to the castle of Ilah abad at the same time his violences and extortions rose to such an excess, that they became the real cause of the troubles and mighty events that followed. Cāim-qhan's mother sent word of all this to Ahmed-qhan, her half brother, an officer of consequence in the Vexir's service, and she informed him that "*the honour of the Afghan nation was gone as well as that of his father's but that if there remained any sense of pride in him, now was the time to produce it and to approve himself a true Afghan*". She likewise sent messages, full of taunts and reproaches to all the Afghan Chiefs of the neighbourhood. The Afghans roused by these messages assembled in troops and swore every one to each other that they would not part society, until they had destroyed both Nevol rāy and his

ie Afghans  
used by the  
message of  
Cāim-qhan's  
mother, raise  
upon Nevol-  
rāy

---

(214) Cannodje, on the Ganges, has been the Capital of India fifteen hundred years ago, as it has been likewise for thousand of years before that period. It was surrounded by lofty walls of twenty leagues in circuit, which in a country so very continent as India, contained no less than sixty thousand prostitutes, paying a tax and as many shops for Paan or Beetle. If that be so, it must have been as big as Delhi has been under Mahmed shah, and must have contained as well as this two millions of souls. This immense city although partly inhabited, is now in ruins, as is Delhi itself where grass grows abundantly in the streets.

power, and recovered their own country. Nevol-ráy, informed of this general revolt, applied to the Vezir for assistance, and meanwhile he came out of Cannodje with the troops he had under his command, and he entrenched himself in expectation of the succours which had been already dispatched. The Vezir having taken his leave of the Emperor, came out of the city, and encamped at the ford of Anbely, on the banks of the Djumnah, where he took up his residence in a seat until he had assembled all his troops. In a few days he dispatched Nassyr-eddin-haider-qhan, his brother-in-law, together with Mahmed-aaly-qhan, a Commander of character, to Nevol ráy's assistance, and two days after, he dispatched likewise Ismail-beg-qhan, called the slave-boy, a very trusty Commander of his, on the same errand. This was followed by Radja Debe-Dutt, Fodjdar of Kevol. But before these succours could come up, Ahmed-qhan had already appeared with a large body of Afghans before Nevol-ráy's intrenchment, and that officer who had already quitted the Vezir's service, and wanted to put the Deputy off his guard, had undertaken to amuse him with a variety of messages about an accommodation. The negotiation was kept on foot, until the tenth of Ramazan, when there appeared at once a great body of Afghan horse in the front of Nevol-ráy's intrenchment, where was all his artillery, and whilst his attention was taken up with these, a large body of infantry turned his camp, and falling on his rear, penetrated through his intrenchment, and marched straight to his quarters, where they cut him down. This execution was done so rapidly that Ata-ollah-qhan, one of the best officers of the camp, (whom we have mentioned in Aaly-verdy-qhan's history, as a nobleman, who had married Rabbiah-begum, and of course was son-in-law to Hadji-ahmed,) found just time to fly to Nevol-ráy's assistance with his troops, and to lay down his head at his feet. He was slain together with a number of brave soldiers and gentlemen, who distinguished themselves on that occasion, and set out in company for the kingdoms of Eternity. They were mostly of the environs of A8d and Lucknow, and especially of Belgram, a town in the neighbourhood of the latter city, and famous for the hereditary bravery of its inhabitants. The artillery, as well as every thing in camp, fell a prey to the Afghans. This intelligence being

carried to the Vezir, seemed to affect him much more sensibly than the troubles that were rising in Decan, a part of the Empire which seemed now quite independent

Nassyr djung second son and successor of Nizam el mulk, having been sent for this year by the Emperor, had advanced to the banks of the Nerhedda with about seventy or eighty thousand horse, all old troops But as the Emperor did not like his coming so well accompanied, he wrote him a letter with his own hand to inform him that he had altered his mind, and given him liberty to return an order which the other complied with the more readily as he had just been informed that his own sister's son, Hedafet muhi eddin-qhan, surnamed Muzaffer djung pretended to independence in Decan He therefore returned and soon arrived at his Capital, where he gave rise to some events which we reserve for the subsequent sheets, our intention being now to go on with the Vezir's expedition

The defeat of Nevol rây having made a deep impression on that Minister's mind at the very time he was himself marching to his assistance, he on the month of Shaaban of the year 1163, returned to the Capital and took a fresh leave of the Emperor on which occasion Issac-qhan, and Mir baca, son to the late Camer eddin-qhan, were ordered to attend him with the Imperial troops As the Vezir was setting out, he was complimented by the Emperor with a sabre, a buckler and a coat of mail together with a variety of other curious things the Emperor being desirous of shewing him very kind of regard and of raising his character in the opinion of mankind Issac-qhan received a fatch pitch and a sabre but Mir-baca a fatch pitch only and both were ordered to obey the Vezir's orders The latter setting out at the head of his troops marched twenty cosses in three or four days at which time he received further news about Nevol rây and the country under his command He was then at Barr a large town inhabited only by Séyds. There he assembled his troops and he also sent for my father, a nobleman, of whom he had made a friend, and whom he had appointed to the command of Panipost and Sonpoot Having spent about a month in the several seats round Barr he found himself at the head of seventy thousand horse but before his departure there happened a strange event of which the bystanders drew a bad omen for his expedition

On the eighteenth of Ramazan, a camel-driver belonging to a Moghul, chanced to cut down a tree which grew at the door of one Enaïet-qhan, a man in the Vezir's service. The latter trusting to his master's high power, seized the driver and chastised him as he deserved. On this the other camel-drivers assembled in a body, and went to complain to the Moghul, who was a Commander of a body of horse in the army. The Moghul sent his people to fetch Enaïet-qhan. On which a multitude of horse and foot ran to Enaïet-qhan's house, and some one who knew nothing of the quarrel, having chanced to say, on looking at those armed men, that an order had come for sacking the town, this word seemed to be taken up as a signal for a general plunder. All the Moghul officers of the camp with their countrymen, got up in an instant, it being in the afternoon, and fell like so many incarnated devils on the inhabitants of that unfortunate town, which they ruined in a little time. They also killed Enaïet-qhan and his son, a youth of eighteen. On the first report of the tumult, the Vezir had dispatched Haider-qhan with a number of Nissiqhchies to put a stop to the disorder, and to drive away the plunderers. But until this officer could arrive, and until the Nissiqhchies could make an impression upon them, all was over. Vast numbers of people were slain, and the consorts and children of so many Séyds, and of so many people of the better sort, who inhabited that town, were carried in captivity, and experienced every usage which an unbridled soldiery could inflict. Women, children, furniture, everything was made plunder of. Haider-qhan, after having exerted himself the whole night, was so lucky about the dawn of the day, as to assemble a number of captives, which he drew one by one from the tents of those accursed Moghuls, and he lodged them together in a set of tents which the Vezir had ordered to be pitched on purpose for them. This Minister himself had passed that whole night without going to bed. He was often observed to shed a flood of tears; nor could he be prevailed to eat anything the whole next day, which he spent in inquiring after so many matrons that had never set a foot out of a house, and were now in the hands of his soldiers. These he sent to their homes. Children of all ages, which those accursed men had concealed in fosses of their own digging, which they had covered with branches of tress and

The Town of Barr, wholly inhabited by Séyds, is sacked by the Vezir's Moghul-troops



with turf, were found out, brought to the Vezir and returned to their disconsolate friends. On beholding that universal desolation, one might have said that the last day of the world was come for that unfortunate town, and that it had undergone the Supreme Judge's sentence. Nothing was heard but sighs and lamentations both there and all over the plain. The Vezir sent to the wretched inhabitants the head of the Moghul Commander — But to what purpose? Past was what was past and it was irremediable. Two days after that dreadful event, that Minister left Barr, and moved forwards but people had already commenced to say that his expedition would not be attended with success and they applied to him and to his men these known verses of Saady

That smoke which you see does not rise from that Rue you are burning;  
That smoke rises chiefly from the oppressed man's heart.

The two armies being in sight of each other, the Vezir sent for my father who was now a chief Commander in Isaac-qhan's troops, and as he had long governed at Berbelly and Moradabad and was acquainted with the Robillas and with their manner of waging war and of engaging an enemy he requested to hear his advice and opinion. My father answered '*That these people dealt very much in ambuscades and feints. That their custom was to appear in great numbers, and after a slight combat to draw the enemy into some snare, when they turned about again and faced him afresh. But that when ever such a stratagem of theirs failed of success it was their practice to turn their backs and to fly in earnest, as soon as they were sensible of their being pursued slowly and with caution. His opinion was therefore, that as the Moghuls were troops that could be relied upon it would be proper that a body of three or four thousand of them should be ordered to advance a little before the Vezir's elephant, but on foot and with their muskets and wall pieces ready in order to have a body of Musketeers at hand, should the enemy make a show of some ambuscade.*' My noble father was yet speaking, when he was interrupted by Ismail-beg-qhan, who tired of the length of the advice, said that to-morrow he would seize Ahmed qhan's wife and children, and bring them fast in a corner of his bow. To this my father said not a word. The next day, at day break, the Vezir after performing his prayers ordered his

cannon to march in front and upon the wings, and having ranged his troops in the best order, he advanced with a slow pace. At about nine o'clock, the engagement commenced, by a discharge of cannon and muskets on both sides, and it continued for sometime in the same manner. Afterwards, Radjah S8r8dy-mull, the Djatt, who commanded at the right wing, and Ismail-beg-qhan, who commanded at the left, advanced on a gallop, and charged so vigorously R8stem-qhan and some other Afghan Commanders, that they drew everywhere smoke from their breasts. Pursuing their point, they covered the ground with six or seven thousand of the best men amongst the Afghan horse. The rest retire reluctantly, but being vigorously pursued they fled at last, and dispersed. At this very time Radja Ber-chundermehender, who had outmarched both the Djatt Prince and Ismail-beg-qhan, proved to be separated from his main, and out of the Vezir's sight, and that Minister being occupied in perpetually sending to those two Generals, cannon, rockets and ammunition, had so thinned his own front, that it remained unfurnished with those necessaries, and nearly empty of troops. The sun was inclining to the west, and the army seemed parted asunder. The Minister no sooner observed this disorder, and no sooner saw that the Gentoo Prince was already out of sight, than he recollected what my father had told him, and he was casting his eyes about to discover something like an ambuscade, when at once Ahmed-qhan, with a choice body of Afghan horse, suddenly made his appearance, and the engagement, which seemed at an end, re-commenced with fury. Unluckily it happened, whether by a particular interposition of the Divine Providence or otherwise, that Camcar-qhan, the Fodjar of the suburbs of the Capital, who was nearest to the Vezir's body of troops, unable to stand the violent fire of musketry and rockets incessantly poured by a body of Afghan foot that now made their appearance, had turned about and fled. It is even reported that he was actually in concert with Ahmed-qhan-bangash, and that his flight was premeditated. Be it as it will, the Moghuls of the two wings finding themselves almost left alone, lost their wonted firmness, and this being observed by the Vezir, he immediately dispatched to their assistance both Mahmed-aaly-qhan, the Colonel, and Noor-el-hassen-qhan the Belgramite, with their

troops But there was such a quantity of loose elephants, and loose horses on the field of battle, that the passage seemed blocked up everywhere Noor-el hassen qhan, however, opened his way through them, as did a little after, Abdol neby, one of Mahmed aaly-qhan's slaves This last troop amounted to about four hundred horse, and these two bodies cutting their way both through the loose horses and through the enemy, reached the Vezir's troops, which were divided from their main But as the Moghuls were already flying the arrival of so brave a body proved of no avail, and these two officers obliged to turn about endeavoured to join the left wing As they were advancing they discovered behind them a body of two or three thousand foot, supported by a body of cavalry which were coming from the left but which by their long faces and long beards seemed evidently to be enemies(215) By this time most of the artillery had been sent to the support of the advanced troops, so that no firing was heard there from any cannon that might support those two brave bodies For all that they cut their way back and joined their friends, when facing about they made a general discharge upon their pursuers, and stretched numbers of them upon the ground but here too this succour proved of no avail The Moghuls were already flying and although the officers made a stand their example was not followed by the others The flight had become general in both wings, and few people cared to stand their ground Amongst those that distinguished themselves eminently few were regretted so much as Haider qhan brother in law to the Vezir Like a famished lion he with a small body threw himself amongst the Afghans and was observed to kill seven men with his own hand He was slain at last, and he hastened to enjoy the parterres of tulip in the gardens of Eternity N8r-el hassen qhan was wounded with a musket ball, as was Mahmed aaly-qhan Mir-gh8lam nebi, the Poet of Belgram, although much wounded found means to escape but Mir-azim eddin-qhan one of the bravest Séyds of Belgram, followed Haider-qhan, and hastened with him into the regions of Eternity And now the danger came close to the Vezir's person The Afghans surrounded his elephant, without knowing who it was

(215) The Moghuls have round faces and short beards; the Hindostankees, oval beautiful faces, and smooth chins

The driver fell down dead Mirza-aaly-naky, tutor to Shudjah-ed-dowlah, the Vezir's son, was struck by a musket-ball, as he was sitting behind the Vezir, and fell The Vezir himself received a ball in his throat, and fell in a swoon within the häodah Luckily for him, that it was a war-haodah, and barded in brass, so that the Vezir having fallen within, was secured from further wounds, and nothing appeared of him but his head Nor was his falling into a swoon of small use to save his life The Afghans seeing the haodah empty, with only one dead man in it, left it and went forwards, where they met Issac-qhan The latter cried aloud that he was the Vezir He was well mounted, and at the head of a body that stuck close to him, charging his pursuers sabre in hand, and he made them give way, after which he retired slowly and with firmness The whole army was retreating by this time, and all the Moghuls had lost their honour and character, when Noorel-hassen-qhan and Mahmed-aaly-qhan seeing the Vezir's elephant unaccompanied, cut their way to it with a few followers, and found that the Vezir had recovered from his swoon. The Minister on recovering his senses, ordered the music to play in token of victory, to try whether such a stratagem would not recall the troops, but it answered no purpose Finding that a panic had seized them all, he turned his elephant about, without having any one round his person save those two officers, and two or three hundred Moghuls and Hindostanies After the Vezir's retreat, my father, who followed at a distance, seeing the field of battle empty, stopped to bring up some cannon that seemed in tolerable order, and having exerted himself in calling together the dispersed people of the artillery, he arrived at night near the Vezir's quarters, none having remained in that field of battle so long as himself, and it was midnight before he reached the Vezir's tent The latter having ordered Noor-el-hassen-qhan to enquire after some medicines for his wound, was in a little time served, but it became necessary to make use of some fire In the morning the Vezir quitted Marher, where he had passed the night, and marched forwards without hardly any baggage or any of the sutlers and other followers of the army The ungrateful Moghuls after having fled from the enemy, had attacked their friends, and plundered most of those useful people, the rest had been set upon by the peasants, and

The Vezir  
defeated and  
wounded

made away with. Still on his departure from Marber, he found himself at the head of something like an army, and he continued his journey until he arrived upon the banks of the Djumnah over against old Delhi which is commonly called Shah-djehan abad, and where we shall leave him to see what use the Afghans made of their victory.

Ahmed-qhan, after this victory over the Vezir, fancied himself able to conquer the two Provinces of A8d and Ilah-abad, which might have been said to be that Minister's appanage. He sent his son Mahmood-qhan, with a body of troops to the conquest of A8d, whilst himself undertook to take the castle of Ilah-abad from Baca-ollah-qhan, and Aaly-c8ly-qhan, the Daghistany (216). Baca-ollah-qhan is son of Merhamet-aaly qhan brother to the late Emir qhan, who had presented him with the Fodjdary of Corrah in the Viceroyalty of Ilah abad. After his uncle's death he had accepted the Vezir's invitation, and had attached himself to his person. He was then at Ilah-abad with Aaly-c8ly-qhan a dependant of Séyd mahmed-qhan the Deputy Governor and an ancient servant of Emir-qhan's house. These two officers thinking it dishonorable to submit to a Bangash quitted the city where they had too few men to be able to make any defence, and shut themselves up in the castle, which they both resolved to defend to the last extremity. They threw a bridge of boats over the Djumnah, under the walls of the fort, and thereby prepared themselves for receiving succours and provisions.

There happened to be then on the shores of the Ganga, and quite close to the castle of Ilah abad (217), a certain

The Afghans  
besiege and  
plunder Ilah-  
abad.

---

(216) Daghistany is a little mountainous Province of Iran or Persia, inhabited by Sunni Turks or Tatars. It is so called from Dagh, which signifies mountain. In the Turkish language.

(217) Ilah-abad, called by the Gentooes Prag and Priag is a famous place for Gentoo worship. There is a subterraneous chapel, where they shew a fallen tree that is in vegetation ever since Maha De8 or the Grand Salot, that is, the first man who travelled thither from Cassi or the terrestrial Paradise, that is, Benares. We have seen the stump of the tree and at the first sight found it to be a Djigul, a tree which never dries, and the trunk of which although cut into ever so many chips, never fails to produce a tree if planted. By Counting our paces in and out of the cavern, we found that the tree cannot be at forty paces distance from the Ganges, with which probably it has a subterraneous communication. The visiting that chapel as well as the subsequent purification in the Ganges produce a great revenue to Government. This tree and chapel are in the castle, much nearer the Ganges than to the Djumnah.

Saniassi-fakir, very brave and well accompanied, who spent his time in his devotions to Maha-de8 This man shocked to see the ravages committed by the Afghans, he had, without any invitation, resolved to join his cause to that of Baca-ollah-qhan, and of the others, that were shut up in the castle, but although he was requested to come within its walls, he constantly refused it, and contented himself with encamping with his brave slave-boys and his people at a small distance from it Every day he used to set out with the bravest of his people, all mounted on excellent mares, and to gallop about the Afghan camp, from whence he never returned without having killed several of the bravest of the enemy, and brought away both their arms and horses with him, so long as the siege lasted he did not miss a single day, and always did some execution. The siege drew to a great length, but without the enemy being able to make any impression, Baca-ollah-qhan with his garrison, and the brave Fakyr Radj Ender-gur with his brave troop, being resolved to make the most obstinate defence But meanwhile the enemy's troops, all composed of unbridled savage Afghans, and of sanguinary Rohillahs, fell upon the city of Ilah-abad, which was a large wealthy place, and set it on fire, after having plundered and sacked it leisurely Four thousand matrons of the best Séyd and Sheriff (218) houses of that unfortunate city, were led unveiled about the streets, and carried into captivity. But the quarter round the Monument of Sheh-afzol was spread, together with the suburb of Qhold-abad, which is wholly inhabited by Afghans This was all that was performed by the Rohillah army, and but few of the Bangash collectors had been admitted over the flat country, when news came that the Vezir was coming Ahmed-qhan not pleased with this intelligence, quitted the siege, and repaired to his own country about Feroh-abad

We have already observed that on that General's coming to Ilah-abad he had dispatched his son, Mahmood-qhan, with a body of troops, to conquer the country about Aood and Lucknow The latter marched forwards, and on the nineteenth of the

---

(218) The Seyds are those that descend from Hassen and Hossein the Prophet's grandsons by Aaly, but a Séyd is he that has a Séyd for a father, whatever be his mother A Sheriff is he that has a Séydany for his mother, whatever be his father, at least it is so in India,

second Djemady in the year 1164, he encamped at a small distance to the west of the town of Belgram. Some Afghan troops immediately, according to the savage custom of that race of men, advanced on the suburbs, plundered some houses, and killed some people. But no sooner did such a violence become public, than the inhabitants of the town who are mostly of Sheriff blood as well as soldiers of old standing shocked at this disorder, fell upon the Afghans, repulsed them with slaughter, and brought home a couple of hundred heads of cattle from the outskirts of the Afghan army. On seeing this Mahmood qhan, with a precipitation consonant to his age and an inconsiderateness worthy of his nation put his army under arms, and resolved to take the town. But this was not so easy, the inhabitants had cut trenches across their streets fortified every quarter and prepared themselves to give them a warm reception. In this crisis the Magistrates, and the principal men amongst them, some of whom had an acquaintance with the young General's father interposed their mediation and procured an accommodation, after which the tumult that had risen to a height, subsided at once. Mahmood-qhan having raised his camp and advanced as far as Papa mow, sent towards Lucknow one of his uncles with about twenty thousand horse and foot, and this General advanced towards that city with about fivethousandcavalry. He encamped in the outskirts and sent a Cntwal to command in his name in the city. It must be observed that this city had been evacuated by all the dependants of the Vezir, on the first intelligence of their master's defeat, and that they had carried away the Vezir's family and joined Baca ollah qhan upon the road with whom they had retired in the castle of Ilah abad. As to the Moghuls, every one of them, inhabitants of the city had fled to some shelter after having placed his property under the safeguard of Sheh-mûez-eddin qhan, a famous Commander, of whom we have said something in speaking of his heroical friend, Kootoob-eddin mahmed-qhan. The Sheh's friends were not pleased with the protection he afforded in his house and quarter to Moghul property and they warned him that it would bring down upon him an inquiry from the Afghan Government. The Sheh would not listen to such pusillanimous counsels, and continued to afford an

The Afghans spread into A8d, but are repulsed by the inhabitants of Belgram, and Lucknow

asylum to the families and properties of as many as chose to take shelter in his house and quarter. But as the new Cutwal had already commenced to oppress people, the Sheh who was sensible of this, thought it best to comply so far with the complexion of the times, as to go out of the city, and make a visit to the Afghan Commander, in order to put a stop to the Cutwal's vexatious Government. The Afghan received him with great regard and civility, and ordered that a general safety of person and property should be proclaimed all over the city. Whilst he was yet speaking, one of the General's friends, a man who wished for some tumult and confusion, said to him, *What are you doing now? The Lucknowians have beaten your Cutwal, and driven him away.* Sheh-muez-eddin-qhan answered immediately, that there was no man in the city mad enough to commit such an outrage. *I will go to town immediately,* said he, *and if I find that any one has committed an insolence, rest assured, that I will chastise him as he deserves.* On this, he mounted and returned to the city, but he soon had several reasons for altering his mind. He reflected that the Cutwal continued to oppress people, and that little trust was to be reposed in the promises or proclamations of an Afghan. Seeing then how matters went, he assembled the nobles and the principal inhabitants, and represented to them, that the Afghans were known for a faithless race, on whose promises no reliance could be reposed with any safety, that to surrender to such savage people would bring woeful consequences with it, and that for his part he saw no other party, but that of joining together, putting themselves upon their defence, and giving the Afghans a vigorous reception. Most of those present expressed their fears, and declined the association, but the others, sensible of the truth of what he had said, closed with his opinion, and armed themselves. Coorban-aaly, the Choudry (219), a man of consequence amongst them, took care to gain to his party even those

---

(219) A Choudry is a small Zemindar or land-holder, and likewise the head of a clan or quarter, or set of men.—There is a large quarter at Lucknow wholly inhabited by Sheh-zadians, that is, men of Arabian blood, or men of Gentoos origin, but long ago turned Mussulmen. The Gentoos in general get themselves circumcised on a Friday, and from thenceforward are called Shehs. The Sheh zadians of Lucknow are Mohametans these several hundreds of years, but still preserve that spirit of clan so remarkable in Gentoos. They are brave and united, and all Sunnis,



that seemed timorous, and he fortified several quarters. On observing so much warmth, Sheh-mûez eddin-qhan took a decisive part. He sold the jewels and plate of his family, and having made up a sum of money, he assembled the Sheh zadians of Lucknow, whom he now exhorted to chastise the Cutwal vigorously and to turn him out of the city. The order was immediately executed. The Sheh, after this, dressed a sensible Moghul in Iranian apparel, made him land in his house, as if he had come as Cutwal by the Vezir's appointment and he proclaimed, at the tribunal of Police all over the town, that no authority should be acknowledged in the city, but that of the Cutwal sent by the Vezir. He at the same time set up a green standard in the name of 'The Lord of the Time' (220), and under it he took the oaths of the principal inhabitants that they would stand by each other in defence of their wives, children and properties to the utmost of their power. The Afghan General hearing of this change of affairs and that a Cutwal had come from the Vezir put his people under arms prepared himself to sack the city and he fell upon Ismail gundj, the eastern quarter of it. But about two hundred of the Sheh zadians having run to the assistance of the inhabitants, an engagement ensued in which the Afghans were driven away with great slaughter. nay the inhabitants sallied out upon them took their cannon and tents and drove away another Commander, who with a thousand horse had come over to share the expected plunder. Mahmed qhan who was encamped on the ferry of Papa now, hearing of this affair wanted to march in person against Lucknow. But Sheh mûez-eddin-qhan having sent him a message, that laid the whole blame of this affair upon the stupidity of his Afghans, and promised to come in person to give an account of it and to address him upon other matters he altered his resolution and returned to his former encampment where he was pitching his tents when the runaways came in shoals and gave

---

(220) According to the Mussulmen Shyabs, the Lord of the Times is their twelfth Imam or Pontiff Mehdi, who is not come yet but will surely conquer all the world; which will then embrace the true religion that is the Shyisme. He lived about thirty years but finding himself obnoxious to the then reigning Qbalif he disappeared but is still living, although invisible and will appear again at the end of the world to conquer all mankind and to convert it to the true sect, that is to the Imamisme and of course to their own sect.

an exaggerated account of Mûez-eddin-qhan's bravery and conduct, as well as of the ferocity and courage of the inhabitants of Lucknow, especially the Sheh-zadians. In a few days, Mûez-eddin himself arrived near the Afghan camp, and with such a multitude of horse and foot, as looked very much like an army. Mahmed-qhan, intimidated by his character for prowess and conduct, and not liking his appearance, thought proper to decamp, and retire. This retreat inspired the Sheh with so much confidence, that he turned away all the collectors which the Afghans had spread all over the country, and he published an order to put to death immediately any armed Afghan that should be discovered, and this revolution in the A8d naturally brings us back to the Vezir, who had made an appanage of that country.

We have left the Vezir at the ford of the Djumna. But some time before his arrival at this passage, the report of his defeat had spread everywhere, and had roused all those that were jealous of his power, and fearful of his growing influence. The imbecile Emperor was of this number, as well as his intriguing mother, and all the Grandees of the Court, and above all, the Eunuch, now styled the valiant Navvab (221), who after taking possession of the Emperor's mind, had now come forward with intention to govern the Empire, and acted already as a Prime Minister. All these had given tokens of their ill will, and they talked of seizing on the Vezir's Palace, and of confiscating the vast property supposed to be in it. Nevertheless, such was the idea they had conceived of his power and resolution, that they durst not put their design in execution, but waited until they should receive certain intelligence about his person. Hearing now that he was alive, and at hand, they waited his coming into the city, anxious to see what figure he would cut after his defeat. That Minister came at last, and it was soon seen by every one of them, that he would still prove a tough piece of work, and much above their strength. For even his consort (222), a daughter of Saadet-qhan, and a woman of uncommon genius and courage, far from being dismayed by the

---

(221) Navvab Bahadyr was his title

(222) This is Asuff ed-dōwlah's grand-mother, aged about one hundred years, and living at Aood upon some greens and four ounces of rice a day, in 1787, and this has been her diet these thirty years past

reports of the Vezir's defeat and death had exhorted her son, Shudja ed-döwlah, and her dependants and son in law to act with firmness, and to repel force by force, and she had made a provision of troops, and of every thing necessary for a vigorous defence (223) The Vezir being arrived, soon heard of the intrigues and designs of his enemies and he sent word not only to the Eunuch but also to the Empress-mother that *Abdül mansür's dead body was still better than another man's living one* and believe me added he, *I am a more tough piece of work than you seem to apprehend* Both these two persons denied their harbouring any unfavourable designs against him and both accompanied their answers with excuses and with complaints, on which he seemed satisfied being then engrossed by the thoughts of retrieving his character and of revenging himself of the Afghans he was consulting all those whom he thought to have much experience One of these happened to be my uncle Séyd-abdool aaly-qhan an officer of great character who having quitted Saadat qhan's service in Adjmir was just come from that province This officer pleased with that firmness conspicuous in the Vezir's character often frequented his house. The Vezir who in perusing the dispatches from Adjmir, had heard of his merit, once turned towards him and asked what he thought of his expedition Abdol-aaly qhan answered You had a good army my Lord in the last campaign and can have as numerous one 'even now as you please but victory does not always depend "upon numbers and courage, and it would be proper that you should provide officers and Commanders that have seen wars 'and engagements. *Who are these* interrupted the Vezir *pray tell me?* At present replied Abdol-aaly-qhan I recollect only Radja-baht sing and some Marhatta Generals. This advice he seemed to relish and sending for Radjah Djigul kishwar, agent from Aaly verdy qhan Viceroy of Bengal, and for his own agent,

---

(223) The houses of great men at Shah-djehan-abad are all capable of defence. They are all of stone, to the very roof, the beams of which are of wood, although these also are often of stone; and they are surrounded by a lofty wall secured by strong gates every one of which having its particular small yard, is a stronghold of itself. Moreover, the roofs are flat capable of bearing cannon and the walls have battlements and barbicanes. Each house stands by itself and has wells, ponds, a large garden and always provisions for three months and sometimes for six.

Radja Lachmi-naïin, he directed them to bring Holkar-malhar. Meanwhile, Djaba, with his son, Djingoo, two Marhatta Generals of great renown, having made their appearance, he desired them to enter into his service, and assigned to each a suitable pension. Sending likewise for Radja S8r8dj-mull, the Djatt, who was already in his service, he assigned him, for his person and troops, fifteen thousand rupees a day, after having allowed both the Marhatta Generals twenty-five or thirty-five thousand rupees for the same space of time. This done, he turned his attention towards providing a new stock of rockets and ammunition, as well as every requisite for war, insomuch that in a little time he found himself stronger than he had been before. And, in fact, he was so very extraordinary a man, that hardly any one would believe the many resources of his credit and his genius, unless he had been of his confidence, nor has such another man appeared to this day. Any other General, after such a total defeat, would have lost his mind, or fallen into a despondency, without ever conceiving the thoughts of arising again, and presenting a threatening front.

In short, this Minister having in a little time pitched upon the beginning of the first Djemady for reviewing his stores, quitted the Capital in the year 1164, and marched to Acbar-abad, which is at seven journeys distant, from whence he detached the Marhatta Generals with their twenty thousand horse, across the Djumnah, against Shah-dil-qhan, who commanded for Ahmed qhan-bangash in Kevol and Djalisser. The Marhattas having crossed the Djumna with their customary rapidity, fell upon the Afghans like a hurricane. The Governor surprised, fled with all his might, and made his escape, but an infinity of Afghans were put to the sabre, and the Marhattas made a great booty in horses, elepaants, camels, tents, and other articles. Ahmed-qhan, who was these four months intent on taking the Castle of Ilah-abad, no sooner heard of Shah-dil-qhan's defeat, than he raised the siege immediately, and putting himself at the head of his best troops, he with the wings of anxiety and perturbation, hastened to Feroh-abad, which was his Capital, and the residence of his family. He was hardly arrived, when the Marhattas, which composed the vanguard of the Vezir's army, followed, and finding the gates shut up, they put every thing to fire and sword in the

The Marhattas surprise and plunder Feroh-abad,

territory of that city. These ravages having given Ahmed qhan time to breathe, he came out and encamped at Hussein poor, a towa at three cosses from Feroh-abad, and upon the Ganga, where he entrenched himself, as in a post which had such a river under its command, with the whole Rohillah country beyond it and put it in his power to receive victuals and every kind of assistance from thence. The Marhattas meanwhile finding Feroh-abad empty of military force, rushed into it, and plundered it leisurely; and it was thus that Providence chastised the Afghans in retaliation for the sack of Ilah-abad. The plunder made in that rich mart is past all computation, and is more than I dare say. But it may be easily conjectured from this that one single lump of precious stuffs was valued at sixteen lacs of rupees. The Marhattas had hardly finished their work, when the Vezir himself arrived with Radja S8r8dj mull, the Djatt, and surrounded Ahmed-qhan on all sides the Ganga side excepted. A cannonade ensued, and an infinity of cannon balls and musket bullets were exchanged between the two parties. But as the intrenched Afghans received by boats every kind of provision and assistance the Vezir directed N8r-el hassen qhan the Belgromite to assemble a number of boats and to throw a bridge over the Ganga, intending to send over a body of troops. This work of the bridge was opposed by Mahmood qhan son to the Bangash who was encamped on the other side of the river. Nevertheless it was soon finished it was at Rampoor which is at twelve cosses from Cannodje and a quantity of large cannon and a body of troops crossed over and joined N8r-el hassen-qhan. Mahmood-qhan sensible of the consequence of such a communication, made several efforts to ruin the bridge, but to no purpose his own camp being so much incommoded by continual showers of cannon ball that his post was hardly tenable. Two days after the bridge had been finished, a large body of troops had come to the assistance of the intrenched Afghans under the command of Saad-ollah qhan eldest son to the late Rohillah and this happened at the very time when the Vezir was sending some troops over the Ganga. Ahmed-qhan's courage and hopes having been greatly raised at the sight of so powerful a succour he quitted his entrenchment as untenable and joined Saad-ollah-qhan, after which he gave

battle to the Vezir, and a bloody one it proved to be. The Marhattas attacked on one side, and on the other S8r8dj-mull, with his Djatts, poured such an incessant fire on the enemy, as drew smoke from their breasts. The Afghans unable to stand so furious an attack, were thrown into disorder, and both Ahmed-qhan and Saad-ollah-qhan, after losing vast numbers of their men, turned about and quitted the field of battle, not thinking themselves safe but at a distance, but it was not without leaving ten or twelve thousand of their best men slain, wounded, or prisoners. A vast booty of elephants, tents, horses, cannon, and furniture fell into the hands of the victors. The Vezir pursuing with ardour, and the Afghans continuing their flight, they both arrived at last at the foot of a chain of hills, separated by a narrow valley from the mountains of Cama8, a difficult country, covered with brushwood and brambles, where the Afghans being hemmed in by their pursuers, necessarily lost vast numbers of people from the badness of the water and the inclemence of the air, but chiefly from the want of victuals and the scarcity of every necessary for sustenance. Meanwhile the enemy overran the whole Rohillah country, and ruined it for years to come. This battle cost Mir-gh8lam-nebi, the famous Belgramite Poet, his life, and he went to join the choiuses of the Angels in the boundless regions of eternity.

The rainy season being already set in, and the Marhattas shewing a willingness to abide that reason in the Afghan country, the Vezir in reward for the services they had performed, gave them the whole country from Nevol and Djalisser down to Feroh-abad and Cannodje. Such a donation finished the Afghans. Finding that nothing less than their total ruin was intended, they betook themselves to the humblest supplications, and turning the Marhattas and some other Generals into mediators, they redeemed their lives from the Vezir's resentment. An accommodation took place, such as the Vezir was pleased to dictate. The city of Feroh-abad, with its territory, a tract that yielded a revenue of sixteen lacs a year, was left, out of compassion, to Ahmed-qhan and his family, as descendents of Mahmed-qhan-Rohillah. Some other Districts which had been held in sovereignty by Aaly-mahmed-Rohillah's family, were likewise left them, but under the stipulated promise of a full rent,

and some others were confiscated. But the greatest part of those countries was given up to the Marhattas. The Vezir after this treaty, went to his Government of A8d, and continued advancing as far as Banares, where he had much business to transact, and there as Pertapnt, the Zemmdar of Partab gur, a Gentoo Prince of that neighbourhood, who had been in strict connections with the Afghans, ventured to pay him his respects, he was immediately put to death by Aaly hed-ghan, the Vezir's head Nissiqhchi, who had orders to cut off his head. It is now time to return towards the interior parts of the Empire.

---

## SECTION XVI.

---

### CONTENTS.

*Troubles in Adjmir—Saadat-ghan, appointed to quell those troubles, marches against the Radjpoots of that country, and is worsted—Saadat-ghan's troops perishing with thirst, are generously relieved by the Radjpoots—Saadat-ghan returns to Court, after so disgraceful a campaign, and is dismissed the service—Nasr-ed dowlah alias Nasr-djung, Viceroy of Decan, overawes the Marhattas by the firmness of his administration—He marches against the French, at Poolchurry, and is slain by a conspiracy—Is succeeded by his cousin, Hedaïet-muhi-eddin-ghan—The French, who cut a great figure in the Decan, set up Selabet-djung, and beat the Marhattas—Ram-doss, Prime Minister of Decan, murdered—Ahmed-shah, the Abdalimonarch, marches into Hindostan for the fourth time—Mir-munnoo alias Muain-el-mulk, Viceroy of Punjab, betrayed and defeated—Is well used by the victor—The Court eunuchs submit to an humiliating treaty with the Abdalies—The Vezir, incensed at so shameful a compromise, acts in defiance of his master—Ghazi-eddin-ghan, the Pretender to the Sovereignty of Decan, dies suddenly—Civil War in the middle of the Capital, between the Emperor Ahmed-shah and his Vezir—Mir-sheabeddin alias Umad-el-mulk is entrusted with the business of pushing the war against the Vezir—Old Delhi plundered by the latter's troops, who at last comes to a compromise with his master—Mir-sheabeddin upon ill terms with his master—He orders the Monarch and his mother to be confined, and afterwards to be blinded—The late Vezir Abool-mansoor ghan dies—Character and conduct of his son, Shudjah-ed-dowlah—The bad administration of the Viceroy of Mooltan add numbers and unanimity to the Sycs—Troubles in Mooltan and Punjab—The new Vezir Sheabeddin marches to recover Mooltan—Is insulted by his own troops, so as hardly to escape with his life—Surprises the Governess—Marries her daughter, and carries both the mother and daughter to Delhi—Strange predictions of his mother-in-law—*



*The Abdali king, incensed at this insult, marches into Hindostan, recovers Lahor and plunders Delhi—Horrid cruelties of the Abdalies—He returns to his dominions—The French grow powerful in Decan—Nisam-aaly deposes his own brother, Selabut djung—Troubles in Decan—Daring action of Nisam-aaly—The Marhattas extort fortresses and territories from him—Nisam aaly, worsted in several engagements, cedes to them a large territory—The fortresses of Bidjapoor Dōwlet-abad and Assir ceded to the Marhattas—An historical account of them—War between the English and French—Pōlchurry taken by the latter—The Vesir Umad-el mulk seizes on the Capital and on the Emperor's person—Some account of Prince Aaly gohar now reigning Emperor under the title of Shah-aalem—His heroical retreat through a whole army—Obliged to fly from the paternal house—He is received everywhere with respect—Umad-el mulk's intrigues to embroil Shudjah ed-dōwlah and the Rohillas only serve to bring them to an understanding and they both join together and oppose the Marhattas who had marched a mighty army to achieve the conquest of Hindostan—The Vesir murders both his uncle and the Emperor—Troubles in Mooltan and Punjab which enable the Marhattas to extend their conquests as far as Lahor—They bring the ferocious Abdalies with their victorious King upon their backs—The Marhattas fight and are slaughtered everywhere—Battle of Badeli, where they lose seventy thousand men—Another bloody action in which the Marhattas are destroyed—Shudjah ed dōwlah waits on the Abdali monarch—His bold answer to that Prince—The Marhattas, little dismayed send another mighty army into Hindostan, commanded by one of their Imperial Princes—They take Delhi—Appoint a pageant of an Emperor—Propose an accommodation—Are rejected by Shudjah-ed dōwlah, in an answer full of reproaches—Bloody actions between the Marhattas and Abdalies—The former blockaded in their camp come to at Pitched battle at Panispool, where they lose eighty thousand men—The Abdali monarch returns to his own dominions—Singular appearance of a slain young man—Shudjah ed-dōwlah appointed Vesir to Aali gohar now Shah aalem—Origin of the broils that gave rise to a war between the Marhattas and the English—Nisam-aaly avails himself of*

*them to beat the Marhattas into a very advantageous treaty—Dissensions and several engagements between Maddo-ráo, the Marhatta-ruler, and his uncle, Rogonat-ráo—The latter attempts to take Aoreng-abad, and is vigorously repulsed—Nizam-aaly gives a finishing blow to the Marhatta power—S818dj-mull, the Prince Djaat, takes possession of Achar-abad-agra with its Castle and Royal furniture*

WE have said that the Government of Adjmir had been conferred on the Vezir, as well as that of Achar-abad, that Minister having expressed a predilection for that of Ilah-abad, which bordered on his hereditary Government of A8d. The Viceroyalties of Achar-abad and Adjmir were bestowed on Saadat-qhan. It was in the year 1161, answering to the first of Ahmed-shah's reign. This change occasioned some strange events. Radja Baht-sing-Rhator, a Prince who to much merit and great military character, joined so much learning, that he had no equal amongst the Radjpoot Princes, availed himself of that change, to revive his claim upon the Dj8deyp8r and other territories, that constituted a principality which had been in his family from ancient times, and which was now withheld by Radja Ram-sing, son to Abi-sing, his nephew. With this view he came to Court, complained to the Emperor, and insinuated himself so well in Saadat-qhan's mind, as to render him desirous of going into his Government of Adjmir, where the Gentoo Prince offered an accession of revenue, on condition of his being righted. At the same time he set out for Nagor, the 'capital of his hereditary dominions, and was followed a few days after, by Saadat-qhan himself, who reckoned on his assistance, and brought with him about fifteen thousand horse, commanded by men of great characters, such as Aaly-rustem-qhan, nephew to Mir-Mushreff, Hekim-qhan, called the Qhobushki, Fateh-aaly-qhan alias the Governor of Kevol, who received subsequently the surname of Sabut-djung, Mahmed-shudjah-qhan, and Seyd-abdol-aaly-qhan. This last was my uncle, who having been, as we have said in the First Volume, banished from the dominions of Bengal, had come to the capital, where Saadat-qhan had desired him to be his friend, and to accept the command of a body of four hundred horse, for he had brought with him his own horses, elephants, and equipage. Saadat-qhan had with

Troubles in  
Adjmir

him also, Mir aaly asghar C8hra, of whom we have spoken much in Aaly verdy qhan's history lastly Mubariz-qhan with a number of other persons of distinction. He passed the mourning days of the month of Moharrem at Pat8dy, and on the beginning of the year 1163, he arrived at a place called Nim rani, in the Djatt country where Radja S8r8dj mull had raised a small mud fort, in which he kept a certain number of men. Some of Saadat qhan's people having picked up a quarrel with those of the fort, drove them away and it was upon such a mighty success that the new Viceroy ordered his music to play in token of victory after which getting into his tent, he resolved to halt there. In the morning, as every one expected that he would pursue his intended journey to Narn8ul in Adjmir, where he had ordered his equipage to proceed the thoughtless Viceroy who carried a head without brains, countermauded it at once and abandoning the original scheme upon Adjmir he turned his views wholly upon settling the Government of Achar abad and quarrelling with S8r8dj mull the Djatt nor would he hear of anything else. Aaly R8stem qhan who had two thousand horse of his own together with Fatch-aaly-qhan who had seven hundred were at the head of his vanguard, and had already proceeded on their march when they were countermanded and sent for to a Council of War to which were likewise summoned Hekim-qhan, who commanded the right wing, at the head of two thousand horse and Muhraiz-qhan who with an equal number, commanded at the left and also Séyd abdol aaly-qhan, and Mir-aaly Asghar C8hra, now styled Mum tax djung. All these, surprised at this sudden change, were unanimous in their opinions. "They represented that to pick up a quarrel with the Djatt was improper but that it would be very proper to go on with the original project of taking first of all, possession of Adjmir, where Ahi sing had offered his assistance and an addition of revenue, and where he was already arrived, to make his preparatives. That by pursuing that scheme, they would put to a trial the quality of their troops, and would also inspire confidence in them by such a successful expedition. That this project being once accomplished it would be then time to think of bringing to order the country of Achar-abad and likewise that here too Baht sing's

Saadat-qhan  
marches  
against the  
Radjs8ts of  
Adjmir and  
is worsted.

“assistance and advice would prove useful; after which it “would become an easy matter to bring S8r8dj-mull himself “to order” This advice was good, but the ignorant Governor was inflexible, and he immediately sent dromedaries to bring back his baggage, a counter-order which those officers were obliged to comply with, and also to forward to others; but it was noon-day before they would come back. The army was ordered to proceed to Soba-chund's Caravanserah, where the Viceroy passed the night. The next morning, he commanded the men of his equipage to set out with Fateh-aaly-qhan and his corps, and to make a grand forage. The Djatt informed of this, presented themselves in force, and the Radja himself followed with so much expedition that both armies were in sight at noon. By this time Fateh-aaly-qhan had sent word that both forage and grain had been laden in quantities, and were ready, but that bodies of Djatts were making their appearance, and rendering the march of the convoy impracticable, unless some other Commanders were sent to his assistance. R8stem-aaly-qhan was immediately ordered on that service with his corps. But before he could arrive, the greatest part of the day was already spent, so that Hekim-qhan-qhoshbuki, who had been all this while desirous of a quarrel with the Djatts, thinking his honour concerned in this delay, followed him immediately, without being ordered. He had with him as many of his cavalry as were at hand, about seven hundred in all, but by this time there remained no more than two hours of day-light. Hekim-qhan seeing this, sent word to Aaly-r8stem-qhan, that night was coming, and that it would be better to return. The latter answered that Fateh-aaly-qhan was more advanced than him, and that if he could prevail upon him to come back, himself (Aaly-r8stem-qhan) would follow. After having said so much, he galloped up to him, and both joining together went to Fateh-aaly-qhan, to whom they proposed a retreat. The other, becoming prouder by the invitation, answered that they might retreat first, and that he would follow. They represented, they entreated, it did not avail. The two Commanders, seeing his obstinacy, resolved to stay likewise although the sun was setting, and they sent word to the Viceroy, that the Djatt army was in sight and so near, as to render a retreat dangerous by night, but that

they proposed to pass it upon the spot, in expectation that he, their General would march immediately with the army to their relief. Instead of that the obstinate, ignorant Saadat-qhao sent them word to retreat and come back. They obeyed. It soon became dark and those men that had been exposed to the heat of the whole day without either victuals or drink, were hastening to their camp, whilst those that were raw troops and had not yet seen any firlog were endeavouring to distance the others. The cannon moreover, was ordered to march in front, lest it should be set upon in the dark and fall into the hands of the enemies. The Djatts observing the confusion in which they marched followed them and coming close in small distinct bodies, they commenced an incessant fire upon them without quitting their horses. On this Aaly roostem qhan's elephant growing unruly, Hekim qhao approached him and after many efforts and repeated attempts, he at last found means to draw him upon his own elephant. He was hardly seated and the elephant was rising when Hekim-qhan received a musket ball in the throat and fell dead instantly. Another bullet wounded Aaly roostem-qhan. The flight now became general. Numbers were slain and numbers being wounded the survivors reached Saadat-qhan's camp which they filled with confusion and fear. The General himself became fearful and was confounded. And now the advanced troops of the enemy appeared in sight, and setting up a war-cry they struck up such a panic in Saadat-qhao's breast that he wanted to get away, and to make his escape had not Mir-aaly-asgar-c8bra and his other Commanders stopped him with threats and obliged him to stay by main force keeping so careful an eye upon him, that he could not move. Luckily that the Djatt Prince having risen only in his own defence, did not choose to abide the consequence of seizing or killing a Lord of Lords and that he contented himself with besieging the camp for two or three days together at the end of which he sent proposals by the canal of Fateh-aaly qhan an officer with whom he was acquainted. These having been accepted with a great deal of joy, S8r8dj moll sent his own son, Radja Djevaher moll who paid a respectful visit to Saadat qhan, and concluded an agreement on several conditions, two of which were, that the dependants of the Lord of Lords should

not cut any Pipol-tree (224), nor offer any insult or injury to the temples of the country, or to any object of their worship and veneration. These and some other conditions being agreed to, Saadat-qhan signed the inominious treaty Radja S8r8dj-mull added, that should the Viceroy promise upon oath not to advance farther than Narnoul, he would himself follow the army and be assisting in that expedition, with his person and advice, in which case, he would undertake to bring the Radjpoots of those parts to an accommodation, by which they would oblige themselves to the payment of fifteen lacs, which he would take upon himself

It was after such a ridiculous campaign, and such an infamous accommodation, that Saadat-qhan quitted the Djatt country to resume his expedition towards Narnoul. He was all the while accompanied by the Radja at the head of his Djatts, who always encamped at two or three cosses distance, in such a manner that messages and agents were continually exchanging on both sides, and in this manner they arrived in the neighbourhood of Narnoul, where Baht-sing came to pay his respects to the Viceroy. On hearing of the shameful treaty, lately concluded with the Djatts, he expressed his surprise and detestation, and proposed to him to recover his honour by marching against the Radjp8ts of Adjmir, that is, by supporting his own projects. This advice having been approved by Saadat-qhan, it gave offence to the Djatt-Prince, who saw how matters went, and took his leave and returned to his own country, leaving Saadat-qhan at liberty to pursue his expedition. That Viceroy being now arrived near Adjmir, marched on rapidly for twenty cosses, and by Baht-sing's advice he took possession of the Gocul-gaut, a difficult passage, which is near the city of Adjmir. But Radja Ram-sing was soon on the other side of the pass. This Prince, better known under the name of Docul-sing, had with him the Radja

---

(224) The Pipol-tree, is, as well as the Berr, or Burr, the Banian tree, an object of veneration, and the *Deus terminus* of India. Both trees serve for marking boundaries, both are milky, stem and leaves, both drop from their branches tendrils that reach the ground, and become so many new trees supporting the widely extended branches of their parent stock, and both in the original stem look rather like a group of trees soldered together, than like one trunk of a single tree. Both produce a red fruit exactly like a small European-fig, but nearly insipid, and which serves only to fatten green Pigeons, Parrots, and Monkeys.

Assin sing, son to Radja Dehiradj djehi sing sevāi and both were at the head of an army which could not be less than thirty thousand horse, with a numerous artillery, and every necessary requisite for war. So great a superiority did not damp Saadat qhan's eagerness. This Viceroy, after spending some days at Adjmir in expectation of being joined by Radja Baht sing made haste to come out. The first day's march was to Boorigur the second to the little mud fort of Shir sing the third to Mirta, and the fourth to a place called Pī har, in which last march the two armies had a sight of each other. They had set out on both sides *with intention to fight, and Baht sing had informed Saadat qhan, that it was not proper to part with him or to march on as he did as the enemy had planted all his cannon on that side.* Saadat qhan, who had never in his whole life listened to any sober advice, was so senseless as to observe *'That men did not turn 'about after having once marched in another direction,'* and he went on as he had commenced. Baht sing seeing his obstinacy, left him and marched on, but slanting from the front, where he knew so much cannon to have been planted. The Radjpoots who had passed the night close to their cannon, seeing Saadat-qhan's troops advance so inconsiderately, kept themselves quiet and in silence, until the enemy had come within reach, when they let fly such a shower of cannon and musket balls, as did a great deal of execution in the enemy's ranks where vast numbers were slain. This discharge was but faintly returned by Saadat-qhan's people who were already in confusion. It was already noon day the sun shone with intolerable ardour, and the cannon and muskets became so hot that there was no handling any of them. A cessation of arms as if by common consent, took place—Saadat qhan's men, pressed by thirst, in a country where water is scarce, dispersed everywhere, and numbers approached inadvertently close to the Radjpoots in search of that refreshment. The Radjpoots perceiving their distress, by the parchedness of their faces and the lolling of their tongues had the generosity to send people to shew them some springs hidden in the sand and these men after having refreshed plentifully both man and horse, would carry them back to the spot where they had taken them up, and would dismiss them with these words *Be gone and avunt! For now we are enemies again*

Saadat  
qhan's troops  
ready to  
perish with  
thirst.

Relieved by  
the singular  
generosity of  
the Radjpoots.

The sudden cessation on both sides, and the assistance given so timely by the Radjpoots, hath something odd and incredible in it, but they are, however, completely well attested. I put the question to several officers and others that had been relieved in that manner, and amongst others, to Séyd Ismail-aaly-qhan, son to my uncle, Abd8l-aaly-qhan, and he, as well as the others, always answered in the affirmative. Nor is it but upon such a strong testimony, that I have thought this particular worthy of a place in this history. This behaviour of the Radjpoots does them a deal of honour, but such a generosity is in their character. May God Almighty please to infuse such benevolent inclinations in the hearts of all the nations of the World! For He is the source of all power and all mercifulness.

This spot is not far from the mountains of Dj8déyp8r, not above twenty or thirty cosses distance, or at most three days' journey. Saadat-qhan, desirous to get out of such a critical spot, and unable, moreover, to go on with the expenses of an expedition that produced no resource, at a time too when the rainy season was at hand, resolved to make an accommodation, and to return to Adjmir, and so on the Capital. In vain did Bhat-sing represent, "That this expedition was more important than anything to be compassed in the Capital. That the Princes of that country, being the noblest of all the Radjp8ts, and such as were acknowledged for having resigned in time of yore all over Hindostan, the bringing them under subjection would not only greatly redound to his honour, and engage the other Zemindars to submit of their own accord, but would in time produce such fruits as would surpass his utmost expectations. In vain did he add, that so soon as the country of Adjmir should be subdued, his character, enhanced in the eyes of men by such an expedition, would be greatly conducive in bringing to terms the Djatt S8r8dj-mull, and in reducing to controul the country about Acbar-abad." All those reasons produced no change in his mind. And this is the more unaccountable, as Baht-sing had during this whole expedition proved of great service, notwithstanding the junction effected between the Marhattas, commanded by Malhar's son, and the enemy, for he had all along supplied the army with necessaries, and had exhibited much wisdom and a variety of talents, in



occasionally extricating it from its difficulties. Finding that Saadat qhan was bent on an accomodation, he kept himself at home, without interfering any more. The Marbatta General likewise took his leave of Ram sing and of Assir sing's son, and went home. Saadat-qhan having by treaty received three lacs of rupees, suffered the rest to be pnt off in a variety of instalments, consisting of money and effects, which were to be paid so much at such a place, and so much at another. After this treaty, he quitted Peïpar, and arrived at Adjmir, at which place my uncle, Séyd Abdool-aaly-qhan being sensible of Saadat qhan's levity and want of understanding resigned his service, and took his leave. But as he had run himself in debt in a service which yielded nothing that year but a prospect of preferment he was obliged to sell his elephants and some of his furniture, in order to pay of his troops and his creditors after which he returned immediately to Shah djehan-abad, where hearing that the Vezir was gone on an expedition against the Afghans he only tarried three days in that Capital, and marched out to join him and he was already advanced to Kevoï when he met some of the runaways of the Vezir's army. The Vezir himself arrived the next day. Abdool-aaly qhan having found here an opportunity of paying that Minister his respects returned with his retinue to the Capital where on being asked his advice a few days after, he proposed taking into his service Radja Baht-sing as well as the two Marbatta Generals.

As to Saadat-qhan after spending one year and some months in that fruitless expedition, he arrived at the Capital in the beginning of the year 1164 and as he had lost his character in that expedition where he had carried little money and numerous troops he was on his return, perpetually reproached and insulted by those people who insisted upon being paid their arrears. Becoming contemptible by so many repeated assaults and insults, he had the folly to expect a supply of money from the Emperor and as he was not heard he had the Imprudence to mention the Emperor's name as well as that of Djavid qhan, his favourite in terms of disrespect, making so little secret of his sentiments when at home that they became the constant topic of his conversation. Not satisfied even with that, he in a fit of passion resolved to go to Court and to get himself righted,

happen what it would. He mounted his horse, and taking his spear in his hand, he got within the Palace, and attempted to go as far as the Emperor, to whom he intended to represent his grievances in an angry tone of voice. Djavid-qhan, the Superintendent of the Hall of Audience, seeing in what plight he was, requested him not to appear in the Emperor's presence. The other finding himself obstructed, vented his resentment both against His Majesty and the eunuch, in such terms as came uppermost, and after that, he returned home; but he was hardly landed, when a body of soldiers came to confiscate his property. And thus from the summit of honour and affluence, he fell in a little time into the greatest contempt and distress. His title of "Lord of Lords" was bestowed on Ghazi-eddin-qhan, eldest son to the late Nizam-el-mulk, who received the Qhylaath of it the next day, and Saadat-qhan, deprived of everything, went to live in obscurity and oblivion. It is time for us now to resume the narrative about the affairs of Decan.

Saadat-qhan returns to Court in disgrace, and is dismissed the service.

Nassyr-djung-nasr-ed-dowlah, second son and successor of Nizam-el-mulk, was a young man of talents, of much natural genius, and much bravery. To his capacity for government, he joined a cultivated understanding, being fond of poetry, and often composing himself, and although raised so young to the pinnacle of power, he early exhibited a number of good qualities. He even commanded as his father's Deputy, when the latter died of a looseness. As soon as he had assumed the administration in his own name, he marched against the Marhattas, and beat them so often, that he taught them to fear his person and to respect his dominions, as we shall soon explain in the following sheets. The dread of his power and his valour had so far taken possession of their hearts, that they, did not dare to move out of their own country, during his lifetime, nor have we any instance of their having been kept in awe by any one so much as by him. Having been commanded to the presence by the Emperor Ahmed-shah, in the year 1162, he had advanced as far as the Nerbedda at the head of a numerous cavalry, when a counter-order came, with which he complied the more willingly, as his cousin, Hedaïet-muhi-eddin-qhan, was pretending to independence. He therefore turned about, and marched against him with seventy thousand good horse, and one lac of infantry.

Nassyr ed-dowlah *alias* Nasr-djung overawes the Marhattas by the firmness of his Government.

Muhi-eddin-qhan, surnamed Muzaffer djung or the "Victorious in War," descended from Saad oillah qhan Vezir to Shah djehan, and was son of a daughter of Nizam-el mulk in whose lifetime he had enjoyed the Viceroyalty of Bidjapoor for several years together. But as soon as his uncle was dead and he heard that his successor Nasr djung had advanced as far as the Nerbedda with the flower of his troops he availed himself of the opportunity to assume independence. With this view he attached to himself Hussein-dost qhan *alias* Chenda sahab a man of importance in the Carnatic, whose family cut a principal figure in the city of Arcat and the latter exhorted him to render himself master of that province. This country was these many years governed by Anver eddin-qhao, surnamed Shahamet-djung, or the Vallant in War a native of Gopamāṣ who had been appointed to the office of Nazem or Military Governor by Nizam el mulk himself. Hedaïet muhi eddin-qhan having assembled a mighty army from the French of Pélcherry (225) with whom Chenda sahab had made a treaty attacked Anver eddin-qhan and after a battle in which this Governor exerted himself like a brave man defeated him intirely. It was on the sixteenth of Shaaban in the year 1162 Nasyr djung who was then at Aorengabad hearing of this event resolved to chastise his cousin and although that Capital is at no less than five hundred measured cosses (226) from the sea-coast on which is seated the town of Pélcherry he hastened thither on the wings of expedition and resentment and so early as the sixth of the second Rebi in the year 1163 he engaged Hedaïet muhi-eddin qhan and totally defeated him. The victory was at first disputed, but the zephyr of Divine assistance was at last pleased to blow upon Nassyr djung's drooping standards. Hedaïet muhi eddin qhan was taken prisoner, and the victorious Prince, finding that the rainy season was at hand took up his winter-quarters at Arcat. He had in his army a body of Afghans settled in the Carnatic and commanded by Himmet-qhan and some other officers of that

Marches  
against the  
French of  
Pélcherry,  
and is slain  
by a conspiracy

---

(225) This mighty army from Pélcherry consisted in seven hundred French, and about two thousand Sepahis which, compared to the English Sepahis of these days, both in stature, arms and discipline, were but a rabble. There seems to be some words wanting in the text for the revolted had a numerous army of their own, besides their French.

(226) A measured cosse is more than two English Miles.

nation Those ungrateful wretches, forgetful of the favours conferred upon them by both the father and son, and unmindful of the gratitude and attachment they owed him in return, conceived the design of stripping their Lord both of his treasures and dominions, and joining with the Prince's prisoner, and the French of P8lcherry, they, on the seventeenth of Moharrem, according to Astronomical computation, and the sixteenth, according to the vulgar one, fell on that Prince's quarters at midnight, and filled them with confusion and disorder Himmet-qhan, who had always professed himself his zealous servant, having advanced to him with a musket in his hand, fired at his breast, and laying him at his feet, he sent that mighty Prince to the Regions of Nothingness It was in the year 1164 of the Hedjrah After this, the camp was nothing but a scene of confusion and dismay and mistrust, but some of those personally attached to that unfortunate Prince, took up his body, and carried it to Aoreng-abad, where they buried it in the Garden of Saint Burhan-eddin, the Arabian, close to the tomb of his father, Nizam-el-mulk The Poet Mir-ghoolam-aaly, the Belgramite, who had lived upon terms of friendship and intimacy with him, and had enjoyed great offices in his Court, had drawn his chronogram in these verses

"The illustrious Navvab, that great lover of justice, is gone

"The sword of destiny did not give him time to display his great talents—he

"went away so soon,

"He was martyred the seventeenth of Moharrem,

"And the afflicted Poet has discovered his chronogram in these words —

"The sun is gone, raise your lamentations and weep (227) !"

The Hand that wrote the events of Nassyr-djung's life in Heaven, having so suddenly closed its book, Hedaïet-muhi-eddin-qhan, from being kept a close prisoner, assumed the ensigns of Royalty, and displayed the standard of command and dominion Taking with him a body of French, and the ungrateful Afghans, he set out from P8lcherry for Haider-abad But the Supreme Avenger had already sown the seeds of retribution for the murder of Nassyr-djung, and they had taken so deep a root, that both the new Prince and the Afghans harboured already

Is succeeded  
by his cousin,  
Hedaïet-  
muhi-eddin-  
qhan,

---

(227) This is an allusion to the custom of India, where lamentations always cease at sun set, to begin again at day-break

the utmost distrust and resentment (228) against each other. The former had even taken measures with the French for destroying the Afghans, and especially Himmet qhan, the Carnatican, so that on the seventeenth of the first Rebi, exactly two months after Nassyr djung's murder, at a time when the army was encamped at Lacra pilli, and seemed to have hidden the whole earth under the immense extent of its tents, the new Prince suddenly mounted his elephant with an intention to attack the Afghans, and to make an end of them. Himmet-qhan who was upon his guard, advanced to meet him at the head of a numerous body of his own countrymen and it happened that, by a particular disposition of a watchful Providence which sought to avenge Nassyr-djung's murder both the perpetrators, that is Himmet-qhan and Hedaïet muhi-eddin-qhan, were slain in the engagement. Hedaïet muhi eddin-qhan is the first in India who sought assistance from Nazareans (229), and who by introducing those strangers into his dominions ruined his own family. There was then in the army a certain Ramdass a black Brahman of Sicacol who had enjoyed a small pay in some of Nassyr djung's offices and this man who had the merit of having successfully intrigued with the French, and procured the death of Nassyr djung had been taken into favour by the new Prince, and made a Prime Minister and honoured with the surname of Radja Ragonat dass. This man came now to cut an important figure. As to Hedaïet muhi eddin-qhan, he was fond of study and knowledge and was versed in books, but he made a parade of his learning, and his friends have praised him too much. During that two days reign of his, Baladjî rão the Marhatta, had marched from Poona to Aoreng-abad with a numerous army, which Shah nevaz qhan the Governor of that country found means to send back by a present of fifteen lacs of rupees.

---

(228) Part of that resentment was on account of their having plundered the Treasury so effectually that there remained nothing for the payment of the troops. Inasmuch that the Prime Minister Ramdass, to conceal that penury filled the chests with bags of copper money.

(229) Christians this is their name all over the East nor had they any other for a century and-a-half, although some Antiochians to distinguish themselves from the Hellenist Jews, assumed the name of Christians. But this word was taken up only by those that spoke Greek. Those that spoke Syriac and Hebrew or Arabic, continued to call themselves Nazareans nor had they in Arabia, six hundred years after any other name, nor have they any other to this day.

Hedaïet-muhi-eddin-qhan having lost his life in expiation of Nassyr-djung's murder, and Himmet-qhan with his Afghans, those sworn enemies of Nizam-el-mulk's offspring, having, been sent to roam in the desert of Nothingness, Ramdass, who had assumed the office of Deputy-General, and had the French in his party, raised to the throne Séyd Mahmed-qhan, surnamed Selabet-djung, or the "Steadfast in Battles," third son of Nizam-el-mulk. The new Prince immediately, on his accession, attached to his service both Ramdass and the French, with whom he marched to Aoreng-abad, where he passed the rainy season, and on the return of the fair weather, he marched out with an intention to chastise Baladjî-rao for his late invasion. With that view he assembled his troops at Ahmed-nagor, from whence he continued his route directly to Poona. Baladjî-rao, without suffering him to come so far, met him half-way with an army of fifty thousand horse, but was defeated, at which time the French with their quick musketry and their expeditious artillery drew smoke from the Marhatta breasts. Selabet-djung, after that victory, ruined and devastated the whole country as far as Poona, where a greater engagement took place on the beginning of the year 1765. It was in Moharrem, in which whole month the moon had remained eclipsed, and the Marhattas, together with their General, having been endlessly busy in performing the religious duties enjoined on such a particular phenomenon, they were set upon in the night with so much success, that they lost a vast number of men, which the French consumed in shoals at the fire-altars of their artillery. Baladjî-rao, who was actually busy at his devotions, and naked, had hardly time to throw himself upon an unsaddled mare, on which he saved his life, by flying with all his might. The implements of his worship (230), which were all of gold, fell in the hands of both the Mussulmen and the Nazar-eans. But notwithstanding this mighty victory, such was the spirit of division that had seized Nizam-el-mulk's family and army, that the victorious Selabet djung, so far from reaping any fruit from this victory, was himself in imminent danger, and on the point of succumbing

---

(230) A man who has seen in Europe a Cabinet of Roman Antiquities, is very much surprised when he beholds the like pateres like cymbals, libation-vessels, fire-places, and bells, used by the Gentoos in their devotions in India, &c,

As the army, on its return was marching over the plain of Paleki, on the tenth of the first Djumady of the year 1165 the Prime Minister Ramdass was set upon by some troops, and killed outright (231) Selabet djung continued his journey to Haider-abad from whence he sent for Shah nevaz qhan whom he invested with the office of Prime Minister and of his Lieutenant General. The new Minister was going to apply to the duties of that important station when sudden intelligence came that the Prince of Princes Ghazi eddin qhan, having obtained the investiture of all the Soobahdaries of Decan, was coming at the head of a mighty army. On this intelligence Shah nevaz qhan left a Deputy to execute his office, and departed for Kermla, the residence of Djanodji salhar, a Marhatta Prince of the Barar. The intention of this sudden voyage was to engage that Prince, and likewise Baladji rao who had been in connection with the Minister so early as the times of Nizam el mulk, to mediate an accommodation between Selabet djung and his competitor who had amongst his troops a large body of Marhatta Cavalry commanded by Holkar malhar. On Shah nevaz-qhan's departure from Haider-abad Semsam-ed-dowlah was invested with the Government of that Capital but Ghazi eddin qhan (232) suddenly dying at Aoreng abad Holkar malhar who had got from him the gift of the whole country of Qhandess Sunk mer, and Djalima, obtained from Selabet djung a confirmation of the grant and proved the only man that had benefited by those mighty troubles. After this Shah nevaz-qhan quitted Kermla, and joined his master who had advanced near Aoreng abad to fight his brother and rival. There he re-assumed his office of Lieutenant General sent back Semsam-ed dowlah to Haider abad, and as the rainy season was approaching both the Prince and the Minister took up their winter quarters in that city.

---

(231) He was killed by an Afghan Officer who had asked his arrears in a haughty tone of voice, and on whose face he made as if he spit. The other complained to his countrymen, and the next day they broke upon the Minister in his palace where they backed him to pieces for his having attempted, (being a Gentoo) to spit in the face of a Mussulman.

(232) He was an old impotent man and his youthful brother Selabet-djung intrigued so much with his elder brother's ladies that they poisoned him, and brought him to a sudden death.

It was in this year 1164, that Radja Assiri-sing, son to Radja Adjet-sing-sevai, departed this life, and a report spread that he had been poisoned. The Rana of Oodeipur died at the same time. It is also in this same year that Nassyr-djung, having been attacked by the French in the night, was in the confusion murdered by his ungrateful Afghan soldiers, and this intelligence reaching the Court at the end of the year, his elder brother, Ghazi eddin-qhan, took mourning for him, and being sent for to Court, was complimented with a Qhylaati to that effect. As he was extremely displeased with the Court, he resolved to assume the Government of the whole Decan, and to make his residence there; but the Ministers insisted upon a present. This affair took up some days, when it was accomplished at last, and the Qhylaati of that mighty Viceroyalty having been bestowed upon him, he departed to take possession, as we have already said.

After having given in this manner some account of the troubles in Decan, let us cast our eyes on those that arose on the affairs of Hindostan. In the year 1165 Ahmed-shah, the Abdali, came into that country for the fourth time, and marched towards Lahor. But the Viceroy Mir-mann8, *alias* Muaien-el-mulk, being informed of his coming, was beforehand with him, and not only resisted his attacks for four months together, but several times came out and drove him to a distance, insomuch that the Abdali Prince became sensible that there was no going farther. But jealousy and inner divisions, that bane of all Hindostani affairs, defeated so much resolution and so much good conduct. Adina-beg-qhan, by his eternal treacheries, ruined this brave nobleman also, and Radja C8ramul, his Divan, a man really attached to his master, having been slain, all went to wreck after his death, and Mir-mann8 was overcome, as we are going to explain. The repeated engagements between the two parties had already lasted four months, when Adina-beg-qhan, who intended treason under the mask of friendship, persuaded the Viceroy that it was now time to quit his intrenchment, and to advance in the plain. C8ramul opposed this advice, and was of opinion that they ought to remain as they were three or four days more, after which the Abdali wanting provisions, and already tired of so bloody and so fruitless an expedition, would retire of his own accord. This was the wisest step, but the Viceroy, prompted by his own ardour



Mir mann8  
betrayed and  
defeated.

and courage, listened to the importunities of Adina heg-ghan and coming out of his post he advanced towards the Abdali camp, and in his way stopped at some lofty ground covered with brick kilns, where he had planted his cannon. But this cannon after one discharge was found to want ammunition whilst a large number of camels, each loaded with a couple of Zemberecks or Swivels, of one pound ball came from the Abdali's side, and by Adina heg-ghan's advice, opened upon the Hindostanics the Abdalies at the same time made an attack upon the camp. In this emergency Adina heg-ghan proposed to call Radja C8ramul with a body of troops from the intrenchment. The latter sent for answer that yesterday he had opposed the Viceroy's going out, and now he was afraid that should he move from his post, the soldiers, on seeing the back of his elephant would think it a flight, and would possibly follow an error which would be enough to bring on a defeat. As the Viceroy found himself pressed repeated orders were sent to C8ramul to come. C8ramul surprised and afflicted at the preciseness of the order assembled his Commanders, and having recommended to them firmness and resolution he mounted his elephant, and went towards his master. He had hardly advanced one cosse from camp, when he perceived that those very Commanders, whom he had just been haranguing were in motion for a flight, with all their troops in the greatest disorder. Straight he returned back, and putting himself at the head of a few troops that made a stand he repulsed the Abdalies and he was following them out of the intrenchment, when he was struck by a musket-ball that obliged him to surrender his soul to his Maker. This man was his master's universal agent, and the very soul of the army. On seeing him fall, soldiers and officers took to flight, and the Viceroy having returned to the city sent the Mnlthi Abdollah to make an accommodation, in which it was agreed that Mir mann8 should wait on Ahmed shah-abdall. This being agreed to the latter sent Djehan qhan, an officer of distinction to bring him to his camp, which commission this officer executed with the utmost deference and respect. The Shah received the Viceroy with the ntmost kindness made use of mild expressions to console him, and having appointed him his Deputy and Lieutenant both in Lahor and M8ltan, he returned towards Cab8l and Candahar,

Is well used  
by the victors

two places that had become the Capitals of his dominions, and the places of his residence. From that day those two rich provinces of Pendjab (233) and M8ltan were severed from the Empire of Hindostan, and added to the new monarchy of the Abdalies.

Whilst the Abdaly King was stopped short by Mir-mann8, he sent an Ambassador to the Court of Delhi. It was Calender-qhan. This step having made impression on the Court of Delhi, which became apprehensive that the Abdalies would soon come upon the Capital, the Ministers wrote repeatedly to Ab8l-mans8r-qhan, the Vezir, to take the Marhatta Malhar with him, and to return to Court with the utmost expedition. The Vezir having sent for Malhar, engaged him, under promise of a mighty sum, to make the campaign with him, and he returned with his army, and with that General to the Capital. But meanwhile Djavid-qhan, the eunuch, who now acted as Prime Minister, finding himself supported by a party of treacherous Grandees, all jealous of the fresh accession of glory which the Vezir might gain a second time, made haste to clap up a peace with Calender-qhan, and having granted him all his demands, as well as the cession of Pendjab and M8ltan, he quickly dismissed him from the Capital. The Vezir being arrived after this treaty, was shocked at so shameful a compromise, and at so much precipitation. In his resentment and indignation, he refused to come into the city, and encamped on the other side of the Djumna. He afterwards sent word to the Ministers, that it was at their requests that he had brought the Marhatta Malhar with his whole cavalry, under promise of a mighty sum of money, and now that they had rendered that assistance unnecessary, who was to satisfy the Marhatta's claims? Such a requisition could not but embarrass them, but they were rescued out of their difficulties by a lucky event. Ghazi-eddin-qhan, who had put on his Qhyla at for the Viceroyalty of all the Decan, was stopped short by the Ministers, who previously insisted on a Pishcush or present, which the other wished to avoid. It was at this time that the Vezir sent his message, and put it in the Viceroy's power to avail himself now of the difficulties under which the Court laboured, in order to carry his point. He sent them word that, if they would give him his patents without delay, he would undertake to satisfy

The Court eunuchs submit to an humiliating treaty with the Abdalies

Malhar's demands, and would also take that General with him. The proposal being accepted he appointed his own son as his Deputy at Court, took Malhar with him, and departed for his new Government.

The Vezir  
incensed at so  
shameful a  
compromise.

After this departure, the Vezir entered the city but took up his abode in his own Palace (234). Here he was greatly discontented, and shocked to see an eunuch, like Djavid qhan, dictate in all matters of State, and govern the Emperor's mind, and could by no means agree that such a man should have made a peace that dishonoured the Empire, by giving up two important provinces, which had left open a large breach for the enemy's incursions into the heart of Hindostan. He was likewise jealous of the omnipotence of the Empress-mother and of her eunuch, shocked at their meddling with every affair of State and uneasy at their being both leagued against him.

The Vezir  
sets his master  
at defiance.

Whilst the Vezir was brooding upon his discontent, an event happened which gave offence to all the world. The Emperor prompted by these two persons had raised one Mia-qhao, a brother of his mother but an actor by profession, to the military grade of seven thousand horse, and to the surname of Mūatekud eddōnlah or "Trustworthy of the Empire" and to support the State incumbent upon such high titles, this man had been complimented with a complete household of elephants, horses, &c., together with the late Emir-qhao's Palace, ready furnished as it was. By this profusion he brought this man forwards and made him figure amongst the mightiest Lords of the Empire, although it must be acknowledged that the new Lord was not destitute of good qualities, and did not avail himself of his favour but to oblige and to do good. This promotion, however, was looked upon as an affront to themselves, by all the Grandees of the Empire, and especially by the Vezir who resolved to rid himself of the umbrage which Djavid-qhan gave him perpetually. This eunuch who trusted so much to his influence, that he rubbed his forehead against the third heaven had the imprudence to accept of an entertainment at the Vezir's palace, where Aaly beg-qhan, the head Nassiqh-cbi, *alias* Sbitab-djung,

---

(234) As Grandmaster of the Artillery he had the command of the Citadel; and as Superintendent of Ghāṣl-qhana or bathing-place that is, the private apart ment, he was obliged to reside in the Citadel, and even within the Palace.

ripped open his belly with a stroke of a poniard, and killed him instantly. This execution which had taken place by the Vezir's order, exasperated the Emperor and his mother, and, in order to ruin such an overbearing Minister, they resolved to join Intyzam-ed-dowlah and all his other enemies

Whilst the Court seemed convulsed with dissensions and jealousies, Ghazi-eddin-qhan was advancing by long stages to Aoreng-abad, one of the Capitals of Decan, where he made his entry, having with him the Marhatta Malhar, with his whole cavalry. But this man, who knew the difficulties under which his new master laboured, availed himself of his situation to request that the province of Qhandess should be made over to him to insure the payment of his troops, and the Prince, not thinking it proper in the beginning of his expedition to discontent a man at the head of such a force, gave him the patent of it under his hand and seal, and thus that fine province, the extent of which reaches to the very gates of Aoreng-abad, passed at once under the Marhatta dominion on these easy terms. Ghazi-eddin-qhan, soon after this, on the seventeenth day after his arrival at that Capital, died suddenly, so that his army and friends which had followed him from so far, in hopes of bettering their fortunes, having now lost their leader, dispersed of themselves, and none remained but his household servants, who, unwillingly to leave their master's body in a foreign land, took it by turns upon their shoulders, and carried it to Shah-djehan-abad, and in this manner the dominion of all the Decans remained to Selabet-djung

Ghazi-eddin-qhan, the pretender to the Sovereignty of Decan, dies suddenly

The death of Ghazi-eddin-qhan set young Mir-sheab-eddin, his son, to work. He had been left in the Capital as Deputy to his father in his office of "Lord of Lords." The Emperor thought it enough to continue the young man in the enjoyment of certain surnames and titles that appeared to be hereditary in the family, and accordingly he was called, as well as his father and grandfather, "The Champion of the Law,—The Prop of the Kingdom,—The Brave Commander, ever Victorious in War." But as all these honours did not imply anything of his having been admitted as successor to his father, in his title and office of Lord of Lords, he went to the Vezir's house, and he so affected both that Minister and his consort with compassion on his orphan

condition that the Vezir obtained his request from the Emperor. But the ungrateful young Lord forgetting the education he had received in that Minister's house where he had learned several languages acquired a taste for poetry, and had become a learned man as well as a good soldier, henceforward turned his back on his benefactor and unmindful of the many obligations he owed to that family and the constant support he had received from it, he joined Intizam ed-döwlah, and the Emperor with his mother, to the conspiracy of oversetting the Vezir and demolishing his power. Nor was it long before the Minister had information of this conspiracy, for in a few days the Emperor sent him word, to desire his leaving to His Majesty the disposal of the artillery and of the bathing place that is the private apartments and he recommended to him a better discharge of his duty as a Vezir. For the latter sensible that a breach had now taken place between himself and his master abstained henceforward from going to Court and the Emperor intimidated at this, commenced caressing him anew and he even went to see him in which visit he excused what had passed, and seemed to have regained his heart. But as the reconciliation on either side went no farther than the lips and it was evidently defective in truth and sincerity months after months were spent in fruitless negotiations to the very beginning of the year 1166, and even the first six months of that year were taken up in negotiations, and likewise in giving birth to some events which we are to mention.

The Vezir was at a loss how to act. To levy war against the Emperor seemed both improper and odious and on the other hand he apprehended that the conspiracy aimed at his life as well as at his power and influence. The truth is that he had neither that kind of policy nor that blaze of daringness requisite for an enterprise of such a high nature, he had not that disregard to scruples necessary to a man that had conceived such high flown projects nor that stiffness of mind that enables him to overlook all obstacles and to set at nought all considerations he wanted also a sufficient extent of genius to take an adequate view of the strength of his party, and he had too high an opinion of that of his enemies. In fact, such was the opinion entertained of his power, so the beginning of the troubles and so inconsiderable appeared in comparison both Intizam-ed döwlah,

✓  
Civil war  
between the  
Emperor Ah-  
med-shah and  
his Vezir

and that child of Mir-sheab-eddin that, had he only opened his mouth, there were many Commanders in his service, who on a single order of his would have gone, seized, and bound those two Lords in their very lodgings, nor had either of them dared to offer the least resistance in such a case. Destiny blinded the Vezir's eyes, and shut up his ears effectually. And the Emperor sensible of his irresolution, wrote him a note at midnight, the purport of which had been agreed to in a Council between those two Lords and the Court eunuchs. It was in the Emperor's own hand. The Emperor having sent for the Deputy-Grandmaster of the artillery, who, as such, had the command of the Citadel of Shah-djehan-abad on the Vezir's part, bid him carry the note himself, and added to it a long message upon several subjects. The foolish man excused himself on the impropriety of quitting his post, but the Emperor insisted, adding that it was for a matter of importance which admitted of no delay. The man had the simplicity to take up the note, and to carry it directly. As soon as he was out of the gate, the Emperor ordered all the gates to be shut up, and admittance to be denied the man for the future. At the same time the garrison placed by the Vezir, and which was all composed of his own troops, was driven out of the Citadel with much ill usage. All the Vezir's friends and officers were likewise forbidden admittance. Moreover, the cannon on one of the towers, which commanded the Vezir's Palace, was turned against it, and every preparative was made for contention and war. The Vezir who conceived that contending with an armed hand against the Emperor would redound to his dishonour, render his person odious, and bring upon him the imputation both of rebellion and ingratitude, submitted to his fate, and only asked leave to repair to his Governments beyond the Djumnah (235); and this being denied, he took his own party, came out of town without leave, encamped at about two or three cosses distance, and resolved to go to his Governments without leave indeed, but, if possible, without battle or bloodshed. This resolution was no sooner known, than his enemies resolved to attack and fight him, and even to have his life

---

(235) Ilah-abad and Aood are, with respect to Delhi, both beyond the Djumna

The Vezir informed of that particular, pitched upon an idiot, whom no body knew to personate one of the Imperial Princes and having sent his consort and family to a strong hold of S8r8dj mull's he invited that Djatt Prince to come again into his service. The other consented, and taking a body of troops, he came and joined the Vezir his old friend and master. So decisive a step having convinced the Emperor that there were no measures to be kept with the Vezir he discharged him from that high office and conferred it on Intyzam ed-döwlah, son of the late Camer eddin-qhan. And as Mir sheab-eddin notwithstanding his youth seemed to be endowed with courage and much penetration he entrusted him with the care of assembling an army and fighting the Vezir he summoned at the same time to his ~~assist~~ <sup>assist</sup> ~~there~~ all the Commanders and officers of ~~immediacy~~ <sup>immediacy</sup> ~~to him a better discharge or~~ <sup>the environs</sup> of the Capital. One of the ~~sons~~ <sup>sons</sup> Nédjib-qhan the Robillab, a Commander who already bore a character for courage and daringness as well as for understanding and conduct. This is the man whom we shall see rise gradually in the sequel and by dint of merit only to the high dignity of Emir ul umra, or Prince of Princes of Hindostan. All the Zemindars of the neighbourhood whether of illustrious descent or of new families like Chita g8djer and Bel8 qhan all the Skyds of Barr all the noblemen of ancient families who lived retired these many years for instance Mahmed sadyc qhan son to S8if ollah-qhan Viceroy of Tatta, all these came and offered their services or were invited over. Amongst these last was my forgiven father who after having been preferred by the Vezir to the command of Panip8t and the other eighteen Districts of the dependence of the Qhailassa office, had of late fallen under his displeasure and that of Abdol medjid qhan, the Cashmerian and was kept in confinement for some balances set up against him. The Court system being now so far changed he was forgiven the above balances sent for and introduced to the Emperor, by Hafyz mohtar-qhan as a nobleman worthy of his favour. He on his side sent for some of his ancient troops and Commanders, and having assted them with some money to fit themselves up he engaged them all in the Imperial service. All these warlike preparations in the middle of the city and the many engagements that followed, seemed to shake every house in its foundations

Mir sheab-eddin alias Umad-el mull is in trusted with the office of pushing the war against the Vezir

From the beginning of Redjeb, in the year 1166, for full six months together, the streets of the city became the theatre of war and bloodshed. The Vezir's troops, which were commanded mostly by able officers, all old soldiers, jealous of their honour, distinguished themselves on all occasions, and above all others, the famous Ghossain or Fakyr, Radj-ender-gur, who had of late acquired so much honour at the siege of Ilah-abad, and now had come of his own motion to join the Vezir's cause, this man made nothing of throwing himself amongst the very fire of the Imperial Artillery, and of killing and wounding every day numbers of people upon the very muzzles of their guns. He had but a few bravoës with him, but all as determined and as invulnerable as himself, and so often did he come off unhurt from desperate engagements, that a notion prevailed that he had some piece of witchcraft about his body, or some talisman about his person, and this notion, which took root in people's mind, rendered him still more formidable, when one day he was shot dead by a random musket-ball, and then the prepossession disappeared. It was in such a scene of confusion and blood-shed that Saadat-qhan emerged again from his corner. This man whom we have seen dismissed from his office and dignity of Emir-ul-umrah, and who on that account had conceived an implacable hatred against the Emperor, availed himself of the opportunity to come out again, and to figure upon the theatre of the world. He wrote to the Vezir that he wished to join him, and requested only that a body of troops should march towards the Monument of the Prince of men, and this being complied with, he under pretence of going thither in pilgrimage, joined the Vezir's troops, and went into his camp. This could not be a mighty acquisition to the Vezir, who underwent a loss on the other side, for Mir-sheab eddin having published at the same time, that whatever trooper had the letter *sin* stamped upon his horse, might come over, and would be received at fifty rupees per month, besides a hundred rupees for his entrance, and this proclamation having been rumoured in the Vezir's camp, almost all those of that description (and they were mostly T8ranians, as well as he that invited, them,) deserted, and came over to the Imperialists, to the number of some thousands. Sheab-eddin had even the art to bring religion into the party. He assembled all the Cashmirians and all the Pendjabians who



are all zealous Sunnites, and having set up a standard, as if their religion had been in danger, he published that the Vezir was a Shiyah, and a Rafzy, or blasphemmer (236), and he invited all the Mussulmen to join against one that had blasphemed the successors and waged war against them. He added that this was a sacred war, and that, as such, it conferred the merits of martyrdom on whoever should perish in it. On this publication, thousands and thousands of armed men flocked towards the standard, and nothing was heard but cries of four successors, and four friends and whoever was met with in the streets, and suspected to be a Shiyah, or even a well wisher of the Vezir's was sure of being stripped and beaten some even were killed. The house of the late Mahmed Issac-qhan, inhabited by his two brothers Mirza aaly qhan and Salar djung, was plundered and sacked, as was that of Ismael beg qhan, a principal Commander in the Vezir's army whose house was known to be replenished with precious arms, money jewels and rich furniture to the amount of several corors. In short, no man of character, who was known to be either in the Vezir's army or in his interest escaped unhurt. The houses of every one of them were plundered and sacked nor did any part escape devastation but the women's apartment. To punish these excesses, S8r8dj mull, the Djatt attacked, by the Vezir's order, that part of the city called old Delhi and which is even richer and still more populous than Shah djeihan-ahad itself and he plundered and sacked it so thoroughly that an infinity of people lost their consorts and children and were totally ruined, besides numbers that were massacred. A multitude of all sorts had taken refuge in the house and quarter of Shah bassutt son and successor to shah mahmed djafer on the expectation that his holy character being exceedingly respected by every one, and by the Vezir amongst others who lived on terms of friendship and intimacy with him would prove a safeguard to his house and

دی، پ  
Old Delhi  
plundered by  
the Vezir's  
troops who at  
last came to a  
compromise  
with his  
master

---

(236) The Shiyahs, not satisfied with rejecting the three Lords, whom we have been mentioning some time ago namely Ab3-bekr Omar and Osama (although they did really succeed, and carried the Mussulman name from the Loire in France to the Ganges in India,) load them with abuse and invectives although they have been the Prophet's protectors, and had made him their son-in-law. Hence, as aggressors, they are called Blasphemers or Rafadhies by the Sunnits.—The Emperor of Hindostan, being reputed a successor to those successors is himself styled a Qhalif

quarter in the general plunder and massacre, but they were mistaken, and these deluded people underwent the same unhappy fate as the others. No respect, no regard was paid to it,—but let us pass in silence over all these horrors,—for past is what is past—O God preserve us, preserve all the Imamites from such days as these (237). After six months' slaughter and ruin, both parties became tired of such a life, and both seemed desirous of a peace. The Emperor and his Ministers sent the first message, and the Vezir, who was tired of the immense expenses he daily incurred and who augured no good from all these troubles, gave his consent. Intyazm-ed-dowlah served as mediator in the terms of the agreement, and this was, that the two Governments of Ilahabad and Ahd should be left to the Vezir. These terms having been agreed to, the latter in the beginning of the year 1167, set out for those countries, and left the field to Mir-sheab-eddin.

This daring young man had, during the war with the Vezir, called to his assistance from Malva, the Marhatta General Holcar-mahar, under promise of a high pay, but he arrived after the conclusion of the peace. Nevertheless, as the Minister was highly exasperated against the Djatts for their connections with the Vezir, and the assistance they had given him, and as on the other hand, he was found of remaining in power, he availed himself of the arrival of the Marhatta troops to fall upon the Djatt S&sdj-mull. The latter who thought himself over-matched in the field, took shelter in certain strong fortresses of his, known under the names of Dig, Comir, and Buhret-poor, where he was immediately besieged, and as it is impossible to take such fortresses without battering cannon, Mir-sheab-eddin who feared lest matters should draw to a length, sent to the Emperor to request some heavy artillery. The person he sent was Akybet-mahmood-qhan, a Cashmirian, who was everything in that Minister's house, but, however, a wicked dangerous man,

New troubles  
in Delhi.

(237) Had not the author been a most bigotted Shyiah, he would not have spoiled that fine exclamation by restricting that benevolent wish of his to the Imamites only, that is, to the Shyiahs. The text has the word *M&mmimin*, which signifies the faithful, and which Shyiahs assume to themselves exclusively to all other Mussulmen. The exclamation, besides its inhuman partiality, is inconsequent, it being the Sunnies who actually had lost their consorts and their lives by the violence of the Shyiahs, whereas the latter had lost only some property by the Sunnies.

seditions and factious to a high degree This request did not please Intyzam ed dōwlah, the Vezir, who was an honest well meaning man He knew that as soon as those fortresses should have been taken, both the master and the envoy would not fail to return to the city, and to avail themselves of their prevalence to torment indiscriminately both friends and foes He therefore advised the Emperor to refuse the artillery The Cashmirian apprised of that, formed himself a party amongst the Mansoobdars or Military Officers of the Crown and the people dependent on the artillery and partly by threats and by promises of plunder, as well as by a variety of other means he engaged them to join his party in taking Intyzam ed-dōwlah out of the way Having fixed a day for this purpose, he assembled a multitude of people and made an attack upon that Minister's house, but being repulsed he quitted the city and putting himself at the head of several bodies of handitties that joined together he fell a plundering all those Districts that depended on the Qhalissa office, at the head of which presided that nobleman, as well as all those in the environs of the Capital which he knew to be held as Djaqlirs by the several Lords of the Court

Whilst he was busied in that manner, S8r8dj mull, besieged in his fortress sent up several requests both to the Emperor and to Intyzam ed-dōwlah, his Minister, representing, "That if they suffered Mir sheab eddin and his Marhattas to go on with his schemes, a time would come when he would turn his eyes upon the throne itself as well as upon the Vezirship, and would attempt to overturn the Government, so as to new model it to his own mind That he therefore submitted it to the Imperial wisdom whether in such a state of things it would not be proper for His Majesty to come out with his Minister and army, and under pretence of bringing into order the Districts of the Imperial demesnes, and hunting on the way, to advance as far as Sekenderah, where it would be easy to send for Abool mans8r qhan a man who in such a case would not fail to join in crushing Mir sheab-eddin and the Marhattas ' This advice having been approved by both the Emperor and the Minister, the Monarch set out on a hunting party, and took with him the ladies of his sanctuary as well as his Ministers all the Lords of the Court, as well as his army and artillery in the

Mir-sheab-eddin on ill terms with his master

course of his hunting he, from plain to plain, advanced as far as three or four cosses beyond Sekenderah. But he was averse from the party of applying to Ab8l-mans8r-qhan, nor was it better relished by either his mother, or the Vezir, Intyzam-ed-dowlah, who after Djavid-qhan's death, had leagued with that Empress. In complying with this part of S8r8dj-mull's advice, they seemed to act with dilatoriness and reluctance. All these counsels and this irresolution having been reported to Mir-sheab-eddin, who was exceedingly alert and intent upon his own schemes, he re-called Akybet-mahm8d, and sent him to the Emperor's camp, as if to give him advice that some thousands of disbanded Marhatta horse, having made their appearance in his neighbourhood, had suddenly disappeared without it being known where they would shew themselves again. The envoy having said so much, returned to his master. The slothful Emperor paid no great attention to the message, and the negligent Vezir, whose particular business it was to watch over the army, and to insure the honour of the Imperial household, as well as the safety of the Imperial person, quietly went into his tent, and fell to his afternoon's nap, after having heard the message. But the Marhatta General, Holcar Malhar, was not so sleepy. Highly incensed against the Emperor and his Minister for their denial of some heavy cannon, he had left his son, Ghandirao, to keep the Djatts in awe, and had set out himself with a view to distress the Imperial camp with respect to water and forage, and by that means to find some opportunity to lay hold of the cannon, or at least to strike some good blow, he also wished to have no sharer in this expedition, and to be left to himself. Without giving any intimation of his design to any one, not even to Mir-sheab-eddin, he set out in the beginning of the night, passed the Djumna at the ford of Mahtra, and was close to the Imperial army, before any one knew of his having so much as left his camp, and, first of all, he fired some rockets to feel the pulse of the enemy. At sight of these, it was concluded in the Imperial camp that Mahm8d was burning some village in the environs, and the matter appearing of no consequence, no one concerned himself in examining more narrowly into the matter, when at the latter part of the night, it was found that Holcar himself was at hand. On this intelligence the Emperor

3.  
G.

Saadat-qhan  
marches  
against the  
Radjp8ts of  
Adjmir and  
is worsted.

him also Mir aaly-asghar-C8bra, of whom we havn spoken much In Aaly verd-y-qhan's history lastly, Mubariz qhan with a number of other persons of distinction He passed the mourn ing days of the month of Moharrem at Pat8dy, and on the beginning of the year 1163, he arrived at a place called Nim rani in the Djatt country where Radja S8r8dj mull had raised a small mud fort, in which he kept a certain number of men Some of Saadat-qhan's people having picked up a quarrel with those of the fort drove them away and It was upon such a mighty success that the new Viceroy ordered his music to play in token of victnry after which getting into his tent, he resolved to halt there In the morning as every one expected that he would pursue his intended journey to Narn8ul in Adjmir where he had ordered his equipage to proceed the thoughtless Viceroy who carried a head without brains, countermanded it at once, and abandoning the original scheme upon Adjmir he turned his views wholly upon settling the Government of Acbar abad and quarrelling with S8r8dj mull the Djatt nor would he hear of anything else Aaly R8stem qhan who had two thousand horse of his own together with Fateh-aaly-qhan who had seven hundred were at the head of his vanguard, and had already proceeded on their march when they were counter manded and sent for to a Council of War; to which were like wise summoned Hekim-qhan who commanded the right wing, at the head of two thousand horse, and Mubralz-qhan who with an equal number, commanded at the left and also S8yd ahdol-aaly-qhan, and Mir-aaly Asghar C8bra, now styled Mum taz djung All these, surprised at this sudden change, were unanimous in their opinions. "They represented that to pick ' up a quarrel with the Djatt was improper but that it would be very proper to go on with the original project of taking, first of all possesinn of Adjmir, where Abi sing had offered his assistance and an addition of revenue, and where he was ' already arrived to make his preparatives That by pursuing ' that scheme they would put to a trial the quality of their ' troops, and would also infuse confidence in them, by such a ' successful expedition That this project being once accomplish ' ed it would be then time to think of bringing to order the "country of Acbar-abad and likewise, that here too Baht sing's

"assistance and advice would prove useful; after which it would become an easy matter to bring S8r8dj-mull himself to order" This advice was good, but the ignorant Governor was inflexible, and he immediately sent dromedaries to bring back his baggage, a counter-order which those officers were obliged to comply with, and also to forward to others, but it was noon-day before they would come back. The army was ordered to proceed to Soba-chund's Caravanserah, where the Viceroy passed the night. The next morning, he commanded the men of his equipage to set out with Fateh-aaly-qhan and his corps, and to make a grand forage. The Djatt informed of this, presented themselves in force, and the Radja himself followed with so much expedition that both armies were in sight at noon. By this time Fateh-aaly-qhan had sent word that both forage and grain had been laden in quantities, and were ready, but that bodies of Djatts were making their appearance, and rendering the march of the convoy impracticable, unless some other Commanders were sent to his assistance. R8stem-aaly-qhan was immediately ordered on that service with his corps. But before he could arrive, the greatest part of the day was already spent, so that Hekim-qhan-qhoshbuki, who had been all this while desirous of a quarrel with the Djatts, thinking his honour concerned in this delay, followed him immediately, without being ordered. He had with him as many of his cavalry as were at hand, about seven hundred in all, but by this time there remained no more than two hours of day-light. Hekim-qhan seeing this, sent word to Aaly-r8stem-qhan, that night was coming, and that it would be better to return. The latter answered that Fateh-aaly-qhan was more advanced than him, and that if he could prevail upon him to come back, himself (Aaly-r8stem-qhan) would follow. After having said so much, he galloped up to him, and both joining together went to Fateh-aaly-qhan, to whom they proposed a retreat. The other, becoming prouder by the invitation, answered that they might retreat first, and that he would follow. They represented, they entreated, it did not avail. The two Commanders, seeing his obstinacy, resolved to stay likewise although the sun was setting, and they sent word to the Viceroy, that the Djatt army was in sight and so near, as to render a retreat dangerous by night, but that

they proposed to pass it upon the spot, to expectation that he, their General would march immediately with the army to their relief. Instead of that the obstinate, ignorant Saadat-qhan sent them word to retreat and come back. They obeyed. It soon became dark, and those men that had been exposed to the heat of the whole day without either victuals or drink, were hastening to their camp, whilst those that were raw troops and had not yet seen any firing, were endeavouring to distance the others. The cannon moreover was ordered to march in front, lest it should be set upon in the dark, and fall into the hands of the enemies. The Djatts observing the confusion in which they marched followed them and coming close in small distinct bodies, they commenced an incessant fire upon them, without quitting their horses. On this Aaly roostem-qhan's elephant growing unruly Hekim qhan approached him, and after many efforts and repeated attempts, he at last found means to draw him upon his own elephant. He was hardly seated and the elephant was rising, when Hekim-qhan received a musket ball in the throat, and fell dead instantly. Another bullet wounded Aaly roostem-qhan. The flight now became general. Numbers were slain and numbers being wounded the survivors reached Saadat qhan's camp which they filled with confusion and fear. The General himself became fearful and was confounded. And now the advanced troops of the enemy appeared in sight, and setting up a war-cry, they struck up such a panic in Saadat-qhan's breast that he wanted to get away, and to make his escape had not Mir-aaly asgar c8bra and his other Commanders stopped him with threats, and obliged him to stay by main force keeping so careful an eye upon him that he could not move. Luckily that the Djatt Prince having risen only to his own defence, did not choose to abide the consequence of seizing or killing a Lord of Lords and that he contented himself with besieging the camp for two or three days together at the end of which he sent proposals by the canal of Fateh-aaly qhan an officer with whom he was acquainted. These having been accepted with a great deal of joy S8r8dj mull sent his own son Radja Djevaher mull who paid a respectful visit to Saadat qhan and concluded an agreement on several conditions, two of which were, that the dependants of the Lord of Lords should

not cut any Pipol-tree (224), nor offer any insult or injury to the temples of the country, or to any object of their worship and veneration. These and some other conditions being agreed to, Saadat-qhan signed the inominious treaty Radja S8r8dj-mùll added, that should the Viceroy promise upon oath not to advance farther than Narnöul, he would himself follow the army and be assisting in that expedition, with his person and advice, in which case, he would undertake to bring the Radjpoots of those parts to an accommodation, by which they would oblige themselves to the payment of fifteen lacs, which he would take upon himself

It was after such a ridiculous campaign, and such an infamous accommodation, that Saadat-qhan quitted the Djatt country to resume his expedition towards Narnoul. He was all the while accompanied by the Radja at the head of his Djatts, who always encamped at two or three cosses distance, in such a manner that messages and agents were continually exchanging on both sides, and in this manner they arrived in the neighbourhood of Narnoul, where Baht-sing came to pay his respects to the Viceroy. On hearing of the shameful treaty, lately concluded with the Djatts, he expressed his surprise and detestation, and proposed to him to recover his honour by marching against the Radjp8ts of Adjmir, that is, by supporting his own projects. This advice having been approved by Saadat-qhan, it gave offence to the Djatt-Prince, who saw how matters went, and took his leave and returned to his own country, leaving Saadat-qhan at liberty to pursue his expedition. That Viceroy being now arrived near Adjmir, marched on rapidly for twenty cosses, and by Baht-sing's advice he took possession of the Gocul-gaut, a difficult passage, which is near the city of Adjmir. But Radja Ram-sing was soon on the other side of the pass. This Prince, better known under the name of Docul-sing, had with him the Radja

---

(224) The Pipol-tree, is, as well as the Berr, or Burr, the Banian tree, an object of veneration, and the *Deus terminus* of India. Both trees serve for marking boundaries, both are milky, stem and leaves, both drop from their branches tendrils that reach the ground, and become so many new trees supporting the widely extended branches of their parent stock, and both in the original stem look rather like a group of trees soldered together, than like one trunk of a single tree. Both produce a red fruit exactly like a small European-fig, but nearly insipid, and which serves only to fatten green Pigeons, Parrots, and Monkeys.



Assiri sing son to Radja Dehiradj djehi sing sevāi and both were at the head of an army which could not be less than thirty thousand horse, with a numerous artillery, and every necessary requisite for war. So great a superiority did not damp Saadat qhan's eagerness. This Viceroy, after spending some days at Adjmir in expectation of being joined by Radja Baht sing, made haste to come out. The first day's march was to Boorigur the second to the little mud fort of Shir sing the third to Murta, and the fourth to a place called Pi bar, in which last march the two armies had a sight of each other. They had set out on both sides with intention to fight, and Baht sing had informed Saadat-qhan, that it was not proper to part with him or to march on as he did as the enemy had planted all his cannon on that side. Saadat qhan, who had never in his whole life listened to any sober advice was as senseless as to observe, "*That men did not turn 'about after having once marched in another direction,'*" and he went on as he had commenced. Baht sing seeing his obstinacy left him and marched on, but slanting from the front, where he knew so much cannon to have been planted. The Radjputs, who had passed the night close to their cannon, seeing Saadat qhan's troops advance so inconsiderately, kept themselves quiet and in silence, until the enemy had come within reach, when they let fly such a shower of cannon and musket balls, as did a great deal of execution in the enemy's ranks where vast numbers were slain. This discharge was but faintly returned by Saadat qhan's people who were already in confusion. It was already noon day the sun shone with intolerable ardour and the cannon and muskets became so hot that there was no handling any of them. A cessation of arms as if by common consent, took place—Saadat qhan's men, pressed by thirst, in a country where water is scarce, dispersed everywhere, and numbers approached inadvertently close to the Radjputs in search of that refreshment. The Radjputs perceiving their distress, by the parchedness of their faces, and the lolling of their tongues, had the generosity to send people to shew them some springs hidden in the sand and these men after having refreshed plentifully both man and horse would carry them back to the spot where they had taken them up, and would dismiss them with these words *Begone and await! For now we are enemies again*

Saadat  
qhan's troops  
ready to  
perish with  
thirst.

Relieved by  
the singular  
generosity of  
the Radjputs

The sudden cessation on both sides, and the assistance given so timely by the Radjpoots, hath something odd and incredible in it, but they are, however, completely well attested I put the question to several officers and others that had been relieved in that manner, and amongst others, to Séyd Ismail-aaly-qhan, son to my uncle, Abd8l-aaly-qhan, and he, as well as the others, always answered in the affirmative Nor is it but upon such a strong testimony, that I have thought this particular worthy of a place in this history This behaviour of the Radjpoots does them a deal of honour, but such a generosity is in their character May God Almighty please to infuse such benevolent inclinations in the hearts of all the nations of the World! For He is the source of all power and all mercifulness

This spot is not far from the mountains of Dj8déyp8r, not above twenty or thirty cosses distance, or at most three days' journey Saadat-qhan, desirous to get out of such a critical spot, and unable, moreover, to go on with the expenses of an expedition that produced no resource, at a time too when the rainy season was at hand, resolved to make an accommodation, and to return to Adjmir, and so on the Capital. In vain did Bhat-sing represent, "That this expedition was more important than anything to be compassed in the Capital. That the Princes of that country, being the noblest of all the Radjp8ts, and such as were acknowledged for having resigned in time of yore all over Hindostan, the bringing them under subjection would not only greatly redound to his honour, and engage the other Zemindars to submit of their own accord, but would in time produce such fruits as would surpass his utmost expectations In vain did he add, that so soon as the country of Adjmir should be subdued, his character, enhanced in the eyes of men by such an expedition, would be greatly conducive in bringing to terms the Djatt S8r8dj-mull, and in reducing to controul the country about Acbarabad" All those reasons produced no change in his mind And this is the more unaccountable, as Baht-sing had during this whole expedition proved of great service, notwithstanding the junction effected between the Marhattas, commanded by Malhar's son, and the enemy, for he had all along supplied the army with necessaries, and had exhibited much wisdom and a variety of talents, in

occasionally extricating it from its difficulties. Finding that Saadat-qhan was bent on an accomodation, he kept himself at home, without interfering any more. The Marhatta General likewise took his leave of Ram sing and of Assir sing's son, and went home. Saadat qhan having by treaty received three lacs of rupees, suffered the rest to be pot off in a variety of instalments, consisting of money and effects, which were to be paid so much at such a place, and so much at another. After this treaty, he quitted Peshwar and arrived at Adjmir, at which place my uncle, Séyd Abdool aaly-qhan being sensible of Saadat-qhan's levity and want of understanding, resigned his service, and took his leave. But as he had run himself in debt in a service, which yielded nothing that year but a prospect of preferment he was obliged to sell his elephants and some of his furniture, in order to pay of his troops and his creditors after which he returned immediately to Shah-djehan abad, where hearing that the Vezir was gone on an expedition against the Afghans he only tarried three days in that Capital and marched out to join him and he was already advanced to Kevol when he met some of the run aways of the Vezir's army. The Vezir himself arrived the next day. Abdool aaly qhan having found here an opportunity of paying that Minister his respects returned with his retinue to the Capital where on being asked his advice a few days after, he proposed taking into his service Radja Baht sing as well as the two Marhatta Generals.

As to Saadat-qhan after spending one year and some months in that fruitless expedition he arrived at the Capital in the beginning of the year 1164 and as he had lost his character in that expedition where he had carried little money and numerous troops, he was on his return, perpetually reproached and insulted by those people who insisted upon being paid their arrears. Becoming contemptible by so many repeated assaults and insults, he had the folly to expect a supply of money from the Emperor and as he was not heard he had the Imprudence to mention the Emperor's name, as well as that of Djavid qhan his favourite in terms of disrespect making so little secret of his sentiments when at home, that they became the constant topic of his conversation. Not satisfied even with that, he in a fit of passion resolved to go to Court and to get himself righted,

happen what it would. He mounted his horse, and taking his spear in his hand, he got within the Palace, and attempted to go as far as the Emperor, to whom he intended to represent his grievances in an angry tone of voice. Djavid-qhan, the Superintendent of the Hall of Audience, seeing in what plight he was, requested him not to appear in the Emperor's presence. The other finding himself obstructed, vented his resentment both against His Majesty and the eunuch, in such terms as came uppermost, and after that, he returned home; but he was hardly landed, when a body of soldiers came to confiscate his property. And thus from the summit of honour and affluence, he fell in a little time into the greatest contempt and distress. His title of "Lord of Lords" was bestowed on Ghazi-eddin-qhan, eldest son to the late Nizam-el-mulk, who received the Qhylaath of it the next day, and Saadat-qhan, deprived of everything, went to live in obscurity and oblivion. It is time for us now to resume the narrative about the affairs of Decan.

Saadat-qhan returns to Court in disgrace, and is dismissed the service

Nassyr-djung-nasr-ed-dowlah, second son and successor of Nizam-el-mulk, was a young man of talents, of much natural genius, and much bravery. To his capacity for government, he joined a cultivated understanding, being fond of poetry, and often composing himself, and although raised so young to the pinnacle of power, he early exhibited a number of good qualities. He even commanded as his father's Deputy, when the latter died of a looseness. As soon as he had assumed the administration in his own name, he marched against the Marhattas, and beat them so often, that he taught them to fear his person and to respect his dominions, as we shall soon explain in the following sheets. The dread of his power and his valour had so far taken possession of their hearts, that they, did not dare to move out of their own country, during his lifetime; nor have we any instance of their having been kept in awe by any one so much as by him. Having been commanded to the presence by the Emperor Ahmed-shah, in the year 1162, he had advanced as far as the Nerbedda at the head of a numerous cavalry, when a counter-order came, with which he complied the more willingly, as his cousin, Hedaïet-muhi-eddin-qhan, was pretending to independence. He therefore turned about, and marched against him with seventy thousand good horse, and one lac of infantry.

Nassyr ed-dowlah *alias* Nasr-djung overawes the Marhattas by the firmness of his Government

Muhi-eddin-qhan, surnamed Muxafer djung or the "Victorious in War," descended from Saad ollah-qhan Vezir to Shah djehan, and was son of a daughter of Nizam-el mulk in whose lifetime he had enjoyed the Viceroyalty of Bidjapoor for several years together. But as soon as his uncle was dead and he heard that his successor Nasr djung had advanced as far as the Nerhedda with the flower of his troops, he availed himself of the opportunity to assume independence. With this view he attach'd to himself Hussein-dost-qhan *alias* Chenda sahab, a man of importance in the Carnatic, whose family cut a principal figure in the city of Arcat and the latter exhorted him to render himself master of that province. This country was these many years governed by Anver-eddin-qhan, surnamed Shahamet djung or the Vallant in War 'a native of Gopamās who had been appointed to the office of Nazem, or Military Governor by Nizam el mulk himself. Hedaïet muhi eddin qhan having assembled a mighty army from the French of Pôicherry (225) with whom Chenda sahab had made a treaty attacked Anver eddin-qhan and after a battle in which this Governor exerted himself like a brave man defeated him intirely. It was on the sixteenth of Shaaban in the year 1162 Nassyr djung who was then at Aorengabad hearing of this event resolved to chastise his cousin and although that Capital is at no less than five hundred measured courses (226) from the sea-coast on which is seated the town of Pôicherry, he hastened thither on the wings of expedition and resentment and so early as the sixth of the second Rehi, in the year 1163 he engaged Hedaïet muhi-eddin-qhan and totally defeated him. The victory was at first disputed, but the zephyr of Divine assistance was at last pleased to blow upon Nassyr djung's drooping standards. Hedaïet muhi-eddin-qhan was taken prisoner, and the victorious Prince, finding that the rainy season was at hand took up his winter quarters at Arcat. He had in his army a body of Afghans settled in the Carnatic, and commanded by Hummet qhan and some other officers of that

Marches  
against the  
French of  
Pôicherry,  
and is slain  
by a con-  
spiracy

(225) This mighty army from Pôicherry consisted in seven hundred French and about two thousand Sepahis which, compared to the English Sepahis of these days, both in stature, arms and discipline, were but a rabble. There seems to be some words wanting in the text for the revolted had a numerous army of their own, besides their French.

(226) A measured course is more than two English Miles.

nation Those ungrateful wretches, forgetful of the favours conferred upon them by both the father and son, and unmindful of the gratitude and attachment they owed him in return, conceived the design of stripping their Lord both of his treasures and dominions, and joining with the Prince's prisoner, and the French of P8lcherry, they, on the seventeenth of Moharrem, according to Astronomical computation, and the sixteenth, according to the vulgar one, fell on that Prince's quarters at midnight, and filled them with confusion and disorder Himmet-qhan, who had always professed himself his zealous servant, having advanced to him with a musket in his hand, fired at his breast, and laying him at his feet, he sent that mighty Prince to the Regions of Nothingness It was in the year 1164 of the Hedjrah After this, the camp was nothing but a scene of confusion and dismay and mistrust, but some of those personally attached to that unfortunate Prince, took up his body, and carried it to Aoreng-abad, where they buried it in the Garden of Saint Burhan-eddin, the Arabian, close to the tomb of his father, Nizam-el-mulk The Poet Mir-ghoolam-aaly, the Belgramite, who had lived upon terms of friendship and intimacy with him, and had enjoyed great offices in his Court, had drawn his chronogram in these verses

"The illustrious Navvab, that great lover of justice, is gone

"The sword of destiny did not give him time to display his great talents—he

"went away so soon,

"He was martyred the seventeenth of Moharrem,

"And the afflicted Poet has discovered his chronogram in these words —

"The sun is gone, raise your lamentations and weep (227) !"

The Hand that wrote the events of Nassyr-djung's life in Heaven, having so suddenly closed its book, Hedaïet-muhi-eddin-qhan, from being kept a close prisoner, assumed the ensigns of Royalty, and displayed the standard of command and dominion Taking with him a body of French, and the ungrateful Afghans, he set out from P8lcherry for Haider-abad But the Supreme Avenger had already sown the seeds of retribution for the murder of Nassyr-djung, and they had taken so deep a root, that both the new Prince and the Afghans harboured already

Is succeeded  
by his cousin,  
Hedaïet-  
muhi-eddin-  
qhan,

---

(227) This is an allusion to the custom of India, where lamentations always cease at sun-set, to begin again at day-break

the utmost distrust and resentment (228) against each other. The former had even taken measures with the French for destroying the Afghans, and especially Himmet qhan, the Carnatican so that on the seventeenth of the first Rebi, exactly two months after Nassyr djung's murder, at a time when the army was encamped at Lacra pilly, and seemed to have hidden the whole earth under the immense extent of its tents the new Prince suddenly mounted his elephant with an intention to attack the Afghans, and to make an end of them. Himmet-qhan who was upon his guard, advanced to meet him at the head of a numerous body of his own countrymen and it happened that, by a particular disposition of a watchful Providence which sought to avenge Nassyr-djung's murder both the perpetrators, that is, Himmet-qhan and Hedaïet muhi eddin qhan were slain in the engagement. Hedaïet muhi-eddin qhan is the first in India who sought assistance from Nazareans (229), and who by introducing those strangers into his dominions ruined his own family. There was then in the army a certain Ramdass a black Brahman of Sicacol who had enjoyed a small pay in some of Nassyr djung's offices and this man who had the merit of having successfully intrigued with the French, and procured the death of Nassyr-djung had been taken into favour by the new Prince, and made a Prime Minister, and honoured with the surname of Radja Ragonat dass. This man came now to cut an important figure. As to Hedaïet muhi eddin qhan, he was fond of study and knowledge and was versed in books but he made a parade of his learning, and his friends have praised him too much. During that two days reign of his Baladjî rão the Marhatta, had marched from Poona to Aoreng-abad with a numerous army, which Shah nevaz-qhan the Governor of that country found means to send back by a present of fifteen lacs of rupees.

---

(228) Part of that resentment was on account of their having plundered the Treasury so effectually that there remained nothing for the payment of the troops. Inasmuch that the Prime Minister Ramdass, to conceal that penury filled the chests with bags of copper money.

(229) Christians this is their name all over the East nor had they any other for a century and-a-half although some Antiochians to distinguish themselves from the Hellenist Jews, assumed the name of Christians. But this word was taken up only by those that spoke Greek. Those that spoke Syriac and Hebrew or Arabic, continued to call themselves Nazareans; nor had they in Arabia, six hundred years after any other name, nor have they any other to this day.

Hedaïet-muhi-eddin-qhan having lost his life in expiation of Nassyr-djung's murder, and Himmet-qhan with his Afghans, those sworn enemies of Nizam-el-mulk's offspring, having, been sent to roam in the desert of Nothingness, Ramdass, who had assumed the office of Deputy-General, and had the French in his party, raised to the throne Séyd Mahmed-qhan, surnamed Selabet-djung, or the "Steadfast in Battles," third son of Nizam-el-mulk. The new Prince immediately, on his accession, attached to his service both Ramdass and the French, with whom he marched to Aoreng-abad, where he passed the rainy season, and on the return of the fair weather, he marched out with an intention to chastise Baladjî-rao for his late invasion. With that view he assembled his troops at Ahmed-nagor, from whence he continued his route directly to Poona. Baladjî-rao, without suffering him to come so far, met him half-way with an army of fifty thousand horse, but was defeated, at which time the French with their quick musketry and their expeditious artillery drew smoke from the Marhatta breasts. Selabet-djung, after that victory, ruined and devastated the whole country as far as Poona, where a greater engagement took place on the beginning of the year 1765. It was in Moharrem, in which whole month the moon had remained eclipsed, and the Marhattas, together with their General, having been endlessly busy in performing the religious duties enjoined on such a particular phenomenon, they were set upon in the night with so much success, that they lost a vast number of men, which the French consumed in shoals at the fire-altars of their artillery. Baladjî-rao, who was actually busy at his devotions, and naked, had hardly time to throw himself upon an unsaddled mare, on which he saved his life, by flying with all his might. The implements of his worship (230), which were all of gold, fell in the hands of both the Mussulmen and the Nazar-eans. But notwithstanding this mighty victory, such was the spirit of division that had seized Nizam-el-mulk's family and army, that the victorious Selabet djung, so far from reaping any fruit from this victory, was himself in imminent danger, and on the point of succumbing.

---

(230) A man who has seen in Europe a Cabinet of Roman Antiquities, is very much surprised when he beholds the like pateres like cymbals, libation-vessels, fire-places, and bells, used by the Gentoos in their devotions in India, &c.



As the army, on its return was marching over the plain of Paleki, on the tenth of the first Djamady of the year 1165 the Prime Minister Ramdass was set upon by some troops and killed outright (231) Selabet djung continued his journey to Haider abad from whence he sent for Shah nevaz qhan whom he invested with the office of Prime Minister and of his Lieutenant General The new Minister was going to apply to the duties of that important station when sudden intelligence came that the Prince of Princes Ghazi eddin-qhan, having obtained the investiture of all the Soobahdaries of Decan was coming at the head of a mighty army On this intelligence, Shah nevaz qhan left a Deputy to execute his office, and departed for Kermela, the residence of Djanodji salhar, a Marhatta Prince of the Barar The intention of this sudden voyage was to engage that Prince, and likewise Baladji rao who had been in connection with the Minister so early as the times of Nizam el mulk to mediate an accommodation between Selabet djung and his competitor, who had amongst his troops a large body of Marhatta Cavalry commanded by Holkar malhar On Shah nevaz qhan's departure from Haider abad Semsam-ed döwlah was invested with the Government of that Capital but Ghazi eddin qhan (232) suddenly dying at Aoreng abad Holkar malhar who had got from him the gift of the whole country of Qbandess, Sunk mer, and Djalima, obtained from Selabet-djung a confirmation of the grant and proved the only man that had benefited by those mighty troubles After this Shah nevaz-qhan quitted Kermela, and joined his master who had advanced near Aoreng abad to fight his brother and rival There he re-assumed his office of Lieutenant General, sent back Semsam-ed döwlah to Haider abad, and as the rainy season was approaching both the Prince and the Minister took up their winter quarters in that city

---

(231) He was killed by an Afghan Officer who had asked his arrears in a haughty tone of voice, and on whose face he made as if he spit. The other complained to his countrymen, and the next day they broke upon the Minister in his paleky where they backed him to pieces for his having attempted, (being a Gentoo) to spit in the face of a Mussulman

(232) He was an old impotent man and his youthful brother Selabet djung intrigued so much with his elder brother's ladies that they poisoned him, and brought him to a sudden death

It was in this year 1164, that Radja Assiri-sing, son to Radja Adjet-sing-sevai, departed this life, and a report spread that he had been poisoned. The Rana of Oodeipur died at the same time. It is also in this same year that Nassyr-djung, having been attacked by the French in the night, was in the confusion murdered by his ungrateful Afghan soldiers, and this intelligence reaching the Court at the end of the year, his elder brother, Ghazi-eddin-ghan, took mourning for him, and being sent for to Court, was complimented with a Qhylaati to that effect. As he was extremely displeased with the Court, he resolved to assume the Government of the whole Decan, and to make his residence there, but the Ministers insisted upon a present. This affair took up some days, when it was accomplished at last, and the Qhylaati of that mighty Viceroyalty having been bestowed upon him, he departed to take possession, as we have already said.

After having given in this manner some account of the troubles in Decan, let us cast our eyes on those that arose on the affairs of Hindostan. In the year 1165 Ahmed-shah, the Abdaly, came into that country for the fourth time, and marched towards Lahor. But the Viceroy Mir-mann8, *alias* Muaien-el-mulk, being informed of his coming, was beforehand with him, and not only resisted his attacks for four months together, but several times came out and drove him to a distance, insomuch that the Abdaly Prince became sensible that there was no going farther. But jealousy and inner divisions, that bane of all Hindostani affairs, defeated so much resolution and so much good conduct. Adina-beg-ghan, by his eternal treacheries, ruined this brave nobleman also, and Radja C8ramul, his Divan, a man really attached to his master, having been slain, all went to wreck after his death, and Mir-mann8 was overcome, as we are going to explain. The repeated engagements between the two parties had already lasted four months, when Adina-beg-ghan, who intended treason under the mask of friendship, persuaded the Viceroy that it was now time to quit his intrenchment, and to advance in the plain. C8ramul opposed this advice, and was of opinion that they ought to remain as they were three or four days more, after which the Abdali wanting provisions, and already tired of so bloody and so fruitless an expedition, would retire of his own accord. This was the wisest step, but the Viceroy, prompted by his own ardour

and courage, listened to the importunities of Adina beg-qhan, and coming out of his post he advanced towards the Abdall camp and in his way stopped at some lofty ground covered with brick kilns, where he had planted his cannon. But this cannon after one discharge was found to want ammunition, whilst a large number of camels each loaded with a couple of Zemberecks or Swivels, of one pound ball, came from the Abdall's side, and by Adina beg-qhan's advice, opened upon the Hindostanies. The Abdallies at the same time made an attack upon the camp. In this emergency Adina beg-qhan proposed to call Radja C8ramul with a body of troops from the intrenchment. The latter sent for answer that yesterday he had opposed the Viceroy's going out, and now he was afraid that should he move from his post, the soldiers on seeing the back of his elephant would think it a flight, and would possibly follow an error which would be enough to bring on a defeat. As the Viceroy found himself pressed repeated orders were sent to C8ramul to come. C8ramul surprised and afflicted at the preciseness of the order assembled his Commanders, and having recommended to them firmness and resolution he mounted his elephant, and went towards his master. He had hardly advanced one cosse from camp when he perceived that those very Commanders, whom he had just been haranguing were in motion for a flight, with all their troops in the greatest disorder. Straight he returned back, and putting himself at the head of a few troops that made a stand, he repulsed the Abdallies and he was following them out of the intrenchment, when he was struck by a musket ball that obliged him to surrender his soul to his Maker. This man was his master's universal agent, and the very soul of the army. On seeing him fall soldiers and officers took to flight, and the Viceroy having returned to the city sent the Mufti Abdollah to make an accommodation in which it was agreed that Mir mann8 should wait on Ahmed shah-abdall. This being agreed to the latter sent Djehan qhan, an officer of distinction to bring him to his camp, which commission this officer executed with the utmost deference and respect. The Shah received the Viceroy with the utmost kindness, made use of mild expressions to console him, and having appointed him his Deputy and Lieutenant both in Lahor and M8ltan, he returned towards Cab8l and Candahar,

Mir mann8  
betrayed and  
defeated.

is well used  
by the victors.

two places that had become the Capitals of his dominions, and the places of his residence. From that day those two rich provinces of Pendjab (233) and M8ltan were severed from the Empire of Hindostan, and added to the new monarchy of the Abdalies.

Whilst the Abdaly King was stopped short by Mir-mann8, he sent an Ambassador to the Court of Delhi. It was Calender-qhan. This step having made impression on the Court of Delhi, which became apprehensive that the Abdalies would soon come upon the Capital, the Ministers wrote repeatedly to Ab8l-mans8r-qhan, the Vezir, to take the Marhatta Malhar with him, and to return to Court with the utmost expedition. The Vezir having sent for Malhar, engaged him, under promise of a mighty sum, to make the campaign with him, and he returned with his army, and with that General to the Capital. But meanwhile Djavid-qhan, the eunuch, who now acted as Prime Minister, finding himself supported by a party of treacherous Grandees, all jealous of the fresh accession of glory which the Vezir might gain a second time, made haste to clap up a peace with Calender-qhan, and having granted him all his demands, as well as the cession of Pendjab and M8ltan, he quickly dismissed him from the Capital. The Vezir being arrived after this treaty, was shocked at so shameful a compromise, and at so much precipitation. In his resentment and indignation, he refused to come into the city, and encamped on the other side of the Djumna. He afterwards sent word to the Ministers, that it was at their requests that he had brought the Marhatta Malhar with his whole cavalry, under promise of a mighty sum of money, and now that they had rendered that assistance unnecessary, who was to satisfy the Marhatta's claims? Such a requisition could not but embarrass them, but they were rescued out of their difficulties by a lucky event. Ghazi-eddin-qhan, who had put on his Qhyla at for the Viceroyalty of all the Decan, was stopped short by the Ministers, who previously insisted on a Pishcush or present, which the other wished to avoid. It was at this time that the Vezir sent his message, and put it in the Viceroy's power to avail himself now of the difficulties under which the Court laboured, in order to carry his point. He sent them word that, if they would give him his patents without delay, he would undertake to satisfy,

The Court eunuchs submit to an humiliating treaty with the Abdalies

Malhar's demands, and would also take that General with him. The proposal being accepted he appointed his own son as his Deputy at Court, took Malhar with him, and departed for his new Government.

After this departure, the Vezir entered the city, but took up his abode in his own Palace (234). Here he was greatly discontented and shocked to see an eunuch, like Djavid qhan, dictate in all matters of State, and govern the Emperor's mind, and could by no means agree that such a man should have made a peace that dishonoured the Empire, by giving up two important provinces, which had left open a large breach for the enemy's incursions into the heart of Hindostan. He was likewise jealous of the omnipotence of the Empress-mother and of her eunuch, shocked at their meddling with every affair of State and uneasy at their being both leagued against him.

The Vezir  
incensed at so  
shameful a  
compromise.

Whilst the Vezir was brooding upon his discontent an event happened which gave offence to all the world. The Emperor prompted by these two persons had raised one Mia qhan, a brother of his mother but an actor by profession, to the military grade of seven thousand horse, and to the surname of Mutekud ed-dinlah, or "Trustworthy of the Empire," and to support the State incumbent upon such high titles, this man had been complimented with a complete household of elephants, horses &c. together with the late Emir qhan's Palace, ready furnished as it was. By this profusion, he brought this man forwards and made him figure amongst the mightiest Lords of the Empire, although it must be acknowledged that the new Lord was not destitute of good qualities and did not avail himself of his favour but to oblige and to do good. This promotion, however, was looked upon as an affront to themselves by all the Grandees of the Empire, and especially by the Vezir, who resolved to rid himself of the umhrage which Djavid-qhan gave him perpetually. This eunuch, who trusted so much to his influence, that he rubbed his forehead against the third heaven, had the imprudence to accept of an entertainment at the Vezir's palace, where Aaly beg-qhan, the head Nassiqh-chi, alias Shitab-djung,

The Vezir  
sets his master  
at defiance.

---

(234) As Grandmaster of the Artillery he had the command of the Citadel; and as Superintendent of Ghissal-qhana, or bathing place, that is, the private apartments, he was obliged to reside in the Citadel, and even within the Palace.

ripped open his belly with a stroke of a poniard, and killed him instantly. This execution which had taken place by the Vezir's order, exasperated the Emperor and his mother, and, in order to ruin such an overbearing Minister, they resolved to join Intyzam-ed-dowlah and all his other enemies.

Whilst the Court seemed convulsed with dissensions and jealousies, Ghazi-eddin-qhan was advancing by long stages to Aoreng-abad, one of the Capitals of Decan, where he made his entry, having with him the Marhatta Malhar, with his whole cavalry. But this man, who knew the difficulties under which his new master laboured, availed himself of his situation to request that the province of Qhandess should be made over to him to insure the payment of his troops, and the Prince, not thinking it proper in the beginning of his expedition to discontent a man at the head of such a force, gave him the patent of it under his hand and seal, and thus that fine province, the extent of which reaches to the very gates of Aoreng-abad, passed at once under the Marhatta dominion on these easy terms. Ghazi-eddin-qhan, soon after this, on the seventeenth day after his arrival at that Capital, died suddenly, so that his army and friends which had followed him from so far, in hopes of bettering their fortunes, having now lost their leader, dispersed of themselves, and none remained but his household servants, who, unwillingly to leave their master's body in a foreign land, took it by turns upon their shoulders, and carried it to Shah-djehan-abad, and in this manner the dominion of all the Decans remained to Selabet-djung.

Ghazi-eddin qhan, the pretender to the Sovereignty of Decan, died suddenly

The death of Ghazi-eddin-qhan set young Mir-sheab-eddin, his son, to work. He had been left in the Capital as Deputy to his father in his office of "Lord of Lords." The Emperor thought it enough to continue the young man in the enjoyment of certain surnames and titles that appeared to be hereditary in the family, and accordingly he was called, as well as his father and grandfather, "The Champion of the Law,—The Prop of the Kingdom,—The Brave Commander, ever Victorious in War." But as all these honours did not imply anything of his having been admitted as successor to his father, in his title and office of Lord of Lords, he went to the Vezir's house, and he so affected both that Minister and his consort with compassion on his orphan

condition that the Vezir obtained his request from the Emperor. But the ungrateful young Lord, forgetting the education he had received in that Minister's house where he had learned several languages, acquired a taste for poetry, and had become a learned man as well as a good soldier, henceforward turned his back on his benefactor and unmindful of the many obligations he owed to that family and the constant support he had received from it, he joined Inty-zam-ed dōwlah, and the Emperor with his mother, in the conspiracy of oversetting the Vezir and demolishing his power. Nor was it long before the Minister had information of this conspiracy, for in a few days the Emperor sent him word, to desire his leaving to His Majesty the disposal of the artillery and of the bathing place that is the private apartments and he recommended to him a better discharge of his duty as a Vezir. For the latter sensible that a breach had now taken place between himself and his master abstained henceforward from going to Court and the Emperor intimidated at this, commenced caressing him anew and he even went to see him in which visit he excused what had passed and seemed to have regained his heart. But as the reconciliation on either side went no farther than the lips and it was evidently defective in truth and sincerity, months after months were spent in fruitless negotiations to the very beginning of the year 1166, and even the first six months of that year were taken up in negotiations and likewise in giving birth to some events which we are to mention.

The Vezir was at a loss how to act. To levy war against the Emperor seemed both improper and odious and on the other hand he apprehended that the conspiracy aimed at his life as well as at his power and influence. The truth is that he had neither that sound of policy nor that blaze of daringness, requisite for an enterprise of such a high nature, he had not that disregard to scruples necessary to a man that had conceived such high flown projects, nor that stiffness of mind that enables him to overlook all obstacles, and to set at nought all considerations he wanted also a sufficient extent of genius to take an adequate view of the strength of his party, and he had too high an opinion of that of his enemies. In fact, such was the opinion entertained of his power in the beginning of the troubles and so inconsiderable appeared in comparison both Inty-zam-ed dōwlah,

✓  
Civil war  
between the  
Emperor Ab-  
med-shah and  
his Vezir

and that child of Mir-sheab-eddin that, had he only opened his mouth, there were many Commanders in his service, who on a single order of his would have gone, seized, and bound those two Lords in their very lodgings, nor had either of them dared to offer the least resistance in such a case. Destiny blinded the Vezir's eyes, and shut up his ears effectually. And the Emperor sensible of his irresolution, wrote him a note at midnight, the purport of which had been agreed to in a Council between those two Lords and the Court eunuchs. It was in the Emperor's own hand. The Emperor having sent for the Deputy-Grandmaster of the artillery, who, as such, had the command of the Citadel of Shali-djehan-abad on the Vezir's part, bid him carry the note himself, and added to it a long message upon several subjects. The foolish man excused himself on the impropriety of quitting his post, but the Emperor insisted, adding that it was for a matter of importance which admitted of no delay. The man had the simplicity to take up the note, and to carry it directly. As soon as he was out of the gate, the Emperor ordered all the gates to be shut up, and admittance to be denied the man for the future. At the same time the garrison placed by the Vezir, and which was all composed of his own troops, was driven out of the Citadel with much ill usage. All the Vezir's friends and officers were likewise forbidden admittance. Moreover, the cannon on one of the towers, which commanded the Vezir's Palace, was turned against it, and every preparative was made for contention and war. The Vezir who conceived that contending with an armed hand against the Emperor would redound to his dishonour, render his person odious, and bring upon him the imputation both of rebellion and ingratitude, submitted to his fate, and only asked leave to repair to his Governments beyond the Djumnah (235); and this being denied, he took his own party, came out of town without leave, encamped at about two or three cosses distance, and resolved to go to his Governments without leave indeed, but, if possible, without battle or bloodshed. This resolution was no sooner known, than his enemies resolved to attack and fight him, and even to have his life.

---

(235) Lah-abad and Aood are, with respect to Delhi, both beyond the Djumna



The Vezir informed of that particular, pitched upon an idiot, whom no body knew to personate one of the Imperial Princes and having sent his consort and family to a strong hold of S8r8dj mull's, he invited that Djatt Prince to come again into his service The other consented and taking a body of troops he came and joined the Vezir, his old friend and master So decisive a step having convinced the Emperor that there were no measures to be kept with the Vezir he discharged him from that high office, and conferred it on Intyzam ed-döwlah, son of the late Camer eddin-qhan And as Mir sheab-eddin notwithstanding his youth seemed to be endowed with courage and much penetration he entrusted him with the care of assembling an army and fighting the Vezir he summoned at the same time to his assistance all the Commanders and officers of the Environs of the Capital One of these was Nedjib-qhan the Rohillah, a Commander who already bore a character for courage and daringness as well as for understanding and conduct. This is the man whom we shall see rise gradually in the sequel, and by dint of merit only to the high dignity of Emir ul umra, or Prince of Princes of Hindostan All the Zemindars of the neighbourhood whether of illustrious descent or of new families like Chita g8djer and Bel8 qhan all the Seyds of Barr all the noblemen of ancient families who lived retired these many years for instance Mahmed sadyc qhan son to Seif ollah qhan, Viceroy of Tatta all these came and offered their services or were invited over Amongst these last was my forgiven father who after having been preferred by the Vezir to the command of Panip8t and the other eighteen Districts of the dependence of the Qhallas8 office had of late fallen under his displeasure and that of Ahdol medjid qhan the Cashmerian, and was kept in confinement for some balances set up against him The Court system being now so far changed he was forgiven the above balances sent for and introduced to the Emperor by Hafyz mohtar qhan as a nobleman worthy of his favour He on his side sent for some of his ancient troops and Commanders, and having assisted them with some money to fit themselves up he engaged them all in the Imperial service All these warlike preparations in the middle of the city and the many engagements that followed, seemed to shake every house in its foundations

Mir sh ab-  
eddi al as  
Umad-el  
mulk is in  
treated with  
the office of  
pushing the  
war against  
the Vezir

From the beginning of Redjeb, in the year 1166, for full six months together, the streets of the city became the theatre of war and bloodshed. The Vezir's troops, which were commanded mostly by able officers, all old soldiers, jealous of their honour, distinguished themselves on all occasions, and above all others, the famous Ghossain or Fakyr, Radj-ender-gur, who had of late acquired so much honour at the siege of Ilahabad, and now had come of his own motion to join the Vezir's cause, this man made nothing of throwing himself amongst the very fire of the Imperial Artillery, and of killing and wounding every day numbers of people upon the very muzzles of their guns. He had but a few bravoës with him, but all as determined and as invulnerable as himself, and so often did he come off unhurt from desperate engagements, that a notion prevailed that he had some piece of witchcraft about his body, or some talisman about his person, and this notion, which took root in people's mind, rendered him still more formidable, when one day he was shot dead by a random musket-ball, and then the prepossession disappeared. It was in such a scene of confusion and bloodshed that Saadat-ghan emerged again from his corner. This man whom we have seen dismissed from his office and dignity of Emir-ul-umrah, and who on that account had conceived an implacable hatred against the Emperor, availed himself of the opportunity to come out again, and to figure upon the theatre of the world. He wrote to the Vezir that he wished to join him, and requested only that a body of troops should march towards the Monument of the Prince of men, and this being complied with, he under pretence of going thither in pilgrimage, joined the Vezir's troops, and went into his camp. This could not be a mighty acquisition to the Vezir, who underwent a loss on the other side, for Mir-sheab eddin having published at the same time, that whatever trooper had the letter *si* stamped upon his horse, might come over, and would be received at fifty rupees per month, besides a hundred rupees for his entrance, and this proclamation having been rumoured in the Vezir's camp, almost all those of that description (and they were mostly T8ranians, as well as he that invited, them,) deserted, and came over to the Imperialists, to the number of some thousands. Sheab-eddin had even the art to bring religion into the party. He assembled all the Cashmirians and all the Pendjabians who

are all zealous Sunnies and having set up a standard, as if their religion had been in danger he published that the Vezir was a Shyiah, and a Rafzy, or blasphemers (236), and he invited all the Mussulmen to join against one that had blasphemed the successors, and waged war against them. He added that this was a sacred war, and that, as such it conferred the merits of martyrdom on whoever should perish in it. On this publication, thousands and thousands of armed men flocked towards the standard, and nothing was heard but cries of four successors, and four friends and whoever was met with in the streets, and suspected to be a Shyiah, or even a well wisher of the Vezir's was sure of being stripped and beaten some even were killed. The house of the late Mahmed Issac-qhan inhabited by his two brothers Mirza aaly qhan and Salar djong was plundered and sacked as was that of Ismael beg qhan, a principal Commander in the Vezir's army whose house was known to be replenished with precious arms, money jewels, and rich furniture to the amount of several corors. In short not a man of character who was known to be either in the Vezir's army or in his interest escaped unhurt. The houses of every one of them were plundered and sacked nor did any part escape devastation but the women's apartment. To punish these excesses S8r8dj mull the Djatt attacked, by the Vezir's order that part of the city called old Delhi, and which is even richer and still more populous than Shah-djehan-abad itself and he plundered and sacked it so thoroughly, that an infinity of people lost their consorts and children and were totally ruined besides numbers that were massacre<sup>d</sup>. A multitude of all sorts had taken refuge in the house and quarter of Shah bassutt son and successor to shah mahmed djafer on the expectation that his holy character being exceedingly respected by every one and by the Vezir amongst others who lived on terms of friendship and intimacy with him would prove a safeguard to his house and

il  
persecuted by  
the Vezir's  
troops who at  
last came to a  
compromise  
with his  
master

---

(236) The Shyiahs, not satisfied with rejecting the three Lords, whom we have been mentioning some time ago, namely Ab8-bekr Omir and Osman (although they did really succeed, and carried the Mussulman name from the Loire in France to the Ganges in India,) load them with abuse and invectives although they have been the Prophet's protectors, and had made him their son-in-law. Hence, as aggressors, they are called Blasphemers or Rafadhies by the Sunnits.—The Emperor of Hindostan, being reputed a successor to those successors is himself styled a Qhalif

quarter in the general plunder and massacre, but they were mistaken, and the deluded people underwent the same unhappy fate as the others. No respect, no regard was paid to it,—but let us pass in silence over all those horrors,—for past is what is past—O God preserve us, preserve all the Imamites from such days as these (237). After six months' slaughter and ruin, both parties became tired of such a life, and both seemed desirous of a peace. The Emperor and his Ministers sent the first message, and the Vezir, who was tired of the immense expenses he daily incurred and who augured no good from all these troubles, gave his consent. Intizar-ed-dowlah served as mediator in the terms of the agreement; and the war, that the two Governments of Ilahabad and Agha should be left to the Vezir. These terms having been agreed to, the latter in the beginning of the year 1167, set out for those countries, and left the field to Mir-sheab-eddin.

This daring young man had, during the war with the Vezir, called to his assistance from Malva, the Marhatta General Holkar-mahar, under promise of a high pay, but he arrived after the conclusion of the peace. Nevertheless, as the Minister was highly exasperated against the Djatts for their connections with the Vezir and the assistance they had given him, and as on the other hand, he was fond of remaining in power, he availed himself of the arrival of the Marhatta troops to fall upon the Djatt Sirdar-mull. The latter who thought himself over-matched in the field, took shelter in certain strong fortresses of his, known under the names of Dig, Comir, and Buhret-poor, where he was immediately besieged, and as it is impossible to take such fortresses without battering cannon, Mir-sheab-eddin who feared lest matters should draw to a length, sent to the Emperor to request some heavy artillery. The person he sent was Akjbet-mahmood-ghan, a Cashmirian, who was everything in that Minister's house, but, however, a wicked dangerous man,

New troubles  
in Delhi.

وہ  
بہتر

(237) Had not the author been a most bigotted Shyiah, he would not have spoiled that fine exclamation by restricting that benevolent wish of his to the Imamites only, that is, to the Shyiahs. The text has the word *Mu'minin*, which signifies the faithful, and which Shyiahs assume to themselves exclusively to all other Mussulmen. The exclamation, besides its inhuman partiality, is inconsequent, it being the Sunnies who actually had lost their consorts and their lives by the violence of the Shyiahs, whereas the latter had lost only some property by the Sunnies.

seditions and factious to a high degree. This request did not please Intyzam-ed dōwlah, the Vezir, who was an honest well-meaning man. He knew that as soon as those fortresses should have been taken both the master and the envoy would not fail to return to the city, and to avail themselves of their prevalence to torment indiscriminately both friends and foes. He therefore advised the Emperor to refuse the artillery. The Cashmirian apprised of that formed himself a party amongst the Mansoohdars or Military Officers of the Crown and the people dependent on the artillery and partly by threats and by promises of plunder, as well as by a variety of other means he engaged them to join his party in taking Intyzam-ed-dōwlah out of the way. Having fixed a day for this purpose, he assembled a multitude of people, and made an attack upon that Minister's house but being repulsed he quitted the city and putting himself at the head of several bodies of haoditties that joined together he fell a plundering all those Districts that depended on the Qhalissa-office, at the head of which presided that nobleman as well as all those in the environs of the Capital which he knew to be held as Djaghirs by the several Lords of the Court.

Whilst he was busied in that manner, S8r8dj mull, besieged in his fortress sent up several requests both to the Emperor and to Intyzam-ed-dōwlah, his Minister representing "That if 'they suffered Mir sheah-eddin and his Marhattas to go on with 'his schemes, a time would come when he would turn his eyes upon the throne itself as well as upon the Vezirship, and 'would attempt to overturn the Government, so as to new model 'it to his own mind. That he therefore submitted it to the Imperial wisdom whether in such a state of things it would not be proper for His Majesty to come out with his Minister 'and army, and under pretence of bringing into order the 'Districts of the Imperial demesnes, and hunting on the way to advance as far as Sekenderah, where it would be easy to send for Abool mans8r qhao, a man who in such a case would not fail to join in crushing Mir sheah-eddin and the Marhattas.' This advice having been approved by both the Emperor and the Minister, the Monarch set out on a hunting party, and took with him the ladies of his sanctuary, as well as his Ministers all the Lords of the Court as well as his army and artillery. In the

Mir-sheah  
eddin on ill  
terms with his  
master

course of his hunting he, from plain to plain, advanced as far as three or four cosses beyond Sekenderah. But he was averse from the party of applying to Ab8l-mans8r-qhan; nor was it better relished by either his mother, or the Vezir, Intyzam-ed-döwlah, who after Djavid-qhan's death, had leagued with that Empress. In complying with this part of S8r8dj-mull's advice, they seemed to act with dilatoriness and reluctance. All these counsels and this irresolution having been reported to Mir-sheab-eddin, who was exceedingly alert and intent upon his own schemes, he re-called Akybet-mahm8d, and sent him to the Emperor's camp, as if to give him advice that some thousands of disbanded Marhatta horse, having made their appearance in his neighbourhood, had suddenly disappeared without it being known where they would shew themselves again. The envoy having said so much, returned to his master. The slothful Emperor paid no great attention to the message, and the negligent Vezir, whose particular business it was to watch over the army, and to insure the honour of the Imperial household, as well as the safety of the Imperial person, quietly went into his tent, and fell to his afternoon's nap, after having heard the message. But the Marhatta General, Holcar Malhar, was not so sleepy. Highly incensed against the Emperor and his Minister for their denial of some heavy cannon, he had left his son, Ghandirao, to keep the Djatts in awe, and had set out himself with a view to distress the Imperial camp with respect to water and forage, and by that means to find some opportunity to lay hold of the cannon, or at least to strike some good blow, he also wished to have no sharer in this expedition, and to be left to himself. Without giving any intimation of his design to any one, not even to Mir-sheab-eddin, he set out in the beginning of the night, passed the Djumna at the ford of Mahtra, and was close to the Imperial army, before any one knew of his having so much as left his camp, and, first of all, he fired some rockets to feel the pulse of the enemy. At sight of these, it was concluded in the Imperial camp that Mahm8d was burning some village in the environs, and the matter appearing of no consequence, no one concerned himself in examining more narrowly into the matter, when at the latter part of the night, it was found that Holcar himself was at hand. On this intelligence the Emperor

و  
جی

and his Ministers, both equally cowards and unexperienced, lost their presence of mind, and were equally incapable of flying with recollection, or of making a stand. The Emperor with his mother, and Semsam ed-dōwlah with the Vezir, got upon their elephants, wrapped and muffled up as if they had been women, and without so much as assembling their officers, or saying a word to any one. they fled with all their might towards the Capital, leaving their consorts, daughters, and families at the disposal of the enemy. It being rumoured half an hour after, that they were gone, the whole army, officers, and soldiers disbanded, and fled with arms and some baggage as far as Sekenderah. At day break the Marhattas pursued them thither, and plundered and stripped every one of them, after having already plundered the Imperial camp, with the Imperial tents, and furniture Malecka zemani, daughter to Feroh seyur, and consort to Mahmed shah, with other Princesses of the Imperial family, as well as a vast number of ladies of the highest distinction fell into Hnlcar's hands. That General treated them with the highest respect, and even abstained from touching either their persons or even those jewels with which they were covered to an immense amount, and this abstinence of his is an indubitable fact; but it is no less certain, that an indelible disgrace befell the honour of the Imperial house of Timur that day and that those sublime gates, on the threshold of which Kings and Sovereigns, together with all mankind had been accustomed to rub their foreheads in token of respect, became from henceforward an object of derision and a standing mark for the kicks of the vilest men. But such are God's dispensations let us submit to them.

Whilst this scene was acting at Sekenderah, Mir-sheah eddin was still occupied with the blockade but he no sooner heard of this affair, than he quitted the field, and came to the city, leaving S8r8dj mull at full liberty to rid himself of the miseries he had been undergoing for the Marhatta General was by this time gone home, and Djehl-apa, the second General, had set out for Narnol. A few days after this departure, Mir sheah eddin had found means to gain over to his party both Semsam-ed-dōwlah and all the Commanders, and all the ungrateful Colonels that were attached to the service of the Imperial artillery. He then put himself at the head of a body of Hindostanles

and Marhattas, and going to the Vezir Intyzam-ed-dowlah's palace, he of his own authority dismissed him from his office, which he took for himself, procuring at the same time the office "Lord of Lords" for his friend, Semsam-ed-dowlah. The next morning he went to the Palace to put on his Qhylaat, and noon he seized both the Emperor Ahmed-shah and his mother, Oodem-bhai, whom he ordered to be kept in confinement. It was the tenth Shaaban of the year 1167. Immediately after this, he went for Aziz-eddin, son to the late Muez-eddin-djehandar-shah, and having proclaimed him Emperor, under the surname or title of Aalem-ghir-sani, or Aalem-ghir the second, he installed him on the throne. Seven days after, he ordered Oodem-bhai to be blinded, by having a red hot needle drawn across her eyes, and he accused her of being the cause and contriver of all the troubles, he then served the Emperor, her son, in the same manner. Probably none of these direful events had happened, had the Emperor condescended to apply to Ab8l-mans8r-qhan, who was then at hand, although in his Government.

The Minister orders the Emperor and Empress-mother to be blinded

That Viceroy, on his arrival in what he called his own ground, stopped at Mehdi-ghat, where he built himself a lodging, reviewed and completed his army, and attached himself to its discipline, preparing at the same time all kinds of stores, and seeming to mind nothing but whatever could strengthen and increase his power. He seemed intent on some project, when at once, without any previous ailment, a furuncle was perceived at his foot, and this having soon degenerated into a cancer, which baffled all the art of the physicians and surgeons, the evil in a little time rose to a height, and on the seventeenth of Zilhij in the same year, he departed this life, and winged his flight towards the regions of eternity. His body, according to his own desire, was carried to the Monument of the King of Braves(238), and buried there. He was succeeded by his son, Mirza-djelal-eddin-haidyr, surnamed the Shudjah-ed-dowlah(239). The young Prince continued in the management of the helm that same Ismail-beg-qhan, who had been his father's principal General and trustiest Minister, and all the Officers, Commanders,

Ab8l-mans8r-qhan dies

(238) Aaly, called by the Shyahs *Shah-i-merdan*, is the King of Braves. His tomb is at Cosah, betwixt Basrah and Bagdad.

(239) The Valorous of the Empire



Governors, and Grandees or Nobles, promoted by his father remained in possession of the offices and pensions they enjoyed. But in a little time, Ismail beg-qhan likewise departed his life, and Temkin-qhan, an eunuch of his household, succeeded him in his office of Prime Minister. It was at this same time that Saadat qhan died at A8d bangla. He is the same man who bore the title of Zolficar-djung also, and had cut so strange a figure in the expedition against Admir. But as Shudjah ed dōwlah cuts so capital a figure in our history, the reader probably may be pleased with hearing some particulars of that Prince's character.

Shudjah ed dōwlah in his own temper was slothful, negligent and careless but so valorous that, with that single quality of his he found means to contain the Zemindars and the other refractory people with which his dominions abounded so that his Government was always respected. He was exceedingly fond of the company of women, without being attached to any, and addicted to every kind of pleasure without exception, save, however that of drinking wine. Nevertheless there appeared no impudence in his character and no contempt of decorum in his behaviour. He had such an abundant fund of goodness, liberality and benignity as made him connive at trespasses against his interest, and rendered him ever ready to forgive the guilty. He governed quietly his dominions for three or four years when the Abdali king at the instigation of Mir sheab eddin, now styled Umad-el mulk invaded Hindnstan and marched directly to Shab-djehan abad. This was in the year 1170. That Minister's intention was to join an army of Abdalies to an army of Rohillahs and Bangash Afghans, who being inveterate and sworn enemies of Shudjah ed dōwlah's father and family would be glad to embrace any scheme for entirely demolishing and ruining that rising power. This league however did not intimidate Shudjah-ed dōwlah. Without being dismayed by the threatened storm he stood his ground so well that he was left to himself, as we shall relate as soon as we shall have dispatched some matters relative to the Western parts of Hindnstan.

We have left Mir mann8 nearly absolute Viceroy of both M8ltan and Pendjab. He resided at Lahor where having mounted his horse to take an airing he went out of the city

Character  
and conduct  
of Shudjah-  
ed dōwlah.

and put his horse on a gallop, when he was suddenly seized by a fit of apoplexy, which ended at once in a palsy that stopped him short, so that all he could do was to continue his voyage into eternity. This event is recounted in a different manner by a person in his service, who was very familiar with him. He says that Mir-mann<sup>8</sup> was encamped, and that he took horse to look at the troops of one of his Commanders, encamped within a short distance, where he sat down to a dinner. The entertainment proving sumptuous, and consisting of a great variety of precious dishes, he tasted of every one. In the evening, he got upon his horse to go home, and put it to a gallop; and he was actually galloping when finding something that pained him within, he alighted, stretched himself upon the ground, and in a few moments expired. The Abdali-king hearing of this sudden death, conferred the Government on Mir-m<sup>8</sup>men, son to the deceased, and as he was yet a child, he recommended him to his mother together with the whole country. It must be observed that the deceased Governor, keeping always a great army on foot, and being engaged besides in a variety of heavy expenses, which the revenues of the country could not support, he had betaken himself to the expedient of oppressing and squeezing the body of farmers, as well as the people in general. But his credit was so strong at Court, that there was no carrying any complaint against him, and on the other hand, it being a standing rule amongst the Syks to support each other at all events, numbers of people who could find no redress any where and were driven to so much despair as to cry *famine, famine*, about the streets, very naturally resorted to that fraternity, where they were sure of finding some resource. The whole business of admission seemed to consist in putting on a blue coat, letting the hair grow all over the body, and repairing in shoals to G<sup>8</sup>r<sup>8</sup>-Govind. From that moment they became Syks, and were entitled to the protection of the whole body, and looked like men freed from all their miseries. In this manner this sect or fraternity, which was already in vogue, having turned out to be a sure resource against oppression, it grew to an immense number, especially at this time, when the Government of a country involved in troubles was to be managed by a woman, and as that sex is destitute of strength of mind, the disorders

The bad administration of the Viceroy of Lahor adds strength to the Syks.

and troubles continued to increase Her Ministers commonly availed themselves of her retired life and immured circumstances to render such an account of their respective departments, each in his own way, as served only to perplex and confound her understanding Hence the tenants and farmers became more oppressed than ever, and shoals of people flocking to the Syks, these people grew exceedingly numerous, and commenced talking high to the Officers of Government. The nobility and principal men of the country, who looked at these desertions with both amazement and disdain, made it a point to stand aloof whilst the eunuchs the freed men of the seraglio, and a variety of homely horn vile men, took possession of all the affairs Things were in such a state when the young Mir m8men departed his life and then the Government fell into the hands of Qhoadja m8sa ohrat, his brother in law But as Becari-qhan who had acted as Prime Minister under the deceased Viceroy wanted to render himself master of the Government and he had been intriguing with that view the Governess who was informed of his intentions and was already incensed against him, commanded his attendance within the seraglio or sanctuary, and as soon as he was within the gate, she got him surrounded by a number of stout women, who put him to the cudgel so severely that he expired under the operation A short time had elapsed since this event, when Qhoadja-ahdollah-qhan son to Abdol semed-qhan that ancient victorious Viceroy of Lahor having found means to seize and confine the Governess contrived likewise to obtain from the Abdali king the patents of the two Governments But Feraman qhan who had brought those patents to Lahor, having commenced acting with authority, and plundered and ruined numbers of people, the new Viceroy who did not like his presence, and was also teased by the troops who became clamorous for their arrears, found it was out of his power to satisfy their demand so that to save his life and honor he fled from Lahor to the disgrace of all Government. In such a confusion of all order, the Governess found means to re-assume the command and having been in a little time put under confinement by Qhoadja mirza-qhan, who had been one of the principal Commanders in her husband's army, the troubles at last subsided and a compromise took place between her and that officer

Troubles in  
M8itan and  
Pendjab.

All these troubles and commotions having been faithfully reported to the new Vezir, Mir-Sheab-eddin, now styled Umad-el-mulk, he conceived the design of recovering the provinces of Pendjab and M8ltan from the dependance of the Abdali-king. Without imparting his scheme to any one, he set out with Alemghir, the Emperor of his appointing, and encamped at Badely, at some distance from the city. He intended also to bring to order and to reduce to submission the officers of the corps marked with the letter *Sin*, who, availing themselves of the need the Vezir had stood of their service in his disputes with Ab8l-mans8r-qhan, had extorted from his hands all the Districts of the Qhalissah-office, and all the best demesne lands about the city, as a security for their pay and arrears<sup>c</sup>, they had besides assumed airs of importance, and proved unruly and refractory. With this view he sent for my father, and after appointing him Fodjdar of Ser-hend. Taneser, and Pani-poot, with some other districts of the Qhalissah, he advanced to the latter town. As the negotiation for recovering these lands from the officers of the Brigade *Sin*, had been carried on by Kishen-chund, a Gentoo, Radja Nagurmull a Hindoo, who became exceedingly jealous of him, sent for the principal Officers, all men highly discontented, and he informed them that Séyd Hedaïet-aaly-qhan, that is, my honoured father, who commanded in the Districts snatched from their hands, was a man of property, from whom, by a proper application to the Vezir, they might easily get an advance of two lacs of rupees upon the rents of those Districts, a sum that would go a great way in discharging their arrears, and that in case he should not consent to that advance, he undertook to find a man that would pay it down, on condition of his being put in possession of those Districts. The Officers accustomed this longwhile to speak in an imperious style, and inconsolable at their being deprived of such productive Districts, swore to stand by each other, and the next day they sent their agents to the Vezir with the proposals. Meanwhile, my father, who had been informed of the turn which this affair had taken, and was unwilling to accept the condition, sent his resignation by the channel of the above Kishen-chund, whom he followed soon after to the Vezir's quarters. That Minister, after having passed a couple of hours in giving a public audience, in which he

The new  
Vezir marches  
to recover  
M8ltan

transacted business with my father, with Self eddin mahmed qhan, with Nedjib-qhan, and with Nagur mull, and some others, was getting up to retire to his private apartments, when he was stopped by the Brigade agents, who by Nagur mull's management had joined together in informing him that the Brigade *Six* wanted a large sum of money in part of their arrears. The Vezir, without seeming embarrassed, answered that he had no objections but that the corps must be reviewed first. The agents sensible that no penmen would dare to form difficulties in a day of review consented and they only requested that some M8lsuddies (240) might be appointed to review their corps. The Vezir on hearing these words, turned towards Nedjib-qhao, and directed him to review the Brigade to which that Officer consenting, he immediately sent orders to his son Zabeta-qhan to pitch up a tent in an open spot, and to review the Brigade. The agents, surprised found that the time was come for some great discovery. It being understood that these two Officers were not men to be either tampered with or overawed being themselves Officers of high character, and at the head of several thousand horse straight they dispatched a messenger to their constituents for the purpose of advising them to be upon their guard. The others finding that they would be ruined by such a review, conceived that there was no other expedient for escaping a discovery, than that of exciting a sedition and a mutiny in consequence they excited their most ferocious men to take the lead. Meanwhile the Vezir was retired to his private apartments having with him only three or four persons, as Nedjib-qhao, Radja Nagur mull, and Kishen-chuod. A little after, Nedjib-qhan went away. My father waited without anxious to render his resignation acceptable, and to get rid of so disagreeable an affair when at once twenty or thirty troopers of the Brigade *Six* came to the curtain of the private apartment, and exclaimed against their Officers, complaining of their being reduced, for want of both arrears and pay, to a starving condition. Soon after, these men were joined by some more the appearance of which caused the harcaras or messengers at the gate to write a note and to send it in by an eunuch. The Vezir after having read it, got up in the undress in which he then stood and was going

out. My father stopped him short, and represented that it was not proper for him to go out *I shall certainly go*, answered the Vezir, *I want to speak to them and appease the tumult* My father said nothing, but finding him resolved to go out, he joined him The Vezir raised the curtain, spoke to them, and informed them, *that they would be paid as soon as their corps should be reviewed* By this time those troopers had gathered to the amount of two hundred men, and trusting to their numbers, they had surrounded the Vezir, and were speaking insolently to him My father mixed with the crowd, and represented to them that the man they were insulting, was their resource in a day of need, and their Lord, the person that would hear their complaints if they had but the patience to speak quietly The remonstrance did not avail. The men had come too well tutored to listen to any reason. One of them having torn away a button of jewel which the Vezir had at his Nima (241), the others as if by signal, tore away his clothes to pieces, and his turbant fell off at the same time Bare-headed as he was (242), they drew him on foot along the streets and lanes, and carried him to their camp Meanwhile the Vezir's troops, amazed at what they saw, were at a loss what to do As the Vezir's last hour was not come yet, the Officers of the mutinous Brigade came into the tent, excused what had past, and desired him to put on the clothes which his servants had brought after him The Vezir incensed, listened, to no advice, and addressing them with all the foul language he could muster, he cried out. "*You rascally pimps*, (and this was his expression) *if you intend to kill me, kill then, and make haste, for you will certainly be killed yourselves to a man, else, if you intend no killing, what do you mean by all this insolence?*" Whilst he was speaking, a message came from the Emperor to the seditious It was delivered in

---

(241) The Nima is in itself a Djama or Gown, to all intents and purposes, but as it does not fold as the other, upon the breast, it serves as a waistcoat, and is therefore reputed an undress Both the Djama and Nima consist only of cotton linen

(242) An European with his hat under his arm, would stare on being informed, that to be bare-headed is a high disgrace, all over the East, as far as the Ganges. The bankrupts, the day they stop payment, sit bare-headed in their counting houses, with a lamp burning before them at noon day

Turkish (243) to this purport "*Instead of confining the Vezir you ought to bring him to me I am the proper person and if you want only your arrears I take them upon myself*" The Vezir who amongst several other languages, understood the Turkish very well becoming still more angry broke out in fury  
*No messages no messages to these rascals do you rascals make haste go on with what you intend*' The Officers without minding his language supplicated him to accept their submission and to mount an elephant which was brought for that purpose The Vezir mounted when one of these Officers whose name was Hassen qhan, the Decanian getting up behind in the Qhavvass (244) took up the fly driver with one hand and the sun screen with the other and continued waiting on him until the Vezir landed in his lodgings, and so soon as the Vezir had alighted he likewise alighted from behind, and went away The Vezir being landed took his seat upon his Meased where crowds came to make their bow In a Moment he asked where was Hassen qhan and being told he was gone he sent after him and got him brought back with his elephant On his being come, the Vezir got upon the same elephant and sent a general order throughout the army to kill and plunder the meo of the Brigade *Sin*, wherever they might be found In an instant, those numerous hungry Robillahs of Nedjub-qhan, who as well as the other troops waited only for the order fell upon them and made them disappear from the camp—men horses tents, and all The troops continued plundering and massacring the whole night Some few who threw themselves instantly upon their naked horses and fled escaped alive the rest were all put to the sword Nor could a single man of them be heard of afterwards

---

(243) The Turkish language which is the language of Government all over Persia, is only a curiosity in Hindostan where the Persian is the language of Government nevertheless the Princes of the Timur family make it a point to speak it as do most of their Ministers Here, the message being addressed to a Brigade composed almost intirely of Eusbeg Turks, or Tatars was with great propriety delivered in the Turkish language.

(244) We have been obliged to coin a couple of words here in order to translate without a long circumlocution, two Hindostani expressions The Hindostani idea differs so widely from the European nations, that those who would not care to be Archi cup-bearers to the Emperor of Germany or give the shift to the King of France, would think themselves polluted by giving him water to wash his hands with *pride* in sitting in the Qhavvass that is, mounting behind a coach

As soon as this execution was over, the Vezir who had taken umbrage at the Emperor's supineness on this occasion, returned to the city, where having recruited his troops and stores, and left the Emperor in the hands of some trusty friend of his own, he took with him the Imperial Prince Aaly-goher, (now reigning under the name of Shah-Alem,) and marched towards Lahor, resolved to re-annex those countries to the Empire of Hindostan. This Minister, who was naturally impetuous and fond of dispatch, and had also a knack at sowing troubles and raising disturbances, set out with a numerous army, in which he had taken care to have all the Grandees of the Court, as well as the Prince Aaly-goher, and he seemed to be only hunting by the way, but yet was shortening his distance every day, and meanwhile he had managed in such a manner, as to have gained over to his party the famous Adina-beg-qhan. He was already arrived at Lodiana, within fifty cosses of Lahor, when being thoroughly satisfied with that man's fidelity, he by his advice sent to Lahor a body of troops, under the command of Seyd Djemil-eddin, who was likewise entrusted with a letter and a message to the Begum, relict of Mir-mann8, his uncle. He requested she might vouchsafe to send him her daughter a Princess betrothed to him long ago. The Begum, pleased with the request, sent her daughter with great pomp and magnificence, gave her a suitable dowry in jewels and money, and got her accompanied by a full household of eunuchs, tents, and every requisite for a voyage. The Vezir on his side sent his own uncle at the head of a large body of horse, and a cortege of

---

or nearly so, and in handling the fly-driver, &c. For the person sitting in the Qhavvass, is always second to him that sits in the fore part of the Haodah, he is his Divan, and the fly-driver, or Moor-chull, is the characteristic insignia of his office, and were the Emperor to come in Bengal, and the English Company, as Divans of that country, to be represented by one man, the Qhavvass and Moor-chull would become the latter's right and duty. The Moor-chull is made in the form of a long broom, composed of Peacock's feathers, artfully put up, and resting in a long handle studded with jewels. The Qhavvass is the third or fourth part of the Haodah, from which it is always parted by a board, and has just room enough to afford a scanty space to one single man, so that the elephants mentioned in the Jew books and in the Greek histories of the times of Cosro, must have been animals of another breed. The biggest elephant, we have seen in India, (and we have seen some thousands) could not afford room to more than four fighting men, and that too very scantily.



principal Officers to receive her at a distance and they brought her to camp, where a full household and a proper set of tents had been provided for her reception, and where she was visited by her husband's aunt. The Princess's mother being by this time perfectly well pleased with her match, and quite easy in her mind the Vezir dispatched Ybad-ollah qhan the Cashmirian, a trusty Commander of his with a number of good troops, together with Seyd Djemil-eddin himself who had orders to join by the way some cavalry of Adina beg qhan's. The distance was of forty or fifty *coses* (245) (a hundred and twenty miles), and all this being gone over in one day and night, without hardly stopping to take breath at day break they got within Lahor and going to the Palace where the old Princess was yet asleep, and unsuspecting of what was managed, they sent eunuchs to wake her, and putting her in a close chair they carried her to their camp, without Lahor from whence, after taking one day to refresh they returned to the Vezir, encamped at Indiana. This Minister no sooner saw her alight, than he paid her a respectful visit and asked her forgiveness and after giving the Government of Lahor and Multan to Adina beg-qhan under a clear rent of thirty lacs a year he returned towards the Capital seemingly happy and satisfied with the success of his journey. But the old Princess was extremely angry and uneasy all the way, giving abusive language to her guards, and making nothing of crying aloud both to them and to their master, "That the indecent and unjust manner with which she had been used would end in an infinity of troubles that would at last ruin his family, and the Capital itself, that the families of the highest nobility, involved in one common ruin with the poorest citizens, would experience merciless pillaging and rapes and disgraces innumerable that the Empire as well as the Capital, would be overthrown and ruined, and know (would she add crying with all her might) that all this is not far off. You shall see the Abdali king in this Capital within six or seven months. Look he is coming! All the noble families ancient or modern will be involved in one common massacre no Sheh, no Seyd, will be spared, all all slaughtered! And, in fact matters came to pass just as the old woman had said

Strange predictions of his mother-in-law

---

(245) The shortest *cose* is of two Geometrical miles

The Abdali-king, informed of the Vezir's insolence, and of the liberties he had taken with Mir-mann8's relict, flew to Lahor with the wings of resentment and celerity, but Adina-beg-qhan, who did not think himself a match for him, fled for shelter to the desert tract of Hansi, where he took up his residence in a fortress of difficult access, especially for want of water. The Vezir, on the other hand, conceiving fears for his own life, brought his new consort to Mir-mann8's widow, entrusted her person to her protection, and by dint of entreaties and submissions, made his peace with her. For the Abdali-king, who was flying on the wings of resentment and rapidity, was already at twenty cosses from the Capital of the Empire, and the Vezir disconcerted by so much expedition, saw no other party left to him, but that of submission, and going to the Abdali camp, he presented himself before that Monarch. The latter at first reprimanded him severely; but his cause being pleaded both by Mir-mann8's Begum, and by Shah Veli-qhan, the Abdali Vezir, who had been gained, the Monarch readily forgave him, and afterwards continued him in his office of Vezir. Nevertheless, on the seventh of the first Djemadi, of the year 1170, being a Friday, he quitted his encampment and entered the Citadel of Shah-djehan-abad, where he had an interview with the Emperor Alemghir the Second. From that day his people fell a plundering and sacking so mercilessly, and they went on dragging away people's wives and daughters with so much cruelty, that numbers overborne by the delicacy of their feelings, rather than to fall in such abominable hands, made away with themselves (246), and God only knows the number and

The Abdali  
Monarch marches against  
him

Plunders  
Delhi

---

(246) To men accustomed to the mildness of the European Governments, the Turkish one appears barbarous. It is nevertheless a mild one, when compared to the Government experienced by the Persians these eighty years. Making a garden of men, as they term it that is, burying a couple of hundred of living men in the ground, some in an inverted position, with only their thighs and legs out, and some with only their heads and arms, all the while exposed to a raging sun, is no new, no uncommon practice. Shutting women in bags, and then beating them with sticks, or pricking them with awls, at stated times, until their fathers or husbands, fled into Turkey or into India, should send up such a sum of money, is a very common expedient. But Persians themselves are a civilised people, when compared to the Afghans of Candahar. In no part of the world is human nature so abominably outraged—Their method of carrying away a male prisoner is this, although not even themselves would use it to carry an ox or an ass. They bore a hole in his shoulder, under the clavícula bone so remarkable in it, and passing a

quality of all the violences exercised for a month together in that ill fated city. The late Vezir Camer-eddin qhan's Palace and seraglio were rifled of every thing and few houses of the nobility and better sort escaped a complete ruin and pollution. It was in the middle of so much violence and misery that the Abdali king betook himself to an alliance of his family with that of Babr. He married his son, Timur Shah to a daughter of Yz eddin brother to the reigning Emperor. But after having leisurely plundered that rich city for thirty days together he sent Djehan qhan a Commander of character to chastise S8r bdj-mull the Djatt and he followed himself the next day. This was the fifth time the Abdali king had come into Hindostan. The Vezir Umad el mulk having of his own motion accompanied Djehan qhan and proved of very great service to that General received the Abdali king's approbation and applause but mention having been made by his Ministers of a present which that Monarch expected Umad-el mulk answered that if they would give him

thong or rope through it, make the end of it fast to their saddles, and then mount and trot away. If the prisoner cannot follow at the rate of 30 or 40, 50 or 60 miles a day he is instantly killed. Anty physicians of the first rate on boy and young man of even twenty can escape them and when disputes arise about a prize the whole is pacified by cutting down the prize. The women abused by them in an abominable manner fled from them and always preferred a well to an Afghan. Girls of twelve and fourteen have become unmarriageable in their diabolical hands. And we have seen a lady who rather than submit to such an embrace fought the Afghan resolutely although unarmed. He lifted his sabre and was going to cut her down when she presented her arm loaded with one of those enormous bracelets, invented by necessity of *two pounds weight of gold* and received the stroke upon the gold, whilst she struck the man with the other bracelet and made him bleed another stroke, another parade and another heavy blow a third and the poor woman fatigued, wounded, and spent, was going to fall. Nothing but a miracle could save her and a miracle was, in fact wrought instantly. At the moment of the third stroke, a Persian, one of the Cuzzelbash guards hastening his pace, cried out *In the name of God most merciful!* and with one blow made the Afghan's head fly off from his shoulders. The poor woman, who had never been out of her house, and had never at a foot upon a street, marched on without knowing whither she went, and in the evening, she was lucky enough to find her husband and family at full twelve courses from that fatal street. We have spoke to the lady she is at Lucknow a Catrani by clan. *An uno discit omnes* An Afghan's method of clearing himself, is a very plain one as the common soldiers wear nothing but felts and go on with them for five years together. He lights up a fire straddles over it, and keeps his body and abominable clothes in a semi-circular motion from right to left, and from left to right. Nor are their Officers much cleaner. Their beards and eye-brows swarm with vermin as well as their soldiers.

one of the Timurian Princes, with an army of Abdalies, and full power to carry it wherever he should think proper, especially in the country of Anter-bid (that is, the tract betwixt the two rivers of Djumna and Ganga) he would undertake to bring an immense sum into the Royal Treasury. The proposal being agreed to, two Imperial Princes were sent for from the Capital, and put into his hands. The one was Hedaïet-baghsh, son to Alomghur the second, and the other, his son-in-law, Mirza-babr, son to his brother, Yz-eddin; and to these was joined a body of Abdalies under the command of Djan-baz-qhan.

We have already observed that Umad-el-mulk had conceived a violent aversion against Ab8l-mans8r-qhan and his family, which last he had resolved to tear up by the root. Availing himself of the Abdali-king's covetousness, he, under pretence of raising immense contributions in the country of Anter-bid, or Do-ab(247), marched westward with an army of D8rrani-Abdalies, but with not one of the necessaries for making a campaign. Being arrived in the neighbourhood of Feroh-abad, he was met by Ahmed-qhan-bangash, who after paying his respects to both the Imperial Princes and the Vezir, presented them all three with a complete equipage, consisting of tents, elephants, horses, camels, and every other necessary, and moreover added a body of Afghans to the Vezir's army. The latter being now at his ease and reinforced by a good body of troops, crossed the Ganga, and took the road of A8d. This invasion, however, did not dismay or intimidate Shudjah-ed-dowlah, who came out of his Capital with a well appointed army and encamped at Sandipai, the last place of his dominions, where some skirmishes took place betwixt the runners of the two vanguards. Saadollah-qhan, who was son to the late Aaly-mahmed-qhan-Rohillah, having offered his mediation, an agreement took place, under stipulation of a sum of five lacs of rupees, partly in hand, and partly payable by instalments. This negotiation, in which Saadollah-qhan exerted himself zealously for his friend, Shudjah-ed-dowlah, and proved of great service to both parties, totally disappointed Umad-el-mulk, who hoped for great broils and a battle, and was obliged to repass the Ganga, and to encamp at Feroh-abad again, in expectation of what the Abdali-king would

---

(247) Di-potamia would be the translation of that compound word

do with the Djatts It was the seventh of Shevval, in the year 1170

The King had marched to Belem gur, a fortress of his, at fifteen cosses from Shah-djehan abad, and having taken it in three days by dint of cannon ball and bombs he put to the sword every man in the garrison Proceeding from thence to Mabtra, which is a famous place of worship for the Hindoos, he gave his Van to Djehan-qhad, recommending dispatch to that General The latter spurred his horse, and arriving unexpectedly in a holiday he ruined effectually that rich city his soldiers plundering burning and destroying everything they met, and carrying into captivity vast numbers of the consorts and children of the best families amongst the wretched citizens, an execution that struck such a terror throughout the country that all the inhabitants quitted their habitation, and retired within their fortress and strongholds Meanwhile the Abdali king advanced as far as Achar abad, but here he found some resistance Mirza seif-olla beg, who commanded from a long series of years in the Citadel of that city refused to submit and fired his cannon to so good a purpose, that no Abdali chose to abide its reach Djehan qhap, meanwhile was busy in taking one after another the Djatt fortress, when at once a mortality broke out amongst the Abdalies which swept their people in such vast numbers as disabled their King from prosecuting his designs Submitting therefore to his destiny, he recalled his troops from the Djatt country and commenced his march to his own dominions Being arrived at the Reservoir of Macsood abad which is on the same line with Shah-djehan-abad, he was visited by Alemghir the second who wished him a prosperous return, and much complained of Umad el mulk The Abdali king paid a regard to his grievances by conferring the office of "Prince of Princes" on Nedjib qhan now Nedjib-ed dönlah, then present and by recommending to his care the Emperor and his family

And this naturally brings to our recollection that after the confinement of Ahmed shah, and the accession of Alemghir the second, dissensions had arisen very high between Umad-el mulk the Vezir, on one hand, and the two relicts of Mahmed shah on the other These were Maleca xemani daughter to Feroh syur and Salaba mahal, both related to and both consorts of Mahmed shah

That Prince had from this second consort a daughter of great beauty, who had been the darling of her father's heart. These two Princesses, mindful of having seen the honour of the Empire trodden under by the Marhattas, and fired with indignation at finding themselves, in every matter, at the mercy of Umad-el-mulk, resolved to quit a country where every thing went to wreck, and they sent a message to the Abdali-king, claiming his protection, as being both so nearly related to Mahmed-shah and to him. The Abdali-king, who thought himself much honoured by such a request, and hoped to be applauded by posterity, sent for the daughter which he himself married, and he gave the two other Empresses a separate encampment in his camp, after which he marched to Lahor. His son, Tim8r-shah, coming to join him in his way, he appointed the young Prince Governor of Pendjab, M8ltan and Tatta, gave him Djehan-qhan for Commandant of the troops, and turning towards his own dominions, he arrived by continued marches at Cab8l, and then at Candahar, where we shall leave him for a while, in order to take breath, and to afford ourselves time to cast a look at the affairs of Decan.

Moosher-Bussy commanded the body of French that had taken service with Hedaïet-muhi-eddin-qhan-Muzaafer-djung, and had attached himself to Nizam-el-mulk's family. This Officer availed himself so well of the credit which his post gave him, that he became extremely powerful throughout the Decan. When he came to obtain the countries of Sicacol and Radj-benderi, &c, for his Djaghîr, his influence rose so high, that every affair passed through his hands, and he governed with an absolute sway(248), he was decorated with the surname of Seif-el-mulk,

The French  
grow power  
ful in Decan

(248) If any one has seen M de Bussy, and Colonel Clive, or Governor Hastings, in the height of their power and influence, he may have taken from those two or three individuals a pretty good idea of the different geniuses of the French and English nations. M de Bussy always wore (in 1750 and 1755) embroidered clothes or brocade, with an embroidered hat, and, in days of ceremony, embroidered shoes of black velvet. He was seen in an immense tent, full sufficient for six hundred men of about thirty feet in elevation. At one end of this tent he sat on an arm-chair, embroidered with his King's arms, placed upon an elevation, which last was covered by a crimson carpet of embroidered velvet. At his right and left, but upon back chairs only, sat a dozen of his Officers, over against him, his French guard, on horse-back, and behind these, his Turkish guards. His table, always in plate, was served with three, often with four services. To this French

or "Sword of the State," and the title of Umdut el mulk, or the "Greatest of the Kingdom." This General had given so great a sway in all his affairs, public or private, to Häider-djung, a nobleman of those countries, that the latter came in fact to govern the six Soobahdaries of Decan. But the English struck with this flow of prosperity amongst the French resolved to come in for a share of the good things and conquests of India, and with that view they joined Mahmed aaly-qhan, son to Anvar eddin qhan of Gopa ma8, under whose name they possessed themselves of some Districts of the Province of Arcat. M8sher Bussfy, meanwhile, taking umbrage at Roc8n-ed döwlah's administration got him dismissed from his office of Prime Minister which he obtained for Shah nevaz-qhan, a nobleman with whom he had connections. This Minister in the four years which his administration lasted, governed with so much vigour and prudence, that the Marbattas never thought of quitting their frontiers. It is he that drew from inaction and obscurity the two Princes, Mir Nizam-aaly and Mir Mahammed sherif, younger brothers to Selabet-djung, two young men who hitherto had both lived in their elder's Palace. This was in the year 1169. Mir Nizam aaly (who now governs the Decan as Sovereign) was decorated with the surname of the second Asef dja, and sent to govern the Barar. and Mir Mushref after having been successively decorated with the titles of Shudjah el mulk and Burhan el mulk, or the

---

magnificence, he added all the parade and pageant of Hindoostany manners and customs: a numerous set of tents, plish-qhana; always on elephant himself, as were all his Officers. He was preceded by chopdars on horse-back, and by a set of musicians singing his feats of chivalry with always two head-chopdars reciting his eulogium. Colonel Clive always wore his regimentals in the field, was always on horse back and never rode in a palanquin; he had a plentiful table but noways delicate and never more than two services. He used to march mostly at the head of the column with his Aid-de-camps or was hunting at the right and left. He never wore silks, but in town. Governor Hastings always wore a plain coat of English broad cloth and never anything like lace or embroidery. His whole retinue, a dozen of horse-guards; he had two chopdars, always ready to pronounce his eulogium but, however without his ever so much as suspecting their talent for full twelve years together; and he departed for Europe, without so much as knowing those men as a *qatir*. His turone, a plain chair of mahogany with plenty of comfortable cushions in the hall; his table sometimes neglected; his diet sparing and always abstemious; his address and deportment, very distant from pride and still more so, from familiarity.

"Valorous and Impetuous of the State," was sent to govern the Kingdom of Bidjapoor, and both brothers departed to their respective stations. But in the very next year the office of first Minister was taken from Shah-nevaz-qhan, and bestowed on Mir Mushref, who came from Bidjapoor to receive it. However he did not enjoy it, for his brother, Nizam-aaly, having marched to Aoreng-abad with a good army, requested his younger brother to take some repose, and assuming at the same time his office of Prime Minister, he became the centre of all affairs, and even changed his younger brother's title into that which had been formerly the title of their common father.

It was in this same year that Baladjî-rao, the Marhatta, advanced upon the frontiers of Aoreng-abad, with intention to avail himself of the rising broils, so as to have a pretence for quarreling. But the conjunctures upon which he had reckoned had already ceased, and Nizam-aaly, having left his apparent Lord, Selabet-djung, to defend the city of Aoreng-abad, came out himself with his brother, Mir-mushref, and advanced upon Baladjî-rao, whom he beat, as far as Sund-gur, which is at thirty cosses from Aoreng-abad, but there he thought proper to come to an accommodation in which he consented to give Baladjî-rao throughout all Decan, a *Djaghir* of thirty-seven lacs of rupees. After this he returned to Aoreng-abad. But M8shur Bussy, who commanded an independent body of troops, having taken umbrage at this absolute authority assumed by Nizam-aaly, conceived the design of breaking his rising power (although in fact he only accelerated the ruin of Nizam-el-mulk's family), as he conceived that so long as Nizam-aaly should be at the head of so great a force, the influence of the French would become only a secondary object. By the means of some underhand management, conducted by Haider-djung, who, as we have said, was everything in his affairs, he debauched from Nizam-aaly's service his best Officers, and amongst others Hibrahim-qhan, the Gardî (249), an Officer of character, attached this longwhile

---

(249) Hibrahim-qhan-gardî was a very thin black man, much pitted with the small-pox, who had in times of yore ran with a stick in his hand before Mr de Bury's palenkin, Major of the place at Pondicherry. As he spoke a little Portuguese, the Major put him amongst the Sepahies whom he was raising, and whose language he could not understand. Hibrahim rose in time to be a *Commedan*, or *Commandant*, that is, to have a couple of thousand Sepahies, and a couple of hundred horses.



to that young Prince whom he served with a body of his own troops. He debauched in the same manner some other Commanders and troops which he took in his own service making good from his own treasury eight lacs of rupees, which were due to them by Nizam aaly upon their arrears. By such an artful management he reduced the young Prince to the condition of a bird which has lost its feathers. He at the same time laid hold of Shah nevaz-qhan, and got him confined. Being now satisfied on those two important articles he conceived a third scheme which was that of confining Nizam aaly in the fortress of Golcondah, under pretence of carrying him to Haiderabad and giving him the Government of that Province which removal once effected he conceived that he should remain master of the Government to all intents and purposes. This scheme was laid with great secrecy but Nizam aaly having by dint of penetration guessed the whole of its drift he resolved to be beforehand with M8shur Bussy by killing his Minister Haider-djung. Having imparted his design to a few trusty persons he fixed on the third of Ramazan in the year 1171 for its execution. That very day Haider-djung was coming to Nizam-aaly's quarters for some business and having observed some movements that did not please him, he wanted to go back, when he was set upon instantly and had his throat cut in a moment. Nizam-aaly after striking such a blow threw himself upon a horse, and fairly made his escape the whole French army with their artillery, in order of battle, standing astonished and dismayed as if they had been an army of statues and pictures set upright in a plain. This was a daring intrepid action that equalled any thing done by Rustem or Ispent yar (250) and where it seemed that

Troublest in  
Decan and  
daring action  
of Nizam  
aaly's.

---

under his command. He soon became independent of his benefactors, as did in time all the commandants in the French service who allowed them such a number of horse and foot under their command as rendered them proud. The French are the first who raised Sepahles in India, that is, who gave muskets and bayonets to the country-musketeers but whoever should conclude from the name that they were anything comparable to the English Sepahles of our days would commit an enormous mistake. The French could neither change their dress or cloth them uniformly or keep their arms in order or punish them or prevent their firing away their ammunition at the new moon or pay them themselves, or bring them under the least restraint or discipline. They were a rabble with immense turbans and immense trowsers with muskets so ill used, that not one in twenty was in order.

(250) Two famous heroes of the ancient Persian History — See the *Shanamah* an Heroic & romantic Poem of six thousand disticks

Moosbur-Bussy and all his Officers were out of their senses. In this confusion, one of Haider-djun's people ran to Shah-nevaz-ghan and his son Mir Abdol-nabi-ghan and put them both to death, together with another nobleman of consequence called Amin-ol-dowleh. The tumult being over, Selabet-djung, Mir Mushref, and Moosbur-Bussy returned to Haiderabad. As to Nizam-aaly, he took to the road to BSRhanpSr, found means to regain his old servant, Hibrain-ghim-gardi, and after that action, he marched with him in that city, where they put under contribution the richness of the country, and amongst others Muhmed-anvaz-ghan the BSRhan-pSr. This nobleman had acted as mediator in the treaty which had once taken place between the Marhatta General Santradji-mahar, and the Viceroi, Hossem-aaly-ghan, by which the latter had consented to pay the Marhattas, a ChoSt, or a tribute. This nobleman incensed to find himself so tormented for money, said farewell to his own existence, and was buried in the Garden of Shah-yssa, near Djund-Allah. These contributions having put it in Nizam-aaly's power to raise a good body of troops, he marched from BSRhanpSr and took up his quarters at Bissem, a principal town of the dependencies of Barar. There he had many disputes and several engagements with the Mucadar, or Marhatta Governor of that Province who was Diano-dji, son to Ragho-dji-bhosselah, with whom he at last concluded an agreement. After this he marched to Haiderabad, where great disputes and dissensions arose between the three brothers. At last it was agreed that Selabet-djung and Nizam-aaly should remain and live together, but that Mir Mushref should immediately proceed to his Government of Bidjapoor.

Whilst the brothers were disputing amongst themselves, Seda-shi8, a relation of the Marhatta Baladji-rao, intrigued so well with the Governor of Ahmed-nagur, that this fortress, once the Capital of the Kings of Nizam-shah's family,—that fortress which had cost so much time and trouble to Abdol-rahim-ghan, the General of the Imperial Prince Soltan-danial, and which since Soltan-acbar-shah's reign, had always been in the possession of its particular Governors, was surrendered in a day, and became annexed to the Marhatta Empire. This city and fortress had been built in the year nine hundred by Ahmed-nizam-shah, King of Bidjapoor, who gave it his own name. He

The Marhattas extort fortresses and territories from Nizam-aaly.

condition that the Vezir obtained his request from the Emperor. But the ungrateful young Lord, forgetting the education he had received in that Minister's house where he had learned several languages acquired a taste for poetry and had become a learned man as well as a good soldier henceforward turned his back on his benefactor, and unmindful of the many obligations he owed to that family and the constant support he had received from it, he joined Intyzam ed-döwlah, and the Emperor with his mother, in the conspiracy of oversetting the Vezir and demolishing his power. Nor was it long before the Minister had information of this conspiracy for in a few days the Emperor sent him word, to desire his leaving to His Majesty the disposal of the artillery and of the bathing place that is the private apartments, and he recommended to him a better discharge of his duty as a Vezir. For the latter, sensible that a breach had now taken place between himself and his master abstained henceforward from going to Court and the Emperor intimidated at this, commenced caressing him anew and he even went to see him in which visit he excused what had passed and seemed to have regained his heart. But as the reconciliation on either side went no farther than the lips and it was evidently defective in truth and sincerity, months after months were spent in fruitless negotiations to the very beginning of the year 1166 and even the first six months of that year were taken up in negotiations and likewise in giving birth to some events which we are to mention.

The Vezir was at a loss how to act. To levy war against the Emperor seemed both improper and odious and on the other hand he apprehended that the conspiracy aimed at his life as well as at his power and influence. The truth is that he had neither that fund of policy, nor that blaze of daringness requisite for an enterprise of such a high nature, he had not that disregard to scruples necessary to a man that had conceived such high flown projects nor that stiffness of mind that enables him to overlook all obstacles and to set at naught all considerations, he wanted also a sufficient extent of genius to take an adequate view of the strength of his party, and he had too high an opinion of that of his enemies. In fact, such was the opinion entertained of his power in the beginning of the troubles and so inconsiderable appeared in comparison both Intyzam-ed döwlah,

✓ Civil war  
between the  
Emperor Ab-  
med-shah and  
his Vezir

and that child of Mir-sheab-eddin that, had he only opened his mouth, there were many Commanders in his service, who on a single order of his would have gone, seized, and bound those two Lords in their very lodgings, nor had either of them dared to offer the least resistance in such a case. Destiny blinded the Vezir's eyes, and shut up his ears effectually. And the Emperor sensible of his irresolution, wrote him a note at midnight, the purport of which had been agreed to in a Council between those two Lords and the Court eunuchs. It was in the Emperor's own hand. The Emperor having sent for the Deputy-Grandmaster of the artillery, who, as such, had the command of the Citadel of Shah-djehan-abad on the Vezir's part, bid him carry the note himself, and added to it a long message upon several subjects. The foolish man excused himself on the impropriety of quitting his post, but the Emperor insisted, adding that it was for a matter of importance which admitted of no delay. The man had the simplicity to take up the note, and to carry it directly. As soon as he was out of the gate, the Emperor ordered all the gates to be shut up, and admittance to be denied the man for the future. At the same time the garrison placed by the Vezir, and which was all composed of his own troops, was driven out of the Citadel with much ill usage. All the Vezir's friends and officers were likewise forbidden admittance. Moreover, the cannon on one of the towers, which commanded the Vezir's Palace, was turned against it, and every preparative was made for contention and war. The Vezir who conceived that contending with an armed hand against the Emperor would redound to his dishonour, render his person odious, and bring upon him the imputation both of rebellion and ingratitude, submitted to his fate, and only asked leave to repair to his Governments beyond the Djumnah (235); and this being denied, he took his own party, came out of town without leave, encamped at about two or three cosses distance, and resolved to go to his Governments without leave indeed, but, if possible, without battle or bloodshed. This resolution was no sooner known, than his enemies resolved to attack and fight him, and even to have his life

---

(235) Ilah-abad and Aood are, with respect to Delhi, both beyond the Djumna

are all zealous Sunnies and having set up a standard as if their religion had been in danger he published that the Vezir was a Shyah, and a Rafzy, or blasphemmer (236), and he invited all the Mussulmen to join against one that had blasphemed the successors and waged war against them. He added that this was a sacred war and that, as such it conferred the merits of martyrdom on whoever should perish in it. On this publication, thousands and thousands of armed men flocked towards the standard, and nothing was heard but cries of four successors, and four friends and whoever was met with in the streets, and suspected to be a Shyah, or even a well wisher of the Vezir's was sure of being stripped and beaten & ye even were killed. The house of the late Mahmed Isaac qhan inhabited by his two brothers Mirza aaly qhan and Salar djung was plundered and sacked as was that of Ismael heg qhan, a principal Commander in the Vezir's army whose house was known to be replenished with precious arms, money jewels, and rich furniture to the amount of several corors. In short, no man of character who was known to be either in the Vezir's army or in his interest escaped unhurt. The houses of every one of them were plundered and sacked nor did any part escape devastation but the women's apartment. To punish these excesses, S8r8dj mull, the Djatt attacked, by the Vezir's order, that part of the city called old Delhi and which is even richer and still more populous than Shah djehan-abad itself and he plundered and sacked it so thoroughly that an infinity of people lost their consorts and children and were totally ruined besides numbers that were massacre. A multitude of all sorts had taken refuge in the house and quarter of Shah bassutt son and successor to shah mahmed djaaser on the expectation that his holy character being exceedingly respected by every one and by the Vezir amongst others who lived on terms of friendship and intimacy with him would prove a safeguard to his house and

Old Delhi  
plundered by  
the Vezir's  
troops, who at  
last came to a  
compromise  
with his  
master

(230) The Shyahs, not satisfied with rejecting the three Lords, whom we have been mentioning some time ago namely AbS-bekr Omrr and Osman (although they did really succeed, and carried the Mussulman name from the Loire to France to the Ganges in India,) load them with abuse and invectives although they have been the Prophet's protectors, and had made him their son-in-law. Hence as aggressors, they are called Blasphemers or Rafadhis by the Sunnis.—The Emperor of Hindostan being reputed a successor to those successors he himself styled a Qhalif.

quarter in the general plunder and massacre, but they were mistaken, and these deluded people underwent the same unhappy fate as the others. No respect, no regard was paid to it,—but let us pass in silence over all those horrors,—for past is what is past.—O God preserve us, preserve all the Imamites from such days as these (237). After six months' slaughter and ruin, both parties became tired of such a life, and both seemed desirous of a peace. The Emperor and his Ministers sent the first message, and the Vezir, who was tired of the immense expenses he daily incurred, and who augured no good from all these troubles, gave his consent. Inty-ah-med-dowlah served as mediator in the terms of the agreement, and this was, that the two Governments of Delhi and AṣṢ should be left to the Vezir. These terms having been agreed to, the latter in the beginning of the year 1167, set out for those countries, and left the field to Mir-sheab-eddin.

This daring young man had, during the war with the Vezir, called to his assistance from Malva, the Marhatta General Hoker-mallu under promise of a high pay, but he arrived after the conclusion of the peace. Nevertheless, as the Minister was highly exasperated against the Djatts for their connections with the Vezir, and the assistance they had given him, and as on the other hand, he was fond of remaining in power, he availed himself of the arrival of the Marhatta troops to fall upon the Djatt SṢṛḍj-mull. The latter who thought himself over-matched in the field, took shelter in certain strong fortresses of his, known under the names of Dig, Comir, and Buhret-poor, where he was immediately besieged, and as it is impossible to take such fortresses without battering cannon, Mir-sheab-eddin who feared lest matters should draw to a length, sent to the Emperor to request some heavy artillery. The person he sent was Akybet-mahmood-qhan, a Cashmirian, who was everything in that Minister's house, but, however, a wicked dangerous man,

New troubles  
in Delhi.

(237) Had not the author been a most bigotted Shyiah, he would not have spoiled that fine exclamation by restricting that benevolent wish of his to the Imamites only, that is, to the Shyiahs. The text has the word *M8mmimn*, which signifies the faithful, and which Shyiahs assume to themselves exclusively to all other Mussulmen. The exclamation, besides its inhuman partiality, is inconsequent, it being the Sunnies who actually had lost their consorts and their lives by the violence of the Shyiahs, whereas the latter had lost only some property by the Sunnies.

seditions and factious to a high degree This request did not please Intyzam-ed dōwlah, the Vezir, who was an honest well meaning man He knew that as soon as those fortresses should have been taken, both the master and the envoy would not fail to return to the city, and to avail themselves of their prevalence to torment indiscriminately both friends and foes He therefore advised the Emperor to refuse the artillery The Cashmirian apprised of that formed himself a party amongst the Mansoobdars or Military Officers of the Crown and the people dependent on the artillery and partly by threats and by promises of plunder as well as by a variety of other means he engaged them to join his party in taking Intyzam-ed-dōwlah out of the way Having fixed a day for this purpose he assembled a multitude of people, and made an attack upon that Minister's house but being repulsed he quitted the city, and putting himself at the head of several bodies of handittiies that joined together, he fell a plundering all those Districts that depended on the Qhalissa-office at the head of which presided that nobleman as well as all those in the environs of the Capital which he knew to be held as Djaghira by the several Lords of the Court

Whilst he was busied in that manner, S8r8dj mull, besieged in his fortress sent up several requests both to the Emperor and to Intyzam-ed-dōwlah his Minister, representing "That if 'they suffered Mir sheab-eddin and his Marhattas to go on with his schemes a time would come when he would turn his eyes upon the throne itself as well as upon the Vezirship, and would attempt to overturn the Government, so as to new model it to his own mind That he therefore submitted it to the Imperial wisdom whether in such a state of things it would not be proper for His Majesty to come out with his Minister and army and under pretence of bringing into order the Districts of the Imperial demesnes, and, hunting on the way, to advance as far as Sekenderah where it would be easy to send for Abool mans8r qhan, a man who in such a case would not fail to join in crushing Mir sheab-eddin and the Marhattas ' This advice having been approved by both the Emperor and the Minister the Monarch set out on a hunting party, and took with him the ladies of his sanctuary as well as his Ministers all the Lords of the Court as well as his army and artillery in the

Mir-sheab-eddin on ill terms with his master

course of his hunting he, from plain to plain, advanced as far as three or four cosses beyond Sekenderah But he was averse from the party of applying to Ab8l-mans8r-qhan, nor was it better relished by either his mother, or the Vezir, Intyzam-ed-dowlah, who after Djavid-qhan's death, had leagued with that Empress. In complying with this part of S8r8dj-mull's advice, they seemed to act with dilatoriness and reluctance All these counsels and this irresolution having been reported to Mir-sheab-eddin, who was exceedingly alert and intent upon his own schemes, he re-called Akybet-mahm8d, and sent him to the Emperor's camp, as if to give him advice that some thousands of disbanded Marhatta horse, having made their appearance in his neighbourhood, had suddenly disappeared without it being known where they would shew themselves again The envoy having said so much, returned to his master The slothful Emperor paid no great attention to the message, and the negligent Vezir, whose particular business it was to watch over the army, and to insure the honour of the Imperial household, as well as the safety of the Imperial person, quietly went into his tent, and fell to his afternoon's nap, after having heard the message. But the Marhatta General, Holcar Malhar, was not so sleepy Highly incensed against the Emperor and his Minister for their denial of some heavy cannon, he had left his son, Ghandi-rao, to keep the Djatts in awe, and had set out himself with a view to distress the Imperial camp with respect to water and forage, and by that means to find some opportunity to lay hold of the cannon, or at least to strike some good blow, he also wished to have no sharer in this expedition, and to be left to himself Without giving any intimation of his design to any one, not even to Mir-sheab-eddin, he set out in the beginning of the night, passed the Djumna at the ford of Mahtra, and was close to the Imperial army, before any one knew of his having so much as left his camp, and, first of all, he fired some rockets to feel the pulse of the enemy At sight of these, it was concluded in the Imperial camp that Mahm8d was burning some village in the environs, and the matter appearing of no consequence, no one concerned himself in examining more narrowly into the matter, when at the latter part of the night, it was found that Holcar himself was at hand On this intelligence the Emperor

و.  
ج.



and his Ministers, both equally cowards and unexperienced, lost their presence of mind, and were equally incapable of flying with recollection, or of making a stand. The Emperor with his mother, and Semsam-ed-dowlah with the Vezir, got upon their elephants, wrapped and muffled up as if they had been women, and without so much as assembling their officers, or saying a word to any one. they fled with all their might towards the Capital, leaving their consorts, daughters, and families at the disposal of the enemy. It being rumoured, half an hour after that they were gone, the whole army, officers, and soldiers disbanded, and fled with arms and some baggage as far as Sekenderah. At day break the Marhattas pursued them thither, and plundered and stripped every one of them, after having already plundered the Imperial camp, with the Imperial tents, and furniture. Malecka zemani daughter to Feroz seyur, and consort to Mahmed shah, with other Princesses of the Imperial family, as well as a vast number of ladies of the highest distinction fell into Holcar's hands. That General treated them with the highest respect and even abstained from touching either their persons or even those jewels with which they were covered, to an immense amount and this abstinence of his is an indubitable fact, but it is no less certain that an indelible disgrace befell the honour of the Imperial house of Timur that day and that those sublime gates, on the threshold of which Kings and Sovereigns, together with all mankind had been accustomed to rub their foreheads in token of respect became from henceforward an object of derision and a standing mark for the kicks of the vilest men. But such are God's dispensations let us submit to them.

Whilst this scene was acting at Sekenderah, Mir-sheab eddin was still occupied with the blockade but he no sooner beard of this affair than he quitted the field, and came to the city, leaving S8r8dj mull at full liberty to rid himself of the miseries he had been undergoing for the Marhatta General was by this time gone home and Djehl-apa, the second General, had set out for Narnol. A few days after this departure, Mir sheab-eddin had found means to gain over to his party both Semsam-ed-dowlah and all the Commanders, and all the ungrateful Colonels that were attached to the service of the Imperial artillery. He then put himself at the head of a body of Hindostanies

and Marhattas, and going to the Vezir Intyzam-ed-dowlah's Palace, he of his own authority dismissed him from his office, which he took for himself, procuring at the same time the office of "Lord of Lords" for his friend, Semsam-ed-dowlah. The next morning he went to the Palace to put on his Qhylaat, and at noon he seized both the Emperor Ahmed-shah and his mother, Oodem-bhai, whom he ordered to be kept in confinement. It was the tenth Shaaban of the year 1167. Immediately after this, he sent for Aziz-eddin, son to the late Muez-eddin-djehandar-shah, and having proclaimed him Emperor, under the surname or title of Aalem-ghir-sani, or Aalem-ghir the second, he installed him on the throne. Seven days after, he ordered Oodem-bhai to be blinded, by having a red hot needle drawn across her eyes, and he accused her of being the cause and contriver of all the troubles, he then served the Emperor, her son, in the same manner. Probably none of these direful events had happened, had the Emperor condescended to apply to Ab8l-mans8r-qhan, who was then at hand, although in his Government.

The Minister orders the Emperor and Empress-mother to be blinded

That Viceroy, on his arrival in what he called his own ground, stopped at Mehdi-ghat, where he built himself a lodging, reviewed and completed his army, and attached himself to its discipline, preparing at the same time all kinds of stores, and seeming to mind nothing but whatever could strengthen and increase his power. He seemed intent on some project, when at once, without any previous ailment, a furuncle was perceived at his foot, and this having soon degenerated into a cancer, which baffled all the art of the physicians and surgeons, the evil in a little time rose to a height, and on the seventeenth of Zilhij in the same year, he departed this life, and winged his flight towards the regions of eternity. His body, according to his own desire, was carried to the Monument of the King of Braves (238), and buried there. He was succeeded by his son, Mirza-djelal-eddin-haidyr, surnamed the Shudjah-ed-dowlah (239). The young Prince continued in the management of the helm that same Ismail-beg-qhan, who had been his father's principal General and trustiest Minister, and all the Officers, Commanders,

Ab8l-mans8r-qhan dies.

(238) Aaly, called by the Shyabs *Shah-i-merdan*, is the King of Braves. His tomb is at Cosah, betwixt Basrah and Bagdad.

(239) The Valorous of the Empire

Governors, and Grantees or Nohles, promoted by his father, remained in possession of the offices and pensions they enjoyed. But in a little time, Ismail-beg-qhan likewise departed his life, and Temkin qhan, an eunuch of his household, succeeded him in his office of Prime Minister. It was at this same time that Saadat qhan died at A8d bangia. He is the same man who bore the title of Zolficar djung also and had cut so strange a figure in the expedition against Adjmir. But as Shudjah ed dōwlah cuts so capital a figure in our history, the reader probably may be pleased with hearing some particulars of that Prince's character.

Shudjah ed-dōwlah in his own temper was slothful, negligent and careless, but so valorous that, with that single quality of his, he found means to contain the Zemindars and the other refractory people with which his dominions abounded, so that his Government was always respected. He was exceedingly fond of the company of women without being attached to any, and addicted to every kind of pleasure without exception save however that of drinking wine. Nevertheless there appeared no impudence in his character, and no contempt of decorum in his behaviour. He had such an abundant fund of goodness, liberality and benignity, as made him connive at trespasses against his interest and rendered him ever ready to forgive the guilty. He governed quietly his dominions for three or four years, when the Abdal king at the instigation of Mir sheah eddin now styled Umad el mulk, invaded Hindostan, and marched directly to Shah-djehan abad. This was in the year 1170. That Minister's intention was to join an army of Abdals to an army of Rohillahs and Bangash Afghans who being inveterate and sworn enemies of Shudjah ed dōwlah's father and family would be glad to embrace any scheme for entirely demolishing and ruining that rising power. This league however did not intimidate Shudjah-ed dōwlah. Without being dismayed by the threatened storm, he stood his ground so well that he was left to himself, as we shall relate as soon as we shall have dispatched some matters relative to the Western parts of Hindostan.

We have left Mir mann8 nearly absolute Viceroy of both Miltan and Pendjab. He resided at Lahor where having mounted his horse to take an airing he went out of the city,

and put his horse on a gallop, when he was suddenly seized by a fit of apoplexy, which ended at once in a palsy that stopped him short ; so that all he could do was to continue his voyage into eternity This event is recounted in a different manner by a person in his service, who was very familiar with him He says that Mir-mann8 was encamped, and that he took horse to look at the troops of one of his Commanders, encamped within a short distance, where he sat down to a dinner The entertainment proving sumptuous, and consisting of a great variety of precious dishes, he tasted of every one In the evening, he got upon his horse to go home, and put it to a gallop ; and he was actually galloping when finding something that pained him within, he alighted, stretched himself upon the ground, and in a few moments expired The Abdali-king hearing of this sudden death, conferred the Government on Mir-m8men, son to the deceased, and as he was yet a child, he recommended him to his mother together with the whole country It must be observed that the deceased Governor, keeping always a great army on foot, and being engaged besides in a variety of heavy expenses, which the revenues of the country could not support, he had betaken himself to the expedient of oppressing and squeezing the body of farmers, as well as the people in general But his credit was so strong at Court, that there was no carrying any complaint against him , and on the other hand, it being a standing rule amongst the Syks to support each other at all events, numbers of people who could find no redress any where and were driven to so much despair as to cry *famine, famine*, about the streets, very naturally resorted to that fraternity, where they were sure of finding some resource. The whole business of admission seemed to consist in putting on a blue coat, letting the hair grow all over the body, and repairing in shoals to G8r8-Govind From that moment they became Syks, and were entitled to the protection of the whole body, and looked like men freed from all their miseries In this manner this sect or fraternity, which was already in vogue, having turned out to be a sure resource against oppression, it grew to an immense number , especially at this time, when the Government of a country involved in troubles was to be managed by a woman , and as that sex is destitute of strength of mind, the disorders

The bad administration of the Viceroy of Lahor adds strength to the Syks

and troubles continued to increase. Her Ministers commonly availed themselves of her retired life and immured circumstances, to render such an account of their respective departments each in his own way, as served only to perplex and confound her understanding. Hence the tenants and farmers became more oppressed than ever, and shoals of people flocking to the Syks, these people grew exceedingly numerous, and commenced talking high to the Officers of Government. The nobility and principal men of the country who looked at these desertions with both amazement and disdain made it a point to stand aloof whilst the eunuchs the freed men of the seraglio and a variety of homely born vile men took possession of all the affairs. Things were in such a state when the young Mir m8men departed his life and then the Government fell into the hands of Qhoadja m8sa-ohrai, his brother in law. But as Becari qhan who had acted as Prime Minister under the deceased Viceroy wanted to render himself master of the Government, and he had been intriguing with that view the Governess who was informed of his intentions and was already incensed against him, commanded his attendance within the seraglio or sanctuary and as soon as he was within the gate she got him surrounded by a number of stout women, who put him to the cudgel so severely that he expired under the operation. A short time had elapsed since this event, when Qhoadja abdollah-qhan son to Abdol semed-qhan that ancient victorious Viceroy of Lahor having found means to seize and confine the Governess contrived likewise to obtain from the Abdali king, the patents of the two Governments. But Feraman qhan who had brought those patents to Lahor, having commenced acting with authority and plundered and ruined numbers of people, the new Viceroy who did not like his presence and was also teased by the troops who became clamorous for their arrears, found it was out of his power to satisfy their demand so that to save his life and honor he fled from Lahor to the disgrace of all Government. In such a confusion of all order, the Governess found means to re-assume the command and having been in a little time put under confinement by Qhoadja mirza-qhan, who had been one of the principal Commanders in her husband's army, the troubles at last subsided and a compromise took place between her and that officer

Troubles in  
M8ltan and  
Pendjab.

All these troubles and commotions having been faithfully reported to the new Vezir, Mir-Sheab-eddin, now styled Umad-el-mulk, he conceived the design of recovering the provinces of Pendjab and M8ltan from the dependance of the Abdali-king. Without imparting his scheme to any one, he set out with Alemghir, the Emperor of his appointing, and encamped at Badely, at some distance from the city. He intended also to bring to order and to reduce to submission the officers of the corps marked with the letter *Sin*, who, availing themselves of the need the Vezir had stood of their service in his disputes with Ab8l-mans8r-qhan, had extorted from his hands all the Districts of the Qhalissah-office, and all the best demesne lands about the city, as a security for their pay and arrears<sup>6</sup>, they had besides assumed airs of importance, and proved unruly and refractory. With this view he sent for my father, and after appointing him Fodjdar of Ser-hend. Taneser, and Pani-poot, with some other districts of the Qhalissah, he advanced to the latter town. As the negotiation for recovering these lands from the officers of the Brigade *Sin*, had been carried on by Kishen-chund, a Gentoo, Radja Nagurmull a Hindoo, who became exceedingly jealous of him, sent for the principal Officers, all men highly discontented, and he informed them that Séyd Hedaïet-aaly-qhan, that is, my honoured father, who commanded in the Districts snatched from their hands, was a man of property, from whom, by a proper application to the Vezir, they might easily get an advance of two lacs of rupees upon the rents of those Districts, a sum that would go a great way in discharging their arrears, and that in case he should not consent to that advance, he undertook to find a man that would pay it down, on condition of his being put in possession of those Districts. The Officers accustomed this longwhile to speak in an imperious style, and inconsolable at their being deprived of such productive Districts, swore to stand by each other, and the next day they sent their agents to the Vezir with the proposals. Meanwhile, my father, who had been informed of the turn which this affair had taken, and was unwilling to accept the condition, sent his resignation by the channel of the above Kishen-chund, whom he followed soon after to the Vezir's quarters. That Minister, after having passed a couple of hours in giving a public audience, in which he

The new  
Vezir marches  
to recover  
M8ltan

transacted business with my father, with Seif eddin mahmed qhan, with Nedjib-qhan, and with Nagur mull, and some others, was getting up to retire to his private apartments, when he was stopped by the Brigade agents, who by Nagur mull's management had joined together in informing him that the Brigade *Sin* wanted a large sum of money in part of their arrears. The Vezir, without seeming embarrassed, answered that he had no objections but that the corps must be reviewed first. The agents sensible that no penmeo would dare to form difficulties in a day of review consented and they only requested that some M8lsuddies (240) might be appointed to review their corps. The Vezir on hearing these words turned towards Nedjib-qhan and directed him to review the Brigade to which that Officer consenting, he immediately sent orders to his son, Zabeta qhan, to pitch up a tent in an open spot and to review the Brigade. The agents surprised found that the time was come for some great discovery it being understood that these two Officers were not men to be either tampered with or overawed being themselves Officers of high character and at the head of several thousand horse. Straight they dispatched a messenger to their constituents for the purpose of advising them to be upon their guard. The others finding that they would be ruined by such a review conceived that there was no other expedient for escaping a discovery than that of exciting a sedition and a mutiny in consequence, they excited their most ferocious men to take the lead. Meanwhile the Vezir was retired to his private apartments having with him only three or four persons, as Nedjib-qhan, Radja Nagur mull, and Kishen-chand. A little after, Nedjib-qhan went away. My father waited without, anxious to render his resignation acceptable, and to get rid of so disagreeable an affair when at once twenty or thirty troopers of the Brigade *Sin* came to the curtain of the private apartment, and exclaimed against their Officers, complaining of their being reduced, for want of both arrears and pay, to a starving conditions. Soon after, these men were joined by some more the appearance of which caused the harcaras or messengers at the gate to write a note, and to send it in by an enouch. The Vezir after having read it got up in the undress in which he then stood and was going

---

(240) M8lsuddies are pen-men in several offices

out My father stopped him short, and represented that it was not proper for him to go out *I shall certainly go*, answered the Vezir, *I want to speak to them and appease the tumult*. My father said nothing, but finding him resolved to go out, he joined him. The Vezir raised the curtain, spoke to them, and informed them, *that they would be paid as soon as their corps should be reviewed*. By this time those troopers had gathered to the amount of two hundred men, and trusting to their numbers, they had surrounded the Vezir, and were speaking insolently to him. My father mixed with the crowd, and represented to them that the man they were insulting, was their resource in a day of need, and their Lord, the person that would hear their complaints if they had but the patience to speak quietly. The remonstrance did not avail. The men had come too well tutored to listen to any reason. One of them having torn away a button of jewel which the Vezir had at his Nima (241), the others as if by signal, tore away his clothes to pieces, and his turbant fell off at the same time. Bare-headed as he was (242), they drew him on foot along the streets and lanes, and carried him to their camp. Meanwhile the Vezir's troops, amazed at what they saw, were at a loss what to do. As the Vezir's last hour was not come yet, the Officers of the mutinous Brigade came into the tent, excused what had past, and desired him to put on the clothes which his servants had brought after him. The Vezir incensed, listened, to no advice, and addressing them with all the foul language he could muster, he cried out "*You rascally pimps, (and this was his expression) if you intend to kill me, kill then, and make haste, for you will certainly be killed yourselves to a man, else, if you intend no killing, what do you mean by all this insolence?*" Whilst he was speaking, a message came from the Emperor to the seditious. It was delivered in

---

(241) The Nima is in itself a Djama or Gown, to all intents and purposes, but as it does not fold as the other, upon the breast, it serves as a waistcoat, and is therefore reputed an undress. Both the Djama and Nima consist only of cotton linen.

(242) An European with his hat under his arm, would stare on being informed, that to be bare-headed is a high disgrace, all over the East, as far as the Ganges. The bankrupts, the day they stop payment, sit bare-headed in their counting houses, with a lamp burning before them at noon day.



Turkish (243), to this purport *"Instead of confining the Vezir you ought to bring him to me I am the proper person and if you want only your arrears I take them upon myself"* The Vezir who amongst several other languages understood the Turkish very well, becoming still more angry broke out in fury *No messages no messages to these rascals do you rascals make haste go on with what you intend'* The Officers without minding his language supplicated him to accept their submission and to mount an elephant which was brought for that purpose The Vezir mounted when one of these Officers whose name was Hassen qhan, the Decanian, getting up behind in the Qhavvass (244) took up the fly driver with one hand, and the sun screen with the other and continued waiting on him until the Vezir landed in his lodgings and so soon as the Vezir had alighted he likewise alighted from behind and went away The Vezir being landed took his seat upon his Mesned where crowds came to make their bow In a Moment he asked where was Hassen qhan and being told he was gone he sent after him, and got him brought back with his elephant On his being come the Vezir got upon the same elephant, and sent a general order throughout the army to kill and plunder the men of the Brigade *Sin* wherever they might be found In an instant those numerous hungry Rohillahs of Nedjib-qhan, who as well as the other troops waited only for the order fell upon them, and made them disappear from the camp—men horses tents, and all The troops continued plundering and massacring the whole night Some few who threw themselves instantly upon their naked horses and fled escaped alive the rest were all put to the sword Nor could a single man of them be heard of afterwards

---

(243) The Turkish language which is the language of Government all over Persia, is only a curiosity I Hindostan where the Persian is the language of Government nevertheless the Princes of the Timur family make it a point to speak it as do most of their Ministers. Here, the message being addressed to a Brigade, composed almost intirely of Euzbeg Turks, or Tatars was with great propriety delivered in the Turkish language

(244) We have been obliged to coin a couple of word here, in order to translate without a long circumlocution two Hindostani expressions. The Hindostani ideas differs so widely from the European nations, that those who would not care to be Archi-cup-bearers to the Emperor of Germany or give the shift to the King of France, wd would think themselves polluted by giving him water to wash his hands with pride in sitting in the Qhavvass, that is, in mounting behind a coach

As soon as this execution was over, the Vezir who had taken umbrage at the Emperor's supineness on this occasion, returned to the city, where having recruited his troops and stores, and left the Emperor in the hands of some trusty friend of his own, he took with him the Imperial Prince Aaly-gohar, (now reigning under the name of Shah-Alem,) and marched towards Lahor, resolved to re-annex those countries to the Empire of Hindostan. This Minister, who was naturally impetuous and fond of dispatch, and had also a knack at sowing troubles and raising disturbances, set out with a numerous army, in which he had taken care to have all the Grandees of the Court, as well as the Prince Aaly-gohar, and he seemed to be only hunting by the way, but yet was shortening his distance every day, and meanwhile he had managed in such a manner, as to have gained over to his party the famous Adina-beg-qhan. He was already arrived at Lodiana, within fifty cosses of Lahor, when being thoroughly satisfied with that man's fidelity, he by his advice sent to Lahor a body of troops, under the command of Seyd Djemil-eddin, who was likewise entrusted with a letter and a message to the Begum, relict of Mir-mann8, his uncle. He requested she might vouchsafe to send him her daughter a Princess betrothed to him long ago. The Begum, pleased with the request, sent her daughter with great pomp and magnificence, gave her a suitable dowry in jewels and money, and got her accompanied by a full household of eunuchs, tents, and every requisite for a voyage. The Vezir on his side sent his own uncle at the head of a large body of horse, and a cortege of

---

or nearly so, and in handling the fly-driver, &c. For the person sitting in the Qhavvass, is always second to him that sits in the fore part of the Haodah, he is his Divan, and the fly-driver, or Moor-chull, is the characteristic insignia of his office, and were the Emperor to come in Bengal, and the English Company, as Divans of that country, to be represented by one man, the Qhavvass and Moor-chull would become the latter's right and duty. The Moor-chull is made in the form of a long broom, composed of Peacock's feathers, artfully put up, and resting in a long handle studded with jewels. The Qhavvass is the third or fourth part of the Haodah, from which it is always parted by a board, and has just room enough to afford a scanty space to one single man, so that the elephants mentioned in the Jew books and in the Greek histories of the times of Cosro, must have been animals of another breed. The biggest elephant, we have seen in India, (and we have seen some thousands) could not afford room to more than four fighting men, and that too very scantily.

principal Officers to receive her at a distance, and they brought her to camp, where a full household and a proper set of tents had been provided for her reception, and where she was visited by her husband's aunt. The Princess's mother being by this time perfectly well pleased with her match, and quite easy in her mind, the Vezir dispatched Ybad-ollah qhan, the Cashmirian, a trusty Commander of his, with a number of good troops, together with Seyd Djemil eddin himself, who had orders to join by the way some cavalry of Adina beg qhan's. The distance was of forty or fifty cosse (245) (a hundred and twenty miles) and all this being gone over in one day and night, without hardly stopping to take breath at day-break they got within Lahor and going to the Palace where the old Prince was yet asleep, and unsuspicious of what was managed, they sent eunuchs to wake her and putting her in a close chair they carried her to their camp, without Lahor, from whence, after taking one day to refresh they returned to the Vezir encamped at Lodiana. This Minister no sooner saw her alight than he paid her a respectful visit and asked her forgiveness and after giving the Government of Lahor and Multan to Adina beg-qhan under a clear rent of thirty lacs a year he returned towards the Capital seemingly happy and satisfied with the success of his journey. But the old Princess was extremely angry and uneasy all the way, giving abusive language to her guards, and making nothing of crying aloud both to them and to their master, "That the indecent and "unjust manner with which she had been used, would end in an 'infinity of troubles that would at last ruin his family, and the 'Capital itself that the families of the highest nobility, involved 'in one common ruin with the poorest citizens, would experience "merciless pillaging and rapes and disgraces innumerable that 'the Empire as well as the Capital, would be overset and ruined, "and know (would she add crying with all her might,) that all "this is not far off. You shall see the Abdali king in this Capital "within six or seven months. Look he is coming! All the "noble families ancient or modern, will be involved in one 'common massacre no Sheh no Sâyd, will be spared, all, all slaughtered! And, in fact matters came to pass just as the old woman had said.

Strange predictions of his mother in law

The Abdali-king, informed of the Vezir's insolence, and of the liberties he had taken with Mir-mann8's relict, flew to Lahor with the wings of resentment and celerity, but Adina-beg-qhan, who did not think himself a match for him, fled for shelter to the desert tract of Hansi, where he took up his residence in a fortress of difficult access, especially for want of water. The Vezir, on the other hand, conceiving fears for his own life, brought his new consort to Mir-mann8's widow, entrusted her person to her protection, and by dint of entreaties and submissions, made his peace with her. For the Abdali-king, who was flying on the wings of resentment and rapidity, was already at twenty cosses from the Capital of the Empire, and the Vezir disconcerted by so much expedition, saw no other party left to him, but that of submission, and going to the Abdali camp, he presented himself before that Monarch. The latter at first reprimanded him severely; but his cause being pleaded both by Mir-mann8's Begum, and by Shah Veli-qhan, the Abdali Vezir, who had been gained, the Monarch readily forgave him, and afterwards continued him in his office of Vezir. Nevertheless, on the seventh of the first Djemadi, of the year 1170, being a Friday, he quitted his encampment and entered the Citadel of Shah-djehan-abad, where he had an interview with the Emperor Alemghir the Second. From that day his people fell a plundering and sacking so mercilessly, and they went on dragging away people's wives and daughters with so much cruelty, that numbers overborne by the delicacy of their feelings, rather than to fall in such abominable hands, made away with themselves(246), and God only knows the number and

The Abdali  
Monarch marches against  
him

Plunders  
Delhi

---

(246) To men accustomed to the mildness of the European Governments, the Turkish one appears barbarous. It is nevertheless a mild one, when compared to the Government experienced by the Persians these eighty years. Making a garden of men, as they term it that is, burying a couple of hundred of living men in the ground, some in an inverted position, with only their thighs and legs out, and some with only their heads and arms, all the while exposed to a raging sun, is no new, no uncommon practice. Shutting women in bags, and then beating them with sticks, or pricking them with awls, at stated times, until their fathers or husbands, fled into Turkey or into India, should send up such a sum of money, is a very common expedient. But Persians themselves are a civilised people, when compared to the Afghans of Candahar. In no part of the world is human nature so abominably outraged—Their method of carrying away a male prisoner is this, although not even themselves would use it to carry an ox or an ass. They bore a hole in his shoulder, under the clavicle bone so remarkable in it, and passing a

quality of all the violences exercised for a month together in that ill fated city. The late Vezir Camer-eddin qhan's Palace and seraglio were rifled of every thing, and few houses of the nobility and better sort escaped a complete ruin and pollution. It was in the middle of so much violence and misery, that the Abdali king betook himself to an alliance of his family with that of Babr. He married his son, Timur Shah, to a daughter of Yz eddin, brother to the reigning Emperor. But after having leisurely plundered that rich city for thirty days together he sent Djehan-qhan a Commander of character to chastise S8r 8dl mull the Djatt, and he followed himself the next day. This was the fifth time the Abdali king had come into Hindostan. The Vezir Umad el mulk, having of his own motion accompanied Djehan qhan and proved of very great service in that General, received the Abdali king's approbation and applause but mention having been made by his Ministers of a present which that Monarch expected Umad-el mulk answered that if they would give him

thong or rope through it, make the end of it fast to their saddle, and then mount and trot away. If the prisoner cannot follow at the rate of 30 or 40 50 or 60 miles a day he is instantly killed. Any physicians of the first rate no boy no young man, of even twenty can escape them; and when disputes arise about a prize, the whole is pacified, by cutting down the prize. The women abused by them in an abominable manner fled from them and always preferred a well, to an Afghan. Girls of twelve and fourteen have become unmarriageable in their diabolical hands. And we have seen a lady who rather than submit to such an embrace, fought the Afghan resolutely although unarmed. He lifted his sabre and was going to cut her down when she presented her arm loaded with one of those enormous bracelets invented by necessity of *two pounds weight of gold* and received the stroke upon the gold, whilst she struck the man with the other bracelet, and made him bleed another stroke another parade, and another heavy blow; a third and the poor woman fatigued wounded, and spent, was going to fall. Nothing but a miracle could save her and a miracle was, in fact wrought instantly. At the moment of the third stroke, a Persian one of the Cuzelbash guards hastening his pace, cried out: *In the name of God most merciful!* and with one blow made the Afghan's head fly off from his shoulders. The poor woman, who had never been out of her house, and had never at a foot upon a street, marched on without knowing whither she went, and in the evening, she was lucky enough to find her husband and family at full twelve comes from that fatal street. We have spoke to the lady; she is at Lucknow a Cutrani by clan. *Ex uno disce omnes*. An Afghan's method of clearing himself is a very plain one as the common soldiers wear nothing but felts, and go on with them for five years together. He lights up a fire straddles over it, and keeps his body and abominable clothes in a semi-circular motion from right to left, and from left to right. Nor are their Officers much cleaner. Their beards and eye-brows swarm with vermin, as well as their soldiers.

one of the Timurian Princes, with an army of Abdalies, and full power to carry it wherever he should think proper, especially in the country of Anter-bid, (that is, the tract betwixt the two rivers of Djumna and Ganga) he would undertake to bring an immense sum into the Royal Treasury. The proposal being agreed to, two Imperial Princes were sent for from the Capital, and put into his hands. The one was Hedaiet-baqhsh, son to Alemghir the second, and the other, his son-in-law, Mirza-babr, son to his brother, Yz-eddin, and to these was joined a body of Abdalies under the command of Djan-baz-qhan.

We have already observed that Umad-el-mulk had conceived a violent aversion against Ab8l-mans8r-qhan and his family, which last he had resolved to tear up by the root. Availing himself of the Abdali-king's covetousness, he, under pretence of raising immense contributions in the country of Anter-bid, or Do-ab(247), marched westward with an army of D8rrani-Abdalies, but with not one of the necessities for making a campaign. Being arrived in the neighbourhood of Feroh-abad, he was met by Ahmed-qhan-bangash, who after paying his respects to both the Imperial Princes and the Vezir, presented them all three with a complete equipage, consisting of tents, elephants, horses, camels, and every other necessary, and moreover added a body of Afghans to the Vezir's army. The latter being now at his ease and reinforced by a good body of troops, crossed the Ganga, and took the road of A8d. This invasion, however, did not dismay or intimidate Shudjah-ed-dowlah, who came out of his Capital with a well appointed army and encamped at Sandipai, the last place of his dominions; where some skirmishes took place betwixt the runners of the two vanguards. Saadollah-qhan, who was son to the late Aaly-mahmed-qhan-Rohillah, having offered his mediation, an agreement took place, under stipulation of a sum of five lacs of rupees, partly in hand, and partly payable by instalments. This negotiation, in which Saadollah-qhan exerted himself zealously for his friend, Shudjah-ed-dowlah, and proved of great service to both parties, totally disappointed Umad-el-mulk, who hoped for great broils and a battle, and was obliged to repass the Ganga, and to encamp at Feroh-abad again, in expectation of what the Abdali-king would

---

(247) Di-potamia would be the translation of that compound word

do with the Djatts It was the seventh of Shevval, in the year 1170

The King had marched to Belem gur, a fortress of his, at fifteen cosses from Shah-djehan-abad, and having taken it in three days by dint of cannon ball and bombs, he put to the sword every man in the garrison Proceeding from thence to Mahtra, which is a famous place of worship for the Hindoos, he gave his Van to Djehan-qhan, recommending dispatch to that General The latter spurred his horse, and arriving unexpectedly in a holiday, he ruined effectually that rich city his soldiers plundering, burning, and destroying everything they met, and carrying into captivity vast numbers of the consorts and children of the best families amongst the wretched citizens an execution that struck such a terror throughout the country that all the inhabitants quitted their habitation, and retired within their fortress and strongholds Meanwhile the Abdali king advanced as far as Acbar abad, but here he found some resistance Mirza self olla beg, who commanded from a long series of years in the Citadel of that city refused to submit, and fired his cannon to so good a purpose, that no Abdali chose to abide its reach Djehan-qhan, meanwhile, was busy in taking one after another the Djatt fortress, when at once a mortality broke out amongst the Abdalies which swept their people in such vast numbers as disabled their King from prosecuting his designs Submitting therefore to his destiny, he recalled his troops from the Djatt country, and commenced his march to his own dominions Being arrived at the Reservoir of Macsood abad, which is on the same line with Shah-djehan-abad he was visited by Alemghur the second who wished him a prosperous return and much complained of Umad el mulk The Abdali king paid a regard to his grievances by conferring the office of ' Prince of Princes on Nedjib-qhan now Nedjib-ed-dönlah, then present and by recommending to his care the Emperor and his family

And this naturally brings to our recollection that after the confinement of Ahmed shah, and the accession of Alemghir the second dissensions had, arisen very high between Umad-el mulk the Vezir, on one hand, and the two relicts of Mahmed shah on the other These were Maleca xemani daughter to Feroh syur and Saliaba mahal, both related to and both consorts of Mahmed shah

That Prince had from this second consort a daughter of great beauty, who had been the darling of her father's heart. These two Princesses, mindful of having seen the honour of the Empire trodden under by the Marhattas, and fired with indignation at finding themselves, in every matter, at the mercy of Umad-el-mulk, resolved to quit a country where every thing went to wreck, and they sent a message to the Abdali-king, claiming his protection, as being both so nearly related to Mahmed-shah and to him. The Abdali-king, who thought himself much honoured by such a request, and hoped to be applauded by posterity, sent for the daughter which he himself married, and he gave the two other Empresses a separate encampment in his camp, after which he marched to Lahor. His son, Tim8r-shah, coming to join him in his way, he appointed the young Prince Governor of Pendjab, M8ltan and Tatta, gave him Djehan-qhan for Commandant of the troops, and turning towards his own dominions, he arrived by continued marches at Cab8l, and then at Candahar, where we shall leave him for a while, in order to take breath, and to afford ourselves time to cast a look at the affairs of Decan.

Moosher-Bussy commanded the body of French that had taken service with Hedaïet-muhi-eddin-qhan-Muzaafer-djung, and had attached himself to Nizam-el-mulk's family. This Officer availed himself so well of the credit which his post gave him, that he became extremely powerful throughout the Decan. When he came to obtain the countries of Sicacol and Radj-benderi, &c, for his Djaghîr, his influence rose so high, that every affair passed through his hands, and he governed with an absolute sway(248), he was decorated with the surname of Seif-el-mulk,

The French  
grow power-  
ful in Decan

(248) If any one has seen M de Bussy, and Colonel Clive, or Governor Hastings, in the height of their power and influence, he may have taken from those two or three individuals a pretty good idea of the different geniuses of the French and English nations. M de Bussy always wore (in 1750 and 1755) embroidered clothes or brocade, with an embroidered hat, and, in days of ceremony, embroidered shoes of black velvet. He was seen in an immense tent, full sufficient for six hundred men of about thirty feet in elevation. At one end of this tent he sat on an arm-chair, embroidered with his King's arms, placed upon an elevation, which last was covered by a crimson carpet of embroidered velvet. At his right and left, but upon back chairs only, sat a dozen of his Officers, over against him, his French guard, on horse-back, and behind these, his Turkish guards. His table, always in plate, was served with three, often with four services. To this French



or "Sword of the State," and the title of Umdnt el mulk, or the "Greatest of the Kingdom" This General had given so great a sway in all his affairs, public or private, to Hâider djung, a nobleman of those countries, that the latter came in fact to govern the six Soohahdaries of Decan. But the English struck with this flow of prosperity amongst the French, resolved to come in for a share of the good things and conquests of India and with that view they joined Mahmed aaly-qhan, son to Anvar eddin qhan of Gopa ma8, under whose name they possessed themselves of some Districts of the Province of Arcat. M8sher Bussÿ, meanwhile taking umbrage at Roc8n ed-döwlah's administration, got him dismissed from his office of Prime Minister, which he obtained for Shah nevar-qhan, a nobleman with whom he had connections. This Minister, in the four years which his administration lasted, governed with so much vigour and prudence that the Marhattas never thought of quitting their frontiers. It is he that drew from inaction and obscurity the two Princes, Mir Nizam-aaly and Mir Mahammed sherrif, yonger brothers to Selahet djung, two young men who hitherto had both lived in their elder's Palace. This was in the year 1169. Mir Nizam aaly (who now governs the Decan as Sovereign) was decorated with the surname of the second Asef-dja and sent to govern the Barar and Mir Mushref after having been successively decorated with the titles of Shudjah el mulk, and Burhan-el mulk, or the

---

magnificence, he added all the parade and pageant of Hindoostany manners and customs: a numerous set of tents: a plah-qhana always on elephant himself, as were all his Officers. He was preceded by chopdars on horse-back, and by a set of musicians singing his feats of chivalry with always two head-chopdars reciting his eulogium. Colonel Clive always wore his regimentals in the field, was always on horse back and never rode in a palanquin: he had a plentiful table, but no ways delicate, and never more than two services. He used to march mostly at the head of the column with his Akd-dö-camps or was hunting at the right and left. He never wore silks, but in town. Governor Hastings always wore a plain coat of English broad-cloth and never anything like lace or embroidery. His whole retinue a dozen of horse-guards: he had two chopdars, always ready to pronounce his eulogium but, however without his ever so much as suspecting their talent, for full twelve years together, and he departed for Europe, without so much as knowing those men as orators. His throne, a plain chair of mahogany with plenty of such thrones in the hall: his table sometimes neglected; his diet sparing, and always abstemious: his address and deportment, very distant from pride and still more so, from familiarity.

"Valorous and Impetuous of the State," was sent to govern the Kingdom of Bidjapoor, and both brothers departed to their respective stations. But in the very next year the office of first Minister was taken from Shah-nevaz-qhan, and bestowed on Mir Mushref, who came from Bidjapoor to receive it. However he did not enjoy it, for his brother, Nizam-aaly, having marched to Aoreng-abad with a good army, requested his younger brother to take some repose, and assuming at the same time his office of Prime Minister, he became the centre of all affairs, and even changed his younger brother's title into that which had been formerly the title of their common father.

It was in this same year that Baladji-rao, the Marhatta, advanced upon the frontiers of Aoreng-abad, with intention to avail himself of the rising broils, so as to have a pretence for quarreling. But the conjunctures upon which he had reckoned had already ceased, and Nizam-aaly, having left his apparent Lord, Selabet-djung, to defend the city of Aoreng-abad, came out himself with his brother, Mir-mushref, and advanced upon Baladji-rao, whom he beat, as far as Sund-gur, which is at thirty cosses from Aoreng-abad, but there he thought proper to come to an accommodation in which he consented to give Baladji-rao throughout all Decan, a Djaghir of thirty-seven lacs of rupees. After this he returned to Aoreng-abad. But M8shur Bussy, who commanded an independent body of troops, having taken umbrage at this absolute authority assumed by Nizam-aaly, conceived the design of breaking his rising power (although in fact he only accelerated the ruin of Nizam-el-mulk's family), as he conceived that so long as Nizam-aaly should be at the head of so great a force, the influence of the French would become only a secondary object. By the means of some underhand management, conducted by Haider-djung, who, as we have said, was everything in his affairs, he debauched from Nizam-aaly's service his best Officers, and amongst others Hibrahim-qhan, the Gardi (249), an Officer of character, attached this longwhile

---

(249) Hibrahim-qhan-gardi was a very thin black man, much pitted with the small-pox, who had in times of yore ran with a stick in his hand before Mr de Bury's palenkin, Major of the place at Pondicherry. As he spoke a little Portuguese, the Major put him amongst the Sepahies whom he was raising, and whose language he could not understand. Hibrahim rose in time to be a Commedan, or Commandant, that is, to have a couple of thousand Sepahies, and a couple of hundred horses

to that young Prince, whom he served with a body of his own troops. He debauched in the same manner some other Commanders and troops which he took in his own service making good from his own treasury eight lacs of rupees, which were due to them by Nizam aaly upon their arrears. By such an artful management he reduced the young Prince to the condition of a bird which has lost its feathers. He at the same time laid hold of Shah nevaz qhan, and got him confined. Being now satisfied on those two important articles he conceived a third scheme, which was that of confining Nizam-aaly in the fortress of Golconda under pretence of carrying him to Haiderabad and giving him the Government of that Province which removal once effected, he conceived that he should remain master of the Government to all intents and purposes. This scheme was laid with great secrecy, but Nizam-aaly having by dint of penetration guessed the whole of its drift, he resolved to be beforehand with M8shur Bussy, by killing his Minister Haider djung. Having imparted his design to a few trusty persons he fixed on the third of Ramazan, in the year 1171 for its execution. That very day Haider djung was coming to Nizam aaly's quarters for some business and having observed some movements that did not please him, he wanted to go back, when he was set upon instantly and had his throat cut in a moment. Nizam-aaly after striking such a blow, threw himself upon a horse, and fairly made his escape, the whole French army with their artillery, in order of battle, standing astonished and dismayed as if they had been an army of statues and pictures set upright in a plain. This was a daring intrepid action that equalled any thing done by Rustem or Ispent yar (250) and where it seemed that

troubled in  
Decan and  
aring action  
f Nizam  
aly's.

---

under his command. He soon became independent of his benefactors, as did in time all the commandants in the French service, who allowed them such a number of horse and foot under their command as rendered them proud. The French are the first who raised Sepahies in India that is, who gave muskets and bayonets to the country musketeers but whoever should conclude from the name that they were anything comparable to the English Sepahies of our days would commit an enormous mistake. The French could neither change their dress or cloth them uniformly or keep their arms in order or punish them, or prevent their firing away their ammunition at the new moon or pay them themselves, or bring them under the least restraint or discipline. They were a rabble with immense turbans and immense trousers with muskets so ill used, that not one in twenty was in order.

(250) Two famous heroes of the ancient Persian History — See the *Shanamah*, an Heroic Persian Poem of sixty thousand disticks

Mooshur-Bussy and all his Officers were out of their senses. In this confusion some of Haider djung's people ran to Shah-nevaz-qhan, and his son, Mir Abdol-nebi-qhan, and put them both to death, together with another nobleman of consequence, called Amin-ed-dowlah. The tumult being over, Selabet djung, Mir Mushref, and Mooshur-Bussy, returned to Haider-abad. As to Nizam-aaly, he took to the road of BSRhanp8r, found means to regain his old servant, Hibrabim-qhan-gardi, and after that action, he marched with him in that city, where they put under contribution the rich men of the country, and amongst others Mahmed-anvar-qhan, the BSRhan-p8rian. This nobleman had acted as mediator in the treaty which had once taken place between the Marhatta General, Saneradj-malliar, and the Viceroy, Hossein-aaly-qhan; by which the latter had consented to pay the Marhattas, a Cho8t, or a tribute. This nobleman incensed to find himself so tormented for money, said farewell to his own existence, and was buried in the Garden of Shah-yssa, *alias* Djund-allah. These contributions having put it in Nizam-aaly's power to raise a good body of troops, he marched from BSRhanp8r, and took up his quarters at Bassem, a principal town of the dependencies of Barar. There he had many disputes and several engagements with the Mucasdhar, or Marhatta Governor of that Province, who was Djano dji, son to Ragho-dji-bhosselah, with whom he at last concluded an agreement. After this he marched to Haider-abad, where great disputes and dissensions arose between the three brothers. At last it was agreed that Selabet-djung and Nizam-aaly should remain and live together, but that Mir Mushref should immediately proceed to his Government of Bidjapoor.

Whilst the brothers were disputing amongst themselves, Seda-shi8, a relation of the Marhatta Baladji-rao, intrigued so well with the Governor of Ahmed-nagur, that this fortress, once the Capital of the Kings of Nizam-shah's family,—that fortress which had cost so much time and trouble to Abdol-rahim-qhan, the General of the Imperial Prince Soltan-danial, and which since Soltan-acbar-shah's reign, had always been in the possession of its particular Governors, was surrendered in a day, and became annexed to the Marhatta Empire. This city and fortress had been built in the year nine hundred by Ahmed-nizam-shah, King of Bidjapoor, who gave it his own name. He

The Marhattas extort fortresses and territories from Nizam-aaly.

built the city in two years, and it afforded a fine prospect. Two years after, having found a proper opportunity, he built the fortress, likewise, making up the walls with clay and stone, and it continued in the hands of his successors, when in the year 1090 it fell in the hands of the Emperors of the House of Bahr in whose power it remained until it passed to the Marhatta Empire, in the year 1173

It was about this time that broils having arisen between the English and French the latter abandoned Selahet djung's service, and returned to the centre of their dominions P8lcherry From that moment Selahet-djung's preponderance seemed to verge to its ruin, and his national enemies having conceived high flown designs, they aimed not only at reducing his person to nothing but likewise at snatching from Nizam el mulk's family all the dominions of Decan They even engaged Hibrahim qhan gardi to take service with them, a man from the dregs of the people, who having served for a length of time under the French and learned their way of managing their cannon and musketry was actually at the head of a body of such musketeers, and such an artillery of his own, that made him courted by all parties. He was now gone to P8nah in company with Seda sy8 but it was not for any length of time. The twenty second of the month of Djemady in the same year he came out of P8nah in conjunction with the Marhatta army which encountered the two brothers, Selahet-djung and Nizam-aaly, in the territory of 8dghir Unfortunately for them they had but seven thousand horse with them at that moment having parted from their main some hours ago The Marhattas had sixty thousand cavalry The two brothers wanted to march forwards in order to effect a junction with those of their troops that had remained at Dehaver but this was opposed by the Marhattas who, although they have no other way of fighting than that of repeated skirmishes and no other industry than that of distressing the enemy for want of forage victual, water and other necessaries, nevertheless availed themselves of so marked a superiority on their side and made nothing of engaging nearer, and of coming to hand blows with their long swords and short spears So that the Hindoostanies had no other resource, but that of marching slowly in a body surrounded by their cannon But even this resource failed

them Their artillery was heavy and unmanageable, whereas the Marhattas had now in the Sepahies of Hıbrahim-qhan a body of musketry always ready to oppose the enemy's march, and in his cannon, which was much lighter and better mounted, an expeditious artillery, which advanced and wheeled round just as the managers pleased The two brothers laboured likewise under a further disadvantage As their troops marched in a body together, the enemy's cannon never failed to send amongst them some balls that always did some havock, whereas the Marhattas marching in small dispersed troops, were seldom struck by any cannon, or if struck, received but little damage, and when upon a halt they were attacked by the Hindoostanies, they always found in the quickness of Hıbrahim-gardie's fire, a sure resource for repelling the enemy In consequence of all these disadvantages the two brothers lost in their retreat a number of men. Nevertheless, the sixth day of march, they found an opportunity of coming to hand-blows with the enemy, especially with Hıbrahim-qhan's people, and falling amongst them, sword in hand, they made a great slaughter, and took eleven colours from the latter, and in this manner they continued their march, as far as the Fortress of Haosah, which is only at ten cosses from Dehaver. The Marhattas conceiving that, if once a junction was effected between the two brothers, they would prove an undermatch, resolved to make a last effort to prevent it With forty-thousand horse they attacked Selabet-djung's van, which consisted of no more than three thousand, and after a sharp action, they destroyed it totally This check, by humbling the family of Nizam-el-mulk, prepared its ruin, and the two brothers, finding that a junction was impossible, thought only of an accommodation, and it was concluded in such terms as proved only the seed of future mischiefs and disputes The Marhattas by this peace obtained, under the name of Djaghır, the cession of a country of sixty lacs a year It consisted of the territory of Aorengabad, (that city excepted,) and the Districts of Houly, Hursool, and Setrah The remainder was made up with the Provinces of Beder and Bidjapoor, as well as with the Fortresses of Do8letabad, Assır, and Bidjapoor, places of consequence, that had been anciently the Capitals of so many powerful Kingdoms, and had cost so much blood and treasure, These latter lands served

for demesnes to the two brothers, and had hitherto afforded appanages and a plentiful subsistence to a number of mansobdars, and Officers, and noblemen of high rank, who being now deprived of such a certain livelihood, were reduced as low as their Sovereigns and Lords, the Prince of Princes of the house of Nizam el mulk. Nor did anything remain to this family, but the Province of Haider-abad, with some Districts of that of Barar and Bidjap8r, and a small portion of that of Beder and even this did not remain to them without being saddled with a ch8st (251), a slight tribute imposed by the victors, which did not amount to a quarter of the real revenue but which they never fail to improve and to nurse up as soon as they have committed the young plant to the ground. Nevertheless, in spite of so many disgraces the project of the enemies of that illustrious family did not take place, and it continued to enjoy dominion and sovereignty in Decan. But as we have just been mentioning the name of the three fortresses, as having been the Capitals of so many powerful Kingdoms, we imagine that some account of them may prove acceptable to our readers.

Ram de8 Radja of D88let-abad, then called D88gar, having been vanquished by Soltan alā eddin qhildjl redeemed his life by presenting that Prince with an immense sum of money (252), and with a variety of costly presents and curious stuffs. It was in the year six hundred and ninety five of the Hedjah. But in the year seven hundred and seven, the Radja having been again vanquished and subdued by Meleek Caf8r, an Haheshinian slave which the conqueror had left in those parts as his Nalb or Depnty, the Gentoo Prince thought proper to follow him to Delhi where he was kindly received by Soltan alā eddin-qhildjl, who

---

(251) One-quarter of the revenue of the country

(252) There is an Indian Proverb that runs in these words:—*This is a Radjah's house are you afraid of wanting for Pearls?*

India in fact is the sink of all the treasures of the world, and so early as the times of the Romans it received two millions sterling a year from them and it has continued ever since to swallow all the silver and gold of the world; but all those treasures are buried in the ground. Its several Princes sometimes at peace for several generations together and living meanwhile like so many hermits, had no opportunities of spending their revenues, and they therefore kept them in boards and chests such as those found by Soolta mahm8d-Seb8k teghin the first Mussalman conqueror that penetrated into India hoards that would be past belief were

Nizam ally  
overcome by  
the Marhatta,  
parts with as  
large territory

honoured him with a sun-screen, or umbrella (253), and the title of Ray-ryan, or Counsellor of Counsellors, after which he returned satisfied to Do8let-abad, his Capital, and from that moment he never thought of revolting against him, or of disputing the orders sent him from Court. After his death, he was succeeded by his son, but the Deputy Governor, Melec caf8r, who did not live upon such good terms with the son as he had done with the father, continued to make conquests on the young Prince, and to deprive him of more territories, as far as the Carnatic. He even sent complaints against him to Court, and obtained leave to strip him intirely of his dominions, and to annex them to the Empire of the Qhlidji Emperors (254). The Deputy Governor having obtained this consent, in the year seven hundred and eleven, marched to De8gur, seized on the Gentoo Prince, put him to death, and took possession of that fortress, which from that day has remained in the hands of the Emperors of Hindostan. But the Empire having passed, some centuries after, from the Patans of the tribe of Qhlidji to the Moghuls of the House of Timur, the Emperor Shah-djehan, one of the most victorious of Princes which this last family has ever produced, sent one of his Generals, who bore the title of "Lord of Lords," with orders to recover the fortress from the Kings of Decan, who were then the descendants of Nizam-shah, and it remained from that time under the power of the House of Timur, being governed by a succession of Governors, independent of the Viceroys of the province. Under the Hindoo Princes it had not that deep fossé it has now, nor was it surrounded by a third enclosure, as it is in our days, nor was it so strong as the Mussulman Princes have since made it, and it is Sultan-mahmed, son to Toghlyc-shah, who changed its name into that of Do8let-abad. He surrounded

---

not the assertion corroborated by those immense riches found by Alexander in several parts of the Persian dominions, and lately by Haïder-aaly-qhan, in Syring-patam, that Capital of only a small Kingdom

(253) We have observed, at the ceremony of Ahmed-shah's inauguration, that the umbrella is an insignia of Sovereignty

(254) The Qhlidjies as well as the Lo8dies, were particular races of the Patans that were settled in Hindostan long before Timur's arrival, nor were those Patans any others than the Siah-poshes (the man in blue), that gave him so much trouble in the mountains north of India, nor were those Patans anything else but the Afghans of our days



it with a wall of squared stone, adorned it with noble buildings, and he even had a mind to make it his residence and the Capital of his dominions. For that purpose he unpeopled part of Delhi, and transported its inhabitants to D88let-adad, but his scheme, did not prosper. It is computed that this fortress fell into the hands of the Marhattas, four hundred and sixty years after that period.

Some accounts of  
Bidjapoor

As to the Fortress of Bidjapoor, it has been built by Y88f adel shah, founder of a family of Kings who always bore the same name. It was at first raised with mud, but in the year 900, he surrounded it with a wall of stone and mortar, and left it to his descendants, in whose hands it continued until it was taken from Sekander adel shah, the last of that family, by the victorious arms of Aoreng zib, in the year 1097. It fell in the hands of the Marhattas about two hundred and sixty seven years after its building. The Governor surrendered it without saying a word, but S8yd Nedjef aaly qhan Governor of the Fortress of Assir, who received a like order from Selabet djung refused to surrender his fortress and he supported a siege of a whole year, when being reduced to extremity for want of victuals he surrendered it to the Marhattas upon terms. It was on the 12th of the second Rehy, in the year 1174.

This Fortress of Assir is one of those built by Assa-ahir, who gave it his own name, which word in process of time, has been curtailed by the suppression of three letters, into that of Assir. His name was really Assa, to which in compliance with the custom of India, they added that of his clan which was that of Ahir, a tribe that employ themselves solely on dairy business and in attending black cattle. This Assa was a Zemindar of an illustrious family of Qhandess, which had dwelt on that mountain as well as commanded in that District for seven hundred years together, and they had raised a fort of rough stone and mud to secure their herds and their riches. It came to Assa in that condition. But as he was much richer and much more powerful than his predecessors, he threw down the old walls, and raised a regular fortification of stone and lime which became very strong was conspicuous from afar and came at last to be called by the name of Assa ahir's Fortress. It was snatched from his hands by Nassir qhan farooky, who in the year eight hundred

and one assumed the Crown, and set up a new Monarchy in the Province of Qhandess, where he commanded as Governor. But this fortress being nearly impregnable by open force, he made use of the following stratagem. He sent word to Assa to request his giving an asylum to his children, consorts, and family, as the Radja of Buglana, and the Radja of Antoor had joined together, and were coming upon him (Nassyr-qhan) at the head of a great army, two Princes whom he would readily encounter, as soon as his mind should be easy with respect to his family. The Gentoo consented, and gave orders at the gate accordingly. The day appointed, a number of covered chairs entered the fort. They were full of Nassyr-qhan's women, who had orders to treat Assa's women with the utmost civility, and with many presents, whenever they should come to pay them a visit. They came in fact, and returned to their homes, perfectly satisfied with their guests. The next day, an equal number of covered chairs came in, and were admitted, but they contained two hundred of the bravest men of Nassyr-qhan's army. The Radja hearing that these only were the Governor's consorts and daughters, whereas the former were but his concubines, got up from his Palace, with his children, and went forward to welcome the new comers, and to introduce them to their new lodgings, and he was returning home, after having fulfilled that office, when the men in the mahafas, having assembled together, fell upon him, and put him to the sword, with his children and retinue. The rest of the garrison, frightened by this execution, asked for quarter, and were permitted to retire out of the fortress. Nassyr-qhan, informed of this, hastened thither with a body of troops with which he put a garrison into it, and it has remained since that day in the possession of his descendants, until the reign of Sultan-Acbar-shah, Emperor of Hindostan, when in the year 1009, it was taken from the last of them, Bahadyr, son to Radja-aaly-qhan, and entrusted successively to a number of Governors, independent of the Province. It was computed that about four hundred and sixty years had elapsed betwixt Nassyr-qhan, and the surrendering of this fortress to the Marhattas. It was in this same year, 1174, that the English having taken from the French the Fortress and Port of P8lcherry, after a long siege, ruined from the foundation both its fortifications and buildings. By a

War between the French and English, which last took P8lcherry,

consequence of the same event the Provinces of Siracol, Radj bendery, and some others that had been given In Djaghir to the French and which it was thought would never be recovered from their hands, fell down of themselves at this time and returned to their former owners

But this event considerable as it was proved of small consequence, when compared to those that had at the same time taken place in the Capital We have already said something of Nedjib-qhan the Rohillah, who was a man of genius and valor and we have mentioned that having been, on account of the high character he bore invited over by the Vezir Umad el mulk, whilst he was waging war with Ah8l mans8r-qhan he came soon to be greatly esteemed, so as to rise to the highest influence and dignities and it was out of regard to that high character of his, still more than for his being an Afghan and a countryman that the Abdaly Monarch had thought proper to recommend him to the high dignity of ' Prince of Princes ' Whilst this high dignity was bestowing at Delhi, the Vezir Umad-el mulk was waiting at Feroh-abad the issue of the Ahdall king's expedition but he so soon heard that he was returned to Candahar than thinking his honour concerned in not falling short of that Monarch he bestowed that high office on Ahmed-qhan bangash just as the Mooarch had bestowed it on Nedjib-qhan After that he returned to Shah djehan abad In his way thither he effected a junction with Ragonat rāo a relation of Baladji rāo s as well as with the Marhatta General Malhar holcar and marched to that Capital which he took and having besieged the Citadel nothing was seen for forty five days together but cannon balls and rockets and both the Emperor Alemghir and Nedjib-ed dōwlah *alias* Nedjib-qhan his Minister, were going to fall in his hands when the latter sent a mighty bribe to Malhar, who from that moment assumed the character of mediator and proposed an accommodation Meanwhile having brought Nedjib-ed dōwlah from the Citadel with both his family furniture and effects he lodged him close to his own quarters After which he conveyed him to his own country which is on the other side of the Djumna, and consists of the Districts of Sobarenpoor, Chand poor the whole territory of Barr and some other lands like Bopdya, and Nedinn After this departure, Umad el mulk, who

styled himself the Vezir, took possession of the administration of what was still called the Empire, placed his own creatures in it, and remained the sole disposer of affairs. But long before the Vezir's arrival at the Capital, his intentions were so far mistrusted by the Emperor Alemghir and his Minister, Nedjib-ed-dowlah, that they had thought proper to send the Imperial Prince out of town. This was Aaly-goher, who bore the same title with his father. They gave him in appanage the Districts of Hansi, Djudjar, Cher-radery, and some others that yet depended on the Qhalissa, and they recommended to his care, to seem busy only in settling the revenue of those Districts, and in bringing them into order, but meanwhile to take possession of as many more Districts as he could, in his right of presumptive heir of the Empire, and virtual owner of that whole country. They added, that he ought to employ those revenues in acquiring friends, raising a good army, and keeping himself in readiness to come to his father's assistance, whenever the Vezir Umad-el-mulk should return to the Capital, and avail himself of the two Imperial Princes in his power to excite troubles, and to give vent to his own mischievous disposition. Whilst Aaly-goher was preparing himself to go abroad, the Empress Zinet-mahal, second consort to the reigning Emperor, who on the decease of Aaly-goher's mother had conceived for him a motherly affection, willing to render him a farewell service, sent for my father, at the gate of the seraglio, with the Emperor's consent, and there she appeared veiled in his presence, and after having strongly recommended Aaly-goher's education as well as his person to his paternal care, she took the young Prince's hands and put them in my father's right hand. The young Prince, after this tender scene, went out, and took up his residence at the seat and garden of Tal-cat8rah, where he commenced assembling forces, most of the braves residing in the city making it a point to enlist under him. One of these was Mir-djaaser, the Hindostani, who had with him a number of men that bore a character both for bravery and fidelity. Ozm-aaly-qhan was another nobleman of the same family, with the late Hussein-aaly-qhan, and like him devoted to the service of an Imperial Prince, as we shall some day mention, if it pleases God. But as by this time the Vezir Umad-el-mulk had with the assistance

Umad el-mulk seizes on Delhi, and on the Emperor's person

Some account of Prince Aaly-goher, present reigning Emperor, under the title of Shah-alleem

of his Marhattas, made himself master of the Emperor's person he forced the latter to send an order of recall to the Shah zadah or Imperial Prince, and not satisfied with that he supported the letter by a General of his own, Sēif eddin aaly qhan, the Cashmirian, at the head of ten thousand horse and by a precise order to bring the Prince back by every means in his power—by persuasion, promises, intreaties, threats, and open force. The Prince, sensible of his helpless situation turned towards the Capital and he was setting out for it, when he was dissuaded by one of the Commanders that had come over with Holcar malhar to the Vezir's assistance, and had enabled him to drive away Nedjib ed dōwlah and to make himself master of the Emperor's person. This was Atel rāo, who although intending to follow the others into Decan was yet encamped in the territory of the Capital. This Commander meeting the Shah zadah in his return thither dissuaded him from going to the city, where he represented the many dangers to which he would infallibly be exposed from the Vezir's omnipotence, fears, and cruelty, and he proposed his rather continuing abroad, and taking possession of the territories round the Capital in which case he would serve the Prince with his person and troops. The latter who wanted no better and who augured well of such a proffer quitted the road he held and joining Atel rāo he crossed the Djumna, and took possession of some Districts in the neighbourhood. The Vezir bearing of such a change, sent a secret message to Atel rāo and under promise of a great present he wrought so great an alteration in his mind that the Marhatta commenced advising the Prince to return to the Capital and at the same time parted company with him. The Prince obliged to submit to circumstances returned to the city and took up his abode in Aaly merdao-qhan's Palace whatever instances the Vezir made for his residing within the Citadel. He had but a small number of friends with him and but a small number of troops, as all those of the latter description, who had dwellings in the city, had retired to their homes. The Vezir sensible of this, sent him a message requesting his being pleased to dismiss all his troops as the treasury could not afford to pay for them else, he advised that they should be sent to the Districts of the Prince's appanage as the only means to keep those Districts under

order, and as the only method to pay those people the arrears which they claimed. The Prince who saw the drift of the message, but had no choice left, picked up a small number, whom he desired to reside with him, and he sent the rest to the territories pointed out.

The Prince being disarmed by this manœuvre, the Vezir remained inactive for a fortnight, when one day, on pretence of going to visit Shah-nizam-eddin's Monument, he assembled vast number of armed men at his Palace gate, and at once sent ten or twelve thousand of them to Aaly-merdan-qhan's Palace, with orders to besiege it, and to confine the Shah-zadah's person. The troops having in a short time bored holes through the walls, penetrated within the outer courts, whilst others were getting upon the terraces, and began firing so briskly that they soon killed the greatest part of those who had shewed themselves from within. Mir-djafer-aaly and Ozm-aaly-qhan, who saw all this, and were ready armed, as well as the Prince, observed to him, "That it was better to make a fortie upon the enemy, and to fight them manfully, as the consequence would be either to perish bravely like men of honour and character, or to effect an escape. That in the first case, they would jump at once into eternity, with their heads encircled by the Tulip garlands of martyrdom, and in the second, they would get rid of their pursuers, and recover their liberty." The Prince consented. He had only a few men with him, but these were determined and resolute. Mounting their horses, they advanced to the back part of the house, where there was a certain breach in the wall which looked on the river, and falling unexpectedly upon the enemies, sabre in hand, they in a moment cut their passage through them, strewing the ground with their dead. The Prince slew two men with his own hands, and he behaved throughout the whole action with so much personal prowess and heroical conduct, that the Cahremans and Heroes of old times would have bit the finger of astonishment, had they been witness of his valiance. The enemies ashamed to see their prey ready to escape, crowded after them, and pursued hotly. In this extremity that intrepid troop used to turn about, rush upon their pursuers, put the foremost to flight, kill some of them, and then continue their route as before, and it was by such continual exertions that they cut their

His heroical  
retreat  
through a  
whole army

way towards Atel rāo, the Marhatta, who was encamped at Tila mahnōo. That General informed of what passed within sight of his encampment, came out with a body of cavalry, and having received the Prince with every mark of respect he brought him within his camp and as that Commander had been some time ago a strenuous adviser of the Prince's repairing to the Capital so as in fact to oblige him to return thither, and had moreover parted company with him, he now exerted himself in making an apology for being in some measure the cause of the Prince's danger. After that he did every thing in his power to sooth his mind he then pitched a number of tents for him and several more for his men with others apart for his wounded, of whom he took great care assisting with necessaries both these and the others. During that trying retreat the enemy pressed so hard, that every one saw that the Prince was going to fall in their hands or to be slain. In that critical moment that would have appalled a Rustem and a Sam (255) the illustrious Sēyd, Ozm aaly-qhan with that daring courage hereditary in his family and that heroic valour which came to him from the founder of his race Aaly the King of braves turned about to the Prince, and said Prince thou art destined to be one day a resource to an infinity of people and thy life is therefore more precious "to-day than ours. Run then forwards and gain some distance and I will undertake meanwhile to stop the enemy, until thou "shalt have distanced him." He said and with a daringness the more admirable, because of his youth he turned about and fell amongst the pursuers with such fury, that the sphere of heaven stopped short to look at so much prowess and when that young hero fell at last spent with the fatigue of the slaughter its eyes were seen to drop tears in great abundance (256). Atel rāo having seen his guests refreshed and recovered, made a return upon himself and reflected that his masters in Decan might find fault with him for so openly espousing the interests of Umād el mnlk's enemies. He therefore thought proper to afford no more a handle against himself, and he escorted the Prince as far as

---

(255) Two famous Heroes of the ancient Persian History

(256) It appears from a relation of that retreat by a different hand that those six Heroes, already spent with fatigue, and fainting with heat were suddenly refreshed by a slight shower of rain

Feroh-abad, a place different from Bangashe's Capital There he was received by M8ssa-qhan, the Ball8ch (257), Zemindar of that country, and son to Cam-car-qhan, who expressed great respect for the Prince's person, pitied his situation, and made him a present of three lacs of rupees Atel-rão having seen his Royal guest in a place of safety, took his leave, and returned The Prince quitting M8ssa-qhan's country, advanced by C8ndj-p8ra to Soharenp8r where he found Nedjib-ed-dowlah The latter entertained the Prince for eight months together, and neglected nothing of what could conduce to alleviate his sorrows, but a great Revolution having at that time taken place in Bengal, where Mir-djaaffer-qhan had possessed himself of that country by the assistance of the English, he advised the Prince to avail himself of that opportunity to shew his person in those regions, and to try whether he could not take possession of them By these insinuations he freed himself honorably from a guest that was likely to attract upon his person and country the whole weight of Umad-el-mullk's resentment Having, therefore, presented the Prince with as large a sum of money as he could afford, he took his leave The Prince having listened to that advice, left at Mehranp8r both my father and Munnir-ed-dowlah, with orders to assemble troops, and to prepare some artillery and ammunition, and taking his leave of them, he marched by Moorad-abad and Bereily with intention to repair to the country of A8d In his way thither he was entertained by Saad-ollah-qhan, son to Aaly-mahmed-qhan-Rohillah, who exerted in pleasing and assisting him It was the ninth of the first Djemady in the year 1171, when he arrived at Mohan, a town at seven cosses distance from Lucknow Shudjah-ed-dowlah informed of the Prince's circumstances and arrival, advanced to that town, paid him his obeisance, presented him with a Nuzur of one hundred and one Eshrefes (258), and behaved himself in everything with the utmost obsequiousness and respect, the moment after he supplicated the Prince to accept a small present from him It

The Imperial Prince, obliged to fly from his father's house, is received everywhere with respect

(257) The Ball8ches are a ferocious people, inhabiting the south-east parts of Persia, with the contiguous frontier of India They have spread in the latter country since Nadyr-shah's reign, and there is a quarter at Lucknow that bears their name

(258) The value of two Guineas each.



consisted in one lac of rupees in ready money, a table or qhoan covered with jewels, several such tables covered with precious stuffs, a set of tents, utensils for all kind of offices, and a quantity of arms. To these, he added two elephants with their covered and shaded Amharies, and a Taht revan or moving throne, with ten baggage-carts. The Prince having cast a glance at that offering of Shudjah ed dōwlah, invited him to a closet (259), where he remained two hours with him, after which he dismissed him, making him a present of the Turbant he wore with his own Serpitch and his own Paleky. From thence the Prince marched to Ilah-abad where having attached Mahmed cily qhan to his cause, they marched together to Azim-abad as we have mentioned at length in our account of the affairs of Bengal. Whether Shudjah ed dōwlah would have followed the Prince, is not clear but at any rate he had at that time much business of his own.

We have already mentioned that the Vezir Ab8l mans8r qhan, having got himself joined by a body of Marhattas had ruined the power of the Afghan Ahmed bangash and had given the country of Antervid *alias* the Dō abah to those people for the purpose of insuring their pay and arrears. The Marhattas having extended their ravages throughout that country had cast their eyes on the neighbouring province of A8d, and were biting the finger of regret for not having yet attacked and seized that fine region, as well as the rest of the Rohillah country. And they were yet brooding on their grief when Umad el mulk, who was personally incensed against Nedjib-ed-dōwlah, conceived the design of ruining him intirely but as in spite of the Abdalf king's countenance, he had found means to drive him from the office of Prince of Princes so he expected that without being apparently concerned in the matter himself he would as easily drive him from his principality by committing him with the Marhattas his intention being to serve Shudjah-ed-dōwlah in the same manner as soon as he had finished Nedjib-ed dōwlah. Such a scheme having been soon guessed at brought about an union of concerns between those two Princes, equally threatened

---

(259) The expression he made use of at that moment, and which has remained as etiquette ever after was that of Bhai-navvab, brother-Navvab brother Deputy or Lieutenant for the word Navvab is only the plural of the Arabic word Nalb although it is used in India as a singular

and here we must admire that Providence which overset that well concerted scheme by bringing friendship and union out of the chaos of aversion and mutual mistrust, and could render the Afghans, those inveterate enemies of Ab8l-mans8r-qhan and his family, so many faithful assisters, and so many zealous well-wishers of Shudjah-ed-dowlah's prosperity. It is true the latter had cultivated a friendship with Nedjib-ed-dowlah, and with the several Princes of Aaly-mahmed-Rohillah's family, but now the common hatred against the Vezir, Umad-el-mulk, and the common dread of an addition of power to the Marhattas, had drawn closer the bands of union between those Princes, so as to verify the famous sentence

“ Even an enemy will promote thine welfare, if it so pleases God ”

But now a general rumour had spread everywhere that Data-india, nephew to Djingo-dji, had in the first month of the year 1711 marched from Decan at the head of a powerful army, commanded by renowned Generals, and with a firm resolution to finish the conquest of Hindostan, and after having spent that year in strengthening his former conquest, he intended to invade the country of the Rohillalis, as well as the dominions of Shudjah-ed-dowlah. No wonder, therefore, if the latter joined their councils together, and prepared in concert for their common defence. The Marhatta General's scheme was to cross the Ganga at a certain ford in the winter season, and to fall at once upon the Rohilkund; after which he intended to proceed to the conquest of the A8d, and it was with an intent to favour such an invasion, that Umad-el-mulk, who was at the bottom of all this mighty scheme, and the real inciter of the Marhatta motions, had sent out from the Capital. Meanwhile the Marhatta General crossed the Djumnah, and fell at once upon Nedjib-ed-dowlah's country. This Prince unable to stand the contest in the field, retired to Sukartal, a difficult post on the Ganga, where the passage of that river may be easily defended, and where he intrenched himself, resolved to stand his ground to the last. The Marhatta General encamped close to him, and for four months together, which the rainy season lasted, no other thunder was heard but that of continual discharges of cannon, rockets, and musketry, and no other lightning seen but that of famished flaming sabres, and blood-thirsty spears, so that the earth seemed to hold a conversation with

The Marhattas set out with a firm resolution to conquer Hindostan.

Are jointly  
opposed by  
the Rohilla  
and by Shud-  
jah-ed-dowlah.

the heavens(260) Meanwhile the Rohillah Princes such as Hafyz rahmet qhan, and D8ndy qhan and Saad ollah-qhan took care to represent to Shudjah ed d8wlah, That the Marhattas "waited only for the end of the rainy season and the subsiding of the Ganga to cross that river at some ford and fall upon the Rohilcund which they would either subdue or ruin intirely in which case it was past doubt that they would turn their steps towards the country of A8d That such an event "must be prevented for that to defend a country, when the enemy is already at your doors, is not the business in question "remedy must be sent before the evil is arrived March then added they, "to our assistance, set out immediately and make haste to join us'

Those Insinuations could not fail to make a deep Impression on the mind of Shudjah ed d8wlah who felt how critical his situation was and he resolved to be beforehand with the enemy It was then the height of the rainy season and the roads, on account of the incessant rain and the swelling of all the rivulets and brooks, had become so mry as to be impassable Nevertheless he set out from Lucknow and advanced as far as Shababad, where he was stopped by the swelling of the Ganga, and the inundation of the country which had rendered it impossible to approach nearer to the camp at Sukartal, so as to effect a junction The Marhatta General hearing of Shudjah ed d8wlah's approach ordered one of his principal Commanders called Govind pandett to cross the Ganga with twenty thousand horse and foot, and to ruin the whole Rohilcund This Officer having advanced as high as T hac8r-d8ara(261) a spot that touches the foot of the northern mountains forded the Ganga at that place,

---

(260) The rainy season in India is a season of a great deal of thunder and lightning It begins in May and lasts four or five months, at which time the rain pours sometimes very heavily The quantity of rain that falls in Bengal may be ninety-two inches besides six inches dew which is twice as much as in Italy and four times as much as in England.

(261) T hac8r-d8ara signifies the Lord's Palace gate or temple and the title is also given to the temple of Jagannath or Jagrenat, all over Bengal and India Possibly it was here and the author's words afford a geographical presumption of the probability of this remark that mountain said to be cut in the form of a cow under which the Ganga is said to pass in order to enter the plains of Hindostan. Hardeva is the town close to that passage and the ford at that place is called T-chandy-gatt

and spread throughout the Rohilkund, where he burned thirteen hundred villages from Chandpoor down to Amr8a, after that, he fell upon Hafiz-rahmet, Doondy-qhan, and Saad-ollah-qhan, the Rohillah Princes, who were preparing to march to Nedjib-ed-dowlah's assistance, and put them to flight. The Afghans, surprised at the suddenness of the irruption, and incapable to withstand so great a force, retreated as far as the foot of the mountains of Cama8, where they intrenched themselves in a difficult post, but Shudjah-ed-dowlah no sooner heard of this disaster, than he decamped from his post on the beginning of the first Reby, in the year 1173, and marching with the utmost rapidity, he arrived at Chandpoor over against the place where Nedjib-ed-dowlah was intrenched. It was high time. The besieged Prince, finding himself abandoned by his countrymen who were fled amongst the fastnesses of the Cama8, had despaired of being freed from his forlorn situation, and as he had already despaired of his life, he thought only how to sell it to the highest bidder, when his spirits were recruited at once by Shudjah-ed-dowlah's approach. The latter had already discovered some of the runners of the Marhatta army, but nothing more had happened, as he advanced to Holavah, which is at five cosses farther than Chandpoor. There he heard that some of his sutlers had been set upon and plundered by the enemy. On the first intelligence of this, he detached the two Commanders that were then at hand, with orders to chastise the Marhattas. These were An8b-ghir-ghossain, and Amra8-ghir-ghossain, two Fakirs in his service, both of great character. After their departure, he got them followed by Mirza-nedjef-qhan, at the head of five thousand horse, and by Mir Bakyr-qhan-temeni, with four thousand more, all Moghuls. All these had orders to leave the plunderers to their own works, and to push for Govind-pandett's head-quarters. These Officers, all eager for action, commenced by skirmishing, and the engagement growing warmer, they strewed the ground with Marhatta bodies. An8b-ghir the Ghossain made a great massacre amongst them, and took a hundred prisoners, and a vast booty in horses and cattle. The Marhatta General finding himself so severely handed fled from the field of battle, and with all the difficulties imaginable he found his way again to the ford, where he had sometime ago crossed the Ganga. But his confusion and that of his

followers was so great, that he mistook the part, and lost vast numbers of his people who were swallowed up by the Ganga that insatiable crocodile of the sweet flood. The next morning, Shudjah ed dōwlah, after having ordered his music to play in token of victory, marched forward, and the report of it having spread everywhere reached also the Afghans who had been hitherto lurking in the hrambles at the foot of the Camāṣ. It made them move from their holes, and join Shudjah-ed dōwla. The two armies after this junction marched on to Sakar tal, where Nedjib-ed-dōwlah was besieged, and they delivered him from the miseries he was undergoing. Nevertheless the Afghans intimidated by the power of the Marhattas thought proper to send proposals for an accommodation both to Data sindia and to Djungo. These two Generals on the other hand, who had heard of the Abdali Monarch's coming and thought of providing for their own safety by advancing as far as Lahor to stop the enemy in Pendjab, were glad to hear the proposals. Data sindia signed an agreement which was sworn to on both sides after which he withdrew his troops and advanced towards Lahor. Shudjah ed-dōwlah on his side returned to Lucknow where he made his entry the twenty ninth of the first Djemady in the year 1173.

Whilst Sindiah was besieging Nedjib-ed-dōwlah at Shukar / tal, by the Vezir Umad-el mulk's instigation, he wrote to the latter to come to his assistance. *That wicked man* encumbered on one hand by an Emperor whom he knew to be a well wisher to Nedjib-ed dōwlah and to hold a correspondence with the Abdali king, and on the other by an uncle whom he mistrusted full as much although he actually kept him in confinement, took his party without any scruple. He resolved first of all to make himself easy on those two accounts and then only to depart and first he ordered Intyzam ed dōwlah, his uncle to be put to death, and three days after he provided also for the Emperor. Having properly tutored Mehdy ally qhan the Cashmirian he sent him to that Prince. That artful man went, and turned so well the Emperor's mind that he engaged him to go out and pay a visit to a certain Fakyr of uncommon sanctity and character who performed miracles and was said to be lately landed at Firoz shah's Mausoleum. That unhectic Prince, entrapped by the diabolical suggestions and artifices of that infernal man,

took it into his head to pay incognito a visit to so extraordinary a personage. Being arrived at the spot, he was shewn a door before which hung a curtain. But he had a sword in his hand (262). The Cashmirian having taken it with one hand, lifted up the curtain with the other, and the Emperor entered the room, which the Cashmirian immediately shut up, by making the door fast from without, and then dropped the curtain. Yzzeddin's son, Mirza-babr, who was also son-in-law to the Emperor, no sooner saw these strange motions, than he drew his sabre, and wounded one or two men. But he was instantly overpowered and seized, and being put into a covered Paleky, he was sent to the apartment where the Princes of the blood are usually kept confined (263). Meanwhile the four men concealed within the room, fell upon the defenceless Emperor with their poniards, and having dispatched him in an instant, they threw his body out, and left it stretched upon the strand of the Djumna. There he was soon stripped of his clothes, save only his drawers, in which condition he remained eighteen hours. After which time the Cashmirian above sent some people, who took up the body and carried it to the Emperor H8mayon's Mausoleum, where they committed it to the earth.

Whilst that mournful tragedy was acting at one part of the Palace, another very different scene was passing on the other. That very day Muhi-el-senna, son to Cam-bash, and grandson to Aoreng-zib, was raised to the throne under the title of Shah-djehan, or "Emperor of the world," and the Vezir after these executions left the Cashmirian to watch over the new Prince, and marched against Nedjib-ed-dowlah, actually besieged at Sukartal. On his way thither, he learned that a peace had been concluded to the satisfaction of both parties, and being informed at the same time that the Abdali-king was advancing by long marches, he thought proper to secure his person by getting out of his way, and taking shelter in S8r8dj-mull's country, he resolved

---

(262) This sword, which is longer and twice as broad as the common small swords of Europe, is always in a velvet scabbard, and held upright by the hilt, as a walking cane. It has been a mark of Sovereign power, and is still an insigne of authority, always used by persons constituted in high offices.

(263) Selimgur-Castle,—a fortification which communicates with the Citadel of Delhi by a gate, so as to be a continuation of it.

to wait there the event of the quarrel between the Abdalles and the Marhattas, and to see what new revolution it might bring about. Anxious about the event, he retired within one of the strongest of S8r8dy mull's fortresses

We have heretofore mentioned that the Abdall king after having plundered Delhi, and put every thing to the sword at Mahtra had marched back in the year 1170 and returned to Cab8l and Candahar his Capital leaving his son Timur shah in the Government of M8ltan and Lahor, with the General Djehan qhan for his adviser. The latter sensible of his own inexperience in Government and revenue matters and convinced how much Adina beg-qhan must be skilled in those subjects, and of how much local knowledge he must be possessed resolved to avail himself of that man's abilities and he wrote him several civil letters endeavouring to sooth his mind at last he sent him to the patent as well as the Qhylaat of the province of Do abah. Adina beg qhan, softened by this distinction, soon brought the province to a proper order and the Prince and General convinced now of his abilities invited him over to Lahor where they intended to avail themselves of his experience. But this invitation was not relished by the other. He mistrusted their proffers and had objections to their neighbourhood so that he retired again towards the mountains. And Djehan qhan hearing of this desertion, appointed M8rad qhan to command in the Do abah directing B8lend-qhan and Ser-efraz qhan two general Officers to support him with a body of troops. Adina beg qhan opposed the Syks to this new power a set of men that had already grown numerous and powerful in the times of the late Mir mann8 but who had since greatly benefitted by the lessons and the protection they had been for a long time receiving from their tutor Adina beg qhan. Incited by his exortations those Fakirs or Mendicants became soldiers took up arms and being joined by a body of Adina beg qhan's troops they fell upon M8rad qhan and gave him a battle in which B8lend-qhan being slain and M8rad qhan with Ser-efraz-qhan defeated these two Generals fled to Lahor and reported their case to Djehan qhan. After this flight the Syks ruined and desolated the whole Province of the D8-abah, chiefly at the instigation of Adina beg-qhan. At this very time there was encamped in the territory of Shah djehan-abad a large

army of Marhattas, under the command of Ragonat-rao, and Shumshir-bahadyr, (two brothers of Baladji-rao) as well as under that of Holar-malhar, and some other Commanders of character. All these tired of a camp life, and panting for action, waited with impatience for some occasion to signalize themselves, when they received several letters from Adina-beg-qhan, which requested their coming to his assistance. The Marhattas who always wish for action, and are always upon the watch for such opportunities, and always upon the move, marched immediately to Lahor. Meeting by the way Abd8l-semed-qhan, a General appointed by the Abdalis to the command of Ser-hend, they gave him a bloody defeat, and took him prisoner. From thence they advanced so rapidly to Lahor, that in a few days their runners met those of Djehan-qhan's and had some skirmishes together. It was in Shaaban, 1171 of the Hedjrah Djehan qhan observing that the small number of his troops would be overpowered in a campaign by such skirmishers as the Marhattas, thought proper to retreat and to evacuate the country. He took the young Prince Timur-shah with him, and advancing by long and continual marches, he arrived on the banks of the Atuc (264), which he immediately crossed, leaving behind those treasures, and that furniture and artillery that had been amassing for ages together. The Marhattas pursued him as far as the river Chulum, and then returned, extending meanwhile their conquests and jurisdiction all over M8ltan, as far as Ghazi-qhan's valley, and as far as the rivers Chennar and Pehn. But as the rainy season was approaching, they appointed Adina-beg-qhan Governor-General of the country, under a yearly tribute of seventy-five lacs, clear of all charges, and then returned towards Shah-djehan-abad. From thence, after a short stay, both Ragonat-rao and Shumshir-bahadyr marched on towards the Decan, but Djing8 was left in the neighbourhood of Delhi, with orders to subdue the several Radjas of Adjmir. The whole scheme seemed well arranged, but by one of those unexpected dispensations of Providence, Adina-beg-qhan departed his life some months after, at the beginning of the year 1172, when Djingo conferred the Government of Ser-hend on Sadye-beg-qhan, who had been one of the trustiest men in the deceased Governor's service, and that of the Doabah on

Which enabled the Marhattas to extend their conquest as far as Lahor.

---

(264) Indus Look at the Note 82, Section I



that Governor's widow, appointing at the same time a Marhatta called Saba, to the supreme Government of Lahor, which the new Commandant took care to extend by fresh conquests as far as the shores of the great river Atuc. Meanwhile Nedjib ed dōwla, as well as all the Rohilla Princes, intimidated by these continual progress of the Marhattas, concluded that their own persons and dominions must one day in the course of things be necessarily swallowed up by that overbearing power which was constantly supported by the Vezir Umed-el mulk's influence and intrigues. They therefore renewed their supplications to the King of the Durrannies, and besought him to march forth to their assistance. That Prince already shocked to see how little ceremony the Marhattas had made with his son Timur shah and with his Governor, Djehan qhan and incensed besides at the ingratitude of Umed el mulk and at the perpetual cruelties he exercised everywhere resolved to comply with the request. Convinced, therefore that his arrival was ardently expected in Hindostan he displayed his victorious standards and turned them towards that country.

But bring  
on their backs  
the ferocious  
Abdallies with  
their victori-  
ous King

That Prince setting out from Candahar, crossed the river Atuc in the beginning of the year 1173 and his vanguard meeting with Saba's vanguard an engagement ensued, in which the Marhattas being worsted, fled to Lahor. But that General hearing that the Abdallies were advancing by long marches and thinking his troops an undermatch to such men, he judged it expedient to decamp with his whole force and to retreat towards Delhi and his retreat was imitated by both Sadye beg-qhan himself, and by Adina beg qhan's widow who both thought proper to retire to the mountains. The Abdaly king meanwhile had taken his route by the mountains of Djambh where having received a noble present in money from the Radja of that country, he advanced towards Delhi and this was the sixth expedition he had made in Hindostan. This happened at the very time when Data sindlah was treating with Nedjib ed dōwlah and Shudjab-ed dōwlah about a peace and this was soon concluded. But the two parties could not yet trust each other, and were upon the move on both sides when news reached the Marhatta camp that the Abdallies after having subdued the country of Miltan and Lahor, were marching to Delhi.

are  
opposed by  
the Abdal-  
ling

At this intelligence Data-sindiah abandoned the negotiation with Shudja-ed-dowlah and that whole confideracy ; and turning his thoughts towards the Abdalies he advanced against them at the head of eighty thousand horse, all old troops As to Umad-el-mulk who had moved to Data-sindiah's assistance, he no sooner was informed of the Abdalies coming, than fearful of his being likely to be called to an account for his ingratitude and cruelties, as well as trembling for his own safety, he parted company with Data-sindiah, and took shelter in the hilly country of the Djattas, resolved not to move until the horizon should appear cleared The Radja shewed him the utmost regard, and assigned his residence in one of the best fortresses of his dominions

Meanwhile the Abdali was advancing with ardour from Lahor, but observing by the way that the country of Doabah had been so eaten up by the Marhattas in their many expeditions through it, that there remained neither grain nor forage for himself, he altered his route, and crossing the Djumnah, he marched into the Anterbid country, which we have already mentioned to be that tract of ground spreading betwixt the great rivers of Ganga and Djumnah And as these two rivers take their sources in the mountains of Cama8, in the north of India, and after having parted company, join again at Ilahabad, the Anterbid country of course commences at the foot of those mountains, and ends at the confluence of those two rivers On the King's crossing the Djumnah to march into the Anterbid, the Afghan Princes, Saad-olla-qhan, Ahmed-qhan-bangash, Nedjib-ed-dowlah, Hafyz-rahmet, and Dondi-qhan, whose dominions lie mostly betwixt those two rivers, joined together, and went in a body to pay their respects to that Monarch The latter ordered his vanguard to march by another road, and to fall upon Data sindiah's troops, who thinking he had to deal only with the runners of that army, commenced skirmishing, and went on in that manner, until he was pushed back by the Abdalies as far as the territory of Shah-djehan-abad, where they stopped at Badely, at which place the King having again recrossed the Djumnah, joined his vanguard, and immediately commanded a general attack A furious battle commenced Nothing but slaughter was to be seen, and Data-sindiah soon became sensible that after having often fought for victory, he

Battle of  
Badely, where  
the Abdali-  
king slays  
70,000 Mar-  
hattas in one  
battle.

was now in fight for his life. He drew nway his nephew, Djingo from that scene of destruction, and gave him a small escort, with orders to advance into Decan in all speed, and to inform the Ministry of Satara of the state of things. Meanwhile the engagement becoming so close as to render horses of no use, he alighted with the greatest part of his troops, and fought on foot. The Abdalis continued pressing on all sides and with their rockets and heavy muskets soon came to pour an intolerable fire upon those thronged multitudes and as they gave no quarter, the whole of that mighty army of Marhattas together with their General Data sindiah and every Commander, without exception perished in that bloody battle and the whole was devoured by the inflamed sabre. This battle was fought at Badely, in the second month Djemady, of the year 1173 a date which the Poet Mir ghulam aaly the Belgramite, has ingeniously conserved in these verses of his

The Durrani-king having given the whole Marhatta host  
For food to his inflamed devouring sabre,

"The Poet has thus conserved the chronogram of this date:

"The victory became the lot of the illustrious King

The whole Marhatta army having disappeared from the field of battle together with Data sindiah its General, the Durrani king sent people after Djingo, but the latter had, the very day of the battle marched fifteen cosses (265) and was arrived at Allah verdy's Sera quite spent from whence he the next day continued his route to Narni. Meanwhile intelligence came to the Abdali camp that the Marhatta, Holcar malhar, was at Sekenderab with an army. This General bearing of the destruction of their grand army marched with the utmost expedition into the strong country of S8r8dj mnl the Djatt, to whom he proposed to join him and to fight together the Durrani king. The Gentoo Prince answered that he would not undertake to oppose such troops as the Abdalis in the field but that if he was attacked he would retire to a fortress, and there defend himself in the best manner he could. It happened that the Afghan Princes who had come to the Durrani camp were then busy in carrying a convoy of treasure and grain to that army but bearing of the Marhattas being so near they had the prudence

to send back, and beyond the Ganga, as much of their convoy as they could with propriety. But the rest was overtaken by Holcar's troops, who soon took possession of it and plundered it thoroughly. The King surprised to hear of this boldness of the Marhattas, sent Shah Pesend-qhan and Shah Calende-qhan, two of his Generals, with a body of fifteen thousand horse to chastise Holcar-malhar. These two Abdalies marched with so much expedition, that in one day and night they measured seventy cosses (one hundred and sixty miles), and arrived in the evening at Delhi, where having refreshed themselves the whole next day, they crossed the Djumnah at the beginning of the night, and having marched twenty cosses more that night, they at day-break arrived at Sekenderah, where they fell at once upon Holkar-malhar. The latter had just time to throw himself, naked as he was, upon a mare, and to get away with about five hundred more in the same condition as himself. The rest, Officers and soldiers, without excepting a man, were put to the sword, and intirely exterminated, a few prisoners only excepted. Their whole camp, together with their late booty, fell into the hands of the victors.

Another bloody action, in which the Marhattas are destroyed.

Meanwhile the King, who had moved from his camp the very day he had detached his two Generals after the Marhattas, arrived at Shah-djehan-abad, and as the rainy season was at hand, and the territory of that Capital had been eaten up by the eternal inroads of those freebooters, he thought proper to cross the Djumnah, and to take up his winter quarters at Sekenderah, twenty cosses from Delhi, a position the more eligible, as Sekenderah is in the country of Anterbid, where most of the Afghan Princes had their dominions. From thence he detached Nedjib-ed-dowlah to Lucknow, with orders to persuade Shudjah-ed-dowlah to join the victorious army, and to pay him a visit, as he wished to see him. Shudjah-ed-dowlah, who had already that intention, advanced to meet him as far as Mehdyp8r, whilst Nedjib-ed-dowlah on his side marched from Atava to Cannodj. A treaty was concluded, proper assurances given, and Shudjah-ed-dowlah, having appointed his son, Mirza-amani, (now Assef-ed-dowlah) to act as his Deputy in his absence, put himself at the head of ten thousand horse, and marched to the Abdalie's camp, in company with Nedjib-ed-dowlah. It was at the end of

Shudjah  
waits on  
the Abdali  
Monarch—his  
bold answer  
to that Prince.

Zilcaadah, of the year 1173 As soon as he was near, Eshref el anvar, sornamed Shah-c8ly qhan(266), Vezir to the Abdaly klog, came out to meet him, and after a small pause, he carried him to visit the tent of audience The King having commanded his son, Tlm8r shah, to embrace the Indian Prince received him with the utmost favour and distinction(267) At the end of the visit Shudjah-ed dōwlah requested leave for his music and kettle drums to play in the Abdali's camp The King answered mildly that it was unprecedented and contrary to rules *It may be so for other music* replied Shudjah ed dōwlah *but mine is the gift of the Emperor of Hindostan and not of your Majesty's nor am I your subject but only your hearty well wisher* This bold answer had its effect The King consented and it became a custom for Shudjah ed dōwlah's music to strike up as soon as that of the King's had done playing

Whilst all this was happening in the Aoterbid the Court of Satara had received intelligence of Data sindiah's death and of the destruction of his whole army as well as of that of Holcar Never did a Ministry shew more firmness Withoot betraying the least dismay It was resolved to send another army, commad ed by Seda sy8 alias Bahā8 nephew to Baladjī rāo and by Djing8 himself This army was to be composed of picked men as was the former, and proved still more nomerous and it was likewise to be supported by a numerous artillery, mounted and served in the European manner under the command of Hibrahim qhan gardi The whole was to be under the orders of Vasvass rāo, Commander in Chief the intention being to revenge their former bloody defeat to recover the honour of the national character in the world, and to put an end to the Empire of the family of Babr by raising to the throne of Hindostan Vasvass rāo himself a Royal Prince of the Marhatta blood Seda sy8 having put himself at the head of that mighty host arrived after long marches and much vaunting in the Province of Acbar abad where S8r8dj mull thought proper to pay him a visit by Holcar

(266) The Ki g's soldier or slave—for the word C8lī Turkish admits both those significations although it rather incli es to the fir t.

(267) It is observable that Shudja-ed-dōwlah was not received as an equal for the Monarch would have been obliged to stand up and to embrace him; neither as a subject for there is no mention of any Narar being presented but as an independent Prince of inferior rank; and therefore he got him embraced by his son

malhar's mediation The Marhatta General, to do him more honour, marched out of his camp, and met him at one cosse distance, and the next day Umad-el-mulk himself joined him at Mahtra In a consultation held at that spot, it was resolved to render themselves masters of the Djumnah, by bringing Shah-djehan-abad in their power This article being settled, the Marhatta General marched immediately, and entered Shah-djehan-abad, at the end of the year 1173 Yac8b-aaly-qhan-behmenzi, a brother of Shah Vel-qhan, commanded in the Citadel with a small garrison of Abdalies The Marhattas informed of the smallness of that force, gave an escalade at the Assed Tower and the Qhyzri Gate, whilst they made a false attack on the opposite side at the Delhi Gate At both places a few Abdalies and Moghuls made their appearance, and killed many people with their large muskets The Marhatta General, who had taken his quarters in Saad-ollah qhan's Palace, commenced another attack from thence, under cover of the hall of audience, encouraged thereto by the scanty defence he could perceive at the wall, and the little artillery he observed at Selimgur Castle, from whence they now and then fired a large cannon in the air Animated by these appearances, the Marhattas advanced to the Qhyzri Gate, and were endeavouring to break it open, but in vain The gate was covered with sheets of brass, and set thick with iron nails that jutted out to the length of more than a foot(268), nor could they make any impression there in four hours time Meanwhile about five hundred men, finding not one man upon the Assed Tower, got upon the top of it, and being in this manner within the Citadel, they advanced to the Imperial Hall of Audience, from whence they carried whole bundles of booty which they threw down the wall to their friends below, without having once thought of setting the gate open from within, nor did the troops without mind anything of the matter, being intent only on receiving and securing the plunder Whilst these people were occupied in this manner, a dozen of Abdalies and Moghuls, coming out of

The Marhattas undismayed, send another mighty army into Hindostan, commanded by a young Prince of the blood.

---

(268) It must be observed that gates in India, being always covered by some work, cannot be broke but by a petard, a machine which the natives know nothing of or by pushing against them elephants barded with iron, or by setting fire to them Hence the propriety of those long nails, jutting out from a bottom of brass The nails are one inch square at the bottom

Selimgiur, fired upon those men that were plundering the Hall of Audience, many of whom they killed and falling upon the rest, sword in hand, they drove them out of the Palace. The Marhattas having taken fright, got upon the top of the tower again and jumping down had a great number of men maimed and wounded, but meanwhile they gave up a fortress in which they had fairly found entrance. The Marhatta Generals informed of this whole affair, surrounded the Citadel by an intrenchment, from whence they commenced firing on all that appeared upon the wall. As to Umad el mulk and S8r8dj mull who both had only conformed to the times in coming so far with the Marhattas they thought proper to remain inactive spectators of this siege. In this state of things Seda sy8 applied to Hibrabim-qhan gardi who had a European artillery, mounted and served in the European manner and whom he had brought from Decan for such sorts of services. Hibrabim qhan placed three pieces of cannon on the bank of the Djumnah and made such a brisk fire upon the buildlogs within the Citadel that in a little time he was found to have done much havoc in the pavilions on the Assed Tower and the Octagon Tower as well as on those parts of the Imperial Palace called Divan qhass Reng mahal Moti mahal (269) and Royal Tower. But the wall itself suffered no impression and the musket firing business went on as usual on both sides. The Governor finding that his ammunition was running short proposed to surrender the Citadel on condition of his having leave to march out with safety of life honour and baggage and this being accepted by the Marhatta Generals who wished no better the Governor came out with his little garrison and took up his quarters in Aaly merdan qhan's Palace where having rested awhile he crossed the Djumnah in boats and went to join his master. And thus the Imperial Citadel the residence of the Hindostanee Emperors, with the Imperial apartments and the whole of the Imperial Seraglio fell into the hands of the Marhatta Seda sy8. Such was the fate allotted to it by the All knowing Disposer of events! The General appointed Tar8 shingur a Brahman to command in that fortress and he gave him a sufficient garrison. This Brahman

The Marhattas take Delhi.

(269) Divan-qhass, Reng mahal Moti mahal.—The privy to hall of audience,—the painted apartment,—the pearl apartment.

had been sent several times to Shudjah-èd-dowlah, on the part of the Marhattas, with proposals of peace, and as often had been refused. This particular I was told of by the Poet Mirgh8lam-aaly, the Belgramite, who assured me that Shudjah-ed-dowlah at last answered the envoy in these terms *"That the Marhattas, and especially their Brahmans (270), having acquired so much power in Decan, had become overbearing, and withal so covetous, that they could not bear that any one but themselves should enjoy any character in the world, or a corner of land that might afford him a subsistence, that their faithlessness and eternal disregard to treaties, had tired the patience of mankind, and that the time was now coming to punish them for their eternal injustices, and their daily violations of the most sacred ties amongst mankind. That it was to save their honour, their families, and their subsistences, that the people of Hindostan had applied to the Abdaly-king for protection and assistance, and that the latter had come for that sole purpose, and in the full hope that to inflict a condign chastisement upon the Marhattas would prove but a small affair, to talk, therefore, of peace now to him looked quite preposterous"* The Marhattas, receiving no better answer, prepared for battle. They were at this time abandoned by their ally, S8r8dj-mull, the Djatt, who was shocked to see their shameless capacity, and remorseless impudence. He quitted their camp without leave and retired to his Fortress of Belem-gur. What had so much shocked the Djatt Prince was this — They had stripped the Imperial Hall of Audience of its wainscoting, which was of silver, elegantly enamelled, and had sent it to the Mint, and without any respect for things, held sacred by all mankind, they had laid their sacrilegious hands upon the gold and silver vessels consecrated to the use of the monument of the sacred foot, and of the mausoleum of Saint Nizam-eddin, nor did they spare Mahmed-shah's

Proposes an accommodation, which is refused in a very taunting answer

(270) This distinction made by Shujah-ed-dowlah was grounded on this particular that the original, but yet only the nominal Sovereign, of the Marhatta Empire is a Radjp8t that resides at Satara, and is styled the Sah8-radja, whereas the real, or if you will, the acting Emperor, who is of the Brahmanical or Sacredotal tribe, resides at P8nah, at two short days north-west of Satara, and is often styled his nana, or maternal uncle, although he goes in general by the name of his Pish-va, or Precursor, that is, his agent



mausoleom, which they stripped of its inocatory (271) candelabres lamps, and other utensils, all of solid gold, and of exquisite workmanship, all of which were torn away and sent to the Mint

After having done all this havoc the Marhatta General resolved to decamp. The Doh occupied by an army, did not afford him any prospect of subsistence and everything in the territory of the Capital was eaten up and consumed. He was urged doubtless by the necessity of assembling and enjoying all the merits of those pious and meritorious actions which he had performed in that unfortunate Capital by stripping it of its sacred ornaments and by plundering the nobility and people of what little they had saved from the hands of former ravagers. Resolved to quit that neighbourhood he deposed and confined that pageant of an Emperor, Shah djehan, and placed in his stead Mirza djuvan baqht (272) son to Aaly goher, the fugitive Prince who was then enduring distresses and waging war to Beogal. The Vezirship he conferred on Shudjah ed dowlah, plunging him self upon what he thought a piece of policy very likely to embroil the latter with the Abdali king. This done he confirmed Tarshungar in the Government of the Citadel and marched with his whole army to Candj pbra, where the two Zemiodars of that tract Abdol semed qhan the Abdali and Nedjabet qhan, the Rohillah were encamped with commission to provide convoys for the Abdali king's army. This Abdol semed qhan is the same who fell in the hands of the Marhattas when commanding at Ser hend and had found means to escape. he commanded then in the mud fort. It was in the second Rebi of the year 1174 Sedasy8 being arrived before that fort surrounded immediately. As his European artillery enabled him to do a great deal of execution in a little time Hibrabim qhan gardi soon made a breach and an assault being given both Abdol semed-qhan and C8t8b-qhan were slain and the place was thoroughly plundered.

(271) The text has the words Ood-dan a vessel for burning agalla wood, which last is a resinous wood, that sells for twice its weight in silver. It is observable that in the tomb and vault opened about the year 1766, by Captain Adams, at Gour that immense Capital of Bengal he found such another vessel at the foot of a Royal body perfectly well preserved for four hundred years, with two vessels for beetle or paon, and some arms and lamps, &c.

(272) These two words signify of a youthful fortune

and sacked. The Abdali-king hearing of this piece of cruelty done almost within his sight, was equally surprised and incensed ; an alteration was observed in his colour. Resolved to chastise the Marhattas, he decamped, and although the rainy season was not at an end, and the Djumnah did not yet afford any ford, nevertheless he marched, and under Shudjah-ed-dowlah's guidance he advanced to the passage of Baghsharet, which is close under the walls of Shah-djehan-abad , and advancing on horseback in the water, he was followed by his whole cavalry, some fording the river, and others swimming over. His numerous army took the hint, and found means to follow with all their baggage. Seda-sy8, surprised at his daringness, and at the quickness of the Abdalies, conceived that instead of fighting them at C8ndj-p8ra, as had been his intention, it would be better to reconnoitre for two or three days together, in order to encamp at a commodious post near to Panip8t. At this time he had no less than forty thousand effective horse, all old soldiers and picked men , but this was only the army under his own particular command, for there were three other armies, severally commanded by Holcar-malhar, Shmshir-bahadyr, and the Prince of the blood, Vasvass-rao, which last was also the Commander-in-Chief. All these were exceedingly assuming, and so proud of their past victories, as to make no account of any troops but those immediately under their own command , and every one of them seemed to reach with his forehead to the cupola of the third heaven. We must also mention Hibrahim-qhan-gardi, who commanded twelve thousand Sepahies, armed with flint-muskets, besides some artillery mounted and served in the European manner , he belonged in particular to Seda-sy8. But what is singular, with all these numerous troops and with all their boasting, as soon as Seda-sy8's troops began to feel the pulse of the Abdalies, in a few skirmishes, they conceived themselves to be an undermatch for them , and, contrary to the Marhatta custom, and to their usual method of warfare, their Generalissimo retired beyond Panip8t, where he surrounded his army with his baggage, round which he planted his cannon ; and this was so very numerous that his intrenchment might have borne the appellation of a wall that vomited fire and flames. Not satisfied with that, he added another intrenchment, made up of the earth of a fossé which he ordered to be dug up immediately.

And it was hardly finished, when the victorious army of the Abdalies came up, and spread everywhere round the Marhatta intrenchment so that every day there was some engagement in which cannon with muskets and rockets, and arrows with sabres and spears, were continually brought to action, and continually held conversation together, and every day produced a deal of bloodshed. But the worst of it was that the Abdalies eternally roaming round the Marhatta intrenchment, did not suffer a corn of grain or a blade of grass to find its way thither insomuch that nothing being brought to the Marhatta camp, this nation experienced for the first time the horrors of want, and learned from experience what it was that the world called distress and famine. For every part of their camp was blocked up and besieged, save their rear, which was open towards Lahor, and this too, the Abdalies found means to infest, having taken two or three convoys that were coming from thence. The Abdali king seeing that the enemies chose rather to suffer the hardships of distress than to quit their intrenchment, resolved to give a general assault. It was the twenty-eighth of the second Rebi in the year 1174. Djehan qhan and Shah pesend-qhan, with Nedjib-ed dowlah, were to lead the van Shudjah ed dowlah and Ahmed-qhan bangash, with the other three Rohilla Princes, were to head the main and the King himself, with his Vezir, Veli-qhan, surnamed Eshref-el-anvar brought up the corps de reserve. The Marhattas on seeing this disposition came out of their intrenchment and took their post a little farther at full one arrow's throw in the plain. The combat became furious at once, and a continual slaughter took place between the two parties, from midday as far as the evening so that there remained but one hour of sunshine when the Rehillahs under Nedjib ed dowlah broke through a furious storm of muskets and rockets and penetrated on foot within the intrenchment, where they commenced fighting with hand blows. In this action Bel vent rao nephew to Seda sy8 and his right arm in everything being struck by a musket ball fell dead from his horse and the engagement would have been final, had not the night fallen upon the combatants, and by throwing her sable veil between them put it out of their power to distinguish the friend from the foe. The Rohillahs after distinguishing themselves in so

Bloody  
actions be-  
tween the  
Marhattas  
and the  
Abdalies.

glorious a manner, came out of the intrenchment, and returned to their camp. It was after this furious engagement that intelligence came that Govind-pandett, a Marhatta General, at the head of ten or twelve thousand horse, was coming from Atava, with a large convoy of treasure and provisions, that he was already at Shah-dera, in the highroad over against Shah-djehanabad, and that his intention was, first of all, to plunder Mahtra, and some other dependencies of Nedjib-ed-dowlah, and then to cross the Djumnah at C8ndj-p8ra, from whence he expected to join Seda-sy8's army. The King informed of all these particulars, dispatched Ataqhan, and the son of the late Abdol-semed-qhan, with five thousand horse, in hopes of their intercepting the convoy. The two Generals departed immediately, and crossing the Djumnah at the Ford of Agra and Bacshaiet they advanced to Shah-dera, where having put to the sword Tar8-shungur, the Governor, with his whole garrison, they proceeded to Ghazi-eddin-nagur, a town at six cosses only from the Capital, and there also they put to the sword a body of Marhattas stationed on purpose to meet the convoy. Continuing their march with the utmost rapidity, they arrived at the very spot where Govind-pandett was just arrived, and falling upon him at once, they destroyed him and his whole army. After this rapid execution they cut his head, and taking possession of the convoy, they returned to the Abdaly camp. This Govind-pandett is the same man, who, having been detached from the camp at Sukur-tal, had crossed the Ganga, and ruined so much country, and had fled back again, after having received a severe check from Shudjah-ed-dowlah. This massacre happened the 29th of the second Djemady, in the year 1174.

Meanwhile the blockade of the Marhatta camp continued, and the besieged commenced to suffer from the immondices of all sorts, in which it necessarily abounded. The smell became insupportable, famine was already felt, numbers of poor people were daily swept away, totally famished; and a mortality also, the constant result of famine and uncleanness, was committing its ravages. Hundreds of people dropped down every day. In this extremity the besieged Generals consulted together, and it was unanimously agreed to, "That as the army was consuming  
"itself with famine and mortality, it was better, whilst their

The Marhattas blockaded in their camp, commenced a pitched battle.

"bodily strength was yet unimpaired to march out and fight the enemy, be the event what it would" With this resolution they marched out It was on a Thursday, the sixth of the second Djemady, in the year 1174 of the Hedjrah Hibrâhîm qhan gardî marched at the head with his artillery, the rest of the army followed in order, and advanced with a slow pace towards the Abdali-camp, where the troops were mounted and ready but where they had orders to let the Marhattas advance farther within the plain They advanced in effect filling the air with cries of *Harî Har*, and their Moghul cavalry advanced to a skirmish with the enemy but they were terribly handled by the Abdali van, commanded by Shudjah-ed dôwlah by Nedjib-ed dôwlah, and by many other illustrious Commanders whose flaming sabres had long thirsted after their prey These having called to their assistance the Divine Disposer of victories advanced upon the enemy whose Moghul skirmishers and Marhatta light cavalry unable to bear a well directed fire made by the Rohillahs armed with heavy muskets were thrown into confusion and forced to retreat within the intrenchment here the runaways mixing with the troops stationed there communicated their disorder, and carried them away in their flight Seda sy8 and Vasvass râo, without taking much notice of the disorder in camp advanced to the charge, with drawn sabres, and spears couched and falling upon Shudjah-ed dôwlah and Nedjib-ed dôwlah a warm engagement ensued in which the air was filled and the Abdali army deafened with their war cry of *Harri Har* (273) The two Hindostany Princes advanced to the encounter supported by the Abdali king in person, who fought at the head of his troops, and exhibited amazing proofs of personal prowess Under the eyes of such a General, every one exerted himself to the utmost A furious engagement took place and for full two hours there arose such a cloud of dust that none of the combatants could distinguish the earth from the heavens From mid day to four o'clock nothing could be heard or seen but a furious slaughter which was going

---

(273) We are told that these words signify *God* and *Maha Deo* the Great Saint or the first man. Might not these words amount to a general confession in the mouth of soldiers going to the charge? For it is observable that the Gentoos, who always bathe or purify themselves in the morning, never fail several times to repeat the word *Hara* which signifies both *I have lost* and *I have sinned*

on at an incredible rate. At that time only, the dust having subsided a little, a whole field was discovered interspersed with an infinite number of Marhattas, who had all set out in company for the region of Nothingness. They were led thither by Vass-rão, the heir of the Marhatta Empire, a Prince yet in the bloom of youth and beauty, who fell by a musket-ball, and Seda-sy8, the principal General, with his bravest Officers, closed the rear of that departed army. The corps de reserve was brought up by Djingo, the brave Djingo! who that they said farewell to his existence. The rest of the Generals followed promiscuously, with all their Officers and soldiers, and it was in that order that this departed army at once presented itself on the frontiers of eternity. Hibrâhm-qhan-gardi was taken prisoner, and for a while suffered to enjoy the pleasure of having escaped the general massacre, when an order came for his being beheaded, and that man who had made so much noise in the world, plunged at once into the abyss of eternity (274). The field of battle looked like a tract sown with tulips, and as far as the sight could extend, nothing could be discovered but bodies stretched at the foot of bodies, as if they had been asleep, or marshalled by art. After the battle, two and twenty thousand women, girls, and children of both sexes, some of them persons of distinction and related to the most illustrious of the slain, were distributed amongst the victorious, who plundered an incredible quantity of money, jewels, and fine stuffs, nor is there coming at any computation of the mighty sum. The whole of that numerous artillery, with two hundred thousand oxen and cows, fifty thousand horses, five hundred large elephants, and an infinity of camels and mules, fell into the hands of the victorious. The date of this mighty victory has been conserved in the chronogram of the following quartrain, by the care of the illustrious Poet Mir-g8lam-aaly, of Belgram, the same who composed the chronogram on the victory over of Data-sindhia. It is as follows —

Battle of  
Panip8t,  
where 80,000  
Marhattas are  
destroyed

"The valiant King has put to the sword Seda-sy8, as he has already done Data

"He has finished his campaign, as he has commenced it, by a memorable victory,

'And the querulous reed of the Poet has again sung

— "The D8rrani-king has again gained the victory!"

---

(274) It was to punish him as an apostate, who although a Mussulman himself, fought against Mussulmen in an army of infidels

Some thousands of Marhattas, who had escaped the sword, and were rambling about without any Commanders, were attacked by the peasants, who, incited not only by that cowardly disposition which is innate with their vile nature, but also by the remembrance of what they had suffered from those freebooters, did not spare them, but began plundering, stripping and killing as many as they could come at. Shimsir bahadyr, half brother to Baladjî rāo by a dance woman, was by the assistance of a body of plunderers ferried over the stream that parts this world from eternity, and this being the last of the *Commanders of character among the Marhattas it may be said* that not one of them escaped with life. Amongst the inferior Officers, only Petil mahadjî sindiah and Holcar malhar found means to get off the latter, after an infinity of adventures contrived to reach Malva, from whence he proceeded to P8nah to be the harbinger of disastrous tidings. Baladjî rāo amazed at so shameful and bloody a defeat would not survive it. He pined away with sorrow and discontent, and in five months and a few days after he went to join his son and brother. Some days before this battle a certain saint of theirs called Sad d88, but surnamed Dudjutt, who resided at Aorng abad went in haste to join his prototype as if to shew his followers then in the field, the way to the regions of hell.

It ought to be remarked, that Baladjî rāo, some days before his death had directed that the shares, usually allowed to the washerman the writer the barber, the carpenter, the plough smith and some others upon the crop raised in each village should be seized for his use which in so extensive an Empire, amounted to no inconsiderable sum. But Providence, that watchful mother of the injured did not suffer him to enjoy the fruits of his covetousness for he died at a time when this regulation had not extended to the distant parts of his dominions.

O! ye powerful that injure the innocent,  
How long is your reign likely to last?

The Abdali king, after so important a victory gave some repose to his army, and then marched into the territory of Delhi where he spent a few days, and where he bestowed the Empire of Hindostan on Shah aalam *alias* Aaly gober the office of Vezir, or Shndjah ed d8wlah and the dignity of Prince

of Princes or Nedpb-ed-dowlah. He recommended them to each other, exhorted them to union and concord, and ordered that Nedpb-ed-dowlah should reside in Shah-djehan-abad to take care of Mirza-djivan-bat's person, with injunctions to send as soon as possible for Shah-aalem, his father, who was then waging war in Bergal. He likewise sent for Shudjah-ed-dowlah, and recommended him to be submissive to Shah-aalem, whom he was to bring over and assist with all his might. After this injunction, he made him a present of his own arms, with a horse and a superb ghylat, and dismissed him to his principality. The Monarch after having dispatched some other business, which detained him as far as the sixteenth of Shaaban, quitted the gardens of Shah-mai, in the environs of Delhi, and set out for Candahar by continual marches, leaving by the way a Deputy-Governor at Lahor. It was in the year 1174.

The victorious Abdali-monarch retires to dominions

After his departure Shudjah-ed-dowlah set out for A8d in the blessed month of Ramazan, and he was advancing by continual marches, when there happened an event that deserves to be mentioned. One of his friends, called Scid Saleh, surnamed the Veridic, who was then with him, used to recount to me that, as Shudjah-ed-dowlah was advancing to join the Abdali-king, he met, about the town of Secandarab, a detachment of a kind of men different from the Marhattas, (these last having made their appearance only three or four months after) and had an engagement with them, but my friend having occasion to pass that way sometime after, he found the plain covered with bodies half eaten or rotten, amongst which he was surprised to see a body which seemed to be betwixt twenty-five and thirty. It had on a large pair of whiskers, a beard close shaved, with a clean hangreca upon its back, and shewed a freshness of complexion quite exempt from any putrefaction. My friend was then with Mollah, or Doctor Abbass, the Mazenderanian, and three or four others, who were as much amazed as himself. Nine months after, when Shudjah-ed-dowlah was returning to his dominions after having taken leave of the Abdali-king, the army chanced to pass again over that same field, at which time my friend had an opportunity of looking over that plain again, where amongst a quantity of bones with which he was amazed to see again that same young man, with his clothes on, and the body

Singular appearance of a young man, slain



as entire as ever, without its having lost either beard or whiskers Mollah Abbass, astonished at what he saw, exclaimed that this young man surely must have been a Sēyd (275), and sending for some pioneers, as the army was so near, he ordered a fosse to be made for him. Some of the by standers, who had winding sheets (276) in their bags wanted to strip the young man, and to put a winding sheet about him. But this was objected to by the Mollah who observed that the body must be left unstripped, as the clothes it had on were its proper winding sheet. This being agreed to they all joined in prayers, and then committed it to the earth.

“Who could guess that in the depths of the sea,

“A cornelian should be found close to a heap of pebbles.”

To return to our narrative. Shudjah ed dōwlah without tarrying at Lucknow came out and marched down to Sēyd pūr close to Benares as we have already mentioned in a former volume whilst Shah aalem himself was quitting the neighbourhood

(275) The good Mollah was a partial observer or no observer at all. There are thousands of such spots in India (which being impregnated strongly with salt petre and other salts will preserve a body fresh, and we have seen a French drunkard, dug up by chance, quite ruddy and blue after being buried full ninety days.

(276) There is so much difference betwixt the European and the Persian notions (which last is general to the Hindostanics), that those men that are so provident with their winding sheets as to carry them to camp never think of making a will and by much the greatest part of them die intestate. However every kind of cotton will not do for a Persian or an Indian, easy in his circumstances. It must be a piece of stuff that has been rubbed, not to the Prophet's tomb, or to that of Hassan his grandsons (which are both at Medina) but to Hussein's tomb which is at Kerbelah near Bagdad he, and not his father nor brother nor grand-father being the idol of the nation for Aaly is only the God. Some of these keffens or winding sheets are written all over with the whole Coran in characters of sandal-dust mixed with water and cost from two or three hundred, to a thousand, and two thousand rupees and we protest, upon honor that we know many a man that has defrauded his creditors to procure such a keffen, and more than one virtuous matron who on getting up from a severe illness, has become complaisant over and over in order to procure such a passport, and on finding it at a higher price than she had thought prostituted her virgin daughter into the bazaar, to make up the necessary sum for such an omnipotent purchase. “At last, Madame said her astonished suitor my stars have worked your consent—after four years solicitation I have the happiness to see you. “Do not rejoice so much, sir” replied the lady. Accursed be she that would have listened to your messages; but “for the illness I have had, and the absolute necessity of providing for my salvation—I may die—and here her tears interrupted her voice.

of Azim-abad to come to the same town. There Shudjah-ed-dowlah having paid his respects to the Prince, took him to Djo8sy, over against Ilah-abad, where he threw a bridge of boats upon the Ganga, and crossed over with him on the fifth Zilhidj of that same year, after which he encamped at Ilah-abad, which he made the centre of his victorious standards. From thence he advanced to Djadj8, where he took up his winter quarters. In a few days he turned away all the Marhatta collectors and established throughout the whole Anterbid Shah-aalem's government, after which, as soon as the rainy season was over, he decamped on the sixth of the second Rehi, in the year 1175, and marched to Calpy after having appointed his favourite Minister, Beni-bahadyr, for his Deputy all over his dominions. From Calpy, which he took out of the hands of the Marhattas, he carried the Emperor beyond the Djumnah, where he took some rest at the fort of Djehan8, and as the Marhatta Governor refused to surrender, he was forced to it, after his fort had been battered for some time. Hitherto Shudjah-ed-dowlah had acted as a Vezir, but he had not yet received the investiture of that high office. This ceremony took place on the twenty-first of that month, at which time he received from the Emperor a qhyla8t of seven pieces, with four plates of jewels and gems, and these were followed by a chaplet of pearls which was thrown over his neck, whilst he was presented with the casket of Vezir, which was of gold, studded with jewels. Three days after, his son, Mirza-amani, was honoured with the superintendence of the Gh8sl-qhana, or of the private apartment. Nor is it our intention to say nothing more of this Prince, but it becomes necessary at present, that we should attend for a while to the affairs of Decan.

Shudjah-ed-dowlah appointed Vezir to Shah-aalem

We have already mentioned that Baladj8-rao having pined away in despair for the destruction of his armies, had gone to join his brother and his eldest son. The Crown, therefore, devolved to his youngest son, Mad8-rao, then a child, as did the management of affairs, to his brother, Ragonat-rao. This happened at the end of the year 1174. The next year his neighbour, Nizam-aaly-qhan, now surnamed the second Nizam-el-mulk, expecting to make his profit of that minority, put himself with his brother, Selabet-djung, at the head of a numerous army, and for some secret reasons which have not transpired, he set out from the

Fortress of Beder, where he had been for sometime encamped, and marched directly to Aoreng abad. But he was prevented by Ragonat rão who taking the young Madh rão with him quitted P8nah at the head of a numerous army and marched to Shah gur, where the two armies came in sight of each other, and much skirmishing took place for several days when Nizam aaly leaving his heavy baggage and other impediments at Aoreng abad set out with a firm intention to push for P8nah. It was the 23rd of that month, in the same year. The Marhattas threw themselves in his way but he led them beating over and over as far as within seven cosses distance from that Capital. There was in his way a town called T8tca, upon the shore of the Ganga of Decan(277) a place that contained a Gentoo temple extremely revered and where the Marhattas had raised many noble buildings. These he levelled with the ground, breaking the idol itself to pieces, and he was going to serve P8na in the same manner when a defection appeared in his army. For Mir moghol surnamed Nassyr el mulk sixth son of Nizam el mulk's having conceived some disgust against his brothers joined his concerns with Radjah Kam chunder a Commander of importance in Nizam aaly's army and both departed and joined the Marhattas. This officer was shocked at the little regard shewn to the Gentoo temple and thought his conscience concerned. This defection happened the twenty seventh of the first Djemady of the year 1174. The Gentoo Commander carried his whole brigade with him and it was a numerous one. After this junction matters altered considerably and the Marhattas who had the worst all along this campaign now spread themselves round the Mussulman army on the very next day and commenced a furious cannonade. This kind of warfare not pleasing the valorous and the zealous in Nizam-aaly's army they advanced beyond their own artillery and proceeded to hand blows when mixing with those men that fought at a distance they stretched vast numbers of them in the field of battle.

(277) This Ganga (and that word signifies only River in the old Hind8 language) is also called Godaverl. It passes at Radjmenderi and empties itself in the Bay of Bengal by several mouths the principal of which are that of Namapoor and that of Indjira n. It may be observed, that the Generic word *Gang* is that which has been given a Greek termination to *Ganges*. The Godaverl as well as the Krishna are as much revered in Decan, as the Gang is in Bengal.

Nizam-aaly avails himself of these broils to force the Marhattas to a very advantageous treaty

amongst which were several relations of both Madh8-rao and Ragonat-rao, which latter fought on foot that day. The Marhattas, sensible now that they were an undermatch for their enemies, thought proper to retreat, and to encamp at a distance, in order to consult together. They found that all their efforts had hitherto availed nothing, and that the enemy was now at seven cosses from P8nah, which, he intended to set on fire, and if that comes to pass, said they, what are we fighting for? They were also much affected by a deputation of the inhabitants of P8nah, who asked them, *whether they intened to see their habitations on fire, and to deliver their children and families to the Mussulmen?* The Marhattas greatly affected by this remonstrance, as well as by their own situation, sent Ambassadors to Nizam-aaly; to treat of an accomodation. Nizam-aaly consented, and sold them a peace for several Districts, which they ceded to him from the Provinces of Aoreng-abad and Beder, to the amount of twenty-seven lacs a year. This treaty took place the sixth of the second Djemady, just one year after the Abdalies had gained that memorable victory over the Marhattas. Nizam-aaly, after so advantageous a peace, marched back to his Capital, and by the way he turned towards Ramchunder's country to punish him for his desertion. That whole tract was given up for plunder to the army, and it was completely ravaged and ruined. The rainy season setting in at this time, (and this was about the fourteenth of Zilhidy, in the year 1175) he took up his winter quarters at Beder, and that same day he confined in the citadel his brother, Selabet-djung. a confinement in which he lived fifteen months, after which death came to his relief, and having delivered him from the confinement of his prison, it carried his soul to the spacious plains of eternity where it let it loose. His body was buried in a corner of the Mausoleum of Shah-mahmed-m8ltani. Whilst Nizam-aaly was at Beder, he received from Aaly-goher, now styled Shah-aalem the Qhylaat of the Government of the whole Decan, vacant by the demise of Selabet-djung, the Lord of the Kingdoms. This Qhylaat he put on with the usual ceremonies; after which he appointed Radja, Pertavent, a Hedjur-bedi-brahman, who was citizen of the town of Sangmir, to be his Prime Minister, and the director of every affair of State in his dominions.

Selabet-  
djung's death.

Whilst Nizam aaly was putting on his Qhvlaat Ragonat and Madh8 rão were going to pass the rainy season at P8nah where dissensions soon arose between them to such a high degree that Madh8 rão's Ministers determined to seize Ragonat's person on the first opportunity. It was in the year 1176. But the latter receiving timely notice of this scheme thought proper to provide for his safety. He set out from P8nah with a small number of followers, and took to the road of Nassuc. There was at that time at Aoreng abad a noble personage by name Mahmied m8rad qhan bahadlyr, who had been sent thither by Nizam-aaly to negotiate with the two parties and to pacify that nation. This nobleman hearing that Ragonat rão had quitted P8nah in distress marched out of the city and met him upon the road very near Nassuc. This was a lucky event for the fugitive whose mind was full of fears and anxiety for having advanced before his people to meet M8rad qhan he saluted him as a welcome friend and the Marhatta Grandees concluding from this step of M8rad qhan's that Ragonat rão's cause was supported by Nizam aaly they flocked to him with their troops in such numbers as soon to give his retinue the appearance of something like a military force. Ragonat rão being thus reinforced advanced from Aoreng-abad to Ahmed nugur whilst Madh8-rão on his side, was quitting P8nah with a body of troops, and pushing for his enemy and having soon overtaken him an engagement took place in which Madh8 rão the nephew was worsted by Ragonat rão the uncle. The next day he came to see him and made use of many excuses. Whilst they were conferring together Nizam-aaly who had marched with intention to support Ragonat rão arrived but he found the quarrel already made up. It was at a place called Hedercan8r where the Marhatta Prince advanced to meet him and where they embraced each other after which they interchanged several entertainments. Ragonat rão to acknowledge the readiness with which Nizam-aaly had marched to his assistance made him a present of several Districts to the amount of fifty lacs a year to which he added the Fortress of D88let-abad. The patents of these two grants were drawn up in due form and put in his hands. But this whole affair having been managed by M8rad qhan alone it gave so much jealousy to Radja Pertavent the Prime Minister,

Dissensions  
and several  
engagements  
between  
Madh8-rão,  
the Marhatta  
ruler and his  
uncle Rago-  
nat rão

that he resolved to break a treaty which seemed to eclipse him. Without waiting till Nizam-aaly's people should have taken possession of the Fortress, or settled Collectors and Governors all over the ceded Districts, he turned his master's mind in such a manner, that he proposed to arrest Rag8nat-rao, and to substitute in his stead another Marhatta Prince, called Djano-dji, son to Rag8-dji-bosslah, who was then Mucasdhar or hereditary Collector of the Province of Barar, and whom he brought to camp under promise of putting him at the head of the regency at P8nah. But whilst Nizam-aaly was regulating another man's house, he experienced dissensions in his own. His brother, Mirza-mogul deserted from his family, in order to throw himself in the arms of the Marhattas, but having soon discovered that his new friends were much more inclined to quarrel amongst themselves than to pay any attention to either his person or interest, he took a disgust at his situation, and came back to his brother, who received him kindly.

Meanwhile the first treaty having been broke in so unexpected a manner, Nizam-aaly marched with a numerous army against Rag8nat-rao, who being unwilling to try his forces in a pitched battle, wheeled round, and commenced plundering and ravaging the country, a practice from which there is no weaning a Marhatta. With thirty thousand horse, he advanced to the very suburbs of Aoreng-abad, and asked of the inhabitants of that city an immense contribution. But Mutemen-el-mulk, Governor of the Province, availed himself so well of the small force and small artillery, which he had at hand, he distributed the burghers so well upon the towers and walls of the city, and made so good an use of the activity of the Himmet-qhanbahadur, Cutval of the Police, that Rag8nat-rao was kept in play with negotiations and messages, until Nizam-aaly might be at hand. Nevertheless, the Marhatta, who was apprised of the state of the place, resolved to storm it. On the twentieth of Shaaban, in the year 1177, his people advanced at day-break to the foot of the wall, and applied to it a number of scaling ladders, as well as some of the loftiest elephants, by which expedient they got upon the wall, and tearing some boards from about the gates, they wanted to make use of them as a bridge to get down from the towers. But Himmet-qhan and Mirza-bakyr-qhan

Ragonat-rão  
attempts to  
escalade  
Aoreng-abad,  
but is vigorously repuls-  
ed

"bodily strength was yet unimpaired to march out and fight the "enemy, be the event what it would" With this resolution they marched out It was on a Thursday, the sixth of the second Djemady, in the year 1174 of the Hedjrâh Hibrahim-qhan gardi marched at the head with his artillery, the rest of the army followed in order, and advanced with a slow pace towards the Abdali-camp, where the troops were mounted and ready but where they had orders to let the Marhattas advance farther within the plain They advanced in effect, filling the air with cries of *Harri Har*, and their Moghul cavalry advanced to a skirmish with the enemy, but they were terribly handled by the Abdali van, commanded by Shudjah-ed dôwlah by Nedjib-ed dôwlah, and by many other illustrious Commanders whose flaming sabres had long thirsted after their prey These having called to their assistance the Divine Disposer of victories advanced upon the enemy whose Moghul skirmishers and Marhatta light cavalry unable to bear a well directed fire made by the Rohillahs armed with heavy muskets were thrown into confusion and forced to retreat within the intrenchment here the runaways mixing with the troops stationed there communicated their disorder and carried them away in their flight Seda sy8 and Vasvass rão, without taking much notice of the disorder in camp advanced to the charge, with drawn sabres and spears couched and falling upon Shudjah ed dôwlah and Nedjib-ed dôwlah a warm engagement ensued in which the air was filled and the Abdali army deafened with their war cry of *Harri Har* (273) The two Hindostany Princes advanced to the encounter supported by the Abdali king in person, who fought at the head of his troops, and exhibited amazing proofs of personal prowess Under the eyes of such a General, every one exerted himself to the utmost A furious engagement took place and for full two hours there arose such a cloud of dust that none of the combatants could distinguish the earth from the heavens From mid day to four o'clock nothing could be heard or seen, but a furious slaughter which was going

---

(273) We are told that these words signify *God* and *Maha Deo*, the Great Saint or the first man Might not these words amount to a general confession in the mouth of soldiers going to the charge? For it is observable that the Gentoos, who always bathe or purify themselves in the morn'g never fail several times to repeat the word *Hara* which signifies both *I have lost* and *I have sinned*

on at an incredible rate. At that time only, the dust having subsided a little, a whole field was discovered interspersed with an infinite number of Marhattas, who had all set out in company for the region of Nothingness. They were led thither by Vassass-rao, the heir of the Marhatta Empire, a Prince yet in the bloom of youth and beauty, who fell by a musket-ball, and Sedasy8, the principal General, with his bravest Officers, closed the rear of that departed army. The corps de reserve was brought up by Dingo, the brave Djingol who that they said farewell to his existence. The rest of the Generals followed promiscuously, with all their Officers and soldiers, and it was in that order that this departed army at once presented itself on the frontiers of eternity. Hibrabim-qhan-gardi was taken prisoner, and for a while suffered to enjoy the pleasure of having escaped the general massacre, when an order came for his being beheaded, and that man who had made so much noise in the world, plunged at once into the abyss of eternity (274). The field of battle looked like a tract sown with tulips, and as far as the sight could extend, nothing could be discovered but bodies stretched at the foot of bodies, as if they had been asleep, or marshalled by art. After the battle, two and twenty thousand women, girls, and children of both sexes, some of them persons of distinction and related to the most illustrious of the slain, were distributed amongst the victorious, who plundered an incredible quantity of money, jewels, and fine stuffs, nor is there coming at any computation of the mighty sum. The whole of that numerous attillery, with two hundred thousand oxen and cows, fifty thousand horses, five hundred large elephants, and an infinity of camels and mules, fell into the hands of the victorious. The date of this mighty victory has been conserved in the chronogram of the following quartrain, by the care of the illustrious Poet Mir-g8lam-aaly, of Belgram, the same who composed the chronogram on the victory over of Data-sindhia. It is as follows —

Battle of  
Panip8t,  
where 80,000  
Marhattas are  
destroyed

"The valiant King has put to the sword Seda-sy8, as he has already done Data

"He has finished his campaign, as he has commenced it, by a memorable victory,

'And the querulous reed of the Poet has again sung

— "The D8rrani-king has again gained the victory!"

---

(274) It was to punish him as an apostate, who although a Mussulman himself, fought against Mussulmen in an army of infidels



Some thousands of Marhattas, who had escaped the sword, and were rambling about without any Commanders, were attacked by the peasants, who, incited not only by that cowardly disposition which is innate with their vile nature, but also by the remembrance of what they had suffered from those freebooters did not spare them, but began plundering, stripping, and killing as many as they could come at. Shimsheer bahadyr, half brother to Baladjî rāo by a dance woman, was by the assistance of a body of plunderers ferried over the stream that parts this world from eternity and this being the last of the Commanders of character among the Marhattas it may be said that not one of them escaped with life. Amongst the inferior Officers only Petill mahadjî sindiah and Holcar malhar found means to get off the latter after an infinity of adventures contrived to reach Malva, from whence he proceeded to P8nah to be the harbinger of disastrous tidings. Baladjî rāo amazed at so shameful and bloody a defeat, would not survive it. He pined away with sorrow and discontent and in five months and a few days after he went to join his son and brother. Some days before this battle a certain saint of theirs, called Sad d88 but surnamed Dudjutt who resided at Aorngabad, went in haste to join his prototype, as if to shew his followers, then in the field the way to the regions of hell.

It ought to be remarked that Baladjî rāo, some days before his death, had directed that the shares, usually allowed to the washerman the writer, the barber, the carpenter, the plough-smith and some others upon the crop raised in each village should be seized for his use, which in so extensive an Empire amounted to no inconsiderable sum. But Providence, that watchful mother of the injured did not suffer him to enjoy the fruits of his covetousness for he died at a time when this regulation had not extended to the distant parts of his dominions.

O! ye powerful that injure the innocent,  
How long is your reign likely to last?

The Abdali king after so important a victory gave some repose to his army and then marched into the territory of Delhi where he spent a few days and where he bestowed the Empire of Hindostan on Shah-aalam *alias* Asly goher the office of Vezir, on Shadjah-ed d8wlah and the dignity of Prince

of Princes on Nedjib-ed-dowlah. He recommended them to each other, exhorted them to union and concord, and ordered that Nedjib-ed-dowlah should reside in Shah-djehan-abad to take care of Mirza-djuvan-baqit's person, with injunctions to send as soon as possible for Shih-aalem, his father, who was then waging war in Bengal. He likewise sent for Shudjah-ed-dowlah, and recommended him to be submissive to Shah-aalem, whom he was to bring over and assist with all his might. After this injunction, he made him a present of his own arms, with a horse and a superb ghylaaf, and dismissed him to his principality. The Monarch, after having dispatched some other business, which detained him as far as the sixteenth of Shaaban, quitted the gardens of Shaleh-mu, in the environs of Delhi, and set out for Candahar by continual marches, leaving by the way a Deputy-Governor at Lahor. It was in the year 1174.

The victorious Abdali-monarch retires to dominions

After his departure Shudjah-ed-dowlah set out for A8d in the blessed month of Ramazan, and he was advancing by continual marches, when there happened an event that deserves to be mentioned. One of his friends, called Seid Saleh, surnamed the Veridic, who was then with him, used to recount to me that, as Shudjah-ed-dowlah was advancing to join the Abdali-king, he met, about the town of Secandarah, a detachment of a kind of men different from the Marhattas, (these last having made their appearance only three or four months after) and had an engagement with them, but my friend having occasion to pass that way sometime after, he found the plain covered with bodies half eaten or rotten, amongst which he was surprised to see a body which seemed to be betwixt twenty-five and thirty. It had on a large pair of whiskers, a beard close shaved, with a clean hangreca upon its back, and shewed a freshness of complexion quite exempt from any putrefaction. My friend was then with Mollah, or Doctor Abbass, the Mazenderanian, and three or four others, who were as much amazed as himself. Nine months after, when Shudjah-ed-dowlah was returning to his dominions after having taken leave of the Abdali-king, the army chanced to pass again over that same field, at which time my friend had an opportunity of looking over that plain again, where amongst a quantity of bones with which he was amazed to see again that same young man, with his clothes on, and the body

Singular appearance of a young man, slain

as entire as ever, without its having lost either beard or whiskers Mollah Abbass, astonished at what he saw, exclaimed that this young man surely must have heeo a Sēyd (275), and scoding for some pioneers as the army was so near, he ordered a fosse to be made for him. Some of the by standers, who had winding sheets (276) in their bags wanted to strip the young man and to put a winding sheet about him. But this was objected to by the Mollah, who observed that the body must be left on stripped as the clothes it had on were its proper winding sheet. This being agreed to they all joined in prayers, and then committed it to the earth.

Who could guess that in the depths of the sea

A cornell: should be found close to a heap of pebbles?

To return to our narrative Shudjah ed dōwlah without tarrying at Lucknow came out and marched down to Sēyd p8r close to Benares as we have already mentioned in a former volume whilst Shah aalem himself was quitting the neighbourhood

(275) The good Mollah was a partial observer or no observer at all. There are thousands of such spots in India (which being impregnated strongly with salt petre and other salts will preserve a body fresh, and we have seen a French drunkard, dug up by chance quite ruddy and blue after being buried full ninety days.

(276) There is so much difference betwixt the European and the Persian notions, (which last in general give the ton to the Hindostanies), that those men that are so provident with their winding sheets as to carry them to camp never think of making a will and by much the greatest part of them d a intestate. However every kind of cotton will not do for a Persian or an Indian, every in his circumstances. It must be a piece of stuff that has been rubbed, not to the Prophet tomb or to that of Hassan, his grandsons (which are both at Medina) but to Hussens tomb which is at Kerbelah near Bagdad he, and not his father nor brother nor grand father being the idol of the nation; for Aaly is only the God. Some of these keffens or winding sheets are written all over with the whole Coran in characters of sandal-dust mixed with water and cost from two or three hundred, to a thousand, and two thousand rupees and we protest, upon honor that we know many a man that has defrauded his creditors to procure such a keffen, and more than one virtuous matron who on getting up from a severe illness, has become complaisant over and over in order to procure such a passport, and on finding it at a higher price than she had thought prostituted her virgin daughter into the bargain, to make up the necessary sum for such an omnipotent purchase. "At last Madame said her astonished suitor my stars have worked your consent—after four years solicitation I have the happiness to see you. "Do not rejoice so much, sir" replied the lady Accursed be she that would have listened to your messages but "for the illness I have had and the absolute necessity of providing for my salvation—I may die — and here her tears interrupted her voice

of Azim-abad to come to the same town. There Shudjah-ed-dowlah having paid his respects to the Prince, took him to Djo8sy, over against Ilah-abad, where he threw a bridge of boats upon the Ganga, and crossed over with him on the fifth Zilhidj of that same year, after which he encamped at Ilah-abad, which he made the centre of his victorious standards. From thence he advanced to Djadj8, where he took up his winter quarters. In a few days he turned away all the Marhatta collectors, and established throughout the whole Anterbid Shah-aalem's government, after which, as soon as the rainy season was over, he decamped on the sixth of the second Rebi, in the year 1175, and marched to Calpy, after having appointed his favourite Minister Ben-bahadyr, for his Deputy all over his dominions. From Calpy, which he took out of the hands of the Marhattas, he carried the Emperor beyond the Djumnah, where he took some rest at the fort of Djehansi, and as the Marhatta Governor refused to surrender, he was forced to it, after his fort had been battered for some time. Hitherto Shudjah-ed-dowlah had acted as a Vezir, but he had not yet received the investiture of that high office. This ceremony took place on the twenty-first of that month, at which time he received from the Emperor a ghylaat of seven pieces, with four plates of jewels and gems, and these were followed by a chaplet of pearls which was thrown over his neck, whilst he was presented with the casket of Vezir, which was of gold, studded with jewels. Three days after, his son, Mirza-amani, was honoured with the superintendence of the Gh8-l-qhana, or of the private apartment. Nor is it our intention to say nothing more of this Prince; but it becomes necessary at present, that we should attend for a while to the affairs of Decan.

We have already mentioned that Baladji-rao having pined away in despair for the destruction of his armies, had gone to join his brother and his eldest son. The Crown, therefore, devolved to his youngest son, Mad8-rao, then a child, as did the management of affairs, to his brother, Ragonat-rao. This happened at the end of the year 1174. The next year his neighbour, Nizam-aaly-qhan, now surnamed the second Nizam-el-mulk, expecting to make his profit of that minority, put himself with his brother, Selabet-djung, at the head of a numerous army; and for some secret reasons which have not transpired, he set out from the

Shudjah-ed-dowlah appointed Vezir to Shah-aalem.

Fortress of Beder, where he had been for sometime encamped and marched directly to Aorengabad. But he was prevented by Ragooat rão who taking the young Madg-rão with him quitted P8nah at the head of a numerous army, and marched to Shahgur, where the two armies came in sight of each other and much skirmishing took place for several days, when Nizam aaly leaving his heavy baggage and other impediments at Aorengabad set out with a firm intention to push for P8nah. It was the 23rd of that month, in the same year. The Marhattas threw themselves in his way but he led them, beating over and over as far as within seven cosses distance from that Capital. There was in his way a town called T8ica upon the shore of the Ganga of Decan (277), a place that contained a Gentoo temple extremely revered and where the Marhattas had raised many noble buildings. These he levelled with the ground, breaking the Idol itself to piece and he was going to serve P8oa in the same manner when a defection appeared in his army. For Mir moghol surnamed Nassyr el mulk sixth son of Nizam el mulk's having conceived some disgust against his brothers joined his concerns with Radjah Ram chunder a Commander of Importance in Nizam aaly's army and both departed and joined the Marhattas. This officer was shocked at the little regard shewn to the Gentoo temple and thought his conscience concerned. This defection happened the twenty seventh of the first Djemady of the year 1174. The Gentoo Commander carried his whole brigade with him and it was a numerous one. After this junction matters altered considerably and the Marhattas who had the worst all along this campaign now spread themselves round the Mussulman army on the very next day and commenced a furious cannonade. This kind of warfare not pleasing the valorous and the zealous in Nizam-aaly's army they advanced beyond their own artillery and proceeded to hand blows when mixing with those men that fought at a distance they stretched vast numbers of them in the field of battle.

ally  
of these broils  
to force the  
Marhattas to  
a very advan-  
tageous  
treaty

---

(277) This Ganga (and that word signifies only River in the old Hind8 language) is also called Godaverl. It passes at Radjmender and empties itself in the Bay of Bengal by several mouths the principal of which are that of Narsapoor and that of Indjiram. It may be observed, that the Generic word Gang is that which has been given a Greek termination to *Ganges*. The Godaverl as well as the Krishna are as much revered in Decan, as the Gange is in Uengal.

amongst which were several relations of both Madh8-rao and Ragonat-rao, which latter fought on foot that day. The Marhattas, sensible now that they were an undermatch for their enemies, thought proper to retreat, and to encamp at a distance, in order to consult together. They found that all their efforts had hitherto availed nothing, and that the enemy was now at seven cosses from P8nah, which, he intended to set on fire, and if that comes to pass, said they, what are we fighting for? They were also much affected by a deputation of the inhabitants of P8nah, who asked them, *whether they intened to see their habitations on fire, and to deliver their children and families to the Mussulmen?* The Marhattas greatly affected by this remonstrance, as well as by their own situation, sent Ambassadors to Nizam-aaly, to treat of an accomodation. Nizam-aaly consented, and sold them a peace for several Districts, which they ceded to him from the Provinces of Aoreng-abad and Beder, to the amount of twenty-seven lacs a year. This treaty took place the sixth of the second Djemady, just one year after the Abdalies had gained that memorable victory over the Marhattas. Nizam-aaly, after so advantageous a peace, marched back to his Capital, and by the way he turned towards Ramchunder's country to punish him for his desertion. That whole tract was given up for plunder to the army, and it was completely ravaged and ruined. The rainy season setting in at this time, (and this was about the fourteenth of Zilhidy, in the year 1175) he took up his winter quarters at Beder, and that same day he confined in the citadel his brother, Selabet-djung, a confinement in which he lived fifteen months, after which death came to his relief, and having delivered him from the confinement of his prison, it carried his soul to the spacious plains of eternity where it let it loose. His body was buried in a corner of the Mausoleum of Shah-mahmed-m8ltani. Whilst Nizam-aaly was at Beder, he received from Aaly-goher, now styled Shah-aalem the Qhylaat of the Government of the whole Decan, vacant by the demise of Selabet-djung, the Lord of the Kingdoms. This Qhylaat he put on with the usual ceremonies; after which he appointed Radja, Pertavent, a Hedjur-bedi-brahman, who was citizen of the town of Sangmir, to be his Prime Minister, and the director of every affair of State in his dominions.

Selabet-  
djung's death.

Dissensions  
 and several  
 engagements  
 between  
 Madh8-rão,  
 the Marhatta  
 ruler and his  
 uncle, Rago-  
 nat rão

Whilst Nizam aaly was putting on his Qhylaat Ragonat and Madh8 rão were going to pass the rainy season at P8nah where dissensions soon arose between them to such a high degree that Madh8 rão's Ministers determined to seize Ragonat's person on the first opportunity. It was in the year 1176 Bot the latter receiving timely notice of this scheme, thought proper to provide for his safety. He set out from P8nah with a small number of followers and took to the road of Nassuc. There was at that time at Aoreng abad a noble personage by name Mahmed m8rad qhan bahadyr who had been sent thither by Nizam-aaly to negotiate with the two parties and to pacify that nation. This nobleman hearing that Ragonat rão had quitted P8nah in distress marched out of the city and met him upoo the road very near Nassuc. This was a lucky event for the fugitive whose mind was full of fears and anxiety for having advanced before hi people to meet M8rad qhan, he saluted him as a welcome friend and the Marhatta Grandees concluding from this step of M8rad qhan's that Ragonat rão's cause was supported by Nizam aaly they flocked to him with their troops in such numbers as soon to give his retinue the appearance of something like a military force. Ragonat-rão being thus reinforced advanced from Aoreng-abad to Ahmed nogur whilst Madh8 rão on his side was quitting P8nah with a body of troops and pushing for his enemy and having soon overtaken him an engagement took place in which Madh8-rão the nephew was worsted by Ragonat rão the uncle. The next day he came to see him and made use of many excuses. Whilst they were conferring together Nizam-aaly who had marched with intention to support Rag8nat rão arrived bot he found the quarrel already made up. It was at a place called Bedercan8r where the Marhatta Prince advanced to meet him and where they embraced each other after which they interchanged several entertainments. Rag8nat rão to acknowledge the readiness with which Nizam-aaly had marched to his assistance made him a present of several Districts to the amount of fifty lacs a year to which he added the Fortress of D88let-abad. The patents of these two grants were drawn up in due form and put in his hands. But this whole affair having been managed by M8rad qhan alone it gave so much jealousy to Radja Pertavent the Prime Minister

that he resolved to break a treaty which seemed to eclipse him. Without waiting till Nizam-aaly's people should have taken possession of the Fortress, or settled Collectors and Governors all over the ceded Districts, he turned his master's mind in such a manner, that he proposed to arrest Rag8nat-rao, and to substitute in his stead another Marhatta Prince, called Djano-dji, son to Rag8-dji-bossiah, who was then Mucasdār or hereditary Collector of the Province of Barar, and whom he brought to camp under promise of putting him at the head of the regency at P8nah. But whilst Nizam-aaly was regulating another man's house, he experienced dissensions in his own. His brother, Mirza-mogul deserted from his family, in order to throw himself in the arms of the Marhattas, but having soon discovered that his new friends were much more inclined to quarrel amongst themselves than to pay any attention to either his person or interest, he took a disgust at his situation, and came back to his brother, who received him kindly.

Meanwhile the first treaty having been broke in so unexpected a manner, Nizam-aaly marched with a numerous army against Rag8nat-rao, who being unwilling to try his forces in a pitched battle, wheeled round, and commenced plundering and ravaging the country, a practice from which there is no weaning a Marhatta. With thirty thousand horse, he advanced to the very suburbs of Aoreng-abad, and asked of the inhabitants of that city an immense contribution. But Mutemen-el-mulk, Governor of the Province, availed himself so well of the small force and small artillery, which he had at hand, he distributed the burghers so well upon the towers and walls of the city, and made so good an use of the activity of the Himmet-qhān-bahadyr, Cutval of the Police, that Rag8nat-rao was kept in play with negotiations and messages, until Nizam-aaly might be at hand. Nevertheless, the Marhatta, who was apprised of the state of the place, resolved to storm it. On the twentieth of Shaaban, in the year 1177, his people advanced at day-break to the foot of the wall, and applied to it a number of scaling ladders, as well as some of the loftiest elephants, by which expedient they got upon the wall, and tearing some boards from about the gates, they wanted to make use of them as a bridge to get down from the towers. But Himmet-qhan and Mirza-bakyr-qhan

Ragonat-rāo attempts to escalate Aoreng-abad, but is vigorously repulsed



mausoleum, which they stripped of its incensory (271), candelabres, lamps, and other utensils, all of solid gold, and of exquisite workmanship, all of which were torn away and sent to the Mint

After having done all this havoc the Marhatta General resolved to decamp. The Doib occupied by an army did not afford him any prospect of subsistence, and everything in the territory of the Capital was eaten up and consumed. He was urged doubtless by the necessity of assembling and enjoying all the merits of those pious and meritorious actions which he had performed in that unfortunate Capital by stripping it of its sacred ornaments and by plundering the nobility and people of what little they had saved from the hands of former ravagers. Resolved to quit that neighbourhood, he deposed and confined that pageant of an Emperor, Shah djehan, and placed in his stead Mirza djuvan haqht (272), son to Aaly goher, the fugitive Prince, who was then enduring distresses and waging war in Bengal. The Vezirship he conferred on Shudjah ed dowlah, plunging him self upon what he thought a piece of policy very likely to embroll the latter with the Abdali king. This done he confirmed Tarshungar in the Government of the Citadel and marched with his whole army to Cundj p8ra where the two Zemindars of that tract Abdol semed qhan the Abdali and Nedjahet qhan, the Rohillah were encamped with commission to provide convoys for the Abdali king's army. This Abdol semed qhan is the same who fell in the hands of the Marhattas when commanding at Serhend and had found means to escape he commanded then in the mud fort. It was in the second Rebi of the year 1174. Sedā sy8 being arrived before that fort surrounded immediately. As his European artillery enabled him to do a great deal of execution in a little time Hibrahim qhan gardi soon made a breach and an assault being given both Abdol semed-qhan and C8t8b-qhan were slain and the place was thoroughly plundered.

(271) The text has the words Ood-dan a vessel for burning agalla wood, which last is a resinous wood that sells for twice its weight in silver. It is observable that in the tomb and vault opened about the year 1766, by Captain Adams, at Gour that immense Capital of Bengal he found such another vessel at the foot of a Royal body perfectly well preserved for four hundred years, with two vessels for beetle or paon and some arms and lamps &c.

(272) These two words signify of a youthful fortune

and sacked. The Abdali-king hearing of this piece of cruelty done almost within his sight, was equally surprised and incensed, an alteration was observed in his colour. Resolved to chastise the Marhattas, he decamped, and although the rainy season was not at an end, and the Djumnah did not yet afford any ford, nevertheless he marched, and under Shudjah-ed-dowlah's guidance he advanced to the passage of Baghshaiet, which is close under the walls of Shah-djehan-abad, and advancing on horseback in the water, he was followed by his whole cavalry, some fording the river, and others swimming over. His numerous army took the hint, and found means to follow with all their baggage. Seda-sy8, surprised at his daringness, and at the quickness of the Abdalies, conceived that instead of fighting them at C8ndj-p8ra, as had been his intention, it would be better to reconnoitre for two or three days together, in order to encamp at a commodious post near to Panip8t. At this time he had no less than forty thousand effective horse, all old soldiers and picked men, but this was only the army under his own particular command, for there were three other armies, severally commanded by Holcar-malhar, Shumshir-bahadyr, and the Prince of the blood, Vasvass-rao, which last was also the Commander-in-Chief. All these were exceedingly assuming, and so proud of their past victories, as to make no account of any troops but those immediately under their own command, and every one of them seemed to reach with his forehead to the cupola of the third heaven. We must also mention Hibrahim-qhan-gardi, who commanded twelve thousand Sepahies, armed with flint-muskets, besides some artillery mounted and served in the European manner, he belonged in particular to Seda-sy8. But what is singular, with all these numerous troops and with all their boasting, as soon as Seda-sy8's troops began to feel the pulse of the Abdalies, in a few skirmishes, they conceived themselves to be an undermatch for them, and, contrary to the Marhatta custom, and to their usual method of warfare, their Generalissimo retired beyond Panip8t, where he surrounded his army with his baggage, round which he planted his cannon, and this was so very numerous that his intrenchment might have borne the appellation of a wall that vomited fire and flames. Not satisfied with that, he added another intrenchment, made up of the earth of a fossé which he ordered to be dug up immediately.

And it was hardly finished, when the victorious army of the Abdalies came up, and spread everywhere round the Marhatta Intrenchment, so that every day there was some engagement in which cannon with muskets and rockets, and arrows with sabres and spears, were continually brought to action, and continually held conversation together, and every day produced a deal of bloodshed. But the worst of it was that the Abdalies, eternally roaming round the Marhatta intrenchment, did not suffer a corn of grain or a blade of grass to find its way thither inasmuch that nothing being brought to the Marhatta camp, this nation experienced for the first time the horrors of want, and learned from experience what it was that the world called distress and famine. For every part of their camp was blocked up and besieged, save their rear, which was open towards Labor, and this too, the Abdalies found means to infest, having taken two or three convoys that were coming from thence. The Abdall king seeing that the enemies chose rather to suffer the hardships of distress than to quit their intrenchment, resolved to give a general assault. It was the twenty-eighth of the second Rebi in the year 1174. Djehan-qhan and Shah pesend-qhan, with Nedjib ed dōwlah, were to lead the van Shndjah ed dōwlah and Ahmed-qhan bangasb, with the other three Rohilla Princes were to head the main and the King himself, with his Vezir, Veli-qhan, surnamed Eshref-el-anvar brought up the corps de reserve. The Marhattas on seeing this disposition came out of their intrenchment and took their post a little farther at full one arrow's throw in the plain. The combat became furious at once, and a continual slaughter took place between the two parties, from midday as far as the evening so that there remained but one hour of sun shine when the Rohillahs, under Nedjib ed dōwlah broke through a furious storm of muskets and rockets and penetrated on foot within the intrenchment, where they commenced fighting with hand blows. In this action Bel vent rão, nephew to Seda sy8 and his right arm in everything being struck by a musket ball fell dead from his horse and the engagement would have been final had not the night fallen upon the combatants and by throwing her sable veil between them put it out of their power to distinguish the friend from the foe. The Rohillahs after distinguishing themselves in so

Bloody  
actions be-  
tween the  
Marhattas  
and the  
Abdalies.

glorious a manner, came out of the intrenchment, and returned to their camp. It was after this furious engagement that intelligence came that Govind-pandett, a Marhatta General, at the head of ten or twelve thousand horse, was coming from Atava, with a large convoy of treasure and provisions, that he was already at Shal-dera, in the highroad over against Shah-djehanabad, and that his intention was, first of all, to plunder Mahtra, and some other dependencies of Nedjib-ed-dowlah, and then to cross the Djumnah at C8ndj-p8ra, from whence he expected to join Seda-sy8's army. The King informed of all these particulars, dispatched Atai-qhan, and the son of the late Abdol-semed-qhan, with five thousand horse, in hopes of their intercepting the convoy. The two Generals departed immediately, and crossing the Djumnah at the Ford of Agra and Bacshaet they advanced to Shah-dera, where having put to the sword Tar8-shungur, the Governor, with his whole garrison, they proceeded to Ghazi-eddin-nagur, a town at six cosses only from the Capital, and there also they put to the sword a body of Marhattas stationed on purpose to meet the convoy. Continuing their march with the utmost rapidity, they arrived at the very spot where Govind-pandett was just arrived, and falling upon him at once, they destroyed him and his whole army. After this rapid execution they cut his head, and taking possession of the convoy, they returned to the Abdaly camp. This Govind-pandett is the same man, who, having been detached from the camp at Sukur-tal, had crossed the Ganga, and ruined so much country, and had fled back again, after having received a severe check from Shudjah-ed-dowlah. This massacre happened the 29th of the second Djemady, in the year 1174.

Meanwhile the blockade of the Marhatta camp continued, and the besieged commenced to suffer from the immondices of all sorts, in which it necessarily abounded. The smell became insupportable, famine was already felt, numbers of poor people were daily swept away, totally famished; and a mortality also, the constant result of famine and uncleanness, was committing its ravages. Hundreds of people dropped down every day. In this extremity the besieged Generals consulted together, and it was unanimously agreed to, "That as the army was consuming "itself with famine and mortality, it was better, whilst their

The Marhattas blockaded in their camp, come to a pitched battle.

'bodily strength was yet unimpaired to march out and fight the enemy, be the event what it would" With this resolution they marched out It was on a Thursday, the sixth of the second Djemady, in the year 1174 of the Hedjah Hibrahim qhan gardi marched at the head with his artillery, the rest of the army followed in order, and advanced with a slow pace towards the Abdali-camp, where the troops were mounted and ready but where they had orders to let the Marhattas advance farther within the plain They advanced in effect, filling the air with cries of *Harri Har*, and their Moghul cavalry advanced to a skirmish with the enemy but they were terribly handled by the Abdali van, commanded by Shudjah ed dôwlah by Nedjib-ed dôwlah and by many other illustrious Commanders whose flaming sabres had long thirsted after their prey These having called to their assistance the Divine Disposer of victories advanced upon the enemy whose Moghul skirmishers and Marhatta light cavalry unable to bear a well directed fire made by the Rohillahs armed with heavy muskets were thrown into confusion and forced to retreat within the intrenchment here the runaways mixing with the troops stationed there communicated their disorder, and carried them away in their flight Seda sy8 and Vasvass rão without taking much notice of the disorder in camp advanced to the charge with drawn sabres and spears couched and falling upon Shudjah-ed dôwlah and Nedjib-ed dôwlah a warm engagement ensued in which the air was filled and the Abdali army deafened with their war cry of *Harri Har* (273) The two Hindostany Princes advanced to the encounter supported by the Abdali king in person, who fought at the head of his troops and exhibited amazing proofs of personal prowess Under the eyes of such a General, every one exerted himself to the utmost A furious engagement took place and for full two hours there arose such a cloud of dust that none of the combatants could distinguish the earth from the heavens From mid day to four o'clock nothing could be heard, or seen but a furious slaughter which was going

---

(273) We are told that these words signify *God* and *Maha Deo* the Great Saint or the first man. Might not these words amount to a general confession in the mouth of soldiers going to the charge? For it is observable that the Gentoo, who always bathes or purify themselves in the morning never fails several times to repeat the word *Harri*, which signifies both *I have lost* and *I have sinned*

on at an incredible rate. At that time only, the dust having subsided a little, a whole field was discovered interspersed with an infinite number of Marhattas, who had all set out in company for the region of Nothingness. They were led thither by Vassass-rao, the heir of the Marhatta Empire, a Prince yet in the bloom of youth and beauty, who fell by a musket-ball, and Seda-sy8, the principal General, with his bravest Officers, closed the rear of that departed army. The corps de reserve was brought up by Dingo, the brave Dingo<sup>1</sup> who that they said farewell to his existence. The rest of the Generals followed promiscuously, with all their Officers and soldiers, and it was in that order that this departed army at once presented itself on the frontiers of eternity. Hibrabim-qhan-gardi was taken prisoner, and for a while suffered to enjoy the pleasure of having escaped the general massacre, when an order came for his being beheaded, and that man who had made so much noise in the world, plunged at once into the abyss of eternity (274). The field of battle looked like a tract sown with tulips, and as far as the sight could extend, nothing could be discovered but bodies stretched at the foot of bodies, as if they had been asleep, or marshalled by art. After the battle, two and twenty thousand women, girls, and children of both sexes, some of them persons of distinction and related to the most illustrious of the slain, were distributed amongst the victorious, who plundered an incredible quantity of money, jewels, and fine stuffs, nor is there coming at any computation of the mighty sum. The whole of that numerous artillery, with two hundred thousand oxen and cows, fifty thousand horses, five hundred large elephants, and an infinity of camels and mules, fell into the hands of the victorious. The date of this mighty victory has been conserved in the chronogram of the following quartrain, by the care of the illustrious Poet Mir-g8lam-aaly, of Belgram, the same who composed the chronogram on the victory over of Data-sindhia. It is as follows —

Battle of  
Panip8t,  
where 80,000  
Marhattas are  
destroyed

"The valiant King has put to the sword Seda-sy8, as he has already done Data

"He has finished his campaign, as he has commenced it, by a memorable victory,

'And the querulous reed of the Poet has again sung

- "The D8rrani-king has again gained the victory!"

---

(274) It was to punish him as an apostate, who although a Mussulman himself, fought against Mussulmen in an army of infidels

Some thousands of Marhattas, who had escaped the sword, and were rambling about without any Commanders, were attacked by the peasants, who, incited not only by that cowardly disposition which is innate with their vile nature, but also by the remembrance of what they had suffered from those freebooters, did not spare them, but began plundering, stripping and killing as many as they could come at. Shilmshir bahadur, half brother to Baladji rāo by a dance woman was by the assistance of a body of plunderers ferried over the stream that parts this world from eternity and this being the last of the Commanders of character among the Marhattas it may be said that not one of them escaped with life. Amongst the inferior Officers only Petil mahadji sindiah and Holcar malhar found means to get off the latter after an infinity of adventures contrived to reach Malva, from whence he proceeded to P8nah to be the harbinger of disastrous tidings. Baladji rāo amazed at so shameful and bloody a defeat would not survive it. He pined away with sorrow and discontent, and in five months and a few days after he went to join his son and brother. Some days before this battle a certain salot of theirs, called Sad-dē8 hut stroamed Dudjutt who resided at Anrṅabad went in haste to join his prototype as if to shew his followers then in the field, the way to the regions of hell.

It ought to be remarked that Baladji rāo, some days before his death had directed that the shares, usually allowed to the washerman the writer, the barber the carpenter, the plough smith and some others upon the crop raised in each village should be seized for his use which in so extensive an Empire, amounted to no inconsiderable sum. But Providence, that watchful mother of the injured did not suffer him to enjoy the fruits of his covetousness for he died at a time when this regulation had not extended to the distant parts of his dominions.

O ye powerful that injure the innocent,  
How long is your reign likely to last?

The Abdali king after so important a victory gave some repose to his army, and then marched into the territory of Delhi where he spent a few days and where he bestowed the Empire of Hindostan on Shah-alam *alias* Aaly goher the office of Vezir, on Shudjah ed-dōwlah, and the dignity of Prince

of Princes on Nedjib-ed-dowlah. He recommended them to each other, exhorted them to union and concord, and ordered that Nedjib-ed-dowlah should reside in Shah-djehan-abad to take care of Mirza-djuvan-baght's person, with injunctions to send as soon as possible for Shah-aalem, his father, who was then waging war in Bengal. He likewise sent for Shudjah-ed-dowlah, and recommended him to be submissive to Shah-aalem, whom he was to bring over and assist with all his might. After this injunction, he made him a present of his own arms, with a horse and a superb ghylaati, and dismissed him to his principality. The Monarch, after having dispatched some other business, which detained him as far as the sixteenth of Shaaban, quitted the gardens of Shaleh-mar, in the environs of Delhi, and set out for Candahar by continual marches, leaving by the way a Deputy-Governor at Lahor. It was in the year 1174.

The victorious Abdali-monarch retires to dominions

After his departure Shudjah-ed-dowlah set out for A8d in the blessed month of Ramazan, and he was advancing by continual marches, when there happened an event that deserves to be mentioned. One of his friends, called Sèid Saleh, surnamed the Veridic, who was then with him, used to recount to me that, as Shudjah-ed-dowlah was advancing to join the Abdali-king, he met, about the town of Secandarah, a detachment of a kind of men different from the Marhattas, (these last having made their appearance only three or four months after) and had an engagement with them, but my friend having occasion to pass that way sometime after, he found the plain covered with bodies half eaten or rotten, amongst which he was surprised to see a body which seemed to be betwixt twenty-five and thirty. It had on a large pair of whiskers, a beard close shaved, with a clean hangreca upon its back, and shewed a freshness of complexion quite exempt from any putrefaction. My friend was then with Mollah, or Doctor Abbass, the Mazenderanian, and three or four others, who were as much amazed as himself. Nine months after, when Shudjah-ed-dowlah was returning to his dominions after having taken leave of the Abdali-king, the army chanced to pass again over that same field, at which time my friend had an opportunity of looking over that plain again, where amongst a quantity of bones with which he was amazed to see again that same young man, with his clothes on, and the body

Singular appearance of a young man, slain



as entire as ever, without its having lost either beard or whiskers Mollah Abbass, astonished at what he saw, exclaimed that this young man surely must have been a Sëyd (275), and sending for some pinneers, as the army was so near, he ordered a fosse to be made for him. Some of the by standers, who had wind lug sheets (276) in their bags wanted to strip the young man, and to put a winding sheet about him. But this was objected to by the Mollah who observed that the body must be left unstripped as the clothes it had on were its proper winding sheet. This being agreed to they all joined in prayers, and then committed it to the earth.

*Who could guess that in the depths of the sea,*

*"A cornelian should be found close to a heap of pebbles."*

To return to our narrative Shudjah ed dôwlah without tarrying at Lucknow came out and marched down to Sëyd p8r close to Benares as we have already mentioned in a former volume whilst Shah aalem himself was quitting the neighbourhood

(275) The good Mollah was a partial observer or no observer at all. There are thousands of such spots in India, (which being impregnated strongly with salt petre and other salts will preserve a body fresh, and we have seen a French drunkard, dug up by chance quite ruddy and bloe after being buried full ninety days.

(276) There is so much difference betwixt the European and the Persian notions, (which last in general give the td to the Hindostanies), that those men that are so provident with their winding sheets, as to carry them to camp never think of making a will and by much the greatest part of them die intestate. However every kind of cotton will not do for a Persian or an Indian, say in his circumstances. It must be a piece of stuff that has been rubbed, not to the Prophet's tomb or to that of Hassen his grandson's (which are both at Medina) but to Hussein's tomb which is at Kerbelah near Bagdad he, and not his father nor brother nor grand father being the idol of this nation for Aaly is only their God. Some of these keffens or windlug sheets are written all over with the whole Coran in characters of sandal-dust mixed with water and cost from two or three hundred, to a thousand, and two thousand rupees and we protest, upon honor that we know many a man that has defrauded his creditors to procure such a keffen, and more than one virtuous matro who on getting up from a severe illness, has become complaisant over and over in order to procure such a passport, and on finding it at a higher price than she had thought prostituted her virgin daughter into the bargain to make up the necessary sum for such an omnipotest purchase. "At last Madame" said her astonished suitor my stars have worked your consent—after four years' "solicitation I have the happiness to see you. "Do not rejoice so much, sir" replied the lady Accursed be she that would have listened to your messages but for the illness I have had, and the absolute necessity of providing for my salvation—I may die — and here her tears interrupted her voice

Azim-abad to come to the same town. There Shudjah-ed-dowlah having paid his respect to the Prince, took him to Dossy, over against Hah-abad where he threw a bridge of boats upon the Gang, and crossed over with him on the fifth Zilhidj of that same year, after which he encamped at Hah-abad, which he made the centre of his victorious standards. From thence he advanced to Dindj8 where he took up his winter quarters. In a few days he turned away all the Marhatta collectors and established throughout the whole Anterbid Shah-aalem's government, after which, as soon as the rainy season was over, he decamped on the sixth of the second Rebi, in the year 1175, and marched to Calpy after having appointed his favourite Minister, Bem-bahadyr, for his Deputy all over his dominion. From Calpy, which he took out of the hands of the Marhattas, he carried the Emperor beyond the Djumnah, where he took some rest at the fort of Djchansi, and as the Marhatta Governor refused to surrender, he was forced to it after his fort had been battered for some time. Hitherto Shudjah-ed-dowlah had acted as a Vezir, but he had not yet received the investiture of that high office. This ceremony took place on the twenty-first of that month, at which time he received from the Emperor a qhylat of seven pieces, with four plates of jewels and gems, and these were followed by a chaplet of pearls which was thrown over his neck, whilst he was presented with the casket of Vezir, which was of gold studded with jewels. Three days after, his son, Mirza-amani, was honoured with the superintendence of the Gh8-l-qhana, or of the private apartment. Nor is it our intention to say nothing more of this Prince, but it becomes necessary at present, that we should attend for a while to the affairs of Decan.

Shudjah-ed-dowlah appointed Vezir to Shah-aalem

We have already mentioned that Baladji-rao having pined away in despair for the destruction of his armies, had gone to join his brother and his eldest son. The Crown, therefore, devolved to his youngest son, Mad8-rao, then a child, as did the management of affairs, to his brother, Ragonat-rao. This happened at the end of the year 1174. The next year his neighbour, Nizam-aaly-qhan, now surnamed the second Nizam-el-mulk, expecting to make his profit of that minority, put himself with his brother, Selabet-djung, at the head of a numerous army, and for some secret reasons which have not transpired, he set out from the

Whilst Nizam aaly was putting on his Qhylaot, Ragonat and Madh8 rāo were going to pass the rainy season at P8nah where dissensions soon arose between them to such a high degree that Madh8 rāo's Ministers determined to seize Ragonat's person on the first opportunity. It was in the year 1176 Bot the latter receiving timely notice of this scheme, thought proper to provide for his safety. He set out from P8oah with a small number of followers, and took to the road of Nassue. There was at that time at Aoreng abad a noble personage by name Mahmed m8rad qhan bahadyr who had been sent thither by Nizam-aaly to negotiate with the two parties and to pacify that nation. This nobleman hearing that Ragonat rāo had quitted P8nah in distress, marched out of the city and met him upon the road very near Nassue. This was a lucky event for the fugitive whose mind was full of fears and anxiety for having advanced before his people to meet M8rad-qhan, he saluted him as a welcome friend and the Marhatta Grandees concluding from this step of M8rad-qhan < that Ragonat rāo's cause was supported by Nizam aaly they flocked to him with their troops in such numbers as soon to give his retinue the appearance of omethlog like a military force. Ragonat rāo being thus reinforced advanced from Aoreng-abad to Ahmed oogur whilst Madh8 rāo on his side, was quitting P8nah with a body of troops and pushing for his enemy and having soon overtaken him an engagement took place in which Madh8 rāo the nephew was worsted by Ragooat rāo the uncle. The next day he came to see him and made use of many excuses. Whilst they were conferring together Nizam aaly who had marched with intention to support Rag8nat rāo arrived but he found the quarrel already made up. It was at a place called Bedercañ8r where the Marhatta Prince advanced to meet him and where they embraced each other after which they interchanged several entertainments. Rag8oat rāo to acknowledge the readiness with which Nizam-aaly had marched to his assistance made him a present of several Districts to the amount of fifty lacs a year to which he added the Fortress of D88let-abad. The patents of these two graots were drawn up in due form and put in his hands. But this whole affair having been managed by M8rad qhan alooe it gave so much jealousy to Radja Pertavent the Prime Minister

Dissensions  
and several  
engagements  
between  
Madh8-rāo,  
the Marhatta  
ruler and his  
uncle, Rago-  
nat rāo

that he resolved to break a treaty which seemed to eclipse him. Without waiting till Nizam-aaly's people should have taken possession of the Fortress, or settled Collectors and Governors all over the ceded Districts, he turned his master's mind in such a manner, that he proposed to arrest Rag8nat-rao, and to substitute in his stead another Marhatta Prince, called Djano-dji, son to Rag8-dji-bossiah, who was then Mucasdah or hereditary Collector of the Province of Barar, and whom he brought to camp under promise of putting him at the head of the regency at P8nah. But whilst Nizam-aaly was regulating another man's house, he experienced dissensions in his own. His brother, Mirza-mogul deserted from his family, in order to throw himself in the arms of the Marhattas, but having soon discovered that his new friends were much more inclined to quarrel amongst themselves than to pay any attention to either his person or interest, he took a disgust at his situation, and came back to his brother, who received him kindly.

Meanwhile the first treaty having been broke in so unexpected a manner, Nizam-aaly marched with a numerous army against Rag8nat-rao, who being unwilling to try his forces in a pitched battle, wheeled round, and commenced plundering and ravaging the country, a practice from which there is no weaning a Marhatta. With thirty thousand horse, he advanced to the very suburbs of Aoreng-abad, and asked of the inhabitants of that city an immense contribution. But Mutemen-el-mulk, Governor of the Province, availed himself so well of the small force and small artillery, which he had at hand, he distributed the burghers so well upon the towers and walls of the city, and made so good an use of the activity of the Himmet-qhan-bahadyr, Cutval of the Police, that Rag8nat-räo was kept in play with negotiations and messages, until Nizam-aaly might be at hand. Nevertheless, the Marhatta, who was apprised of the state of the place, resolved to storm it. On the twentieth of Shaaban, in the year 1177, his people advanced at day-break to the foot of the wall, and applied to it a number of scaling ladders, as well as some of the loftiest elephants, by which expedient they got upon the wall, and tearing some boards from about the gates, they wanted to make use of them as a bridge to get down from the towers. But Himmet-qhan and Mirza-bakyr-qhan

Ragonat-räo attempts to escalate Aoreng-abad, but is vigorously repulsed

having run directly to that part, and exhorted some of the bravest citizens that had followed them, to exert themselves in defending their honor and their families this exhortation had such a good effect that those brave burghers some of whom were so ill armed as to have no other arms than their own slippers, fell vigorously upon those that had got upon the wall and overthrew them down on the other side where they all perished nor did another attack on an opposite part of the city succeed better. There were likewise numbers of Marhattas slain and here likewise the citizens bravely defended their walls against the escalade. In the confusion the driver of the elephant on which Raghnat rāo rode having been struck by a musket ball and in a narrow the animal turned its back and this arrow like a line drawn across parted the combataots. The attack ceased at once and Raghnat rāo having had full time to bite the finger of shame and disappointment, returned to his camp. The next day on hearing that Nizam aaly's victorious standards were at hand he decamped and marched into the Buglana. This was the sixth day after Aoreng abad had been invested and Nizam aaly arrived at the very time when the Marhattas had turned towards Barar with intention to sack that province. But Nizam aaly advancing by long marches to Balapūr threw him self in their way, and stopped them short as by a wall. Raghnat rāo sensible of this wheeled round his rear and giving him the slip he marched close under the walls of Aoreng abad on his way to Haider abad itself a Capital as fifteen days journey from the latter city. Nizam-aaly pursued, and advanced on his pursuit as far as the shores of the Gunga of Decan. There he altered his mind and instead of camping after those freebooters he thought it more advantageous to turn about and to march straight to Pānah. Being arrived beyond Ahmed nurgur he informed his Commanders as well as his army of his intention and he declared that he meant no less than to pay those freebooters in kind by burning their habitations and sacking their country. He was as good as his word and putting his design into execution everywhere he advanced within ten coses of Pānah where he encamped. The inhabitants of the Capital had fled with their families, either to the stronghold or to some difficult mountainous tracts and the city



such a manner as to enable me to speak of it properly. Nevertheless, although little is to be expected from my slender abilities, I hope to be able to give a proper account of it, as soon as I acquire more particulars and more certain information on the subject. This much is only come to my knowledge, upon the affairs of Decan, that at this time, that is in the year 1195 of the Hedjira (279), Nizam aaly-qhan, who richly deserves the title of second Assef dja, enjoys now the dominion of most of the Provinces left him by his father, and governs with a firmness of command that does him honour. Only there is a report that in the war which rages now between the English and Haider nã in the Province of Arcat, and again between the English and the Marhattas in the western parts of Decan, Nizam aaly is not so neutral as he looks, and that underhand he favorsizes the Indian cause. But this I offer only as a surmise, as the truth of it is what God only may know.

My memoirs are much more certain with respect to the affairs of Hindostan, and the Capital of the Empire. Since the Prince Djatt was unwilling to submit to Nedjib ed dowlah whom the Abdali king had appointed guardian of the young Prince Djuvan baqht, as well as Regent of the Empire, until Shah aalem himself should be arrived from Azim-abad. Sensible of the weakness of the Empire he resolved to benefit by it at any rate, notwithstanding the dreadful chastisement that had been inflicted under his very eyes upon the Marhattas, and he opened a negotiation for that purpose with the Governor of the Castle of Acher-abad. Without reflecting on the consequence of his action he engaged him under promise of a large sum of money to deliver that Citadel to him. And thus the Hindoo and a Djatt became the master of one of the two Capitals of Hindostan, that is of a mighty city where the Babrian Emperors had been these many ages hoarding up their treasures, stores and precious fortune.

---

(279) 1780 of the Christian Era.

